



# **YOGA-SUTRAS OF PATAÑJALI WITH THE EXPOSITION OF VYĀSA**

A Translation and Commentary  
**Volume I—*Samādhi-pāda***



# **YOGA-SUTRAS OF PATAÑJALI WITH THE EXPOSITION OF VYĀSA**

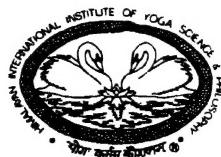
**A Translation and Commentary**

---

by Pandit Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.

**Volume I—*Samādhi-pāda***

Foreword by  
H. H. Swami Rama of the Himalayas



The Himalayan International Institute  
of Yoga Science and Philosophy of the U.S.A.  
Honesdale, Pennsylvania

© 1986 by *The Himalayan International Institute  
of Yoga Science and Philosophy of the U S A*  
*RR 1, Box 400, Honesdale, Pennsylvania 18431*

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any means  
without permission in writing from the publisher  
Printed in the United States of America*

*The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National  
Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI  
Z39.48-1984.*

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

Patañjali  
Yoga-sutras of Patanjali with the exposition of Vyāsa

Bibliography p.  
Includes index  
I. Yoga—Early works  
B132 Y6P267 1985 18      II. Vyāsa      III. Arya, Usharbudh  
ISBN 0-89389-092-8      5-7570

ॐ

ओ३म् नमः श्री-त्रिपुर-सुन्दर्यै सहस्रनाम्न्यै ॥

हिरण्यगर्भादारब्धां शोष-व्यासादि-मध्यमाम् ।  
स्वामि-श्री-राम-पादान्तां वन्दे गुरु-परम्पराम् ॥



# Contents

Acknowledgments	<i>ix</i>
Foreword	<i>xi</i>
Spelling and Pronunciation of Sanskrit	<i>xvii</i>
Abbreviations of Commentaries	<i>xx</i>
Other Texts Cited	<i>xxi</i>

## General Introduction

Part 1. Prologue	3
Part 2. Overview of Sāṅkhya-yoga	23
Part 3. <i>Tattva-samāsa-sūtras</i>	41

## *Yoga-sūtras—Chapter One* *Samādhi-pāda [Chapter on Samādhi]*

Compendium of Sūtras and Vyāsa's <i>Bhāṣhvra</i>	51
Sūtras I.1-I.51 with Vyāsa's Commentary and the Author's Discussion	59

Bibliography	431
Glossary/Index	439



# Acknowledgments

My deepest appreciation, profound gratitude and sincerest thanks  
to Shree

whose razor-sharp mind carefully balanced between a student's loyalty and an editor's honesty, who took the book through several stages of careful editing and typing, watching for the minutest detail;

to Michael Smith, Fran Manley, Ronald Neuhaus and several others who read the text for precise details of language and punctuation and helped make it comprehensible;

to Rolf and Mary Gail Sovik

who served as administrators of the Center for Higher Consciousness, organized my time, fed me, washed for me, watched over my health and well-being, and remained at my disposal twenty-four hours a day,

to several patron members of the Center for Higher Consciousness whose generosity freed me of financial concerns,

to the editors and typesetters of the Himalayan Institute  
whose silent devotion and service to the Guru's mission never seeks acknowledgment; and

to Lalita, my wife,  
whose silent and unrewarded sacrifices make my work possible.

Lord, make me a servant of thy servants, dāsānudāsah.



# Foreword

Yoga is a most ancient science, which has been taught for thousands of years. Patañjali systematized and organized it by formulating 196 aphorisms, which are called the *Yoga-sūtras*. Some scholars say Patañjali was born about 4,000 B.C. and others 400 B.C., but the exact date is unknown. Patañjali was the codifier of yoga science. He was a scientist who practiced and who gathered together the information on yoga and presented it in a concise form. The word *sūtra* actually means "string," and every aphorism is like a single flower on a garland. Patañjali made the sūtras succinct because in ancient times students learned the sayings of the great teachers by heart. This succinctness enabled the students to easily memorize these truths. In those days, there was a very close relationship between the preceptor and the student, who was taught through this oral tradition. Only the competent and accomplished yogis could impart this knowledge to their students.

Patañjali describes the entire philosophy of yoga science in the *Yoga-sūtras*, and the first four sūtras summarize the most important aspects of this science. The first aphorism says, "Now, then, and therefore, yoga science and discipline is being expounded." This means that the student of yoga should understand that without discipline, he cannot tread the path of yoga. Only discipline will help him on the path of enlightenment. The first word of the first aphorism is *atha*. *Atha* means "now, then, and therefore." It

indicates that there is something important that needs to be understood before one practices yoga. In most of the *darśhanas* (schools of philosophy) the word *atha* has been used as the first word at the beginning of such scriptures, and most commentators think that the word is auspicious. In reality, it indicates that the student is prepared, for the preliminaries have been completed. Many students eagerly study from scriptures and they briefly try to practice, but they find it very difficult, and then give up the practice. Thus, they don't make any progress because they have not gone through the preliminary steps of training. The first *sūtra* means, "Now the student may attain this step." This indicates that the student has already studied philosophy, he has studied the necessary *śāstras* (scriptures), and now the yoga discipline is being expounded and taught. So the word "now" denotes that the student has already accomplished something. The student or aspirant has already committed himself to the path and has said, "Yes, I'm committed to the path. I'm determined, and I want to follow the discipline. Discipline will assist in my growth; it will help me to attain liberation."

The word *yoga* is very ancient and is found in the *Vedas*, the most ancient scriptures known to man. It comes from the root *yuj*, "to unite." Yoga is the union of the individual soul with the Absolute One. The student of yoga has the capacity to unite himself with the Cosmic One. He can do it if he is fully prepared, determined, and desirous, and if his mind is made one-pointed. The modern student asks whether he has to renounce the world to attain the goal of yogic science. Yoga science says that while one does not have to renounce the world literally, there are conditions required for all *sādhana* (spiritual practice). *Sādhana* requires that discipline must be systematically applied. Yoga science does not lay down commandments, but it requires commitments. If one is committed to know the truth, and has the capacity and the ability, then he can attain the highest state of wisdom, *saṃādhi*. When no worldly fetters bind one, when nothing disturbs the mind, then one knows how to live in the world and yet remain nonattached. Yoga science recommends neither renunciation from the world nor

excessive involvement in the world. Yoga requires that the student avoid these two extremes. Patañjali leads one to know the real Self, whether one is a renunciate or a householder. One simply has to act in a way so that the goal, which is contentment, can be attained. Absolute contentment means a state of equanimity, tranquility, and equilibrium.

The purpose of this science is to help students know their potential and understand the various levels of their being, so that finally they reach the highest state. The teachings of yoga science are threefold: how to live within oneself, how to live in the external world, and at the same time how to link the two and create a bridge. Then one is liberated here and now.

The second sūtra provides the definition of yoga: *Yogaś chitta vṛtti nirodhah*, "Yoga is perfect control over the mind and its modifications." That is the definition of yoga. But there is another message to the sūtra; the other meaning is the assurance that with the help of yogic practices, as explained by Patañjali, a student can definitely have such control over his mind and its modifications.

The definition given by Patañjali explains the ultimate goal of yoga science. Yoga science is related to the mind, and mental life in its totality. By practicing the method of yoga, one can attain perfect control over the mind and its modifications. Yoga psychology is the most ancient school of psychology, which describes systematically, from the very beginning, how to know, analyze, and direct the mind, so that one can attain the purpose of life. The mind is one's finest instrument. The body is the grossest instrument, and breath is another, somewhat finer, instrument. The senses are also considered instruments, but mind is the finest instrument of all. A yogi is he who has complete control over his body, senses and mind. When he has accomplished that, he has the capacity to unite himself with the Ultimate Truth.

It's not that the student has to learn something from outside himself, that he has to acquire something. Patañjali says that the student must learn *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*, practice and nonattachment. The mind presents barriers to practice and nonattachment. It stands like a wall between the student and his goal in life. But

that same mind can be made an instrument for the attainment of his goal.

First, one has to know the mind thoroughly with all its modifications. Once the mind is understood, then it does not create obstacles for the student. A yogi is one who knows the technique of uniting himself with the Ultimate Reality. Thus, the second sūtra explains yoga science; it is a definition of yoga science.

The third sūtra explains that when one has control over the mind and its modifications, he establishes himself in his essential nature. Man's essential nature is peace, happiness, and bliss. The ordinary person forgets his essential nature and identifies with his thoughts and the forms and objects of the world. Patañjali says that the essential nature of a human being is distinct from his body, breath, senses, and mind. He says that the mind and its mental processes prevent one from knowing the Absolute. When one learns not to identify himself with the thought forms or objects of the mind, he establishes himself in his essential nature. In the yogic process one must purify the unconscious mind and then go beyond the mire of delusion created by the unconscious and its *sam-skāras* to get to the fountainhead of light and life, the center of consciousness within. That is the meaning of the third sūtra.

The fourth sūtra states that if one has not attained perfect control over the mind and its modifications, then he identifies himself with the thought waves and with the objects of the world and thus remains ignorant of his true nature. All pain and misery is the result of ignorance. When one removes that ignorance, and dispels the darkness, then he attains the state of equilibrium, which brings freedom from the bondage of karma and pain. One has to learn to be free, to become master of himself. That mastery is attained by practicing the yogic techniques taught in the aphorisms. Mind and its modifications can be perfectly analyzed and controlled, and then mind can be directed according to one's aim in life.

The *Yoga-sūtras* teach not just a philosophy but, most importantly, a specific method to practice. By studying them, a student can understand that he is fully equipped to attain samādhi, the highest state of tranquility, the center of consciousness within. The

student acquires self-confidence by studying Patañjali's sūtras because the sūtras say that the student can cultivate the power of concentration and use it to remove the obstacles to enlightenment, which cause all suffering.

Most people desire to enjoy the world, but for lack of inner strength and a one-pointed mind, they are not able to do so. One has to acquire the knowledge of how to control the mind and its modifications through practice. Practice and commitment to a discipline come first. When the student starts practicing, he experiences something which is supramental, and such extraordinary experiences lead him to the deeper dimensions of life. One should establish himself firmly on his meditation seat and make the body steady and still on that seat, regularly—every day at the same time. Steady posture, though a preliminary practice, is very important, for it helps the student in attaining the meditative state. Gradually one should increase the practice time, so he can remain still for a longer period. After one accomplishes this, then he will find that the breath is distracting the mind. Then one learns to breathe harmoniously. Soon one will think in a calm and serene way. In this way one can go beyond body, senses, and mind. One can go beyond the reservoir of the impressions and *samskāras* stored in the unconscious mind, and finally attain the center of consciousness. This is an inner journey which one can accomplish without movement. Here on this path, one has to be steady, to be regular, to be punctual, and gradually to work with the body, breath, and the conscious and unconscious mind. Then one can go beyond intellect to the center of consciousness.

This is called the path from the gross self to the subtlest Self. The moment one completely devotes himself with one-pointedness, he is at the center of consciousness. The student becomes one with the center of consciousness, as a drop of water or a river meets and becomes one with the ocean. Slowly the individual self, which is like a ripple in the vast ocean of bliss, becomes one and the same with the ocean. So the *Yoga-sūtras* of Patañjali teach the student how to attain samādhi in this lifetime if he steadily practices and works to control the mind.

Pandit Dr. Usharbudh Arya has written a commentary on the *Yoga-sūtras* in a very scholarly manner. No doubt this commentary will be beneficial to researchers and to students who are eager to study the ancient commentaries of Vyāsa, Bhoja, Vāchaspati, and other commentators. Dr. Arya is both a scholar and an accomplished meditator. I have not come across any other commentary that explains the *Yoga-sūtras* in such a clear and brilliant manner.

Swami Rama

# The Spelling and Pronunciation of Sanskrit Letters and Words

Sanskrit vowels are generally the same pure vowel sounds found in Italian, Spanish, or French. The consonants are generally pronounced as in English.

a	organ, sum
ā	father
ai	aisle
au	sauerkraut
b	but
bh	abhor
ch	church
chh	churchhill
ḍ	dough
ḍ	dough (slightly toward the <i>th</i> sound of <i>though</i> )
ḍh	adhere
dh	adhere (slightly toward the <i>theh</i> sound of <i>breathe here</i> )
e	prev
g	go
gh	doghouse
h	[slight aspiration of preceding vowel]
h	hot
i	it
ī	police
j	/ump
jh	lodgehouse
k	kid
kh	workhorse
!	no English equivalent; a short vowel pronounced somewhat like the /ry/ in <i>revelry</i>
l	/ug

m̐	[resonant nasalization of preceding vowel]
m	<i>mud</i>
n̐	<i>sing</i>
ñ	<i>under</i>
ñ̐	<i>piñata</i>
n	<i>no</i>
o	<i>no</i>
p	<i>pub</i>
ph	<i>uphill</i>
r	no English equivalent; a simple vowel <i>r</i> , such as appears in many Slavonic languages
ř	the same pronunciation as r, more prolonged
r̐	<i>rum</i>
sh	<i>shawl</i> (pronounced with a slight whistle; German <i>sprechen</i> )
šh	<i>shun</i>
s	<i>sun</i>
t̐	<i>tomato</i>
t	<i>water</i>
þh	<i>anthill</i>
th	<i>Thailand</i>
u	<i>push</i>
ū	<i>rude</i>
v	<i>vodka</i> (midway between w and v)
y	<i>yes</i>

**Vowels.** Every vowel is either long or short. The diphthongs *e*, *ai*, *o*, and *au* are always long; *l* is always short. Long *a*, *i*, *u*, and *r* are indicated by a horizontal line over the vowel. The long form of a vowel is pronounced twice as long as the short form.

**Consonants.** Sanskrit has many aspirated consonants, that is, consonants pronounced with a slight *h* sound: *bh chh ðh dh gh jh kh ph þh th*. These aspirated consonants should be pronounced distinctly. The retroflex consonants, *d̐ ðh n̐ šh t̐ þh*, are pronounced

with a hitting sound, as the tip of the tongue is curled back to the ridge of the hard palate. The dentals, *d dh n t th*, are pronounced with the tip of the tongue touching the upper teeth.

**Accentuation.** There is no strong accentuation of syllables. The general rule is to stress the next-to-last syllable of a word, if that is long. A syllable is long if (*a*) it has a long vowel or (*b*) its vowel is followed by more than one consonant. If the next-to-last syllable of a word is short, then the syllable before that receives the stress.\*

\*For a better understanding of Sanskrit pronunciation the student is referred to the author's basic Sanskrit cassette tape course

# Abbreviations of Commentaries

Code	Author	Title
AD	Ananta-deva Pandit	<i>Pada-chandrikā</i>
BB	Bangali Baba	<i>The Yogasūtra of Patañjali</i>
BG	Bhāvāgaṇeśha	<i>Pradīpikā</i> or <i>Pradīpa</i>
BM	Baladeva Miśhra	<i>Yoga-pradīpikā</i>
BR	Bhojarāja (Bhojadeva)	<i>Rāja-mārttīṣṭha</i> (also known as <i>Bhoja-vṛtti</i> )
HA	Hariharānanda Āraṇya	<i>Bhāsvatī</i>
HA(E)	Hariharānanda Āraṇya	<i>Yoga Philosophy of Patanjali</i> (English commentary)
MA	Mādhavāchārya	<i>Pātañjala-darśhanam</i> chapter of the <i>Sarva-darśhana-saṅgraha</i>
NB	Nāgojī Bhaṭṭa (Nāgeśha)	<i>Laghvī</i>
NBB	Nāgojī Bhaṭṭa (Nāgeśha)	<i>Brhatī</i>
NTB	Nārāyaṇa Tīrtha	<i>Sūrirārtha-bodhīnī</i>
NTC	Nārāyaṇa Tīrtha	<i>Yoga-siddhānta-chandrīkā</i>
RP	Rāma Prasāda	<i>The Yoga Sutras of Patanjali</i> (English translation)
RS	Rāghavānanda Sarasvatī	<i>Pātañjala-rahasyā</i>
RY	Rāmānanda Yati	<i>Maṇi-prabhā</i>
Sh	Śhankara-bhagavat-pāda	<i>Pātañjala-yoga-sūtra-</i> <i>bhāṣhyā-vivarana</i>
SS	Sadāśhvendra Sarasvatī	<i>Yoga-sudhākara</i>
VB	Vijñāna-bhikṣhu	<i>Yoga-vārttīka</i> and <i>Yoga-sāra-saṅgraha</i>
VM	Vāchaspati Miśhra	<i>Tattva-vaiśhāradī</i>

# Other Texts Cited

## Abbreviated

<i>BhG</i>	<i>Bhagavad-gītā</i>
<i>TSS</i>	<i>Tattva-samāsa-sūtras</i>
<i>YS</i>	<i>Yoga-sūtras of Patañjali with Vyāsa's Bhāṣhya</i>

## Non-Abbreviated

*Aitareya Upaniṣhad*  
*Bhāgavata-purāṇa*  
*Brahma-bindu Upaniṣhad*  
*Brahma-sūtras*  
*Brahma-vidvā Upanishad*  
*Brhadāraṇvaka Upanishad*  
*Brhad-yogi-vajñavalkya-smṛti*  
*Chhāndogya Upanishad*  
*Hamsa Upaniṣhad*  
*Kaṭha Upanishad*  
*Kauśitaki Upaniṣhad*  
*Kena Upanishad*  
*Kurma-purāṇa*  
*Lawbook of Manu*  
*Mahābhārata (Mokṣha-dharma-parvan)*  
*Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali*  
*Mahopanishad*  
*Maitrī Upaniṣhad*  
*Māndukya Upaniṣhad*  
*Mundaka Upaniṣhad*  
*Nyāya-sūtra of Gotama*  
*Praśna Upanishad*  
*R̥g-veda*  
*Sāṅkhya-kārikā*  
*Śhvetaśhvatarā Upanishad*  
*Vāyu-purāṇa*  
*Viṣṇu-purāṇa*  
*Yajur-veda*  
*Yoga-vāsiṣṭha*



---

# **General Introduction**

---



## Part 1

# Prologue

If all the vast traditions of India's philosophies and literatures were to vanish and the *Yoga-sūtras* of Patañjali alone were to be saved, each of those philosophies and literatures could in time be created again. They could be created again not because their details or even basic formulas appear in the *Yoga-sūtras*, but because these sūtras form the manual of the yoga practice, the culmination of which is that process of intuitive knowledge which alone constituted the source of almost all of India's philosophies and literatures. The founders of all Indian sciences such as physics, chemistry, mathematics, astronomy, medicine, archery, polity, poetics, dance, music, dramaturgy, cosmology or metaphysics were all *rshis*, those who have entered the state of *samādhi* and thereafter brought forth a given science of their choice because of their compassion for human beings. It is made very clear in the sūtras that through the process of *samādhi* one may receive any or all branches of knowledge, which may then be revealed to the world. While thus serving as a conduit for such worldly knowledge one may yet dwell in a Consciousness which transcends such intuitive knowledge. The *Yoga-sūtras* teach the methods for the mastery of both; therefore one may easily conclude that they contain the seed of Indian sciences and philosophies as well as the Indian spirituality—this last forming the link between science and philosophy. If there

#### 4 INTRODUCTION: PART I

were no more India in the geography of the world, if the highest Himalayan peak were submerged under the ocean, if every Indian language and text were to perish completely, but if there were to survive one single yogi who has reached samādhi, all the Vedas, Upaniṣads and the *Bhagavad-gītā* would again flow from his mouth—indeed in a new form—and, to repeat, all the principles of āyur-veda, dance, drama, music, medicine, dramaturgy, poetics and the rest would be re-created. A whole new civilisation paralleling the experience of India's civilisation would come to exist and would nourish ever-fresh streams of spirituality in all the then-existing or future civilisations of the world. It is not that the sūtras by themselves would produce this effect, but the practical guidance given therein would bring forth in an aspirant that realization of knowledge, power and wisdom which, when well wielded, creates civilisations. This can be attested to by looking at the benevolent changes that have occurred in civilisations to which yoga practice and philosophy were introduced from time to time and in various guises and forms. There is insufficient space here for a detailed study of this history.

It is therefore essential that a translation and explanation of the *Yoga-sūtras* of Patañjali be made available, which will

- address its subject matter from within the initiatory tradition of the Himalayan masters, the founders and the continuing authoritative teachers of yoga science,
- incorporate the essentials of information and exposition given in the exegetical tradition of all past commentators whose works are available, and
- remain true to the basic tenets of the formal Sāṅkhya-yoga school of philosophy.

This task has been undertaken in the translation and commentary being presented here. Before going further with an apologia for this work, it is essential to review briefly the primary sources for the study of the *Yoga-sūtras*.

The tradition of India's philosophical lineages is lost in antiquity. According to one Tantric text (*Śrī-vidyārṇava*) there were seventy-one teachers from Kapila, the founder of Sāṅkhya, to the greatest

proponent of Vedānta, Śankarāchārya,<sup>1</sup> who taught at the end of the seventh and beginning of the eighth century A.D.; and from Śankara to the present day a lineage of up to seventy-six teachers has been enumerated. If this appears to be a long time, the reader might find interesting the fact that in approximately 1400 B.C. the *Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* (VI.5.1-4) enumerated sixty-six generations of teachers up to that time. Patañjali in his work on grammar speaks of eighty-four thousand *rshis*. Within the Indian tradition it is almost impossible to assign a date to the *rshis*, for they are custodians and conduits of a perennial knowledge which is revealed repeatedly in each cycle of creation. They are self-authoritative and their work is internally self-evident (*svataḥ-pramāṇa*), requiring no other authority to approve it and not measurable by any yardstick external to divine revelation, but serving as the measure for others.

Both Patañjali and Vyāsa are regarded by the traditions as *rshis*, their words equally authentic. In the lineage of the yoga philosophy the two names have been inseparably coupled together so that in spite of the existence of later independent commentaries the word *Yoga-sūtra* calls forth the name of Vyāsa in the mind. The association is strengthened even more when some of Patañjali's words in his work on grammar, the *Mahābhāṣya*, echo those of Vyāsa's commentary on the *Yoga-sūtras* or vice versa.

The texts in the *sūtra* style bear no resemblance to any other genre of writing in any tradition. The word *sūtra* is often translated as "aphorism." However, an aphorism can be read and understood on its own. A *sūtra* is often unintelligible by itself. It is always, like a mantra,<sup>2</sup> perhaps only slightly less, in need of an exposition. It is

1 This also might raise the question as to a possible confusion of Sāṅkhya and Vedānta lineages. So far as the knowledge of Ultimate Reality and Truth is concerned, the lineage is all one. One of the titles held by the Śankarāchāryas up to this day is "Teacher and Protector of the threefold Sāṅkhya." One particular monastic seat of the Dashañamī monastic order of the followers of Śankara, the Mahānirvāṇi sect at Prayag, considers Kapila as the incarnate form of the deity to be worshipped at this particular seat. Kapila, it should be noted, is one of the twenty-four major incarnations of God in the traditions of India.

2 For details of the inspirational process in the revelation of a mantra see the author's work *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981).

an extremely succinct statement of a truth which has been realized by a *r̄shī* in the state of samādhi. In other words, the shortness of a sūtra is not, as is made out by many modern scholars, only a mnemonic device because it is taught in an oral tradition. It is, however, certainly both an inspired utterance and a mnemonic formula in need of much background information. Such information was imparted to close disciples within the tradition in day after day of study. The teacher sat on a little elevated seat, perhaps under a tree or in a mud hut or by the daily, ritual sacred fire. The disciple sat intent facing the teacher maintaining the same posture throughout the session. The slightest movement on his part was considered an interruption. He had no tape recorders or notebooks. Only through his immense power of concentration did he remember all that was taught. Later he recited the lesson to himself during *svādhyāya* sessions to imprint them on his memory. Furthermore there were either separate experiential sessions or sometimes the guru might flash an experience into the consciousness of a select disciple alone while enunciating the rules orally to the less prepared. This is the experience of select disciples even now. And even now it is thus that a few close disciples have learnt at the feet of a guru. Among the disciples thus taught, the most advanced ones composed a commentary, which may be either a

*vṛtti*: word-for-word explanation of the sūtra alone, or

*bhāṣhya*: including much background and experiential information, showing the connection of many sūtras to each other, refuting the views of opponents, adding many “fillers” needed to render the sūtra comprehensible.

A *bhāṣhya* composed by a realized scholar (*āchārya*) may be fairly lengthy, such as Śankara’s *Bhāṣhya* on the *Brahma-sūtras* of the Vedānta philosophy. One taught by a *r̄shī* is often only slightly less succinct than the sūtra itself, requiring another commentary or gloss (*tīkā*) by later scholars. Vyāsa’s *Bhāṣhya* is in this latter category, with numerous *tīkās* thereupon, which may need further sub-glosses (*upa-tīkās*).

The *vṛttis*, *bhāṣyas* and *tīkās* require not only that one should

be taught within the tradition of the school so that the in-school information and, in the case of yoga, experience will be made available but also that the commentator will be familiar with that special branch of knowledge which was developed specifically to establish the rules of the *sūtra* interpretation. The rules were developed especially (*a*) in the schools of grammar, (*b*) in the Mīmāṃsā philosophy that deals with the interpretation of Vedic utterances, (*c*) in the Nyāya schools of logic, and (*d*) within each school of philosophy for its own development and later interpretation. A commentator succeeds in his work of interpretation only to the degree to which he has been immersed (*niṣṭhāta*) in these sources and methods. It is regrettable that many commentators on the *Yoga-sūtras*, whether writing in Sanskrit or in the modern languages, are sadly lacking in one or the other of these qualifications.

It may be argued that, unlike the schools of Vedānta, Mīmāṃsā and Nyāya systems of philosophy, the Sāṅkhya and Yoga systems have no continuing ancient schools where the in-school knowledge may be imparted. This may be agreed to in the case of Sāṅkhya, but Yoga is a living school—if there is any—and the masters continue to teach the *Yoga-sūtras* in the ashrams and cave monasteries in an unbroken lineage, primarily as an experiential discipline because Yoga philosophy exists only on the basis of its practices. Because the categories of Sāṅkhya philosophy are so closely allied to the Yoga system, the Sāṅkhya tradition has survived as a supportive school in association with Yoga. The Yoga school of philosophy is often referred to as Sāṅkhya-yoga, but a note of caution must be maintained in doing so. Not all the categories of Sāṅkhya are used in Yoga, as even a cursory comparison of the *Tattva-samāsa-sūtras* and the *Yoga-sūtras* will show. The categories of Sāṅkhya philosophy are employed practically by all the schools of Indian philosophy to a greater or lesser degree. They are employed more in Yoga philosophy; that is all there is to Yoga philosophy being termed Sāṅkhya-yoga. Sāṅkhya philosophy proper has its own independent existence and does not refer to much of the practical system of Yoga and cannot return the compliment by

calling itself Sāṅkhyā-yoga. The Yoga philosophy, both in Patañjali's work by itself and as expounded by Vyāsa, does depend on parts of the Sāṅkhyā system and even gives it a new interpretation. It does not thereby lose its independent existence as a separate school of philosophy. It is thus that Vyāsa's commentary is called

*Sāṅkhyā-pravachana-bhāṣhya:* An Exposition That Enunciates Sāṅkhyā.

*Sāṅkhyā-pravachana* ("Enunciation of Sāṅkhyā") is an alternative title of the *Yoga-sūtras*.

It is not, therefore, that "Vyāsa . . . often foist[s] on Yoga the philosophy of Sāṅkhyā"<sup>3</sup> or that one needs to "combat the overpowering influence exercised by Vyāsa's scholium,"<sup>4</sup> but rather that Vyāsa, having fully mastered both the Yoga and Sāṅkhyā systems, clarifies Patañjali's work with regard to both its Yoga and the relevant parts of its Sāṅkhyā contents—but within the context of Yoga. The later *vṛttis* like that of Bhoja are excellent in that they give a word-for-word breakdown of the sūtras, but the scope of philosophical knowledge as well as experiential authenticity is often lacking in them.

It is not our purpose in this prologue to attempt even a scant discussion of the scholarly problems attendant upon the philosophy and textual composition or even dates of the authorship of the *Yoga-sūtras* and the *Sāṅkhyā-pravachana-bhāṣhya*, the *Bhāṣhya*, in short. Suffice it to say that like much of the tradition in India we regard the works of Patañjali and Vyāsa as a single composite whole, a single text the two parts of which complement each other and on which alone rests the authority of all other *vṛttis* and *ṭīkās* because it is thus that the tradition of the Himalayan masters would have it.

<sup>3</sup> J. W. Hauer, quoted by Georg Feuerstein, *The Yoga-Sūtra of Patañjali: An Exercise in the Methodology of Textual Analysis* (New Delhi: Arnold-Heinemann, 1979), p. 25.

<sup>4</sup> Georg Feuerstein, Preface to *The Philosophy of Classical Yoga* (New York: St. Martin's Press, 1980; Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1980), p. ix.

It is also not our purpose to produce a critical edition of the texts of the *Yoga-sūtras*. Although some sūtras do have variant readings as found in manuscripts and commentaries, for our purpose we have simply accepted the renderings of Vyāsa and Vāchaspati Miśhra.

Now, let us briefly introduce the various commentaries and their authors:

1. (A) *Tattva-vaiśhāradī* (literally, "Expert Exposition of the Fundamentals"), a *ṭīkā* by Vāchaspati Miśhra, is the one most important work after the *Bhāṣhya* of Vyāsa. Vāchaspati Miśhra (VM) was born towards the end of the eighth century A.D., and in addition to *Tattva-vaiśhāradī* on Yoga, wrote commentaries on Sāṅkhya, Nyāya and the Vedānta systems. A savant of unique qualifications, he did not attempt to establish a philosophical system of his own and was content to attempt a lucid explanation of whichever text or philosophical system he was writing on. It does not appear that he was an accomplished yogi, but his commentary on Vyāsa is still the most helpful one. We have, therefore, incorporated most of his explanations in our discussions.

(B) *Pātañjala-rahasya* ("The Secret of Patañjali's System") is a sub-commentary (*upa-ṭīkā*) on VM's work by Rāghavānanda Sarasvatī (RS) of uncertain but definitely recent date. It attempts to explain arbitrarily chosen phrases from VM, especially on the points of grammar and the procedures of formal logic. Here and there it has provided helpful hints to add to our own discussions.

2. (A) *Yoga-vārttikā*<sup>5</sup> ("Exposition on Yoga") of Vijnāna-bhikshu (VB), born in the sixteenth century A.D., is considered the second most important commentary (*īkā*) on Vyāsa. VB is said to have authored sixteen works on widely ranging schools and topics of philosophy. One of his main contributions is his attempt to establish the points of unity between dualist Sāṅkhya and monist Vedānta, with the result that the authorities of both schools tend to disown

<sup>5</sup> The term *vārttika* means an aphoristic statement that takes into account the stated, unstated-but-implied, and difficult-to-understand points of an original sūtra. The title of VB's work, however, uses the term very broadly.

him. In his commentary on Vyāsa he tries to read Vedānta into the *Yoga-sūtras*, and in doing so, distorts the original intent of Patañjali and Vyāsa. For example, his theory that *puruṣha* is a recipient of reflections from *prakṛti* is totally against the tenets of Sāṅkhyayoga philosophy. In order to support his views on many issues, he quotes copiously from other texts such as the Upaniṣads, *Bhagavad-gītā* and the Purāṇas. Only in the discussions on the first few sūtras have we examined his peculiar views; thereafter we have ignored his argumentations. But we have incorporated what he says that is supportive of the intent of Patañjali and Vyāsa.

(B) *Pradīpikā* or *Pradīpa* ("That Which Sheds Light"), the *vṛtti* by VB's disciple, Bhāvāgaṇeśha (BG), summarizes VB's commentary adding some observations of its own. We have accorded BG's views the same consideration as those of VB himself.

(C) Nāgojī Bhaṭṭa or Nāgeśha (NB) was perhaps the greatest learned man of the latter part of the sixteenth century. His works on grammar, the philosophy of grammar, Vedānta and so forth are considered definitive, and are studied not merely as commentaries but as original works. There are two commentaries (*vṛttis*) by him on Patañjali:

(i) *Laghvī* (NB), the shorter one, which seems to be a summary of VB's work with few observations of his own.

(ii) *Brhatī* (NBB), the longer one, which incorporates the salient points of *Laghvī* with much additional discussion.

With his own profound scholarship of Vedānta it was natural for him to follow VB's lead in trying to synthesize the dualist and the monist systems. Ignoring again this aspect of his work, our discussion takes into account his explanations of the Sāṅkhyayoga view proper. NB begins his larger commentary (NBB) by stating that his purpose is to resolve the controversy between Vedānta and Yoga. Even though he and BG for the most part echo VB, they are pronounced Vedāntins and try throughout to reconcile the path of knowledge (*jñāna*) as taught by Vedānta with the teachings of Patañjali and Vyāsa. To this end they often quote such verses as:

Knowledge and yoga are taught to be separate only by the foolish and not by the wise. . . . Only he sees truth who sees knowledge and yoga to be one.

*Bhagavad-gītā* V.4,5

3. *Rāja-mārtianda* (“The Royal Sun”), also known as *Bhoja-vṛtti*, is by the savant king Bhojadēva, or Bhojarāja (BR), 1019–1054 A.D. He was an accomplished poet, a theoretician of poetry and an author on many sciences such as architecture. Of the royal patrons of arts, poetry, philosophy and the sciences, his name comes among the first. His *vṛtti* is on Patañjali, and is almost totally independent, although it incorporates some of Vyāsa’s exposition. It is a work, as a *vṛtti* has to be, with only brief argumentation here and there, and carries the force of a personal conviction and, without exaggeration, of a personal experience of yoga.

4. Nārāyaṇa Tīrtha (fourteenth century) is a unique commentator, who does not depend on Vyāsa. He was a scholar in Vallabhāchārya’s tradition, which incorporated some of the Vedānta views into the context of *bhakti* (devotion and surrender) to a divine incarnation, namely Krishna. NT has written two commentaries:

(A) *Sūtrārtha-bodhini* (“That Which Helps the Understanding of the Meaning of Sūtras”) (NTB), a *vṛtti*, is the shorter of the two, with succinct remarks on the words in the sūtra.

(B) *Yoga-siddhānta-chandrikā* (“Moonlight on the Tenets of Yoga”) (NTC), a *bhāṣya*, is the more detailed commentary.

NTC not only tries to give the *Yoga-sūtras* a perspective of *bhakti*-yoga but also fills in much information on other systems of yoga, such as details of the *kundalī* and *chakras* as well as the various techniques of *hatha*-yoga. In other words, it shows the connections of all the systems of yoga with the *Yoga-sūtras*. The information given on these systems is not anything unfamiliar to the student of yoga; but to show which sūtras contain the seeds of which tenets and techniques of those systems is a very important contribution. In our discussion we have omitted these details from NTC, but an appendix will be added to the end of Chapter 4 to

indicate the seeds of the various systems as found in the *Yoga-sūtras*.

5. (A) Rāmānanda Yati (RY) (sixteenth century) wrote *Maṇiprabhā* ("The Lustre of Jewels"), a brief *tīkā* on Vyāsa.

(B) Sadāśivendra Sarasvatī (SS) (eighteenth century) wrote *Yoga-sudhākara* ("The Moon of Yoga").

(C) Ananta-deva Pandit (AD) (nineteenth century) wrote *Pada-chandrikā* ("Moonlight on Words"), which for the most part scans the *Rāja-mārttanda* of Bhojarāja.

(D) Baladeva Miśhra (BM) (twentieth century) summarizes Vāchaspati's work in *Yoga-pradīpikā*.

All of these were aspiring *sādhakas* who have often paraphrased from the work of previous commentators. The works of SS, AD and BM are difficult to place as to whether they are *vṛttis* or *tīkās*. However, in places they do provide delightful, original insights; and this is especially true of RY's work, which is the most detailed of the four and shows the mark of a profound writer with some deep spiritual experience.

6. Hariharānanda Āraṇya (HA) (nineteenth and twentieth centuries) wrote *Bhāsvatī* ("The Luminous One"). He was responsible for reviving the Sāṅkhya teaching by establishing a school for that purpose. He wrote many independent works on Sāṅkhya in Sanskrit. *Bhāsvatī* is a lucid commentary meant for the layman not interested in the disputations of dogma. It adheres strictly to the original Sāṅkhya-yoga views without attempting compromises with any other schools of philosophy and totally ignores the syncretic approach of VB et al. Of course, HA's insights have been incorporated into our discussions

7 In an entirely different category comes a very detailed commentary attributed to Śhankara (Sh). *Pātañjala-yoga-sūtra-bhāṣhya-vivarana* ("An Exposition on the *Bhāṣhyā*") is a work explaining Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhyā* and is not so overly Vedāntic as to becloud the Sāṅkhya tenets. Because of its originality it could easily be called a *bhāṣhyā* in its own right. Any efforts to prove that it is a work of the first Śhankarāchārya are feeble; obviously it was composed by one of the later Śhankarāchāryas. In spite of its complete originality

and importance we have taken no note of it in our discussions because to do so would double the size of the present book and also because Trevor Leggett's verbatim translation<sup>6</sup> is most accurate and reliable.

The foregoing are the commentaries in Sanskrit, some of which have been published in numerous editions with footnotes provided by Sanskrit scholars.<sup>7</sup> In addition there exist at least the following summaries of the philosophy of Patañjali:

1. The chapter on Patañjali's philosophy in Mādhava's *Sarva-darśhana-saṅgraha* (MA) ("Compendium of All Philosophies")
2. *Yoga-sāra-saṅgraha* ("Collection of the Essence of Yoga") of Vijñāna-bhikṣhu,<sup>8</sup> an independent treatise summarizing VB's interpretation of Patañjali's philosophy
3. The chapter on Patañjali's philosophy in the Jaina teacher Hari Bhadra Suri's eighth century A D work *Ṣhaḍ-darśhana-samu-cchaya* ("Compendium of Six Philosophies") and Gunaratna's commentary thereupon<sup>9</sup>
4. The chapter on Patañjali's philosophy in the Jaina teacher Rājaśekhara's *Ṣhaḍ-darśhana-samuccaya* ("Compendium of Six Philosophies")<sup>10</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Trevor Leggett, *Sankara on the Yoga-sūtras. The Vivarana sub-commentary to Viśiṣṭabhāṣya on the Yoga-sūtras of Patañjali*, vol 1, *Samādhi*, vol 2, *Means* (London Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1981 1983)

<sup>7</sup> The following minor commentaries were not available at the time of writing (1) Balarāma Udāsina's *Commentary on the Yoga-sūtras*, ed K B R Sinha (Bankipore 1867, 1897). (2) Krishna-vallabhbhāṣyā's *Kirana*, a sub-commentary on Bhojarāja's work, ed Shveta-vai-kuntha Shastri and Narayana Sharana Shastri (Banaras 1939). The titles of sixteen other commentaries which are not available have been listed by Dr Nalini Shukla in her *Patañjali-yoga-sūtra kā vivechanātmak evam tulanātmak adhivāyan* (A critical and comparative study of Pātañjala-yoga-sūtra, in Hindi) (Kanpur Shakti-yogaśram and Nalini Shukla, 1975)

<sup>8</sup> Readers may consult the excellent English translation of this text by Ganganatha Jha (Madras India Theosophical Publishing House, 1933)

<sup>9</sup> For details of published editions see Karl H Potter comp., *Bibliography of Indian Philosophies*, rev ed vol 1 of *The Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, published for the American Institute of Indian Studies by Motilal BanarsiDass (Delhi, 1979), pp 184 and 329. The forthcoming sixth volume of the encyclopedia, entitled *Yoga Philosophy*, will contain more detailed information on yoga texts

<sup>10</sup> Ibid , p 198

5. The chapter on Patañjali's philosophy in Rāma-bhadra Dīkṣita's “Śaṅg-darśhana-siddhānta-saṅgraha” (“Collection of the Doctrines of the Six Philosophies”), never published, only a manuscript in the Tanjore Library

The first two have been taken into account in our discussions on the first few sūtras only. Mādhaba's work will be used in helping to provide a final summary of Patañjali's philosophy at the end of Chapter 4. One and only one thorough study comparing the views of all these commentators on every conceivable topic of the *Yoga-sūtras* has ever been made. Unfortunately for our readers it is in Hindi.<sup>11</sup>

There exist a number of unpublished Sanskrit commentaries on the *Yoga-sūtras* in manuscript form, but these were not available at the time of this writing. It is also most probable that many ancient commentaries have been lost to arson by Muslim conquerors, discontinuity of a line of teachers and neglect by owners, which has always provided ancient books as a meal for termites. One example of a lost commentary is that of a versified version from which Alberuni translated into Arabic.<sup>12</sup>

There have been numerous translations of the *Yoga-sūtras* into English, from J. R. Ballentyne (1852) to Georg Feuerstein (1980). Most of these translations include Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya*. Vāchaspati's commentary, *Tattva-vaiśhārādi*, was translated twice, Bhoja's *Rājamārttīrṇḍa* once, and Yati's *Mani-prabhā* once. Trevor Leggett's recent translation of Śankara's *Vivaraṇa* has been mentioned above. A complete list of these publications can be found in the indexes provided in numerous scholarly publications<sup>13</sup> on the *Yoga-sūtras*.

11 Vimala Karnāṭak, *A Critical Study of the Patañjala-Yoga-sūtra in the Light of Its Commentators* (in Hindi), Banaras Hindu University Sanskrit Series no 10, 1974

12 For further information see (1) Shlomo Pines and Tuvia Gelblum, “Al-Bīrūnī's Arabic Version of Patañjali's *Yoga-sūtra*,” *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 29 (1966), pp. 302-25, and vol 40 (1977), pp. 522-49, (2) Ahmad Hasan Dani, *Alberuni's Indica* (Islamabad, Pakistan: University of Islamabad Press, 1973)

13 Those most interested in a research of this type may begin by looking at the Bibliography in Georg Feuerstein's *The Yoga-sūtra of Patañjali An Exercise in the Methodology of Textual Analysis* (New Delhi: Arnold-Heinemann, 1979). Also see Potter, *Bibliography of Indian Philosophies*

Of these translations the ones by J. H. Woods<sup>14</sup> and by I. K. Taimni<sup>15</sup> are the most well known in the West, the first among scholars and the second among aspirants of yoga. We have ignored both of these completely in our discussions. The translation of the *Yoga-sūtras* with the *Bhāṣhya* of Vyāsa and the commentary of Vāchaspatti by Woods, though a prestigious volume first published in the Harvard Oriental Series, is a scholar's exercise to replace Sanskrit words with English ones! It shows little or no understanding of the traditions of the *Yoga school* of philosophy nor familiarity with experiential yoga practice. Taimni's work was also completely ignored because it attempts to foist theosophical doctrine on Patañjali and Vyāsa.

From time to time in our work three English translations have been consulted:

1. Translation of the *Yoga-sūtras*, with Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya* and Vāchaspatti's *Tattva-vaiśhāradī*, by Rāma Prasāda (RP).<sup>16</sup> The translator was not a yogi but his work at least shows the mark of a man learned in the conventions of the Sanskrit philosophical tradition. From the point of view of a practitioner of yoga this work exhibits some of the same deficiencies as those in the work of J. H. Wood.

2. Translation of the *Yoga-sūtras* and Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya* by Hariharānanda Āranya [HA(E)], with an extensive commentary originally in Bangla (Bengali), rendered into English.<sup>17</sup> This is one of the most heartwarming works on the *Yoga-sūtras* by someone who not only revived the teaching of Sāṅkhya-yoga, but was a great Sanskrit scholar as well as a practising yogi.

14 James Haughton Woods, *The Yoga-System of Patañjali*, Harvard Oriental Series, vol 17 (1914, reprint, Delhi Motilal Banarsiādass, 1927)

15. I. K. Taimni, *The Science of Yoga* (Madras, India, and Wheaton, Ill Theosophical Publishing House, 1961)

16 Rāma Prasāda, trans., *The Yoga-sūtras of Patañjali with the Commentaries of Vyāsa and the Gloss of Vāchaspatti Miśhra* (1912; reprint, New York AMS Press, 1974)

17 Swami Hariharānanda Āranya, *Yoga Philosophy of Patañjali* (Calcutta University of Calcutta, 1977)

3. Translation of the *Yoga-sūtras* with Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya* by Bangali Baba<sup>18</sup> (BB). This translation shows a depth in and an adherence to the scholastic, philosophical, monastic and experiential traditions all at once! Especially in the copious footnotes the translator explains fine points of philosophy and exhibits his authentic learning. The choice of English words for the Sanskrit terminology is arbitrary without a clear definition of the English terms used.

If, rarely and sporadically, we have borrowed any words from any of the above translations, it has been done with due acknowledgment. Any similarities between our work and theirs, if not duly acknowledged, is quite accidental and unintentional. The works of Western scholars such as Ballentyne, Boissenain, Deussen, Eliade, Feuerstein, Frauwallner, Garbe, Hauer, Hopkins, Hultsch, Jacobi, Janáček, Johnston, Judge, Koelman, von Mangoldt, Pensa<sup>19</sup> and others, as well as the westernized Eastern scholars such as Dasgupta and Takagi, were found to have no bearing on the purpose of this translation. Our present interests do not coincide with the academic discussions of those scholars, based as they are only on partial resources insofar as (a) the experiential tradition and (b) the exegetical tradition are concerned. Without a thorough grasp of these the details of the hermeneutics of the *Yoga-sūtras* remain a mystery, giving way to much academic speculation. Students and scholars whose primary interest, however, is in writing doctoral theses and such will make a grave mistake in not taking into consideration the writings of these highly trained, scholarly, well-informed, well-read, careful, academic minds. Their interest is study; our interest is the practice.

The purpose of the present translation and commentary is to open the *Yoga-sūtras* to the serious English-reading aspirant. Much of the information and explanation that was not open before is being made available in such a way, it is hoped, that it can be helpful to those who wish to embark not merely on study but on

<sup>18</sup> Published by Motilal Banarsi Dass, Delhi, 1976

<sup>19</sup> Of all the Western scholars, Feuerstein and Pensa appear to have the most sensitivity for and respect towards the living tradition of yoga philosophy

the long-term practice of yoga as explained in Sūtra I.14. However, the academicians will find that all the scholarly norms and rules have been carefully observed, that convictions of the tradition have not been permitted to overcloud the clarity of academically established facts, and that the translation as well as the discussion on each sūtra will serve as a useful source of information to all.

Many students used to a syllogistic construction of subject matter may find themselves somewhat at sea when they try to follow the argument from one sūtra to the next, or even the progression of argument within the explanation provided on each sūtra. Partly this may be so because of their unfamiliarity with the basics of Indian philosophy, the many tenets of which are accepted as “given” in preparing this work. Secondly, the scheme and order of the sūtras as created by the original *rishi* has its own reasons; it is not in a random sequence. The word *sūtra*, related to English “suture,” means “a thread.” It may be so because there runs a connecting thread of ideas from the beginning to the end of a sūtra text. Many scholars fail to comprehend the inner connections among the sūtras, as well as their relationship with the steps of a guided practice. They also often ignore the maxims of sūtra interpretation as explained on page 6 of this prologue. Their approach is criticised rightly in the following words:

In contrast to the approach adopted by many Orientalists who *a priori* tend to deny the unity of the text under examination, fragmenting it into so many parts or heterogeneous strata until nothing remains, Feuerstein rightly asks in his methodological study whether this compulsive search for incongruencies and textual corruptions is not the expression of an ethnocentric rationalising mentality which inclines to project everywhere its own need for abstract and absolute logic, and hence is particularly prone to misinterpret paradoxical expressions so common in eastern thought, which has a *penchant* for transcending dualism and therefore in part also rational language as such<sup>20</sup>

<sup>20</sup> Corrado Pensa, Foreword to *The Philosophy of Classical Yoga* by Georg Feuerstein (New York St Martin's Press, 1980. Manchester Manchester University Press, 1980)

We offer the same explanation for our approach to accepting the text on its own authority as a complete whole. One should not start studying the texts of *r̄shis* part by part, constructed paragraph by constructed paragraph. The entire text, with each detail in its own place, should be studied, mastered, contemplated, in that order. Slowly the hidden scheme of the entire whole will begin to emerge. This overall picture of the scheme will be provided at the end of Chapter 4. Meanwhile it should be borne in mind that the present work is not an original thesis. It is a commentary.

A commentary consists of comments on an earlier, original work and follows the scheme of the same. The subject matter in our discussions follows the scheme of Patañjali and Vyāsa. The words and ideas are explained in the order in which these occur in their work. Once again, one should read Patañjali's and Vyāsa's text, then the discussion, and again the text in the light of the discussion. This will help the reader to grasp the intent of the whole text rather than piecemeal ideas separately. Here and there, for ease of comprehension, a separate, clearer paraphrase or summary of Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya* is provided after the same has been translated.

In translating from Sanskrit into English there always arises the problem of multilevel meanings of Sanskrit words. Most words have at least two categories of meaning:

*vaugika*. derivative meaning, derived from the verb root of its origin for example, *sūtra* from the verb root *sīv* 'to sew'  
*rūdhī*. conventional meaning, most often based on the derivative meaning, for example, *sūtra* 'a thread, something to sew with'

Some words may even be derived from several different roots. Sometimes the connection between derivative and conventional meanings is not obvious, or the derivative background has been lost in antiquity.

Then there are meanings specific to a given branch of knowledge which has its own terminology. Equally important is the connotation based on mental association that the speakers of Sanskrit

have with the word.<sup>21</sup> And most importantly, the oral tradition has preserved certain explanations, especially in the case of yoga, based on the experience of the great masters.

It is for such reasons that different translations of the same text read like different books. It is not that one translation is accurate and another false. All the meanings express different levels of the reality as expressed by a certain word. For example, again, the word *sūtra* does not mean either “something to sew with” or “a thread.” Both ideas are conveyed together in the same word. When the word is used to express a certain genre of texts, *sūtras*, that idea must also be included as the top level in that case.

Since in the minds of the speakers of Western languages such a process of multilevel signification of words is now rare, it is natural for an average English-speaking reader to assume that she or he has to select from among the various translations of the same word. Such is not the case. All the meanings of different levels of the word must be seen and grasped simultaneously and as a single, comprehensive whole. In translating Patañjali and Vyāsa we have attempted to conform to this view. Let us explain this approach with an example. The first word of the *Yoga-sūtras* is *atha* ‘now’. Vyāsa says:

*Atha* ‘now’—this word here has the purpose of indicating *adhikāra*.

Now, *adhikāra* means “authority,” “qualification” and “commencement.” We take all these different meanings of the single word and include them in one sentence as if there were several different words in the original itself. Our translation then reads:

*Atha* ‘now’—this word here has the purpose of indicating authority, qualification and commencement of the subject matter.

<sup>21</sup> Some readers might be under the erroneously created impression that Sanskrit is a dead language. If that were so, the two thousand people who register Sanskrit as their first language in the census of India must all be ghosts! In fact, Sanskrit is still the language of traditionally learned assemblies, used to more or less a degree by hundreds of thousands of people throughout that country, and is one of the fifteen official languages of India.

All three words translating *adhikāra* will be explained in our discussion, giving their background and implications.

In some places, after giving all the meanings of a word, we have then taken those ideas together and coined a new term in English. For example, the derivative meaning of the word *asmitā* is “I-amness” and this is explained in the discussion on Sūtra I.8. But thereafter we have settled on “composite sentience” because after careful scrutiny of Sūtras I.17 and II.6 this appears to be the philosophical intent and content of the Sanskrit term. A glossary of terms is offered as an aid to the reader.

It is traditionally required of a commentator that the exposition of a text include:

- Separating the original words of the text where they are combined to form euphony (*sandhi*) and compounds
- Literal translation of words
- Parsing (explaining the grammatical and syntactical form and function) where relevant or helpful
- Rephrasing and exposition
- Answering challenges, refuting opposing opinions, eradicating doubts

An attempt was made to remain true to this system throughout without sacrificing comprehensibility to requirement. Frequently the euphonized (*sandhi*) and compound words have been hyphenated when used in our translations and discussions,<sup>22</sup> but this is not always the case; the hyphenated and unhyphenated forms are used interchangeably.

There are six categories of sūtras in various texts:

*sañjñā*: those that give a definition

*paribhāṣhā*: those that give rules for the application of other sūtras

*vidhi*: those that enjoin an act

*niyama*: those that restrict or give injunction against an act

*atideśha*: those that present an analogy

22 In Sanskrit, apposition of two sounds often produces a third one. For example, *yoga* + *anuśāsana* = *yogānuśāsana*. Such words have to be separated in accordance with complex rules of what is known as *sandhi*.

*adhikāra* or *uddeśha*: those that state the subject of a text or a portion thereof

These categories will be pointed out wherever it is relevant and helpful. For example, the first sūtra is an *adhikāra-sūtra*, stating the topic of the text.

Regarding the use of various commentaries listed above, many of them agree on some points in each sūtra; some of them disagree. Both agreements and disagreements are brought out by the discussion where possible. When the interpretation of a commentator differs from that of others without necessarily contradicting the latter, such an interpretation is incorporated. For example, take the following sentence in the discussion on Sūtra I.14:

How is it possible that a normally infirm and weak practice, undertaken relatively recently (SS), will overpower the force of these samskāras (VM, VB, NB, RY) which await to waylay one (VM) and by which the practice is often blocked (VM, VB) and constricted (RY)?

The source of each segment of the above sentence is cited. Because our primary aim is lucidity, it is impossible in some places to see with absolute accuracy just which word comes from which commentator. In such doubtful places the scholar will naturally consult the text and will know the approximate place where to look: *Vid-vāmsas tatra pramāṇam*. The reader should also assume that where no source is cited, the sentences and paragraphs have originated with this author.

Finally, the work presented has been written intermittently between long periods of meditation and through the blessing, grace and guidance of Śri-108 Swami Rama<sup>23</sup> of the Himalayas. Whatever is of truth here comes from the Guru lineage; whatever is erroneous is mine.

<sup>23</sup> In the traditions of India the word *Śri* written 108 times before a name expresses a veneration implicit in such Western terms as "His Holiness"



## Part 2

# Overview of Sāṅkhyā-yoga

The *Yoga-sūtras* and the commentary being presented here assume that the reader is familiar with Sāṅkhyā philosophy. Without such familiarity much of the terminology of the *Yoga-sūtras* will remain incomprehensible; hence this brief introduction to the extensive field of Sāṅkhyā philosophy is essential and must be provided within the total framework of Indian (non-Buddhist) philosophy. One must first decide on a suitable approach to the topic of Indian philosophy since there are several ways in which it may be examined.

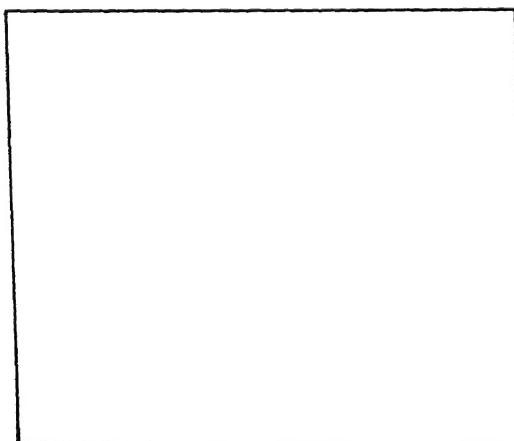
One way is that of a pedant bound to one of many philosophical schools who refutes the views of all others and challenges them to prove theirs right and his wrong. Most philosophers of the traditional schools fall into this category, having debated with all other schools for thousands of years. Modern Western and westernized Eastern scholars follow this trend and study each school of Indian philosophy in isolation. It is not intended here to engage in a dispute with them, because the separate schools of Indian philosophy have indeed dominated the philosophical arena for these millennia, each possessing its own closed system of internally consistent values, doctrines and logical development (*prati-tantra-siddhānta*). However, according to the *Bhagavad-gītā* XVIII.22, this approach is darkened knowledge (*tamasic jñāna*).

Another approach is the way of that savant whose primary

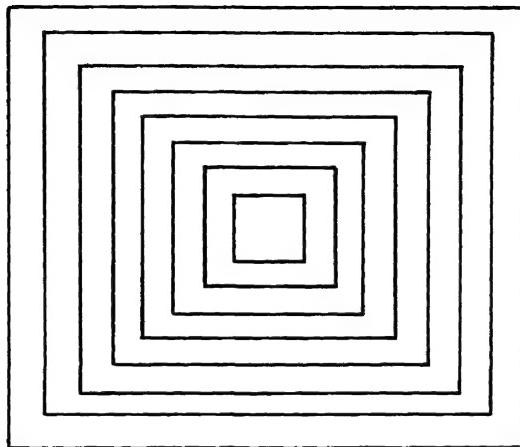
interest is not in logical categories only but who seeks that wisdom from which all logic begins and to which it must ultimately lead. This is the way of reconciliation and resolution of conflicts (*samā-dhāna*), which eventually clears the pathway to *samādhi*. Such a savant refuses to remain bound within a square or a cube. He must understand the internally consistent logic of the system within a given cube, no doubt, but he must also observe where the external walls of one cube touch those of another; he must then enter the other cube and understand the internally consistent logic of that cube also. Thus, when he has looked at all the interconnected cubes, he sees the whole picture which is based on one or more common principles shared by all (*sarva-tantra-siddhānta*). This is the way of active knowledge (*rajasic jñāna*) as defined in the *Bhagavad-gītā* XVIII.21.

Vastly improved on the way of that wisdom-seeking savant is the way of the wise man, a person of intuitive vision and inspiration, the yogi, who by first looking at the grand pattern sees all the squares and cubes as well as all the spirals, circles and other patterns. By understanding the grand pattern, the little geometric shapes and forms are fully and effortlessly understood. The *Bhagavad-gītā* XVIII.20 says this is the way of the pure, refined, luminous knowledge (*sattvic jñāna*).

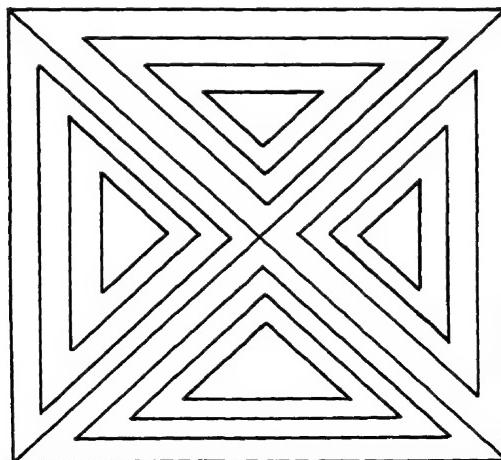
One who understands a large square



with all its potentials (*Shaktis*) naturally understands all the smaller squares contained in it



and all the triangles within it



as well as the relationships among all the smaller squares and triangles and so forth.

Besides the established, narrow schools of philosophy there exist in India widely taught ways of looking at philosophy such that all the various schools may fit into a single, universal system. The question arises: If all the schools do indeed fit into a single system, why does each one have its own, separate list of categories of reality with qualifications attached to each in such a way that it cannot be compromised? The answer is that each system requires an internal logic of its own. Each triangle within a square must obey the laws of the triangle; in its relationship with the square it must also follow the rules of that relationship, while the square itself follows the laws governing a square but also permits the laws of triangles to operate in the triangles which are within it. The theoretical needs internal to each school are essential to that school, but these needs do not invalidate and cannot be invalidated by the larger philosophical picture. The rules of Euclidian mathematics are not invalidated by quantum physics *so far as* they govern the levels of reality where they are operable; in the realm of quantum physics they are inoperable.

There does exist, therefore, a single system of Indian philosophy which incorporates all the schools, assigning the categories of reality from each into a total, universal scheme. This system is often referred to as the Epic philosophy because it is expounded in that vast text of many millions of verses called the *Mahābhārata* and eighteen *Purāṇas* and their numerous sub-*Purāṇas*. These are epics of Indian cosmology, viewing human events and laws within a cosmic context. While the word *Purāṇa* simply connotes “ancient” legends, stories, philosophies and histories, these texts are often misnamed “mythological” because they have regularly employed the frame of a “myth” to give symbolic forms to that which would otherwise remain formless. Hence there developed special schools of philosophy such as Pañcharatra that are almost exclusively devoted to explaining the philosophical truths of the “mythic” forms.

The vast texts of the Epics and *Purāṇas* were composed by the wise men and philosophers to serve as vehicles for simplified state-

ments of truth regarding reality for the benefit of millions of non-pedantic aspirants, to whom these are still read, sung or chanted by pandits in village temples, royal palaces and suburban homes alike. This is where the true philosophy of India lives and it is by these texts that the Indian heart—as against its intellectual mind—is really shaped.

To think that such philosophy is for millions of illiterate souls alone is to misunderstand its intent, content and context. The *Bhagavad-gītā* is an example of the philosophical portions of the Epics and Purāṇas. It is understood by many illiterate wise men and women, yet not understood by those hundreds who have gained their doctoral degrees by writing voluminous tomes about it. Great āchāryas, scholar-savants of many formal schools of philosophy, have written commentaries on the *Bhagavad-gītā*, each claiming it supports his own school, because it shows that universal picture within which each school of philosophy has its own internally valid place.

Because yoga transcends all castes, belief systems, laws and philosophies, the yogis—including those who cannot sign their names as well as those who know the works of Śankarāchārya by heart—adhere more to this universal philosophy. Even if they are especially learned in the doctrines of a single school of philosophy, they teach their disciples an approach through synthesis (*samanvaya*) because that alone, as we said earlier, leads to resolution of conflicts (*samādhāna*) as both prerequisite to and conducive to samādhi. The various schools are rungs (*sopānas*) of the selfsame ladder which rises to the pinnacle of higher realization.

The Epics and the Purāṇas do not depict the universal, cosmological philosophy in a uniform way. There are various nuances, preferences, subtle and not-so-subtle variations of schemes and sequences of categories, depending on the predispositions of different teachers whose words are recorded in these texts. Here we plan to provide that general picture which seems to be basically agreed upon in most versions, especially selecting one in which the Sāṅkhya part of the scheme is closest to Sāṅkhya-yoga as

propounded by Patañjali and Vyāsa. In the scheme set forth by this Epic philosophy, it will be seen that the categories accepted by various schools are not only assigned their given places but that a bridge is provided at transition points between one level of reality and the next lower one. It is thus that the schools are connected to one another. The following discussion illustrates the Epic philosophy technique.

### **Vedānta School**

There is a single Transcendental Reality (Brahman) whose nature is Existence (*sat*), Consciousness (*chit*) and Bliss (*ānanda*). This is the Self (*parama-ātman*) of all that is. Its inherent potency (*śakti*), which makes It omnipotent, is called *māyā*, with the twofold power to veil and to unveil. It is Brahman's very nature (*Prakṛti*) dwelling eternally in It, containing all possible aspects.

### **Transition**

The relationship of this One Principle with the dualities and multiplicities of the universe is discussed by many *āchāryas*, each qualifying this relationship according to his own understanding and view.

In the syncretic philosophy of the Epics and Purāṇas, *māyā*, which is the very nature (*Prakṛti*) of Brahman, now projects its power of unveiling all the uncountable, unmanifest, formerly veiled aspects or *śaktis* of Brahman.<sup>1</sup> It then divides into two. In this division the Bliss principle, which can be associated with undivided One Perfection only, is eclipsed.

- The Consciousness Principle coupled with Existence becomes *puruṣha*, and
- The Existence Principle, without consciousness, becomes *prakṛti* (*not* to be confused with Brahman's Perfect Nature, called Its *Prakṛti*, with a capital *P*).

<sup>1</sup> This matter of creativity stemming from Brahman has been discussed in some detail in the author's work *God* (Honesdale, Pa Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1979)

## Sāṅkhyā School

There are two eternally coexistent principles:

*puruṣha*: the conscious spiritual-energy principle

*prakṛti*: the unconscious material-energy principle

Puruṣha, again, may be a God of the universe (in theistic Sāṅkhyā, which is the normally accepted philosophy of the Epics and Purāṇas as well as the *Yoga-sūtras*), who may again subdivide into the Holy Trinity of Brahmā (the Creator), Viṣṭhṇu (the Preserver) and Śiva (the Dissolver) and, further, into their various aspects and sparks that may incarnate, become flesh, to give knowledge to and confer saving grace upon

*puruṣhas*, the numerous entities of consciousness,  
who become

*jīvas*, souls, when they assume a connection with *prakṛti*.

The *puruṣha* principle is ever-pure, ever-wise, ever-free. It is that self (*ātman*) which never comes into the trap of ignorance and bondage. It is only *prakṛti*, activated like a magnet, that comes into association with *puruṣha* and receives his rays.

*Prakṛti* is the unmanifest, intangible, subtlest origin of what later becomes tangible matter. *Prakṛti* consists of the equilibrium of three *guṇas* (attributes):

*sattva*: luminosity, purity, lightness, harmony, producing pleasure

*rajas*: activity, energy, movement, producing pain

*tamas*: dullness, inertia, darkness, stasis, producing stupor

So long as the three *guṇas* remain in perfect equilibrium, there is no universe. Only as disequilibrium occurs are the various phenomena called *vikāras* or *vikṛtis*, modifications or evolutes, produced.

Sāṅkhyā believes in a theory of causation called *sati-kārya-vāda* whereby objects are not something new produced from any quanta

other than those inherent in their causes. Nothing new is created; only the energies change form. Nothing is destroyed, either. Every clay pot exists within clay, every sculpture in marble, every ice cube in water. The special attributes of a cause become manifest and tangible, given certain innate propensities of nature. Thus what lay unmanifest within prakṛti becomes manifest in its product (*vikṛti*), the phenomenal universe, with all the evolutes or products within it.

All evolutes carry within themselves all three guṇas; nothing exists that does not include all the three guṇas together. Variances in the nature of all phenomena, entities, attributes, self-identifications, tendencies and inclinations, choices, personalities, relationships and acts depend on the dominance and preponderance of guṇas. For example, where sattva dominates and is served by rajas and tamas, the manifestation appears predominantly sattvic. In that manifestation

*sattva*: provides refined, pure, luminous qualities;  
*rajas*: energizes, impels, overcoming stagnation; and  
*tamas*: stabilises.

But where tamas dominates,

*tamas*: causes stagnation and dullness;  
*rajas*: struggles to change the status quo,  
*sattva*: remains dormant, waiting to be energized with the help of rajas

This explanation is by no means exhaustive, but provides examples of an interdependence among guṇas. Rajas provides constant oscillation and sattva and tamas produce a pull, each in its own direction, seeking to be dominant. The natures and acts of objects, phenomena and entities change as the equilibrium or balance of forces among the inherent gunas undergoes any alteration. The most dynamic can become static and the most static may become dynamic. Rocks may release gases; gases may become caught in

rocks. Hydrogen may gather more particles and ultimately become uranium, which may radiate out its particles and eventually return to hydrogen. Food may provide sattvic energy or may sit as tamasic heaviness in the stomach and may then need the rajas of digestive spices, herbs or potions to impel it in some direction. A marriage may be pleasant (sattvic) and stable (served by tamas) or volatile (rajasic) or so stagnant (tamasic) that not even a quarrel occurs. For a more detailed understanding of the natures of the three guṇas it is strongly recommended that the reader study Chapters XIV, XVII and XVIII of the *Bhagavad-gītā*.

Now, back to prakṛti. The first unmanifest prakṛti is, of course, the origin of all phenomena. It is not in itself a change in anything prior. But its evolutes or products are its

*vikṛti*: modifications, products, evolutes,  
and yet also

*prakṛti*: origins of further evolutes.

Milk (like prakṛti) undergoes a change and produces cream (a *vikṛti*), which is in turn transformed into butter. These intermediate phenomena, like cream, which are both (a) products or effects of an earlier cause, and (b) producers or origins of a future effect are called

*prakṛti-vikṛti*: modifications that may be modified further

Only the final products which cannot be modified further are strictly called *vikṛti*, the ultimate modifications or transformations. However, the term *vikṛti* 'modification' is also quite frequently used for *prakṛti-vikṛtis*, which are the modifiable modifications. There are a total of twenty-three such *vikṛtis* produced from the original prakṛti or material-energy principle. Thus there are

1 prakṛti

2-24. *vikṛtis*, twenty-three evolutes

25 puruṣha, numerous conscious entities which become *jivas*  
(souls)

26. puruṣha, the God

making a total of twenty-six principles or categories in the Epic Sāṅkhyā, also accepted in the *Yoga-sūtras*. Our concern here, however, is not with God but with the permutation (*sāṅkhyāna*, because of which this system is called Sāṅkhyā) of the other twenty-five so that

the self (puruṣha) and  
the non-self (prakṛti together with its 23 evolutes)

may be known as separate. This discrimination (*pra-sāṅkhyāna*, because of which also this system is called Sāṅkhyā) alone between the spiritual energy-self (puruṣha) and the non-spiritual material energy (prakṛti) together with its evolutes eliminates pain. Otherwise pain remains a fact for all entities as a principle inhered through the rajas component.

In order to develop discrimination (*pra-sāṅkhyāna*) (a) as a pursuit to eliminate all pain permanently and totally, and (b) to attain self-realization, it is essential that all the components constituting the non-self, material, parts of the sentient (that is, living and conscious) entity must be enumerated and understood. But the material adjuncts of a sentient entity do not exist in isolation from their counterparts in the universe. The two have to be understood as a single phenomenon. Hence, one studies the chains of universal causations

Since puruṣha is ever-pure, ever-wise, ever-free, he is unmodifiable, no change or transformation occurs in him; he is never ignorant, never in pain or bondage and therefore there is no question of his enlightenment or release. Any observation or discussion of changes pertains to prakṛti alone. Let us, therefore, look further at the modifications of prakṛti. Only a small part of prakṛti is at any time undergoing the phenomenalization. The rest remains in unmanifest nature. The first evolute of prakṛti is

*mahat* the Great, the *Magnum*

Mahat is the most sattvic, finest and purest product of prakṛti. On one hand it is that first disequilibrium of guṇas in which no other form or shape yet emerges. It is simply a presence, the subtle energy which will produce objects. It is also the universal *buddhi*, the faculty of discrimination which serves as a vehicle of puruṣha's consciousness. Because it is the most sattvic modification, it is fit to serve as a medium between puruṣha and the grosser material phenomena. A small spark of the universal mahat is also the individual *buddhi*, the faculty of discrimination, intelligence and intellection in a sentient entity.

From mahat, the next evolute to appear is

*ahamkāra*: ego, the I-maker

It is not to be confused with ego as pride. It is the state in which any self-identification begins; names and forms appear. It is here that intelligence begins to identify itself as differentiated, "this but not that." Here the process of creation begins to diversify into subjective and objective branches. The sattvic *ahamkāra* produces the subjective branch, namely

- mind
- five cognitive senses (to cognize sound, touch, form, taste, smell)
- five active senses (to speak, act, move, procreate and eliminate)

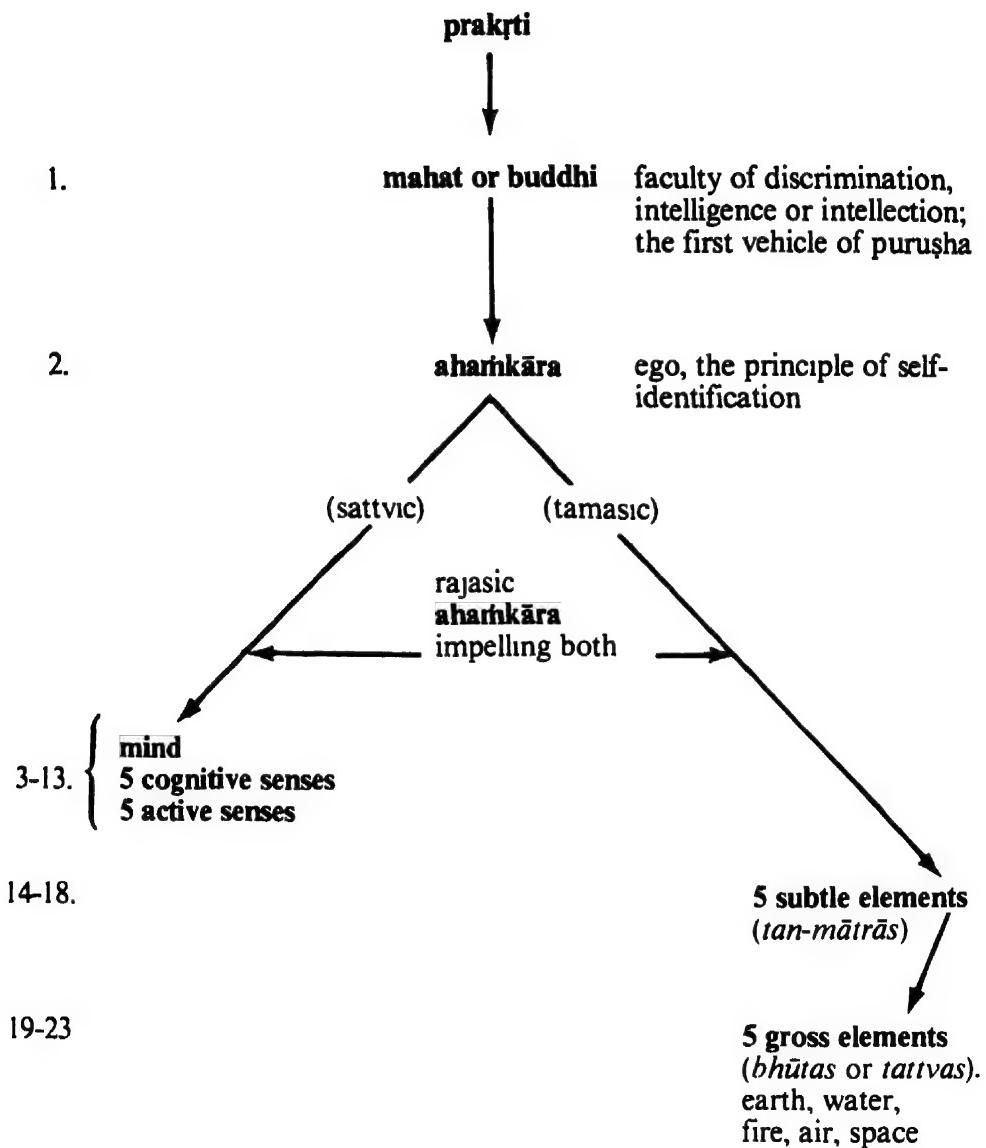
The tamasic *ahamkāra* produces the objective branch, namely

- five *tan-mātrās* (subtle elements of or potentials for audibility, tangibility, visibility, flavour and odour)

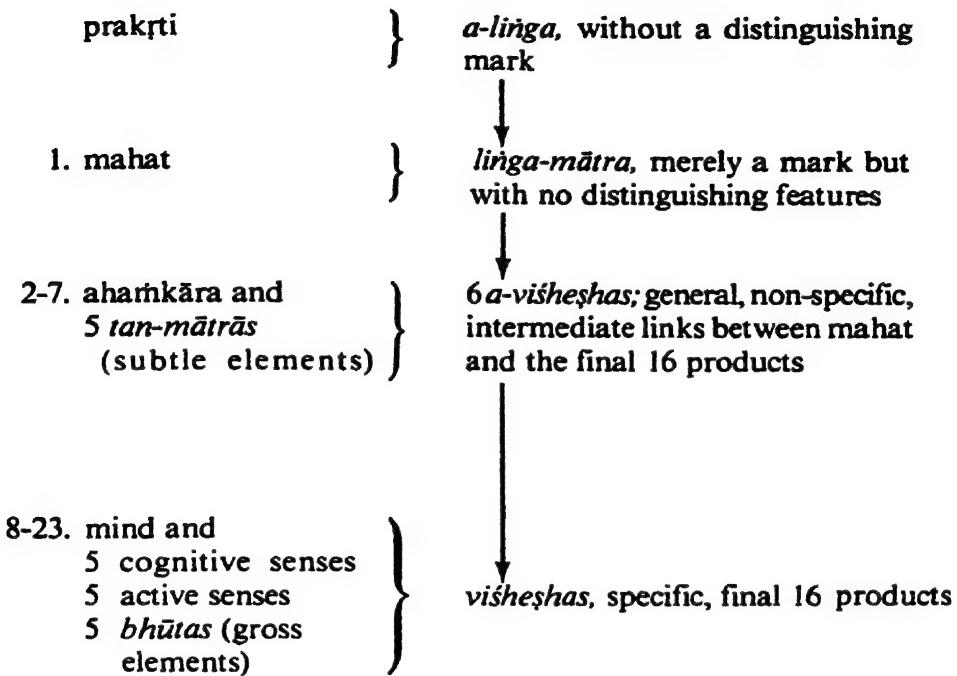
which in turn "solidify" and produce

- five *bhūtas* or *tattvas* (the physical states of matter earth or solid, water or liquid, fire or light that is combustive and illuminative, air or gaseous, and space, which is not a vacuum but a state of matter)

Let us see these as a chart (p. 34)



*Yoga-sūtra* II.19 gives alternative explanatory titles as follows:



Each of these evolutes submerges into the immediately preceding cause from which it has emerged; finally all phenomena dissolve into prakṛti. These cycles of creations and dissolutions, because of the inherent nature of prakṛti, are endless.

The twenty-three evolutes, of which the universe is constituted and which also form our personalities, are all non-self. Intelligence or faculty of discrimination, through ego and mind and all their attendant cognitions, volitions, inclinations, emotions and so forth, all the senses as well as what they sense, the components as well as the states of the physical body too—they are all non-self. Only puruṣha, the spiritual-energy principle, is the self. This realization alone eradicates all pain permanently and totally. This alone is final freedom.

### **Nyāya-Vaiśeṣhika School**

At the point where Sāṅkhya leaves off, the Vaiśeṣhika system picks up. It concerns itself with five of the *viśheṣhas*, namely the five gross elements or states of matter. At this point creation becomes atomic. The earliest masters defined this finest particle as having no mass but being merely a point in space. Conjunctions of these points later produce mass. The Vaiśeṣhika system, together with Nyāya, is thus atomistic. It is from Vaiśeṣhika that all physical sciences in India, such as alchemy, chemistry, pharmaceutics, branched off.

The Vaiśeṣhika system is concerned with the physical properties of matter and how the self and mind use those properties. Hence it takes into account only nine substances (*dravyas*):

- 1-5. five gross elements (listed as the final *vikrtis* in Sāṅkhya;  
5 of the *viśheṣhas* in the *Yoga-sūtras*)
6. time (*kāla*)
7. dimension (*dīk*)
8. mind (*manas*)
9. self (*ātman*)

The Vaiśeṣhika system's definition of *ātman* is based on how its attributes manifest themselves while it is "bound" to the physical universe. In association with an atomic universe, it is seen as an *anu*, minute like an atom, featuring certain symptoms of its presence in the physical body. These symptoms are desire, aversion, effort, pleasure, pain and knowledge. When "freedom" from physical phenomena occurs, these symptoms cease. Vaiśeṣhika is inhibited from going any further. The later Nyāya interpreters misunderstood *ātman* in freedom as without action or knowledge!

How is it possible for the body-bound *ātman* to liberate itself? It must practise that which enhances its betterment in this life (*abhyudaya*) and in the next (*nīh-śreyasa*). This is to be arrived at by following the teachings of the inspired scriptures (in Vaiśeṣhika) and in addition by using the mind clearly, that is, by reasoning correctly according to the system of logic (Nyāya). This is all that is within the capacity of a delimited being, until the final *yoga* is

reached, which is agreed to but beyond the realm of the boundaries demarcated for this school.

Later Nyāya-Vaiśheṣhika philosophers were the chief proponents of the existence of God in centuries-long debates against the Buddhists. Their arguments are remarkably similar to those of Christian theologians who revived Aristotelian logic in the West.

### ***Mīmāṁsā School***

While the Vaiśheṣhikas experimented with physical properties of matter and Nyāya philosophers established the principles of logic and correct reasoning as ramparts to safeguard against ignorance, the Mīmāṁsā philosophers developed two areas which were also agreed to as important in Nyāya-Vaiśheṣhika. These are (*a*) the nature of revealed knowledge (Veda); and (*b*) the principles governing correct action. Complex theories and debates thereupon developed within the Mīmāṁsā school and gave much impetus to the evolution of Indian ethics and laws and rules of social interaction. These rules must remain in force for the people in whom the presence of a pure self can only be surmised while mainly the impure mental and physical instrumentation exhibits desires, aversions, and so forth, which lead to an accumulation of karmas, an attempt to understand which is another primary occupation of the *mīmāṁsakas*.

### ***Sāṅkhya-yoga School***

The system of Patañjali takes into account all the concerns of Sāṅkhya, Nyāya, Vaiśheshika and Mīmāṁsā. All twenty-six Sāṅkhya categories are employed in this philosophy. *Pramāṇa*, or valid proof, is defined much as in Nyāya. The scriptural authority is accepted as valid. *Viśheshas* of the Vaiśheṣhika school are considered the end-product of an evolution of reality. Time is discussed and clearly defined in *YS IV*, although its status is at best obscure in much of Sāṅkhya. The codes of conduct are especially important in the *Yoga-sūtras* as the first two of the eight *angas* 'limbs', namely the *yamas* and *niyamas*.

However, granting validity to all the schemes of Sāṅkhya and so

forth, the only question that is of interest to Patañjali is: So what? What are the practical implications of all the experimenting (*Vaiśeṣika*), reasoning (*Nyāya*), categorizing (*Sāṅkhya*) or studying inspired scriptures (*Mīmāṃsā*)? How may one finally *see* and *experience* that self and non-self are indeed ever-separate and that the self is ever-pure, ever-wise and ever-free? To this end *Sāṅkhya-yoga* (a) borrows from other systems what needs to be borrowed, and (b) adds an original theory wherever one needs to be added. Primarily it takes the *Sāṅkhya* theory of causation and applies it to understanding the states of mind. The modifications (*vikṛtis*) of mind are its *vṛttis*, all the mental fluctuations. These must be dissolved into their origin. What is *laya* or *prati-saṅchara* (dissolution of the universe and its phenomena) in *Sāṅkhya* becomes in the *Yoga-sūtras* respectively *nirodha* or *prati-prasava* (dissolution of the *vṛttis* and *guṇas* manifest therein). This can happen only in the practice of *samādhi*.

An average reader of *Sāṅkhya* sees the evolutes or *vikṛtis* of *prakṛti* in the context of cosmogony, the cycles of creations and dissolutions of universes. In *Sāṅkhya-yoga*, that is, in the *Yoga-sūtras*, these evolutes are of interest only with regard to the material accretions around the individual *puruṣha*. They are his personal matter (pun intended). Everything from *buddhi* (*mahat*) and ego (*ahamkāra*) to mind, senses and the body are this personal matter. The yogi needs to know their origin and creation only so as to dissolve them, that is, dissolve *puruṣha*'s association with them in the process of *samādhi*.

To facilitate an understanding of the practical processes leading to *samādhi*, the *Yoga-sūtras* have to employ a terminology and definitions of the evolutes a little differently from that of *Sāṅkhya*. For example, *Sāṅkhya* discusses *mahat* but not *asmitā*. In the *Yoga-sūtras*, it is in *asmitā* that the impression of a union between *puruṣha* and *prakṛti*, between self and non-self, between the conscious and the unconscious, first occurs.

*asmitā*: that process in which *mahat* or *buddhi*, being the purest and most sattvic evolute of *prakṛti*, becomes a recipient of a reflection of the conscious light of *puruṣha*.

It is the union of a crystal mirror with a reflection of the sun. Puruṣha, like the distant sun in the sky, remains unaffected by the union of its reflection with the mirror, but all the processes of the composite personality begin. Consciousness and life in us flows through this *asmitā*, which lends to ego and to mind a semblance of awareness.

All through the practical processes of yoga, the reverse begins to occur, a withdrawal, a dissolution of vṛttis, a burning of past *samskāras*, the final sundering between the two components of *asmitā*. Then prakṛti is prakṛti. Puruṣha is puruṣha. And the twain shall never meet even as they have never met before.

Where does prakṛti go thereafter? What are its connections with *māyā* again? In what consciousness does puruṣha dwell then? The *Yoga-sūtras* take one to the verge, and from there let the experience itself answer. The Epic philosophers say with Vedānta that puruṣha merges into Brahman—but that is another school. The final goal of the *Yoga-sūtras* is *kaivalya*, isolation of puruṣha. Perhaps it is a transition to the same state as *kūṭastham*: the unmodifiable, immutable, unchangeable Brahman. The Epic philosophers agree. The *Yoga-sūtras*, having done the work of providing practical guidance that leads to *kaivalya*, remain mute.

The Vedāntins identify Kapila, the first founder of Sāṅkhya, with Hiranya-garbha (as seen in Śankarāchārya's *Bhāṣya* on *Śvetāśvatara Upaniṣad* V.2). Śankarāchāryas up to this day bear the title *Sāṅkhya-trayī-pratipālaka* 'Guardian of the Threefold Sāṅkhya'.

GLORY TO ALL SAINTS.  
HOMAGE TO ALL GURUS.



## Part 3

# Tattva-samāsa-sūtras (Paraphrased)

*The Tattva-samāsa-sūtras comprise an ancient text said to have been taught by Kapila, the founder of Sāṅkhya philosophy, to his immediate disciple, Āsuri. In other words, TSS forms the very first text of the formal Sāṅkhya system of philosophy, stating all its categories and tenets.*

## Tattva-samāsa-sūtras

*TSS 1. atha atas tattva-samāsah*

Now the summary of the categories of reality according to the Sāṅkhya philosophy.

*TSS 2. aśṭau prakṛtayah*

prakṛtis, eight origins of evolutes:

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 8 prakṛtis | <p>{ prakṛti; the equilibrium of three guṇas, itself not evolved from any other origin, but the primordial source of all other evolutes</p> <p>buddhi; faculty of discrimination, intelligence</p> <p>aḥamkāra; ego, identifying principle</p> <p>tan-mātrās; five subtle elements of sound, touch, form, flavour and smell</p> |
|------------|---|

(Buddhi, ahamkāra and the tan-mātrās are evolved from prakṛti and are origins of other evolutes as well.)

*TSS 3. ṣhoḍaśha vikārāḥ*

vikāras or vikṛtis, sixteen evolutes:

*indriyas*; eleven senses, as follows: mind, five cognitive senses, five active senses

*bhūtas* or *tattvas*; five gross elements: space, air, fire, water, earth (evolved in that order)

(Buddhi, ahamkāra, the five *tan-mātrās*, the eleven *indriyas*, and the five *bhūtas* or *tattvas* constitute twenty-three evolutes of prakṛti.)

#### TSS 4. *puruṣah*

*puruṣha*: The conscious principle, ever-pure, ever-wise, ever-free:

- Souls in non-theistic Sāṅkhya
- Souls and God in theistic Sāṅkhya

#### TSS 5. *traiguṇyam*

Three *guṇas*: sattva, rajas, tamas. (For an explanation see *BhG* chaps. XIV, XVII, XVIII.) Three attributes of prakṛti, which are in equilibrium before the creation of evolutes. The three attributes represent the principles of illumination, activity and stasis. Their disequilibrium in various proportions produces the evolutes.

#### TSS 6. *sañcharah*

There is a chain of transitions from non-evolute prakṛti towards the evolutes, ending at the grossest evolute, the solids (earth).

#### TSS 7. *prati-sañcharah*

There is also a chain of reverse transition from evolutes towards dissolution into prakṛti.

#### TSS 8. *adhyātmam-adhibhūtam-adhidaivam*

*adhyātma*: the categories under direct control of the spiritual self (*puruṣha* or *ātman*):

Mental:

    mahat or buddhi, intelligence

    ahamkāra, ego

*manas*, mind

Physical:

    Five cognitive senses

    Five active senses

*adhibhūta*: attributes of the objects of experience, such as  
 the intelligible,  
 the identifiable,  
 the thinkable,  
 the sounds heard, etc.

Corresponding to the *adhyātma* categories, but dwelling in  
 the objects of experience.

*adhidaiva*: relating to the celestial and subtle worlds, conscious  
 powers of nature, angelic beings, planetary deities, etc.

#### TSS 9. *pañcha abhi-buddhayah*

Five activities of intelligence:

*abhibuddhi*: “I must do this”

*abhimāna*: “I do this”

*ichchhā*: desire, want

*kartavyatā*: indulgence of the cognitive senses

*kriyā*: operations of the active senses

(There are also alternative explanations in various commen-  
 taries.)

#### TSS 10. *pañcha karma-yonayah*

Five causes and results of action:

*dhṛti*: resolution of mind, speech and action

*śhraddhā*: inclinations of faith: generosity of mind, celibacy,  
 charity, acts of prayer

*sukha*: acts undertaken with prayer or expectation of a com-  
 forting or pleasant result

*a-vividhishā*: the tendency that blocks the desire for knowledge

*vividishā*: desire to know matters relating to spirituality,  
 especially the conscious principle

#### TSS 11. *pañcha vāyavah*

Five *prānas*: *prāṇa*, *apāna*, *samāna*, *udāna*, *vyāna*

The five fields of vital energy in the person.

#### TSS 12. *pañcha karmātmānah*

Five types of living beings with regard to their actions:

*vaikārika*: with sattvic ego, naturally inclined to perform good deeds

*taijasa*: with rajasic ego, naturally inclined to perform evil acts

*bhūtādi*: with tamasic ego, performing acts of stupefaction; these are of two types:

*sānumāna*: performing good acts of stupefaction

*niranumāna*: performing evil acts of stupefaction

(The four sūtras which follow [TSS 13-16] enumerate fifty modifications of intelligence.)

#### TSS 13. *pañcha-parvā avidyā*

Five kinds of ignorance (*viparyayas* or *kleśhas* in the *Yoga-sūtras*), also known as the five major hells:

*avidyā*: ignorance

- mistaking the eternal for the non-eternal,  
mistaking the non-eternal for the eternal;
- mistaking the pure for the impure,  
mistaking the impure for the pure;
- mistaking pleasure for pain,  
mistaking pain for pleasure;
- mistaking the self for the non-self,  
mistaking the non-self for the self.

*asmītā*: I-am-ness

*rāga*: attraction

*dvesha*: aversion

*abhinivesha*: fear of death, that “May I not cease to be”

(These five kinds of ignorance have a total of sixty-two subdivisions.)

#### TSS 14. *aśhīāvīṁśharidhā aśhaktih*

*aśhakti*, twenty-eight kinds of incapacity:

• Incapacities of mind	<i>N</i>
of five cognitive senses	1
of five active senses	5
	5
	Subtotal <i>N</i>
	11
• Incapacities of intelligence	<i>N</i>
	17
	Total <i>N</i>
	28

The incapacities of intelligence are explained as various possible false views held concerning the nature of the categories of reality. These are the opposites of the nine *tuṣṭis* and eight *siddhis* of TSS 15-16.

### TSS 15. *navadhā tuṣṭih*

*tuṣṭis*, nine complacencies (four spiritual and five external):

- Four spiritual complacencies:
  - Matter will give me realization.
  - Renunciation will give me realization.
  - Time will bring forth realization.
  - Destiny and luck will give me realization.
- Five external complacencies, based on five steps of dispassion (*vairāgya*):
  - The ways of earning wealth are violent, exploitative and painful.
  - Guarding wealth and the sources of pleasure is painful.
  - Wealth, luxury and pleasure, even well-guarded, are temporary; there is no permanency of feeling of security about them.
  - No matter how many objects of senses one enjoys, there is no satisfaction, and the desires blaze evermore.
  - It is not possible to enjoy oneself without hurting other beings.

### TSS 16. *aṣṭadhā siddhiḥ*

*siddhis*, eight accomplishments (not to be confused with the *siddhis* of yoga):

- Three primary *siddhis*:
  - Removal of the three kinds of suffering (see TSS 23)
- Five secondary *siddhis* (the means to the three primary ones):
  - Contemplation with a logical mental process
  - Knowledge gained from words and from authoritative scriptures
  - Study
  - Gaining (noble) friends, that is, guru, disciples, co-seekers, with whom one may discuss spiritual matters
  - Self-purification

**TSS 17. *daśha mūlika-arthāḥ***

*mūlika-arthas*, ten fundamental tenets of Sāṅkhya philosophy:

- There *is* a conscious self; there *is* an original, unmanifest nature, prakṛti.
- There *is* a *single*, unmanifest cause of all material objects, namely, prakṛti.
- The conscious self exists *for no other one*.
- Matter exists *for serving* the conscious self.
- The conscious self is *separate* and *different* from the unconscious prakṛti and its evolutes.
- The conscious self is *not an agent* of actions.
- *Union* of matter with spiritual self occurs.
- *Separation* of matter from spiritual self occurs.
- There are *many* puruṣhas, conscious selves.
- After total self-realization the body may continue by the *momentum* of its own laws.

(The fifty modifications of intelligence [TSS 13-16] and the ten fundamentals [TSS 17] constitute the sixty factors discussed in the ancient *Shaṣṭi-tantra*, ‘The Book of Sixty’.)

**TSS 18. *anugraha-sargah***

Fivefold compassionate creation:

- The five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) (see TSS 2)
- Also, the appearance of divine, incarnate sages is considered compassionate creation.

**TSS 19. *chaturdaśavidho bhūta-sargah***

Fourteen kinds of living species of this and subtler or celestial worlds (the list is irrelevant and not exhaustive).

**TSS 20. *trividho bandhah***

Three kinds of bondage:

*prākṛtika bandha*: identifying the self with the eight prakṛtis (enumerated in TSS 2)

*vaikṛtika bandha*: renunciates becoming attracted to objects of pleasure

*dākṣhiṇa bandha*: (1) common worldly people’s involvement with ordinary desires and needs of life; (2) an ascetic’s dependence on the offerings of laymen

**TSS 21. *trividho mokṣhah***

*mokṣha*, three kinds of liberation:

- Arising from the full expansion of knowledge
- Arising from the elimination of attachments
- Arising above good and evil, when the self has abandoned all prakṛtic identifications

**TSS 22. *trividham pramāṇam***

*pramāṇas*, three valid proofs:

- Direct perception
- Inference
- Authority of realized ones and their revealed scriptures

**TSS 23. *trividham duḥkham***

*duḥkha*, three kinds of pain:

*ādhyātmika*: intrapersonal; to be cured by internal means:

- *mental*, such as desire, passion, jealousy, greed, fear, depression, etc.; of these,
  - the antidote to passion is control
  - the antidote to anger is compassion
  - the antidote to attachment is self-analysis
  - the antidote to fear is wisdom about the true nature of categories (evolutes)
  - the antidote to jealousy is generosity and magnanimity
  - the antidote to depression is non-attachment
- *physical*, the imbalance of humours

*ādhībhautika*: caused through the agency of other beings

*ādhidaivika*: caused through the agency of natural forces and the conscious powers of the subtler worlds

**TSS 24. *etat paramparayā yāthātathyam***

This is the order as it is taught in the Tradition.

**TSS 25. *etat sarvam jñātvā kṛta-kṛtyah syāt na punas trividhenā duḥkhena abhi-bhūyate.***

Knowing it all, one fulfils himself;

Then one is not overcome by the three kinds of pain.



---

# **Yoga-sūtras**

## **Chapter One**

**Samādhi-pāda**  
*(Chapter on Samādhi)*

---



# Compendium of Sūtras and Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya*

## Chapter One

Sūtra	Page
<b>STATEMENT (<i>UDDEŚHA</i>)</b>	
1. Commencing the Teaching of Yoga	57
*Yoga is samādhi	
Five states of mind	
Effects of samādhi	
Two levels of samādhi	
<b>DEFINITIONS (<i>NIRDEŚHA</i>)</b>	
2. Definition of Yoga	93
<i>Samprajñāta</i> also is yoga	
Three natures of mind: three gunas	
Natures and inclinations of personalities according to their guna compositions	
Nature of consciousness	
Discriminating wisdom is the lesser goal, seedless samādhi is the final goal	
3. Definition of Yoga Continued; Consciousness in <i>Asamprajñāta</i>	
Consciousness in worldly involvement only in appearance	114

\* The indented portions of this compendium indicate the content of Vyāsa's *Bhāṣhya*.

4. Consciousness in Worldly Involvements Relationship between chitta and puruṣha	122
<b>CHITTA-VRTTI AND NIRODHA</b>	
5. Fivefold Vṛttis, Afflicted and Unafflicted Cycle of vṛttis and saṃskāras Final dissolution of chitta	135
6. Vṛttis Enumerated	148
7. Three Valid Proofs ( <i>Pramāṇas</i> ) Direct perception ( <i>pratyakṣha</i> ) determines the specific Inference ( <i>anumāna</i> ) determines the general and homogeneous Nature of revealed authority ( <i>āgama</i> )	149
8. Pervasive Cognition ( <i>Viparyaya</i> ) Why pervasive cognition is not valid It is identical to the five afflictions ( <i>kleśhas</i> )	162
9. Imaginary Cognition ( <i>Vikalpa</i> ) Philosophical errors Examples of such errors	171
10. Sleep ( <i>Nidrā</i> ) Why sleep is a vṛtti Three kinds of sleep Why it must be controlled	178
11. Memory ( <i>Smṛti</i> ) What does the chitta remember? Relationship of buddhi and memory Two kinds of memory Why vṛttis must be brought to <i>nirodha</i>	185
<b>THE TWO MEANS</b>	
12. <i>Nirodha</i> by Practice ( <i>Abhyāsa</i> ) and Dispersion ( <i>Vairāgya</i> ) The flow of mind-stream in two directions <i>Abhyāsa</i> and <i>vairāgya</i> channelising in both	193
13. Definition of Practice ( <i>Abhyāsa</i> ) Zeal in practice	198

14. How Practice Becomes Firm of Ground By asceticism, celibacy, knowledge and faith	202
15. Dispassion ( <i>Vairāgya</i> ) Defined Craving must be conquered Stages of <i>vairāgya</i>	205
16. Transcendent <i>Vairāgya</i> Lower <i>vairāgya</i> and higher <i>vairāgya</i> Effects of the transcendent <i>vairāgya</i> : first, freedom from cycles of birth and death second, ultimate knowledge and <i>kaivalya</i>	212

## PRIMARY AND SECONDARY YOGA

17. Four Levels of <i>Samprajñāta Samādhi</i> (Secondary Yoga) Explained; these samādhis need objects of concentration	218
18. <i>Asamprajñāta Samādhi</i> (Primary Yoga) Free of all vṛttis Achieved through transcendent <i>vairāgya</i> Without objects of concentration Seedless	248
19. <i>Bhava-pratyaya Samādhi</i> (Secondary Yoga) <i>Videhas</i> enjoying the subtle world of saṃskāras <i>Prakṛti-layas</i> enjoying prakṛti in equilibrium Both mistaking their state to be <i>kaivalya</i>	256

## UPĀYAS: METHODS

20. Five Methods Faith is like a loving mother Sequence in achieving success in the methods	264
21-22. How Quickly Yogis of What Strength Gain Their Goal	271

## AN EASY METHOD

23. Practising the Presence of God The easy way of grace, simply by turning one's awareness to God	277
---	-----

<b>24. Who Is God?</b>	<b>282</b>
Afflictions, actions, fruitions erroneously attributed to God	
How God is unique, different from those who have achieved liberation	
Relationship of God and the Scriptures	
Only one God	
<b>25. Seed of the Omniscient</b>	<b>295</b>
Knowledge in the lesser beings is seed of the omniscient	
Where knowledge reaches unexcelled perfection, that is God	
God's purpose in imparting knowledge is to confer grace eternally in all creations	
<b>26. Guru of the Most Ancient Ones</b>	<b>305</b>
He is not delimited by past or future	
<b>27. <i>OM</i> Signifies God</b>	<b>309</b>
Relationship of <i>OM</i> with God, not only the signifier and the signified but an eternal relationship	
<b>28. Recitation (<i>Japa</i>) of <i>OM</i></b>	<b>315</b>
Contemplating God with <i>japa</i>	
<i>Japa</i> helps accomplish the "sitting"	
Then the Supreme Self shines forth	
<b>29. Then Inward Consciousness Develops and Obstacles Are Annulled</b>	<b>320</b>
This is the result of the practice of the presence of God	
Self-realization also accrues	
<b>OBSTACLES AND THEIR CORRELATES</b>	
<b>30. Nine Obstacles (<i>Antarāyas</i>) or Distractions (<i>Vikṣhepas</i>)</b>	<b>324</b>
Defining the nine obstacles	
<b>31. Five Correlates of <i>Antarāyas</i></b>	<b>329</b>
Defining the five correlates	
They do not occur in a mind that has reached <i>samādhi</i>	

## OVERCOMING OBSTACLES: METHODS FOR PURIFYING AND STABILISING THE MIND

<b>32. Practice of One Reality to Overcome <i>Antarāyas</i></b> Refuting the view that mind is only momentary Establishing that one continuous mind has many objects	333
<b>33. Four Purificatorys for the Mind</b> Explaining the four Then the mind becomes clear, pleasant, stabilised	340
<b>34. Controlled, Slow, Smooth Breathing</b> Stabilising the mind through awareness of controlled breath	346
<b>35. Experience of Subtle Celestial Elements</b> What concentrations lead to which experiences Stabilising the mind through these Purpose of these experiences: to strengthen faith and to increase mind's capacities, leading to perfection of five methods	350
<b>36. Light of Buddhi (<i>Jyotiṣṭhamatī</i>)</b> Concentration in heart lotus Experience of lights of various kinds Experience of brilliant vast space I-am-ness as oceanic consciousness <i>Jyotiṣṭhamatī</i> of two kinds. <i>viśhokā</i> and <i>asmitā-mātrā</i> Stabilises the mind	355
<b>37. Mind-field Attuned to Sages</b> Becomes stabilised	359
<b>38. Knowledge of Dream and Sleep States</b> Stabilises the mind	361
<b>39. Freedom in Choosing the Objects of Concentration</b> The mind concentrated on any object of one's inclination will form the habit of becoming stabilised	365

<p>40. Highest Control (<i>Vaśikāra</i>) over the Subtlest and the Vastest Then the mind needs no further purificatories</p> <p><b>SAMĀPATTIS: COALESCENCES AND SAMĀDHIS</b></p> <p>41. Defining Coalescence (<i>Samāpatti</i>) Analogy of objects reflecting in crystal is like mind's coalescence with: the objects apprehended (<i>grāhya</i>) the instrument of apprehension (<i>grahaṇa</i>) the apprehender (<i>grahītṛ</i>)</p> <p>42. <i>Vitarka</i>-accompanied Coalescence Confusions of word, object and knowledge They alternate in this lower coalescence</p> <p>43. <i>Nir-vitarka</i> Coalescence Devoid of former confusion and alternations Mind-field totally coalescing with objects of apprehension Unitary knowledge, not dwelling on parts, even atomic ones How objects gain a self-nature Refuting the view that there is no "whole" consisting of parts</p> <p>44. <i>Sa-vichāra</i> and <i>Nir-vichāra</i> Coalescences Respectively, accompanied with and not accompanied with the delimitations of time, space, causation Dwelling on subtle aspects of elements and subtle objects; unitary experience Realization as though mind devoid of its own nature</p> <p>45. The "Subtle" Extends up to Prakṛti, Which Has No Marks The degrees of the "subtle"; finally the subtlest is prakṛti. Is not puruṣa the subtlest?</p> <p>46. Samādhis with Seed Lower coalescences have objects of concentration as seeds of saṁskāras</p>	<p>368</p> <p>371</p> <p>380</p> <p>387</p> <p>399</p> <p>404</p> <p>409</p>
--	--

<b>47. Proficiency in <i>Nir-vichāra</i></b>	<b>411</b>
Total purification leads to spiritual clarity Then the yogi no longer suffers but is compassionate towards suffering beings	
<b>48. Truth-bearing Wisdom</b>	<b>414</b>
Three ways to wisdom	
<b>49. Truth-bearing Wisdom Is Unique</b>	<b>416</b>
Knowledge from scriptures or logic gives no realization of the specifics The higher knowledge is not gained from worldly direct perception That no external proof can test it is no refutation of higher knowledge	
<b>50. Saṁskāras of Samādhi-wisdom Counteract Other Saṁskāras</b>	<b>419</b>
Reversing the cycle of vṛttis and worldly saṁskāras Cycle of samādhi-wisdom, its saṁskāras and samādhi- wisdom again Would these samskāras not empower the mind? When realization is reached, the mind has no more function	
<b>51. Seedless Samādhi</b>	<b>424</b>
It occurs when even the saṁskāras of samādhi- wisdom are countered State of <i>nirodha</i> in <i>asamprajñata</i> is inferred only afterwards by seeing the time elapsed Nirodha-samskāras do not nurture the mind's power, which is then dissolved, together with all samskāras When the mind is withdrawn, puruṣha then dwells in his own nature	



# Introduction to Sūtra I.1

योगेन चित्तस्य पदेन वाचां मलं शरीरस्य च वैद्यकेन।  
योऽपाकरोत् तं प्रवरं मुनीनां पतञ्जलिं प्राञ्जलिरानतोऽस्मि॥

*yogena cittasya padena vāchāṁ,  
malam śharirasya cha vaidyakena;  
yo'pākarot tam pravaram munināṁ,  
patañjalim prāñjalir ānato'smi*

He who removed the impurities  
of the mind by (the teaching of) yoga,  
of speech by (his exposition of) grammar, and  
of the body by (composing his treatise on) the science  
of medicine,  
unto that doyen of sages  
I bow with joined hands.\*

Our homage to Śheśha,  
the snake of eternal *kundalī*,  
the residue that remains  
after the great dissolution,  
the one who incarnates again and again  
to teach the science of yoga.

\* This verse is often cited by authors on yoga, although its original source is uncertain

In the mythologies of India, which are mostly parables for explaining deeper philosophical truths, it is believed that Viṣṇu, God as Preserver, gathers the universe unto Himself at the end of an aeon and sleeps on the ocean of cosmic milk—an idea comparable to the poetic notion of the Milky Way—on the curled-up snake of eternity known as Śeṣha, the Residue. A legend says that Patañjali was an incarnation of Śeṣha, and that at the end of his life he was seen being swallowed by a python. We believe that the greatest teacher of yoga, indeed, can be no other than a master of the snake called *kundalini*, which is, in fact, the snake of eternity, the residue that remains after the material consciousness is dissolved. Although it is uncertain whether the verse is authentically Vyāsa's own composition, we have paraphrased the homage paid in the beginning of some manuscripts of Vyāsa's commentary. Other commentators, following the Indian tradition, all begin their commentaries with prayer verses which are neither translated nor paraphrased here.

According to the Indian tradition of textual criticism, the subject matter of a text must include:

*lakṣhana*: definition

*bhedā*: various divisions or categories of the science

*upāya*: means, instruments or methods of obtaining the desired ends of the science

*phala*: end results obtained

In the *Yoga-sūtras* the definition is stated in Sūtra I.2: Yoga is the control of the fluctuations of the mind-field. The divisions are *samprajñāta* and *asamprajñāta* samādhis. The method is the eight limbs of yoga. The end result is *kaivalya*, absoluteness of consciousness, as explained in the fourth chapter.

It is requisite that the author should also state in the beginning of his text the four binding reasons (*anubandhas*):

*viṣhaya*. the subject matter of the text

*prayojana* its purpose

*adhikāra*: the qualification of the student

*sambandha*: the relationship of these three with the text

The subject of the *Yoga-sūtras* is, of course, yoga with its various categories and subdivisions, methods, and the end result. The purpose is self-realization (*kaivalya*) and release or liberation (*mokṣha*). The student is qualified whenever he has the *jijñāsā*, desire for knowledge, and *mumukṣhā*, determination for liberation. One who has the desire for knowledge is called a *jijñāsu* and one who has the determination for liberation is termed a *mumukṣhu*. These are the qualified students of yoga.

The relationship between yoga and the *Yoga-sūtras* is that of an expositor and exposition; the relationship between yoga and the student is that of a practice and its practitioner; and the relationship between the student and liberation is that of an achiever and his goal.

Sūtra I.I is an *adhikāra-sūtra* or *uddesha-sūtra* (see Prologue, pp. 20-21) stating the topic of the text.

**Sūtra I.1**      अथ योगानुशासनम्।  
**atha yogānuśhāsanam**

*atha*: now, at an auspicious moment of transition

*yoga-*: (of) yoga

*anu-*: within or following (a tradition)

*śhāsanam*: instruction, discipline, teaching

**Now, at this auspicious moment of transition begins the instruction in the discipline of yoga following the past tradition.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

*Atha* ‘now’—this word here has the purpose of indicating authority, qualification and commencement of the subject matter, so that the science called the Discipline of Yoga be known as the subject matter, the instruction of which commences by those authorized to those qualified.

Yoga is samādhi. And that samādhi is a universal attribute of the mind-field (chitta), common to all levels. The five grounds, levels, of the mind-field are:

*kṣipta*. disturbed

*mūḍha* somnolent, stupefied

*vikṣipta*: distracted

*ekāgra*. one-pointed

*niruddha* controlled

Among these, that samādhi subordinated and eclipsed by distraction in a distracted mind-field is not fit to be included within the category of yoga.

That, however is called samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta yoga*), which in a one-pointed mind-field

- fully illuminates an actual state or object (*artha*) that has become real, has been realized,
- diminishes the afflictions and impurities (*kleśhas*),

- loosens the bonds of karma, and
- brings about the possibility of control (*nirodha*) face to face, as it were.

As we shall explain later, that state of *samprajñāta samādhi* is of four types:

- accompanied by discursive thought
- accompanied by subtle thought
- accompanied by ecstasy
- accompanied by I-am-ness

However, when all the modifications (vṛttis) have come under control (*nirodha*), then it is called the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi.

## Discussion

The exposition on this sūtra will be divided into three sections, one for each of the three words *atha*, *yoga* and *anuśhāsana*.

### I. ATHA

Certain words in the tradition are considered auspicious; that is, their occurrence in the beginning of a text imparts a blessing. Even though the translation of the word is not a blessing, its pronunciation in itself invokes a blessing. All the commentators quote:

The words *OM* and *atha* came from the Creator's throat  
in the beginning of the creation;  
hence both these words are auspicious.

It is a norm in all theistic traditions to begin any undertaking with the invocation of a blessing; here no special words are used for that purpose alone; rather the word *atha* is bifunctional: May the study undertaken, the guidance given and received, and the disciplines observed come to bear their desired results without impediments. The *Brahma-sūtras*, the major text of the Vedānta philosophy,

also begins with the word *atha*. Śankarāchārya's commentary on this passage (*Brahma-sūtra* I.1) says:

The word *atha*, used in an entirely different sense, yet invokes a blessing merely by its pronunciation.

Now we come to the literal sense of the word and its function as part of the teaching itself. *Atha* is a word of the particle (*avyaya*) category. Such words remain unchangeable in all grammatical and syntactical situations, and express states that are themselves immutable. *Atha* denotes a transition. How can a transition be immutable, when any transition always occurs only as part of a mutability? How can one conceive of a transition without a change?

The answer to this question is that it is human nature to observe transitions. People throughout the world celebrate the transitions of sun and moon from season to season and year to year. Major festivals are designed for the celebration of these transitions. The transitions of a life cycle are also observed with great joy or solemnity. Baptisms, weddings, bar mitzvahs, confirmations, as well as graduations and anniversaries, come within this category. The yoga tradition celebrates sixteen sacraments, starting from before conception and continuing through initiations, marriage, renunciation, up to the last rites. It is not possible, however, for one to celebrate every transition of life. Most people are not even aware of their subtle transitions, such as, for example, the change in breath rhythms that occurs about every ninety minutes, varying somewhat among different individuals.

In the methods that great yogis employ to teach their disciples, only the fewest words are used. A disciple must understand many levels of meaning from a single sound. The word *atha* expresses the "now" of a transition. The student is advised by use of the word *atha* that he must learn to observe the now of a transition. He must learn to notice, for instance, the exact moment when the breath rhythm shifts from one nostril to the other. The yogis know that no transition occurs without first touching the "eternal now." When this is understood, an instantaneous illumination may take place in the disciple's consciousness.

Transitions are discussed here with a view to understanding the yoga philosophy of time, space and causation. For most observers all time and space pass through a series of causes and effects—one thing seems to lead to another, each cause producing an effect, one object becoming another from one moment in time to another, moving from one space to another. While this is so at a superficial level at which those uninitiated into advanced yogic disciplines perceive the relative reality of worldly phenomena, yoga masters experience things at a deeper level. They say that it is not that a prior cause produces a subsequent effect, a former moment gives birth to a following moment, one particle causes momentum in another. Rather, all of these moments, particles and spaces are united in a common field (*kṣhetra*). No particle or moment passes from one state to another without first touching that common field on which the former and the latter are united. In other words, all transitions among pluralities occur only through the touch of a common singularity. There is no abrupt jump. All the fields are united in the supreme field of infinity. In this field there is no past, present or future—no prior or posterior. When the breath rhythm shifts from one nostril to the other—or more accurately, the energy flow moves from *idā* to *piṅgalā* or vice versa—for a micromoment the consciousness passes through the central stream called the *sushumnā*.<sup>1</sup> An initiate is advised to get hold of that moment, dwell in it, and enter the infinite consciousness through it.

<sup>1</sup> In yoga teachings all movement and configurations of the physical body are considered to be gross manifestations of much subtler currents and fields, called the *nāḍis*. Within the human personality flow 72,000 of these subtle energy channels, around which such things as the nerves and organs group themselves. The central *nāḍi*, metaphorically said to be one ten-thousandth of a hair's breadth in diameter, flows through the spinal column and is known as *sushumnā*. On the right side of *sushumnā* is *piṅgalā nāḍi*, which controls the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system and governs "active" (masculine, solar) functions. On the left side of *sushumnā* is *idā nāḍi*, which controls the parasympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system and governs "intuitive" (feminine, lunar) functions. By certain systematic yoga disciplines the *idā* and *piṅgalā nāḍis* are balanced so that the *sushumnā* channel opens and sāmādhi is possible. For more complete information see Swami Rama, Rudolph Ballentine, M.D., and Swami Ajaya, Ph.D., *Yoga and Psychotherapy* (Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1976), pp. 42-43, 45, 53-55, 58-59, 266. See also "The Awakening of Kundalini" and "Energy of Consciousness in the Human Personality" in *Inspired Thoughts of Swami Rama* (Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1983), pp. 197-230, and "Laya Yoga" and "Kundalini Yoga" in Swami Rama, *Choosing a Path* (Himalayan International Institute, 1982), pp. 147-94.

To go further: We experience our world in terms of moment-particle coordinates. Each particle has a movement within a moment, and many particles together make an object, a phenomenon; many moments following one upon another make a certain length of time. The yogi says that it is not true to say that a prior moment's cause produces the subsequent moment's effect, although it certainly does appear to be so in a world of transience. But when the many transiences are transcended, the actual reality is very different.

Each moment arises directly from infinity.

Each moment dissolves into infinity.

The next moment also arises directly from infinity.

Concentration on what is between the dissolution of the prior moment and the arising of the subsequent moment opens the gateway to infinity.

The word *atha* reminds the initiated disciple to concentrate on such immutability as is perceived in transitions as explained above. Let him dwell in the now. As the concentration is refined, the now covers only a micromoment. Soon the disciple learns to step aside from the procession in which he was previously a participant. The procession of particle-moment coordinates may continue for other participants, but not for the disciple who has stepped aside. While he may continue to watch it from outside as a spectator, as it were, he is not moved by its motion or momentum. The karma process ceases here; he dwells in the eternal now.

This *now* is the beginning and the end of the Discipline of Yoga.

There is a controversy among commentators concerning the real purpose of the word *atha*. As has already been mentioned, the word expresses:

*ānantarya*. transition in a sequence

*adhikāra*: a teacher's authority, a student's fulfilment of a qualification, and simply the statement of commencement

Commentators have said nothing about transition or the awareness of now within the oral tradition. They have taken into consideration

other purposes of the word and agree that the word simply expresses (a) commencement of the topic, and (b) Patañjali's authority to undertake the same. In their view it does not express any kind of sequence in which there might be any implication of a student fulfilling a qualification. They say

the word *atha* expresses here *adhikāra* and not *ānantarya*.

It is interesting to contrast this with the first sūtra of the *Brahma-sūtras* by the same Vyāsa:

Now, from here on the desire to know Brahman.

Śankarāchārya<sup>2</sup> says of that sūtra:

The word *atha* expresses here *ānantarya* and not *adhikāra*.

Although metaphysical texts, especially those of the Vedānta philosophy, state that a student is qualified when he has practised the "six treasures" (*ṣhaṭ-sampat*):

*śrama*: quietude

*dama*: restraint

*uparati*: withdrawal from worldly interests

*titakṣhā*: forbearance

*śraddhā*: faith, humility, surrender

*samādhāna*: freedom from conflicts

and although the *Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* (IV.4.23) says,

2 The eighth century sage Śankara is considered to be the greatest of the Indian philosophers. Following in the footsteps of Gauḍapāda, the guru of his guru (Govinda), who wrote the *Māndūkya-kārikās*, the most complete ancient statement on Vedānta philosophy, Śankara wrote definitive commentaries on the Upaniṣads, the *Bhagavad-gītā* and the *Brahma- or Vedānta-sūtras*, as well as such philosophical works as *Viveka-cūḍāmani* (*The Crest Jewel of Discrimination*). Although his brief life of thirty-two years was accompanied by many miraculous events, his greatest accomplishment was the literal transformation of India by his restoration of the ancient Wisdom of the Vedas in the light of his *advaita* (non-dual) school of Vedānta and his establishment of many monastic schools to carry on the spiritual tradition. He established four seats of supreme religious and philosophical authority in India which have been occupied by an unbroken succession of saints, titled Śankarāchāryas, from his day to the present.

then, pacified, controlled, having withdrawn, forbearing,  
harmonized, one should see the self in the self,

none of these qualifications is implied in the *Yoga-sūtras*. This is not to say that any unqualified student may be admitted to the study and practice of yoga. The commentators are simply discussing Patañjali's actual intent in using the word *atha*. Patañjali only wished to express his desire to convey the knowledge. A desire to know (*jijñāsā*) on the part of the student is implied and that Patañjali has this knowledge (*jñāna*). There exist in the tradition preparations prerequisite to imparting a teaching, such as (a) a student's application and raising of questions, (b) his ascetic observances and purifications, (c) preparing the body through *rasāyanas*,<sup>3</sup> etc. Even though there is no question that Patañjali, himself probably an author on medical science, is aware of these and other preparations, his use of the word *atha*—in the opinions expressed by commentators—does not imply any of these preparations. He only expresses the fact that he knows, and wishes the knowledge to be conveyed.

All the other schools of philosophy, such as *Vedānta*, state that liberation is attained through knowledge, but they also prescribe various spiritual preparations. It is agreed among them that the means to attain that knowledge is yoga. That yoga is taught here. Patañjali asserts by the word *atha* that he is the authoritative teacher and wishes this knowledge of yoga to be conveyed. Hence he commences the teaching.

<sup>3</sup> The science of *rasāyana* is not well known and requires some explanation. The word is derived from the multilevel word *rasa*, which refers to fluid essences of any kind. In alchemy it means mercury, in herbal medicine it means a juice, in the human body all fluids are called *rasas*. In the ancient medical science of *āyur-veda* an alchemy of the human body was practised whereby all the body's base and corrupting factors were cleansed and converted into strength, thereby rejuvenating the body. These highly complex practises required application of

- internal purifications and disciplines,
- dietary prescriptions,
- herbal juices and potions, and
- compounds of mercury, sulphur, gold, etc., administered in carefully prepared doses

Sometimes such an alteration of body chemistry was necessary when it was intended that the person remain in *samādhi* for a prolonged period of time, or when it was necessary to strengthen the body for especially strenuous practices.

Mādhavāchārya clarifies that since discipline (*anuśhāsana*) includes the practices of pacification (*shama*), etc., there is no point in also trying to make them as prerequisites under the word *atha*.

The word *atha* has these purposes here: (a) an auspicious invocation, (b) a statement of Patañjali's authority, and (c) a declaration of the commencement of Patañjali's teaching. This is the view of the commentators. The oral tradition, however, concurs with YS I.1:

*Now, this is the discipline of yoga.*

That is to say, if one could observe his transitions and the way the states between moments serve as gateways to infinity, all the stages of yoga would be at his command. The student's qualifications are not denied but simply not stated until the word "discipline" (*anuśhāsana*) is encountered.

According to the commentators, selectiveness as to the meanings of *atha* is applicable here only and not universally. That is why Vyāsa says,

*Atha—this word here.*

Previous traditions within which yoga is taught by Patañjali also are important to these matters. The name of Yogi Yājñavalkya occurs repeatedly in the Upaniṣads as one of the greatest metaphysicians of his time. His statement affirms the entire yoga tradition:

*Hiranya-garba alone is the teacher of yoga, and no other.*

*Bṛhad-ṛgī-yājñavalkya-smṛti XII 5*

The word *Hiranya-garba* means "the Golden Womb." The word occurs in the ancient Vedas:

*In the beginning was the Golden Womb.*

*Rg-veda X.121.1*

All the yogis insist that no individual person is a teacher, master, or guru, but that the Golden Womb alone is the guru. In that

womb the minds of all beings are like fetuses. As a fetus receives nourishment from the mother through the umbilical cord, so all minds in meditation receive knowledge from the Golden Womb, the Teaching Spirit of the Universe. This is similar to the Christian notion of the Holy Spirit, who is the teacher of all teachers. When one frees himself from all ego, all the knowledge of the Golden Womb flows into him effortlessly and naturally. Just as a fetus, receiving nourishment from its mother, does not know itself separate from her, so those in meditation do not know themselves separate from the Golden Womb. All revelation is of the grace that flows from the Golden Womb into the minds of those in meditation. Some traditions assert that the Golden Womb reveals itself in the beginning of creation in the minds of the first human beings. Others go so far as to say that the first human being is a Master, who is an incarnation of the Golden Womb, the Teaching Spirit that has become flesh and from whom all spiritual knowledge begins and is handed down through the lineage of the yogis. He is also known as the Progenitor (*Prajāpati*) or Brahmā (a masculine word not to be confused with the neuter word Brahman), the founder and first teacher of the Vedas. All the yogis trace their lineage, through their masters, ultimately to Hiranya-garbha or Prajāpati or Brahmā, whose own teacher is no other but Svayam-bhū, the Self-Existent Being.

The *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad*, considered to be the oldest of the Upaniṣads and dating back to approximately the thirteenth century BC, states the spiritual genealogy of teachers up to that time. *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upanishad* IV.6.1-3 lists fifty-nine generations of teachers, and VI.5.1-4 lists sixty-six generations up to that time and going back to Brahmā, who is the same as the Golden Womb. Other texts such as the Purāṇas give much longer lists.

It is called a golden womb because when a master initiates a disciple into its mysteries, the disciple experiences within himself the presence of a golden light. Unlike the foggy light of the dream state, which is unclear consciousness, this golden light of the higher state of consciousness imparts a luminosity to the seeker's mind, in the presence of which intuitive knowledge often dawns (*Kena*

*Upaniṣhad* II.25). Often the visage of such a person shines with a golden light.

The word “womb,” in addition to the explanation above, also suggests that an enlightened being, who has chosen to incarnate for the benefit of the world, often receives reminiscences of this supreme knowledge while still within the mother’s womb and is then born a teacher.

The question arises that if Hiranya-garbhā is the teacher of yoga, why is such importance given to Patañjali? Why does Patañjali present himself as such a figure of authority? The question may be answered in two ways:

1. The authenticity of the opening verse of Vyāsa’s commentary is controversial because some manuscripts include it and others do not. However, the verse says that Patañjali is the same who incarnates again and again to teach the knowledge of yoga, even through he may bear different names from incarnation to incarnation.
2. The other way lies in the word *anuśhāsana*, which we have translated as “discipline.”

## II. ANUŚHĀSANA

The word *anuśhāsana* is derived from the prefix *anu* and the verb root *śhās*. The prefix *anu* denotes that something is subsequent, a follow-up to something else that formerly occurred or existed. The verb *śhās* means “to impart a discipline or a teaching” or “to teach with a definite discipline.” The English word “discipline,” meaning a field of study, is similar. A teaching without an attendant discipline will not be expressed with the verb *śhās*. From the same verb is derived the word for a disciple (*śhishya*), one who is to be taught with and within a discipline. In the ancient education systems of India the teaching of every subject was imparted within the context of an *āśrama* discipline with definite rules of life. There were three types of graduates:

*vidyā-snātaka*: one who has mastered a science

*vrata-snātaka*: one who has demonstrated the mastery of personal discipline

*vidyā-vrata-snātaka*: one who has proficiency in a field of learning and has demonstrated the mastery of personal disciplines

It was the third type of graduate who was most cherished as a disciple. Knowledge in the ancient āśramas was not imparted indiscriminately.

Knowledge came to the philosopher (*brāhmaṇa*) and said,  
“I am your treasure; do guard me.

Do not give me away to someone malicious—  
so that I may grow in strength.

Only whom you know to be pure, controlled,  
a master of passions, a celibate—

give me to him, a wise man who guards his treasure  
without negligence.”

*Lawbook of Manu* II.114-15

Similar injunctions are given in the tradition elsewhere and repeatedly.

The prefix *anu* has these two connotations in the word *anuśhāsana*:

1. The discipline of yoga is being imparted only after the student has demonstrated his purity in observances of self-discipline and has prepared the ground in which the seed is to be sown. Because this idea was inherent in the word *anuśhāsana*, it need not be expressed in the word *atha*.
2. The commentators say, “Śiṣṭasya śhāsanam-anuśhāsanam”: “*Anuśhāsana* means ‘to teach that which has been taught before, to teach within an existing tradition, not claiming that anything new has been created by the author.’”

Patañjali by using the prefix *anu* issues a disclaimer to his own authorship of the science even though by the word *atha* he has stated his authority to teach it.

The word *anuśhāsana* also means “that (text) by which the science

(of samādhi, in this case) is taught, together with the means of its attainment and fruits, so that it fructifies and succeeds." This knowledge is open to anyone who seeks absoluteness and liberation (*kai-valya*). Such a text taught within a tradition and with a discipline is called a *śhāstra*; hence the entire science is known as *yoga-śhāstra*.

In this context Vyāsa's sentence is again presented:

*Atha* 'now'—this word here has the purpose of indicating authority, qualification and commencement of the subject matter, so that the science called the Discipline of Yoga be known as the subject matter, the instruction of which commences by those authorized to those qualified.<sup>4</sup>

### III. YOGA

As to the word "yoga," Vyāsa simply says,

**Yoga is samādhi.**

The word can be derived from the Sanskrit verb *yuj*, which occurs in Pāṇini's list of verbs (*dhātu-pāṭha*) in several forms as follows:

*yuj* of the fourth conjugation (*yujyate*), meaning "samādhi";  
*yujir* of the sixth conjugation (*yunakti*), meaning "samādhi"; and  
*yuj* of the tenth conjugation (*yojayati*), meaning "to join" or "to restrain" or "to keep under control, as in yoking."

The English word "yoke" is acknowledged by the Oxford English Dictionary to be cognate to *yuj*, and so is the word "join." "Yoke"

4 It is interesting to note that Patañjali's *Mahābhāṣya*, his vast exposition on Pāṇini's grammar, begins with words almost identical to *YS I.1*. The first sentences of Vyāsa's commentary on the *Mahābhāṣya* read as follows

*Now, the instruction in the discipline of words. The word *atha* 'now' has the purpose of indicating authority, qualification and commencement of the subject matter, so that the science called the Discipline of Words may be known as the subject matter, the instruction of which commences by those authorized to those qualified.*

Other similarities between the *Yoga-sūtras* and Vyāsa, on the one hand, and the grammatical texts, on the other, have been studied by numerous scholars. The relationship of the science of yoga and the science of speech has been explained to a certain extent in the author's book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981)

is derived from the third *yuj* in the above list; “join” is from the second but its meaning is from the third. Ancient Vedic texts use the former two as meaning “to experience samādhi.” According to Vyāsa, the word “yoga” in this sūtra is derived not from the *yuj* of yoking or joining but from the verbs meaning “samādhi.” However, one is then left with the question of why the oral tradition often states that the word may be derived from the verb meaning “joining” or “yoking.” This may be explained by the fact that the ancient sages of the period of the Vedas and early Upaniṣads experienced samādhi as a union of the individual and the universal self, thereby lending a secondary meaning to the same verb. The primary meaning was probably “samādhi,” as seen in the most ancient hymns (for example, *Rg-veda* V.81.1), but elsewhere the Vedic and Upaniṣadic literature is replete with usage of the verbs from the fourth and sixth conjugations in the sense of “uniting,” “joining,” as well as “restraining” and “yoking.” Examples of this usage include *Rg-veda* I.82.6 and X.101.3; *Kauṣītaki Upaniṣad* II.6; *Kena Upaniṣad* I.1; *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad* II.5.19 and V.13.2; and numerous other places. A study of the ancient texts shows, therefore, that the forms are used interchangeably.<sup>5</sup>

The oral tradition has scant regard for the artificial rules of grammar, but the grammarians themselves admit, as does Patañjali (not in the *Yoga-sūtras* but in the *Mahābhāṣya*, his work on grammar), that grammarians only acknowledge the usage of words as found in the Vedas and among the people. Therefore one need not concern himself unduly if there appears to be a conflict between grammarians and philosophers. Furthermore, since philosophy is being studied here, one needs to accept Vyāsa’s statement that the word “yoga” in the *Yoga-sūtras* means “samādhi.” This is also the view held by MA. The oral tradition goes on to explain that the process leading to samādhi begins with restraining the senses, and yoking the mind to the inner self, and that the experience of samādhi itself is joining the lower self and the higher self. All of these layers

<sup>5</sup> Why Pāṇini, considered to be history’s foremost grammarian, chose to differentiate them so substantially can only be answered by the guess that perhaps by his time the conjugational forms of the verbs had settled into fixed meanings as recorded by him

and levels of the endeavour and experience are included in the word “yoga.” And since “restraining,” “yoking,” or “joining” used separately would have been incomplete, Vyāsa chose to derive the word from the verb meaning “samādhi.” This falls within the convention of Indian logic known as *aṅgāṅgi-bhāva*: that is to say, when a statement is made concerning a complete entity (*aṅgin* ‘one who owns *aṅgas*, or parts’), each one of its parts (*aṅgas*) is already included. MA says that the endeavour and experience of samādhi is inclusive of restraining, yoking and joining, since these fall within the eight *aṅgas* of yoga. BR says that not only a joining or union but even a separation (*vi-yoga*) may be included among the parts that constitute the complete endeavour of samādhi. The separation, according to BR, is between the conscious self and its attachment to matter: *pum-prakṛtyor viyogo'pi yogah*.

AD also says that yoga as union means the merging together of mind and self (ātman) like that of water and salt. No further explanation of this theory is given. How this merging of mind and self in a yogi differs from the personality of one still in ignorance and bondage is not explained. He goes on to say that the word “samādhi” may be explained in two ways:

- that by which the mind is brought to concentration. In this instrumental sense it is the eighth limb (*aṅga*) of yoga.
- that state in which the operations such as *prāṇa* are brought under control. In this locative sense it is synonymous with *yoga* proper.

The question arises that if samādhi, too, is enumerated among the eight *angas*, limbs, of yoga, then how can it be regarded as that whole, the *aṅgin*, of which the others are limbs, parts, or the means thereto? This difficulty is resolved by different commentators in different ways. AD, for instance, implies that by the word “samādhi” Vyāsa does not mean the eighth limb of yoga but simply *yoga nāma samādhānam*: that “samādhi” means *samādhāna* ‘harmonizing’, ‘a resolving of conflicts within and without’, in the same sense in which the word *samādhāna* is used among the “six treasures” prerequisite to liberation (p. 67, above). Both RY and SS

explain that *yoga*, meaning “*samādhi*,” has two levels as explained in *YS* I.17,18. The reader is referred to those two *sūtras*, which explain the *samādhi* of wisdom (*samprajñāta samādhi*) and the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) *samādhi*. Of these two the cognitive, yet alloyed, is only a step toward the final goal of the acognitive. *RY* and *SS* hold that the former is a limb and a means (*aṅga*) while the latter is the true *yoga* in its entirety and perfection. *RY* further states that when *Vyāsa* says that

*samādhi* is a universal attribute of the mind-field (*chitta*), common to all levels,

*Vyāsa*'s view is that *samādhi* is an attribute of the mind-field: because the modifications (*vṛttis*) of the mind-field are attributes of the mind-field, *samādhi* being only their control or cessation (as defined in the present *sūtra*), *samādhi* is an attribute of the mind-field! This seems to be totally untenable and does not fit any of the *yoga* traditions.

An alternative explanation is that *yoga* is being taught to the students of *Patañjali* on two different levels: (1) an experiential level, which cannot be put into formal wording; and (2) a formal system of philosophy with its own terminology. Sometimes the two do not coincide. The formal systematization of the philosophy states that *yoga* is the control of the modifications of the mind-field and *samādhi* is the eighth of its limbs (*aṅgas*) and means. *Vyāsa*, the commentator par excellence, does not wish the student to forget that a true follower of *yoga* must see even beyond these definitions; otherwise why would he venture a definition of *yoga* in his commentary on *YS* I.1 when *Patañjali*, from whose work *Vyāsa* could not mean to detract, has already defined *yoga* in *YS* I.2? When *Vyāsa* says

*Yogaḥ samādhīḥ ‘yoga is samādhi’*,

he is referring neither to *yoga* as defined in *YS* I.2, nor to *samādhi* as defined in *YS* I.17,18, nor as it is included among the eight *aṅgas* in *YS* II.29 and III.3.

The problem is solved only by reading Vyāsa's next sentence:

And that samādhi is a universal attribute of the mind-field (chitta), common to all levels.

The word “universal” (*sārva-bhauma*) needs an explanation. Literally it means “that which remains in all *bhūmis*,” that is, grounds, levels or plateaus that are attained and subsequently passed on the way to the highest samādhi. What exactly are these *bhūmis* at which the yogi arrives and then leaves behind as he proceeds to his goal? There are many definitions of this term in the *Yoga-sūtras* and the commentaries. These should be studied in detail as the reader refers to the pertinent sūtras: *YS* I.30, II.27, III.6. In commenting on *YS* II.27, Vyāsa defines the seven levels of attainment as follows:

1. One has recognized what he must renounce (pain); it no more needs to be known.
2. One has eliminated the causes of pain; they no longer need to be diminished.
3. One has realized the vanquishing of pain through attainment of the samādhi of total control (*nirodha-samādhi*).
4. One has cultivated the means of the removal of pain; that is, discrimination between self and non-self has been perfected.
5. The faculty of discrimination (buddhi) has now completed its work.
6. The attributes (guṇas) of nature are dissolved into their material cause and no longer bind the self.
7. The self no longer has any relationships with material nature or the non-self and is now pure light, absolute, alone.

In his commentary on *YS* III.51 Vyāsa describes the yogis at four different levels of attainment:

1. Those who have just begun the experience of light; these are called beginners (*prāthama-kalpika*)
2. Those whose intuitive wisdom (*rtambharā prajñā*) has begun to blossom, they are being tempted by the powerful beings of the subtle worlds to enjoy the powers recently gained; these are at the honeyed ground (*madhu-bhūmi*).

3. Those who have conquered the senses and their attractions and have mastered the elements; they have become firmly protective toward all that needs to be cultivated and firm in all the duties they need to perform; they are *prajñā-jyotis*, for wisdom is their light.
4. Those who have transcended all processes and no longer have anything remaining yet to be cultivated (*atikrānta-bhāvaniya*).

VM, however, enumerates four *bhūmis*, as follows:

1. *madhumati*: honeyed, filled with sweetness
2. *madhu-pratikā*: where the honey of the first ground has become as though it had been only symbolic of this second level to come
3. *vi-śokā*: beyond grief
4. *samskāra-śeṣhā*: where only the impressions of past karmas and experiences remain as deposits, but no fresh karma is formed<sup>6</sup>

The question remains as to which one of these groups Vyāsa refers when he says that samādhi is an attribute common to all the grounds of a yogi's development. The answer is that even though VM says that the four, *madhumati* and so forth, are meant, that does not seem to be Vyāsa's intent, since he goes on to enumerate five states of the mind-field:

- kṣipta*: disturbed
- mūḍha*: somnolent, stupefied
- vikṣipta*: distracted from meditation
- ekāgra*: one-pointed
- niruddha*: controlled

Before these five are discussed in detail, it is still necessary to understand what is meant by the statement that

<sup>6</sup> Of these four *bhūmis* the first is the same as no 2 of *YS* III 51. The second, *madhu-pratikā*, is defined in Vyāsa's commentary on *YS* III 48. The third, *vi-śokā*, is defined in *YS* I 36. The fourth, *samskāra-śeṣhā*, occurs in *YS* I 18. The reader should compare these references to the list.

samādhi is a universal attribute of the mind-field (chitta), common to all levels.

How can samādhi be an attribute in an agitated, somnolent or distracted mind?

As MA explains it, the nature of the spiritual self is defined throughout the Sāṅkhya and yoga philosophies to be pure, absolute, immutable. This nature never changes no matter what kind of mind serves as a mantle to the pure, spiritual self. Thus the transcendent being never loses its transcendence. Its immutability always remains unimpaired. This force, called consciousness, is never altered (*YS* II.20,21; IV.34). Only the mind-field goes through the three altered states of consciousness called wakeful awareness of objects, dream and sleep. Since transcendence remains unaffected, it equally permeates all functions, operations, experiences and states that are dependent on this consciousness. Since mind is regarded as a modification of matter and is not spiritual, it is also dependent on the consciousness of the spiritual self, whom it has no power to corrupt in any way. According to *YS* IV.18, all the vṛttis of the mind-field are always known to the spiritual self. The natural state of this self is samādhi, which always remains so even though the mind-field goes through various alterations.

This being the case, no question arises regarding Vyāsa's statement that samādhi is a state that remains throughout the various levels of attainment. A human being is a compound of the power of pure consciousness and the corruptible, alterable, mutable material (including mental) components. When a person rediscovers the separation of the spiritual component from the material one, that is called isolation of the self from matter (*kaivalya*). It is not that the spiritual self itself had ever mingled with lowly matter, but that it had lent its own power to matter so that the latter could function as the mind. Its own samādhi remains unbroken. It is the universal (*sārvabhauma*) common ground of all other operations of the compound personality.

The total and permanent incorruptibility and immutability of the spiritual self is the fundamental tenet of yoga philosophy. If

any of the attributes of this self were to increase or decrease even in an immeasurably minute degree, the entire tenet would have to be rejected. In that case transcendence would be no transcendence at all because it would be subject to alteration. There would simply be no point in pursuing yoga because it would only lead to a temporary state (*parināma*), which is the cause of our pains. So it must be reiterated that samādhi is the permanent and natural state of the spiritual self.

VM explains that the definition of yoga as control of the operations of the mind-field (*YS* I.2) is effective only with regard to the practical aspects of yoga. Lest one come away with the impression that the vṛttis are apprehensions or cognitions residing in the self, Vyāsa specifies that they are attributes of the mind-field. The transcendent illumination of the self imparts its luminosity to the mind-field, whereby the mind-field functions and even undergoes all of its operations and alterations. It is in this sense that Vyāsa says,

Samādhi is a universal attribute of the mind-field (chitta), common to all levels.

VB says that a little meditative concentration shows through even in the agitation, somnolence or distraction of the mind; hence, too, samādhi may be considered as the universal ground of all these alterations.

In any case mind-field (*chitta*) is not to be confused with the pure consciousness (*chit*).

Here a question arises: If samādhi (in the sense of transcendence) is the permanent nature of the spiritual self and mind is regarded as a mode of matter, how can Vyāsa say that

samādhi is a universal attribute of the mind-field (chitta), common to all levels

VM has tried to resolve the apparent conflict by saying that it is not the entire mind-field that is meant. According to Sāṅkhyayoga philosophy, one of the four aspects of the inner sense is in closest touch with the self. That aspect is called the faculty of

discrimination (buddhi). This faculty has two faces: an outward face, looking toward the conscious mind and the senses, that may be called "the faculty of intelligence"; and an inward face, looking toward the spiritual self, that may be called "the faculty of intuition."

The buddhi's faculty of discrimination serves as the channel between the spiritual self and the rest of the personality. Buddhi partakes of that finest, purest-possible aspect of nature (prakṛti) known as sattva, whose attribute is illumination. The light of the self by itself is immutable, and the self is untouched by any qualities of matter. However, the face of the self reflects in the buddhi like a ray of sun into a crystal mirror, from which it is deflected onto, or passes through to, other aspects of mind, and from there to the brain, the senses and the rest of the personality. It is this reflected or deflected light alone that operates the whole personality, while the spiritual self, the soul, remains aloof, immutable.

Without the presence of this reflected illumination the human personality is nothing but dead matter. The presence of this reflected light gives to the buddhi, and thereby to the rest of the mind-field, the power which enables the whole mind to perform all of its functions and to go through all of its stages of development. Because this light of samādhi is ever-present in the back of the mind, in the inward face of the buddhi, it is in this sense that samādhi is the permanent and universal attribute of the mind even during its lower states of awareness.

The presence of this state of samādhi, even in the lower, disturbed states, is demonstrated by the fact that no matter how agitated the mind may be at any given time it still concentrates on only one thing or another, one thought or another, one emotion or another. If it dwells on any thought for even a fleeting micromoment, it is still a level of concentration. Without this faculty of concentration, the mind could not even be agitated. The yogis dwell on and in the concentration, ignoring the surface agitation. Thus, once again, samādhi is a universal and permanent attribute of the mind.

Of the many levels of the mind's operations, one has to cease before another can be introduced. This is not possible unless buddhi and the mind-field establish control over each level. That the mind

is able to shift from one level to another, one state to another, shows that it has mastery, control (*nirodha*)—the primary definition of samādhi (see pp. 86ff. and YS I.2)—at all times. Thus also is samādhi a permanent and universal attribute of the mind-field.

Manifestation of the degree of samādhi, however, is another matter. The mind, a modification of matter, is constituted of its three guṇas. The disturbed states of the mind reflect the simple disequilibrium of the three guṇas which is the common nature of all creation; the mind, being part of that creation, partakes of that disequilibrium. It is the varying degrees of disequilibrium in the proportion and predominance of the guṇas that cause varying states of mind. Vyāsa's concern here is not with other *bhūmis* but only with the five states of the mind-field (*kṣipta*, etc.). Of these, the agitated (*kṣipta*) state is dominated by rajas, totally unsteady, always flung about from one object to another. This is the wakeful state of a "normal" person in the world.

The somnolent (*mūḍha*) state is dominated by tamas, which represents the state of sleep and other forms of stupor such as being comatose, inebriated, drug-afflicted, or otherwise generally not alert. In other words, there is not a definite boundary line between *kṣipta* and *mūḍha*. Often a wakeful person considers himself to be quite alert but, under the influence of tamas, makes a stupid mistake.

There are other examples of the alternation between *kṣipta* and *mūḍha*, or between the dominance of rajas and tamas. For instance, says VB, rajas draws us toward the objects of attraction, causing a mood called *rāga* in which the mind is coloured by the object of attraction. When the wish to enjoy or possess the object of that *rāga* is thwarted, a negation ensues. The mind becomes clouded with tamas, and consequently depression (*viśhāda*) begins. One can similarly analyse the alterations of moods and other emotional states by observing the alternating dominance of rajas and tamas.

Vyāsa has included *kṣipta* and *mūḍha* in his enumeration of the five states but then throughout the rest of the text has nothing much to say about them except where it is absolutely necessary, as in the case of the vṛtti for sleep (*nidrā*), which is discussed in YS

I.12. The two states of *kṣipta* and *mūḍha* are of no interest to Patañjali and Vyāsa. They have been generally ignored by Indian sages, whereas they are a major preoccupation of contemporary Western psychologists.

Our concern begins with *vi-kṣipta*, a modification of, and some improvement on, the agitated *kṣipta*. On the way to samādhi, sattva begins to assert its illuminative power. The mind begins here to find some concentration, but its former habits keep dragging it away from sattva. Rajas and tamas do not want to let go, but sattva has begun to make its presence felt. When the mind is still distracted from concentration, which experience has already begun, that state is called distraction (*vikṣhepa*). *Vikṣhepas* are the nine impediments (*YS* I.30) and their five companions (*YS* I.31). A mind afflicted by *vikṣhepas* is *vikṣipta*.

There arises the possibility that those experiencing meditation with such a distraction might claim themselves to be yogis. To eliminate such a misunderstanding about the nature of yoga, Vyāsa says:

Samādhi subordinated and eclipsed by distraction in a distracted [*vikṣipta*] mind-field is not fit to be included within the category of yoga [that is, samādhi, since he has defined yoga to mean samādhi].

In a *vikṣipta* mind samādhi occurs intermittently, in short bursts. It is not conducive to elimination of *kleśhas* (defined in *YS* II.3ff.). When someone is overcome by an enemy, he is powerless and ineffective, in fact, he loses his very face, his very nature. When concentration is overcome by rajas and tamas in the *vikṣipta* state, its sattva is nowhere to be found. To give another analogy, when a seed has fallen into a fire and remains there even for three or four seconds, it is thereafter unable to sprout. Likewise, when concentration has fallen into the fire of rajas even for three or four seconds, it has no power to lead a personality toward samādhi.

Having dismissed the first three states as unworthy of a detailed definition (*a-lakṣhya*), Vyāsa introduces the fourth state of mind,

*ekāgra*, or *samprajñāta* samādhi. He states that this is called *samprajñāta* yoga, samādhi of wisdom,

which in a one-pointed (*ekāgra*) mind-field

- fully illuminates an actual state or object (*artha*) that has become real, has been realized,
- diminishes the afflictions and impurities (*kleśhas*),
- loosens the bonds of karma, and
- brings about the possibility of control (*nirodha*) face to face, as it were.

Here we need to refer to the original Sanskrit words to explain their purport.

*Artha* is a purpose, an aim, as well as an object of pursuit or of concentration. In meditation reaching *samprajñāta* samādhi (defined in *YS* I.17ff.) the concentration is so deep that the object itself develops a mental reality as the flow of concentration remains uninterrupted. The true nature of the object is then realized, and consequently the very essence of that object, wherever it may be in the universe, is completely mastered. This will be explained in greater detail in Chapter 3.

An object of concentration has to be real (*sad-bhūtam*). VM says that this eliminates a state like sleep, where there is intense concentration, but on its own tamas with no illumination of anything real.

Vyāsa could have simply said *dyotayati* ‘illuminates’, but he adds the prefix *pra*, resulting in *pra-dyotayati* ‘fully illuminates’. This has a special significance. Objects are often illuminated in our intelligence in the ordinary state of wakefulness; but that illumination is not complete. The mind is disturbed by rajas and sees the objects in a distorted form. When a person with a diseased eye sees the moon, the mind is pseudo-illuminated by that experience and might be completely convinced that it is seeing two moons. All of our senses are at all times unreliable. Any reality we perceive is thus unreliable and not presented to us in its full form.

Similarly, the knowledge gained from inferential logic is an impaired one. It depends on data presented by unreliable, impaired,

imperfect, incomplete senses. How can arguments developed on the basis of such indirect perception be reliable? What the logicians call direct perception through the senses is an indirect perception in the view of the yogis simply because (a) the multicoloured senses intervene between the mind and the external objects; (b) the imperfect mind intercepts and reinterprets to the buddhi what has been presented to it by the unreliable senses; and (c) the senses, mind and buddhi all together conspire to present to the inner, reflecting self a picture that is incomplete, incorrect, impaired and distorted.

In yoga epistemology, therefore, reality (*sad* or *sat*) is accurately seen only by the inner self directly in concentration without the intervention of the senses, mind and buddhi. It is this which the yogis call direct perception (*pratyakṣha*), and all schools of Indian philosophy refer to it as *yogi-pratyakṣha*. It is in *samprajñāta* samādhi that such a direct perception (*pratyakṣha*) occurs. This alone is the full illumination expressed by *pra-dyotayati*.

Such a realization of the nature of reality vanquishes the five afflictions (*kleśhas*) (*YS* II.3ff.). As these causes of bondage are eliminated, that which binds the spiritual self with buddhi automatically loses its glutinous strength. The causes of bondage are loosened. They are no longer capable of producing the future effects of any possible karma because the yogi has now risen above virtue and vice (*dharma* and *adharma*). Through this process final freedom from attachments (*para-vairāgya*) (*YS* I.16) develops and one finally sees the possibility of reaching *asamprajñāta* samādhi, that for which all this was a preparation, that which is *aṅgin*, the whole, for which all these are *aṅgas*, supports, parts and means thereto.

The question arises that since *samprajñāta* samādhi has been described as fourfold (*YS* I.17ff.), accompanied with discursive thought and so forth, does this indicate that the affliction (*kleśha*) called ignorance (*avidyā*) is still present? How can such a state be called full illumination or realization? VB answers that the first three stages of *samprajñāta* lead to the fourth and may be considered incorporated in it. In that fourth state arises the Truth-bearing intuitive wisdom (*ṛiambharā prajñā*) (*YS* I.48), and the objection is thus overruled.

But beyond the realization of cosmic realities through intense concentration is *asamprajñāta* yoga, acognitive samādhi. Vyāsa says,

When all the modifications (vṛttis) have come under control (*nirodha*), then it is called acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi.

VB states that even the vṛtti of the mind that is present in *samprajñāta* samādhi needs to be brought to *nirodha*, rendered inoperative, through the attainment of *para-vairāgya* (YS I.6,18), and then *asamprajñāta* samādhi is reached. *Nirodha* is defined as that state wherein

- any fresh impressions of the external world, its experiences, relationships and memories no longer arise,
- the state of samādhi creates its own impressions on the soul's mental mantle, but
- the impressions left in the mind-field from past experiences still remain.

It is the force of these past impressions that continues to create for the yogi a physical reality, including the illness or health of the body and its regular operations, until the continuously strengthened samādhi-samskāras, the impressions of the samādhi being created on the mind, finally burn out even the past samskāras. Then the yogi is called a *jīvan-mukta*, one who is liberated while yet in a body, using the body out of benevolence for the benefit of others.

In other words, *nirodha* is not an absence of vṛttis, says VB. It is not a cessation or suppression, as many contemporary translators mistakenly assert. If this were so, yoga would have to be defined as a particular condition of the substratum of those vṛttis, the substratum being the mind-field. Samādhi is not such a state of the mind. In the actual experience of samādhi, the mind, being under the control of the spiritual self, is not made blank. The mind may continue to function according to its own nature. The yogi is not a mindless being. His mind has become, however, an instrument under his control. The modifications of the mind continue, but

under his direction. Past saṃskāras remain operative at first until only the *nirodha-saṃskāras* remain (YS III.9,10; IV.26).

As someone with a torch in hand finds the object he looked for, and then abandons the torch, so, attaining knowledge through spiritual awakening, one should leave the awakening behind.

(This passage has been quoted by VB from an unknown source and a somewhat similar passage is to be found in *Brahma-vidyā Upaniṣhad*, 36.) The word *bodha* is translated as “spiritual awakening,” from the verb root *budh* ‘to awaken’, ‘to get to know’. From the same verb is derived *bodhi* ‘a Buddha’s enlightenment’. *Bodha* can also mean “a teaching or direction given.” This teaching may be given by the guru or simply be the direction one finds from one state to the next in the internal journey toward enlightenment. Finally one abandons these means to enlightenment because transcendental knowledge has dawned. Verse 5 of the *Brahma-bindu Upaniṣhad* reads:

One should attempt restraint (*nirodha*) only until it vanishes in the heart. This is the extent of knowledge and liberation; the rest is all useless expanse of texts!

At this point VB takes up a challenge presumably presented by followers of Vedānta and Buddhist philosophies. Before we go further, let it be understood that Vedānta and Buddhism, like yoga, can also be understood at two levels:

- 1 The experiential level, in which there can be no disagreement with the yogis
2. The formal systems of philosophy

The discussion here centers around the formalities of the system.

Vedānta is regarded as the path of knowledge (*jñāna*). It is *jñāna-yoga*, the yoga of knowledge proper. Vedāntic texts say that liberation occurs through knowledge. Similarly, Buddhists regard samādhi as a step towards wisdom or knowledge (*paññā*) among the “three jewels” consisting of

*sila*: conduct

*saṁādhi*: concentration

*paññā*: wisdom, knowledge

NBB starts by presenting the controversy concerning the path of *jñāna* and yoga. He then attempts to reconcile the two by stating that liberation (*mokṣha*) does occur through *jñāna*, but that yoga is the means to *jñāna*. In both commentaries, NB and NBB, Nāgeśa takes a solid Vedānta position with respect to the nature of Brahman and believes that yoga is the means of eliminating ignorance about that nature. The arguments of VB, BG, NB, and NBB as to the difference or identity between the Sāṅkhya puruṣha and the Vedānta Brahman will not be presented in our discussions. The commentators' attempts to reconcile *jñāna* and yoga throughout their works are important and are summarized here from VB's commentary.

He asks why one needs all this emphasis on *nirodha* of the vṛttis, when knowledge alone would suffice.

Through the observance of the *angas* of yoga, as impurities diminish, knowledge is kindled till discrimination produces correct wisdom.

YS II 28

Obviously, knowledge and wisdom are the goals; and the *āṅgas*—the eight limbs of yoga that include *saṁprajñāta* and *asamprajñāta* samādhis—are the means thereto. It is impossible for the same state or entity to be the cause (of knowledge) and the effect (as final wisdom) simultaneously.

So, assuming at least that *saṁprajñāta* samādhi is the means of knowledge and that *asamprajñāta* samādhi is the effect as knowledge, one could also postulate another possibility: that *saṁprajñāta* samādhi is the cause of knowledge by removing impediments in the way of knowledge. This postulation is supported by YS I.41, which states that when the vṛttis of the mind-field have diminished as though the mind is pure like a crystal, then the mind becomes one with (a) that which grasps (I-am-ness, the reflection of the

pure self in the buddhi), (b) the instruments of grasping (the ahāṅkāra and senses, including mind), and (c) the objects grasped (the gross and subtle elements, etc.); dwelling in them, the mind becomes as of one colour with them. But *asamprajñāta* yoga will not be regarded as a means of knowledge because it is produced by the former, *samprajñāta* samādhi. Furthermore, continues the argument, no additional means for liberation are needed once knowledge has been produced.

To him (it appears), “I have delay only as long as I am not yet liberated. Thereafter I shall prosper.”

*Chhāndogya Upaniṣad* VI.14.2

It is obvious from these scriptural words that knowledge which is totally independent of any other means or consideration is the means for liberation. When ignorance, desires, acts and so forth have ceased through the instrumentality of that knowledge, there is no further cause for transmigration (*samsāra*), which finally ceases. In other words, suggests the opponent, let us interpret the *Yoga-sūtras* in conformity with the demands of the Vedānta and Buddhist philosophies and consider knowledge to be the goal. Let us consider *asamprajñāta* samādhi to be that goal synonymous with knowledge which Vedānta and Buddhist philosophies propose as the final goal—the ultimate step to liberation. Many sūtras of Patañjali, examples of which are quoted in this argument, can be interpreted to support this view.

A proponent of the traditional interpretation of the *Yoga-sūtras* opposes such an interpretation and wishes to remain true to the formalities of the system. He responds to his opponent by saying that this, too, is the result of the two levels of samādhi: that pain, which remains necessary because of past karmas and continues in succeeding reincarnations, should cease when knowledge is attained. As Vyāsa says in his commentary on *YS* I.11, all these vṛttis consist of pleasure, pain and delusion; therefore all of them should be brought under control (*nirodha*). Knowledge alone is not the means to diminishing the power of karma. Yoga, which is samādhi, is that means:

The yogi who has accomplished samādhi attains liberation in that very life, his heap of karmas immediately burnt in the fire of yoga.

*Viṣṇu-purāṇa* VI.7.35

Numerous other texts support this view.

Like knowledge, *asamprajñāta* samādhi is a means of liberation by elimination of karma. While samādhi has this in common with knowledge, samādhi goes further. *Asamprajñāta* samādhi burns out all past impressions (saṃskāras) and thereby eliminates the effectiveness even of those karmas accumulated in previous lifetimes which would otherwise have begun fruition, involving (a) the current incarnation in a particular species, (b) the life span destined for that incarnation, and (c) the pain and pleasure ordained for the life span. This, called *prārabdha*, even though it may already have begun, is all cancelled once *asamprajñāta* samādhi has burned the seeds of that *prārabdha*, whereas in the case of knowledge alone one must wait for final liberation until all the past karmas have fructified. Through yoga, as quoted above, the heap of karmas is immediately burnt, whereas in the case of knowledge a waiting period is implied by the quotation, “I have delay only as long as I am not yet liberated.” Immediate liberation is the efficaciousness of yoga. Its efficacy extends to the fact that *prārabdha* karma, from previous lives, is rendered ineffective.

There is no knowledge like that of Sāṅkhya. There is no strength like that of yoga.

*Mahābhārata (Moksha-dharma-parvan)* 316.2

Here strength means the power to overcome the karma of former lives.

Pain appears in the conscious principle, the spiritual self, only through proximity of the chitta-vṛttis. It is a condition by reason of proximity (*aupādhika*) and not an innate quality. Obviously, then, yoga, consisting of the control of these vṛttis, is the best means for that liberation defined as the cessation of pain. A condition ceases when the entity from which the condition proceeds ceases to be in proximity.

So, knowledge is not opposed to yoga. Knowledge (*jñāna*), renunciation (*vairāgya*), and the diminution of karmic force (*karmāśaya*) are efficacious in total permanent eradication of pain only through that ultimate means defined as the *nirodha* of vṛttis. The total and permanent *nirodha* of vṛttis occurs only in *asamprajñāta* samādhi, in which saṃskāras are totally eliminated and the mind-field is dissolved into the original equilibrium of prakṛti, whereupon final liberation (*mokṣha*) ensues.

*Samprajñāta* samādhi, being simply the foundation for *asamprajñāta* samādhi, may be called a means to liberation; but the direct means thereto is *asamprajñāta* samādhi itself, as indicated by Vyāsa in his commentary on *YS* I.3 and as substantiated in other scriptures, such as:

Liberation means to abandon the state as though one were some other, and to dwell in the identity of one's own nature.

*Bhāgavata-purāṇa* II.10.6

Liberation, then, is simply the spiritual self dwelling in its own nature.

Taking a slightly different approach, which is accepted by all others later in the work, NTC reiterates the well-known tradition of Vedānta that knowledge is gained through learning (*śravaṇa*), contemplating (*manana*) and meditating (*nididhyāsana*). This *nididhyāsana* is the same as samādhi. Nārāyaṇa Tīrtha (NT) is a devout theist whose personal path is that of *bhakti* within the teachings of Vallabhāchārya. Devotion and surrender (*bhakti*) to a personal God according to Vallabha's version of Vedānta is NT's basic approach throughout the *Yoga-sūtras*. Though declaring his adherence to theistic Vedānta, he begins his commentary (NTC) by paying homage to the sages of all traditions. He does not try to reconcile contradictions of philosophies but asserts that all the various yogas, such as

*advaita-yoga* yoga of non-duality

*bhakti-yoga*: yoga of devotion and surrender to a personal God

*brahma-yoga*: yoga of Brahman

*charyā-yoga* yoga of denominational ritual devotions

- dhyāna*-yoga: yoga of meditation  
*haṭha*-yoga: physical yoga within the context of interior, subtle forces  
*jñāna*-yoga: yoga of knowledge  
*karma*-yoga: yoga of action  
*kriyā*-yoga: yoga of ascetic practices (*YS* II.1)  
*lakṣhya*-yoga: yoga of practising concentration on a target  
*laya*-yoga: yoga of dissolution  
*mantra*-yoga: yoga of the practice of mantras  
*prema-bhakti*-yoga: yoga of love and devotion  
*śiva*-yoga: yoga of Śiva  
*siddhi*-yoga: yoga of *siddhis* (accomplishments of powers)  
*vāsanā*-yoga: yoga of directing hidden propensities

are included in the eight limbs (*āṅgas*) of yoga. Throughout his larger commentary, *Yoga-siddhānta-chandrikā*, he attempts to prove this view.

**Sūtra I.2****योगश्चत्तदृत्तिनिरोधः।****yogaś chitta-vṛtti-nirodhah***yogaḥ:* yoga (is)*chitta-:* (of) mind-field*vṛtti-:* (of) operations, activities, fluctuations, modifications*nirodhah:* control, dissolution

**Yoga is the control of the modifications of the mind-field.**

### **Vyāsa's Commentary**

This sūtra was enunciated with the intent to state the definition of that (yoga).

[*Sūtra:*] Yoga is the control of the modifications of the mind-field.

Because the word “all” is not included to suggest “all operations of the mind-field,” it implies that *samprajñāta* also is included in yoga. The mind-field has three dispositions: illumination (*pra-khyā* from *sattva*), endeavour (*pra-vṛtti* from *rajas*) and stasis (*sthiti* from *tamas*); which leads to the inference that the mind-field is constituted of the three attributes (*guṇas*).

The nature of the *sattva* of the mind-field (chitta-*sattva*) is illumination; in contact with *rajas* and *tamas* it loves sovereignty (*aiśhvarya*) and sensuous objects. The same mind-field, when pierced by *tamas* alone, comes to unrighteousness (*a-dharma*), ignorance (*a-jñāna*), lack of dispassion (*a-vairāgya*) and loss of sovereignty (*an-aiśhvarya*).

Again, when the obscuration by delusion has diminished from the mind-field, it shines in its fulness and in all directions; when this is pierced by a measure of *rajas*, it turns towards virtue (*dharma*), knowledge (*jñāna*), dispassion (*vairāgya*) and sovereignty (*aiśhvarya*).

When the impurity of the last vestige of *rajas* has been eliminated, the mind-field becomes established in its own nature. This state comprises only the discernment of the separateness of the *sattva* of the mind-field, the faculty of discrimination (*buddhi*) on the one

hand and the consciousness principle (*puruṣha*) on the other, thus reaching up to *dharma-megha*, the samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things.

The consciousness-potentia (*chiti-śakti*) is immutable, unmoving, not transferable. The objects are shown to her, while she herself is pure as well as endless. The state of discernment between buddhi and the consciousness-potentia is of the nature of sattva, and is a product of sattva. This illumination of discernment is opposite to the consciousness-potentia. Consequently, the mind-field, which has become dispassionate towards this discernment, brings even that discernment under control. The mind in that state is absorbed in saṃskāras alone. That is the seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi. Nothing more is cognized there; hence it is called acognitive (*asamprajñāta*).

That yoga, the control of the modifications of the mind-field, is thus twofold.

## Discussion

This is a *lakṣhana-sūtra* or *nirdeśha-sūtra*, an aphorism defining yoga. Vyāsa's commentary also states the *bhedā*, the two divisions of that yoga.

In the yoga system of psychology there is a term *antah-karana*, meaning "the inner instrument," which is the eleventh sense, in addition to the five active and the five cognitive senses. This *antah-karana*, or the psyche, is divided into four faculties according to function.

*manas*: the active mind that receives sensations from the senses and sends forth reactions to them

*buddhi*: the twofold faculty of discrimination, with its

- outward face, the intellect, and
- inward face, the intuitive wisdom

*ahamkāra*: ego, the faculty by which the personality establishes its identity, such as "I am this body"

*chitta*: the entire mind-field, including the universal and individual unconscious, as well as *manas*, *buddhi* and *ahamkāra*

The sūtra states:

**Yoga is the control of the modifications of the mind-field.**

VB explains that the word *chitta* in this sūtra does not signify only one of the above four faculties but the entire *antah-karana*. It is the substratum of its vṛttis, that in which the functions take place, that in which the waves arise. It is also that very substratum into which the vṛttis dissolve, that is, go into dissolution (*laya*).

Yoga is the *nirodha* of the operations (vṛttis) of the mind-field. The mind-field is a mutation (*parināma*) of sattva, which is the purest aspect of prakṛti. The waves of fluctuations (vṛttis) that arise in this field are part of that very mutation.

This sūtra may also be translated as follows:

**Yoga is the dissolution of vṛttis into their origin in the mind-field.**

In some well-known translations the word *nirodha* has been rendered as “suppression” (Woods, Taimni) or “restriction” (Feuerstein). Nothing can be further from the intent of Patañjali and Vyāsa. *Nirodha* is neither suppression nor restriction, nor even absence. Here we refer the reader to the discussion on pp. 86ff. To understand the word *nirodha*, one needs to comprehend the entire Sāṅkhya scheme of evolution and involution, particularly the latter, which will be explained in the discussion on Sūtra II.19. The last sūtra of the *Yoga-sūtras* (IV.34) defines isolation or liberation (*kai-valya*) as

*gunānām prati-prasavah* ‘the return of the gunas into their causes’,

which means that (RY on YS IV.34)

the saṃskāras dissolve into the mind, mind into *asmitā*, *asmitā* into mahat or buddhi, and buddhi into guṇas.

BG also on YS IV.34 explains this to mean

the dissolution of gunas into their cause, the prakṛti, when they have been brought to the state of *linga*-body.

YS IV.32 also supports this view that the ultimate state of gunas arrives when all of the evolutes have already served their purpose insofar as the spiritual self is concerned and are of no further use. They cease to evolve or cease to continue in the state of disequilibrium. They then dissolve into prakṛti, never again to show their faces to the spiritual self, who has reached isolation. What has been stated as the final goal in the sūtra explaining the fruit, goal, end result, of yoga (*phala-sūtra*) (IV.34) is also supported by this sūtra of definition (*lakṣhaṇa-sūtra*) (I.2). According to VB on this sūtra,

*nirodha* of the vṛttis of the fourfold inner sense (*antah-karana*) means their dissolution (*laya*), which is a particular state of their substratum, the mind. Such *laya* is yoga. It is not the absence of vṛttis, because that does not fit the idea of a state of the substratum.

BR comments:

The vṛttis are the parts (*angā*) of the whole (*angin*), which is the mind-field (chitta). Yoga means *nirodha*, that is, their dissolution (*laya*) into their original cause when their outward transmutation ceases and the process of mutation is reversed.

Thus the effects of the gunas are dissolved back into their respective causes until the process of gradual *nirodha* leads the gunas to dissolve finally into the original prakṛti, at which point the isolation of the spiritual self occurs.

NB concurs.

Yoga is the *nirodha*, turning back, of the vṛttis. This turning back is a particular endeavour which is supersensual, like the endeavor [of the mind to serve] as a source of the continuity of life-processes. This endeavour consists of conscious control (*nigraha*) of the mind-field, and causes the dissolving (*vi-laya*) of the vṛttis

Lest the reader confuse this concept of dissolving with the idea of rendering the vṛttis non-existent, he needs to grasp the Sāṅkhya theory of causation known as *sat-kārya-vada*. This theory is succinctly presented in the *Bhagavad-gītā* (II.16):

That which is not, does not come into being; that which is, never ceases to be.

The entities are transformed according to the attributes present within themselves, but there is never one speck of energy or entity more or less than there ever was or will be. This theory, stated by the founders of the Sāṅkhya system nearly three thousand years before the modern laws of thermodynamics, is the foundation of the Sāṅkhya view of causation. Nothing that ever exists goes into non-existence; it simply becomes unmanifest, the form returning to dwell as an attribute hidden in its cause, whence it originally arose and from which it may emerge again.

This definition of *nirodha* as dissolution of vṛttis into their source in the mind-field is confirmed by the intent implicit in many statements throughout the sūtras and explicit in their commentaries. For example, *YS* II.27 lists the seven grounds which the yogi attains and then leaves behind. Just before the seventh ground, isolation (*mokṣha*) or liberation (*kaivalya*), we read in Vyāsa's commentary the description of the sixth:

The gunas, like rocks falling from the peak of a mountain, (crumbling and) finding no more resting place, are facing dissolution into their cause. Together with that cause (*prakṛti*), they are no longer produced into effects again, because they are of no further purpose to the spiritual self.

By this Vyāsa means that they are of no further purpose insofar as the individual self who is reaching isolation or liberation is concerned (*YS* II.22).

In this context, the reader is advised to study the *Yoga-sūtra* discussions in the following sequence: II.19, I.2, I.19, I.45, II.22, II.26-27, IV.32 and IV.34.

Vyāsa's second sentence clarifies the definition of yoga:

Because the word “all” is not included to suggest “all modifications of the mind-field,” it implies that *samprajñāta* also is included in yoga.

The external vṛttis are the valid proof, etc. enumerated in *YS I.6*. But how can their control be the definition of yoga as samādhi, when sattvic vṛttis of the objects of concentration still remain in *samprajñāta* samādhi? The answer is that the sūtra does not say the control of *all* vṛttis. In *samprajñāta* the rajasic and tamasic vṛttis are under control, and so the wider definition applies. If the sūtra had said *all* vṛttis, then the definition would have been limited to *asamprajñāta*. In the earlier stages of *samprajñāta* there remain objects of concentration, and its final stage is marked as the discernment of the difference between the mental personality and the spiritual self. In *asamprajñāta* there is not even the awareness of this discernment or difference.

The concept of *nirodha* is explained in various ways by the different commentators. BR and AD say that *nirodha*, control of vṛttis, occurs when the mind's constant alteration through its involvement with external experiences ceases; the mind is then turned inwards and consequently the waves (vṛttis), as part of that very mutation or alteration, are dissolved into their origin.

NTC explains the traditional Sāṅkhya-yoga classifications and states that the mind-field (*chitta*) divided into the faculty of discrimination (*mahat* or *buddhi*), ego (*ahamkāra*) and mind (*manas*) constitutes the inner sense (*antah-karana*). The vṛttis are mutations of condition (*avasthā-parināma*), like a flame from a candle, and are of two kinds, internal (*ābhyantra*) and external (*bāhya*). NTC does not define these, but presumably the internal ones are those that arise from the saṃskāras and those which guide the awareness inwards. The external ones, then, are those that are produced from sense experiences as well as those which lead the awareness outwards. Pacification or blowing out (*upa-śama*) of vṛttis is *nirodha*, which means merger or dissolution (*laya*) into their cause. *Nirodha* may be defined, then, as that state in which all the vṛttis of the mind-

field are restrained. When the mind is free from disturbance of the vṛttis, it may be held in the Supreme Self (*parama-ātman*) and be made one with Him. A yogi who has attained this state is therefore called “joined in yoga” (*yoga-yukta*) (NTC).

NB also states that *nirodha* means to return the vṛttis into their origin. This is a supernatural (*atindriya*) endeavour, like the maintenance of the life functions, which does not occur through the efforts of the conscious mind or the senses. *Nirodha* means that the residual impressions (*YS I.18*) of the vṛttis cease to wax and wane; they no longer cause highs and lows but are rendered inoperative and ineffective; the tides of constant alterations and mutations no longer arise. *Nirodha* cannot be translated as suppression, cessation or absence of vṛttis, says NB, on two grounds:

1. In *samprajñāta* samādhi vṛttis remain as explained above.
2. An absence is inoperative. It can produce nothing; it can leave no impressions (*samskāras*). In *YS I.50* and *III.9* it is stated or implied that samādhi creates its samskāras on the mind. Without the constant and continuous increase in the strength of such samskāras, the momentum of mind's inclination and progress towards the higher ground would be unlikely.

Therefore, briefly, in the following order of development, *nirodha* is

- turning the mind away from external involvements to the inward pursuit.
- dissolving the rajasic and tamasic vṛttis into their guna origination within the mind-field, so that
  - the tide of samskāras no longer waxes and wanes; consequently
  - discernment of the distinction between the spiritual self and buddhi occurs, and
  - samādhi leaves its own samskāras on the mind-field.
- finally, in *asamprajñāta*, having the self dwell in the self (*YS I.3*) When an accomplished meditator who has reached *asamprajñāta* opens his eyes to the world, all the vṛttis, all the operations and modifications of the mind-field, are under the control of his volition.

**Now to explain Vyāsa's statement:**

The mind-field has three dispositions: illumination, endeavour and stasis; which leads to the inference that it is constituted of three attributes (guṇas).

The commentators, studying Vyāsa's statement regarding the various mental dispositions produced by the three guṇas, have included in their discussions the five levels (*bhūmis*) named in the exposition of Sūtra 1. We follow the same traditional scheme even at the risk of repeating some of what was already explained in the last sūtra.

VM asks: How is it possible that a single entity, the mind-field, has all these different levels of agitation? The answer lies in the fact that it is a compound entity constituted of the three guṇas. This one single mind-field goes through many conditions because it is composed of the three guṇas whose disequilibrium produces conflict among them and results in one subduing the others and vice versa, so that the alternations and mutations of the mental states (*parināmas*) occur. More about the *parināmas* will be discussed in the commentaries on YS III.9-15.

Why did Vyāsa begin enumerating the five states under Sūtra 1 with rajas of the agitated (*kṣipta*) state, whereas the normal order in the texts is sattva, rajas, tamas? BR answers that unless you first show initiative and activity, you cannot state anything about its stupefaction through tamas or its pacification in sattva. Sattva is shown last because through it one rises to the final, higher grounds of the "concentrated" in *samprajñāta* and "controlled" in *asamprajñāta*. In the "concentrated," the externalized waves cease. In the "controlled," all the waves, as well as the residual impressions of past waves, are also dissolved.

Again, Vyāsa says,

The nature of the sattva of the mind-field (chitta-sattva) is illumination; in contact with rajas and tamas it loves sovereignty and sensuous objects. The same mind-field, when pierced by tamas alone, comes to unrighteousness, ignorance, lack of dispassion and loss of sovereignty.

Again, when the obscuration by delusion has diminished from the mind-field, it shines in its fulness and in all directions; when this is pierced by a measure of rajas, it turns towards virtue, knowledge, dispassion and sovereignty.

The word *chitta-sattva* means sattva that has taken the form of the mind-field. The presence of sattva, the purest aspect, inclines one towards

*dharma*: righteousness, virtues such as non-violence

*jñāna*: wisdom that arises from yoga

*vairāgya*: dispassion and control over desires for worldly or otherworldly pleasures (YS I.15)

*aishvarya*: sovereignty and spiritual freedom

These four, according to *Sāṅkhya-kārikā* 23, are the natural attributes of sattvic buddhi. Of these, the term *aishvarya* ‘sovereignty’ has been given special attention by the commentators. Sovereignty is defined as “the will not being thwarted in any area”; the loss of sovereignty implies that one’s will is thwarted by many impediments. The word *aishvarya* is an abstract noun formed from *iśhvara* ‘the lord’, here not in the sense of God, but rather in a human sense of power, a lordship, a commanding presence, the ability to be effective, to be in control of things. Of course, according to the yoga philosophy, one cannot be in control of things without first being in control of all one’s faculties and abilities and states. The word *iśhvara* is derived from the verb root *iśh*, meaning “to have power over,” “to have control over,” “to be able to (create, control, direct).” The presence of sattva gives one the clear-sightedness so as to enjoy such lordship and effectiveness.

The absence of sattva and the dominance of tamas robs the mind-field of such clarity, and consequently effectiveness in wielding power is lost. This does not mean that one who wields power unrighteously is also endowed with sattva. Unrighteousness is a symptom of tamas, and it is only righteous effectiveness in wielding power which marks the presence of sattva. When sattva is weakened, one becomes dependent, no longer a sovereign.

In the statement that the mind-field has illumination, initiative and stability as a result of the presence of the three gunas, it must be understood that the list is not exhaustive. Illumination entails all kinds of knowledge, but it is only symbolic, an example (*upalakṣhana*) of the qualities that are symptomatic of the presence of sattva. Others, such as a pleasant state of mind resulting in pleasantness of character (*prasāda-guna*), lightness, love, lovingness, etc. are to be understood as included. (See also the discussion on Sūtras I.16, I.33ff.). In the case of rajasic qualities, not only will (volition leading to action) but also anguish, grief and such others are to be understood. The word “stasis” (*sthiti*) to express the attribute of tamas means both “stability” and “stagnation.” It signifies also the veiling of the force of saṃskāras, which would normally produce action from rajas. By *sthiti* are exemplified other qualities, like heaviness, obscuration, dejection or feebleness.

VB explains illumination, initiative and stability as follows: Illumination (*khyāti* or *pra-khyā*) is the knowledge of reality (*tattvajñāna*), and this is meant to include all sattvic qualities attendant thereupon. Worldly inclination or initiative (*pra-vṛtti*) means action (*karma*), and is meant to include all rajasic qualities. Stability or stagnation (*sthiti*) means the cessation of the activities such as the vṛttis in a state like sleep. This is meant to include all tamasic qualities. Even though this explanation may appear plausible at first glance, it later proves to be untenable, for if illumination means the realization of reality, that would limit the sattvic functions of the mind-field to *dharma-megha samādhi*. If sleep is the cessation of all vṛttis, how can sleep itself be included among the vṛttis, as it has been in Patañjali's scheme? MA and VB say, however, that in any case the cessation of vṛttis in the sleep state<sup>7</sup> should not

<sup>7</sup> The student is advised here to note that in Sanskrit there are two different words for sleep

*suṣhupṭi* the sleep state as different from or contrasted with wakefulness and dream

*nidrā* the vṛtti itself, that modification of mind which causes the sleep state to ensue or to continue

The philosophical and psychological distinction between the two should be remembered in any further references to sleep, and the student should check to determine whether *suṣhupṭi* as a state or *nidrā* as a vṛtti is being referred to

be confused with *samprajñāta samādhi*, because it does not lead to the elimination of afflictions (*kleshas*).

VM says that in the mind-field when rajas and tamas are a little less powerful than sattva but are of mutually equal strength, the person loves sovereignty—that is, independence, power, success and effectiveness—and obtains these. He is also drawn to the aesthetic enjoyments of various sensuous pleasures.

NB expresses it differently: When rajas and tamas are equal in strength and dominated by and serving sattva, it is then that a person is attracted to yogic accomplishments or so-called miraculous powers (*siddhis*) as well as to sensual objects; this is the agitated, *kṣipta*, state. When tamas is eliminated and sattva is mingled with a little rajas, then the mind turns to virtue, knowledge, dispassion and sovereignty; this is the distracted, *vikṣipta*, state. *Vikṣipta* is so called because it is somewhat *kṣipta* but sometimes manages to attain stability. It is also the mind of celestial beings as well as of seekers (*jijñāsu*) who are being thwarted by the obstacles (*vikṣhepas*) which are explained in *YS* I.30 (AD).

VM says that when sattva is powerful, the person is inclined towards concentration on true reality (*tattva*). But a little obscuration of sattva by tamas causes him to think that the eight *siddhis* (*YS* III.45), yogic accomplishments, such as the power to become minute, are the true aim, the reality, which one had started out to pursue. When rajas now begins to affect the mind in that state, one is unable to maintain a hold even of the means to the attainment of *siddhis*; the mind merely loves them but is unable to accomplish them. It remains attracted only to the sensuous experiences, such as beautiful sounds, etc., which are its natural objects. These are the distractions of the sattvic mind by tamas and rajas (*vikṣhepas*).

As we have seen, the very interesting observation is made by VM, VB and NB that the state of agitation (*kṣipta*) is that in which one thinks of the yogic accomplishments (*siddhis*) as the desirable goals and is drawn towards them. This seems to contradict the intent of Patañjali and Vyāsa, who said that the *kṣipta* state is not at all a part of yoga, whereas the *siddhis* are a result of the practice of the threefold internal limbs of yoga (*samyama*). An

attraction towards *siddhis*, etc. may be considered a distraction (*vikṣhepa*), the third ground, but not *kṣipta* or a simple agitation of an ordinarily worldly mind.

BR explains: The agitated, disturbed state develops because of the predominance of rajas. When the mind is impelled by rajas, it becomes unsteady, outward rather than inward, drawn towards near or distant, alternating objects of pain and pleasure. Such a mind is of the demonic beings called *daityas* and *dānavas*. When tamas waxes, the mind becomes somnolent (*mūḍha*), unable to distinguish between right or wrong acts, fixated on conflicts through anger and the like. Such is the mind of the demonic beings called *rākṣhasas* and *piśāchas*. AD says also that the agitated (*kṣipta*) mind resulting from overpowering rajas belongs to demonic beings and to those who are frenzied with the pride of wealth. The tamasic mind belongs to ghoul-like beings and to those who are inebriated (AD). When sattva is on the rise, then the mind prevents and avoids the causes of pain and is inclined towards the means of pleasure, of sensuousness, such as lovely sounds. Such is the distracted (*vikṣipta*) mind of the celestial beings called the *devas*.

The mind undertakes an initiative because of rajas. Through tamas it is drawn to malevolence towards others. Sattva brings it pleasantness and pleasure. What impels the mind to move in the direction of righteousness (*dharma*), etc.? It is the presence of a little rajas. The mind, being a composition of three guṇas, can never be without rajas or tamas. It is not, then, that rajas and tamas are to be eliminated, but rather that they are essential and their measure (*mātrā*) is ideally just sufficient to fulfil the purpose of sattva. When present within the limit of this measure, rajas initiates virtue, etc., and tamas imparts stability.

Vyāsa says.

Again, when the obscuration by delusion has diminished from the mind-field, it shines in its fulness and in all directions; when this is pierced by a measure of rajas, it turns towards virtue, knowledge, dispassion and sovereignty.

As VM explains, all movement, energy and initiative is of rajas. It is not intended that mind become devoid of rajas. It is not possible

to achieve this. All material entities, the mind being no exception, are composites of the three *guṇas*. The absence of any one of the three is impossible in any object, entity or experience. What is intended by the discipline of yoga is simply purification of mind so that *tamas* and *rajas* may be brought under the power of *sattva*. AD says that at first, one who is in the *vikṣipta* state of mind can practise control (*nirodha*) of *rajasic* and *tamasic* *vṛttis* alone by replacing them with *sattvic* ones. When the veils of *tamas*, which delude the mind, are withdrawn from the face of *sattva*, and *rajas*, being in lesser proportion than *sattva*, serves the *sattva* in turn, the mind is impelled to go towards righteousness, knowledge and dispassion (*vairāgya*) (YS I.12,15,16), and through these to sovereignty. Such a person, according to Vyāsa, shines in fulness and in all directions. What is meant by "fulness in all directions" is that all the states of matter (*prakṛti*), the various divisions or segments of the twenty-three evolutes of matter, are illuminated to such a mind.

VB explains the same "illumination all around" to mean that the mind-field becomes filled with *vṛttis* concerning all the objects of experience—especially of concentration—by taking their form, thus comprehending them fully with no aspect left in concealment. A mental experience simply means that the mind-field has taken the form of the object being experienced. This applies not only to the minds of individual human beings but also to those universal beings who work with the universal mind to control and direct their bodies that are the universes. It is thus that the mind of beings such as Hiraṇya-garbha, touched by the residue of the universal *rajas*, impels them to direct the world towards virtue, etc.

According to VM, when *tamas* is stronger than *rajas*, it vanquishes *rajas*, whereupon the initiative of *rajas* fails to remove the veil of *tamas* from the mind-field. Then the mind turns towards vice, unrighteousness and such other inclinations. Ignorance (*a-jñāna*) in this context means not the absence of knowledge but rather (a) perverse cognition (*viparyaya*) as defined in YS I.8, and (b) sleep, that is, resorting to the concept of negation as defined in YS I.10. This is the stupefied state. In this context AD says that even though *kṣipta* and *mūḍha* in a sense annul each other, it is

not conducive to transcendental attainment; their mutual cancelling is not a form of *nirodha*.

Returning to Vyāsa:

When the impurity of the last vestige of rajas has been eliminated, the mind-field becomes established in its own nature.

The word *chitta* (mind-field) should not be confused with *chiti*, which is the absolute and eternal power called consciousness (*chiti-shakti*). The latter, being immutable, cognizes nothing external; only the faculty of discrimination (buddhi) in which vṛttis arise ever does so. NB further explains: It is established under YS IV.16 and 17 that there is no such thing as an individual mind. The mind-field is one and all-pervading. It appears individuated when operative within a single personality. Thus the all-pervading mind is capable of apprehending all objects at all times. It is only when veiled by the presence of tamas that it fails to do so. When the tamasic impulses that lead the mind astray to objects other than those of concentration are purged, the mind automatically and effortlessly becomes centered on the object of concentration. This is *samprajñāta*.

Vyāsa says:

This state comprises only the discernment of the separateness of the sattva of the mind-field, the faculty of discrimination (buddhi) on the one hand and the conscious principle (puruṣha) on the other

To reach this stage the personality needs to burn in the dual fire of practice and dispassion (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*) (YS I.12). Thereby the impurities of rajas and tamas are cleansed. Here the buddhi, which is the pure sattva of mind-field, becomes as purified as gold, dwelling in its own nature. This is not to be confused with the spiritual self dwelling in its own nature, as enunciated in YS I.3. When the buddhi faculty dwells in its own nature, it is no longer being fed on the experiences of senses and their objects. It acts independently of them, separated from them through the process

of withdrawal of the senses (*pratyāhāra*) (YS II.54). Yet all of buddhi's functions are not yet completed. It has one final service still to perform for the spiritual self (*puruṣha*). In the buddhi awakens *viveka-khyāti*, the discernment of the distinction between itself and the spiritual self. The mental personality here recognizes the source of its illumination as being the spiritual self and ceases to identify sentience merely with body, senses and mind.

VB explains further the relationship of *samprajñāta* samādhi and the experience of *viveka-khyāti* by saying that discernment does not occur in the first two stages of *samprajñāta*, which are accompanied by the discursive and the subtle thought respectively, and where mind and buddhi still have some "other" as the objects. Only from the third stage onwards, when the mind-field and buddhi are centered upon themselves, does the discernment begin. When one speaks of *samprajñāta* as the state in which the discernment of *viveka-khyāti* occurs it should be understood that the first two stages of *samprajñāta* are included *only* as supportive to the final two, *only* as the means to the latter two, and are not by themselves experiences of such discernment.

According to VB, this *viveka-khyāti*, illuminative of all the virtues and of the knowledge of the nature of all things, is not a spiritual entity but rather a *quality* of buddhi, or it even embraces the totality of buddhi, which is an unconscious principle made of matter or *prakṛti* and filled with the impurities of pain and pleasure. Like a candle flame illuminating objects, it illuminates experiences. *Viveka-khyāti* is the separation of buddhi from *puruṣha*, and Vyāsa says:

thus reaching up to *dharma-megha*, the samādhi of the raincloud  
of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things

Naturally, then, the meditation moves on to the *dharma-megha* state. It is not yet self-realization. It is only the buddhi's recognition of the difference. In *dharma-megha* samādhi all the virtues dawn, and the nature of all things in the universe becomes known; yet it is still not the self dwelling in the self.

Although *viveka-khyāti* is the highest state expounded on so far, it is so only in comparison with the false identifications formerly established. Vyāsa then proceeds from this ground and says that *viveka-khyāti* is just as undesirable as all the former grounds, which have been left behind, and that one must go further to *chiti-śakti* because when a person has slept enough, he wakes; when one has tasted refined sugar, he considers the unrefined to be coarse. So the yogi ceases to be interested in this *viveka-khyāti* and reaches for the higher dispassion (*para-vairāgya*).

VM says that this so far explains the character of the *madhu-bhūmika* and *prajñā-jyotiṣ*, the yogis at the middle ground, the second and third category of yogis described on pp. 77-78.

Then Vyāsa continues further to explain the mental state of the fourth category of yogis, *atikrānta-bhāvaniya*, described on p. 78, which is related to the acognitive samādhi (*asamprajñāta*), to understand which one needs to grasp the nature of the consciousness-potentia (*chiti-śakti*). In *asamprajñāta* one becomes aware of the causes from which the bondage of transmigration (*samsāra*) begins. Seeing the pain of these transmigrations, one develops distaste towards worldly attractions. However, when discernment at the buddhi level has occurred, the wise meditator finds that even this does not suffice to sunder the hold of the three-stranded gunas of prakṛti. (Vyāsa's sentence defining *chiti-śakti* seems to be a paraphrase of a sentence of Āchārya Pañchaśikha, one of the early founders of the Sāṅkhya philosophy, which is given in the discussion of YS II.20.) But here the student is advised to reread Vyāsa's passage:

The consciousness-potentia (*chiti-śakti*) is immutable, unmoving, not transferable. The objects are shown to her, while she herself is pure as well as endless. The state of discernment between buddhi and the consciousness-potentia is of the nature of sattva, and is a product of sattva. This illumination of discernment is opposite to the consciousness-potentia.

VB explains mutation or alteration to mean the cessation of one quality and the rise of another in the same substratum. Such muta-

tion is not possible in *chiti-śakti*, which, free of such mutation, remains absolute, the transcendental reality (*paramārtha-satya*). This consciousness (*chiti*) must not be mistaken as a quality, but is rather an entity whose very form or nature is light (*prakāśha*).

According to the tradition, this potentia (*śakti*) is that very potent one (*puruṣha*). Consciousness is that very consciousness principle, the spiritual self. The *chiti-śakti* is not apart from *puruṣha*. The spiritual self is a being of pure energy (*śakti*). (Refer to pp. 119-20 for information concerning the genders of these terms.)

To understand the nature of the purity of *śakti* it is well to see how VM explains the meaning of impurity. Pleasure, pain and delusion that arise respectively from sattva, rajas and tamas are the impurity. Even pleasure and delusion cause pain to the discerning sage and are to be avoided as being painful in their essence (YS II.15). Even the most beautiful object causes pain when one thinks of its finiteness in time, that it will cease to be. This impurity and finiteness are not attributes of *puruṣha*. Vyāsa says,

She herself is pure as well as endless.

A question arises: How can she be pure when she apprehends the objects of senses, such as sounds, which are pleasant, painful or delusionary? Apprehension means taking on their nature, being coloured by them, being transformed somewhat into their being; this certainly could not be regarded as purity. Furthermore, if she goes through these alterations of taking on their form and abandoning them, going through such transience, how could she be called endless and infinite? The answer is, as the student may read again in Vyāsa:

The objects are shown to her.

It is not that *chiti-śakti* is transformed into transient forms and experiences, but rather that the buddhi takes on their forms and presents this transformed face to the spiritual self—the self whose power of consciousness, being reflected onto the mirror surface of

the buddhi, has enabled the buddhi to develop a semblance of awareness.

*Chiti-śakti* does not reach out to buddhi, is not transmitted on to something else, is not a part of the scheme of evolution, is not one of the evolutes of prakṛti. When the buddhi presents the transient transformations of itself to the view of puruṣha, the latter is not affected by the view, because this principle is immutable. The possible mutations that occur in other entities are described in *YS* III.9-15. Puruṣha's freedom from mutation in spite of what is presented by the buddhi is explained in *YS* IV.18, but here Vyāsa says:

Consequently, the mind-field, which has become dispassionate towards this discernment, brings even that discernment under control. The mind in that state is absorbed in saṃskāras alone. That is the seedless samādhi. Nothing more is cognized there; hence it is called acognitive (*asamprajñāta*).

As one reaches self-realization, there develops a higher dispassion (*para-vairāgya*) (*YS* I.16), because of which one becomes disinterested even in *viveka-khyāti*, the earlier discernment that leads to *dharma-megha* samādhi. Now one reaches the final *nirodha*, where seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi occurs. In this *nirodha*, the mind-field flows quietly (*YS* III.10). Here the saṃskāras that would give birth to a future chitta in a karmic process are burnt to ashes. Only when *nirodha* leads to such burning does it become an instrument of blocking any future afflictions (*kleśhas*) and the resultant storage of karma (*karmāśaya*) that develops into assuming the incarnation in a species, life span during the incarnation, and pain and pleasure during the life span. These now cease, because their very seed is burnt out, no more karmas and their saṃskāras are to be gathered. This is the seedless samādhi, as well as the goal that is explained in Sūtra I.3.

It would appear that some of the commentators (*āchāryas*) on the *Yoga-sūtras* did not fully understand either Patañjali or Vyāsa. Here we take issue with VB and others who paraphrase his words (e.g., NG, NBB) concerning their statements, which are basically as

follows: “Some of our contemporaries claiming to be Vedāntins believe that even in *asamprajñāta* there continues to be self-knowledge, which is non-discursive (*nir-vikalpa*) awareness in the form of a vṛtti of buddhi fixed on the self’s own nature (*sva-rūpa*). This is completely unauthentic, for we read in *Mārkandeya purāṇa* III.45 and other texts:

The yogi should conquer the three guṇas, and join himself to the Supreme Self; making the self absorbed in That, he should abandon even the vṛtti of consciousness.

It is known that in the union with the Lord there is an absence of vṛttis. The non-discursive (*nir-vikalpa*) self-knowledge exists only during *samprajñāta*, when that samādhi reaches the absence of the discursive thought of word, meaning and signification.”

In other words, says VB, *asamprajñāta* (acognitive) samādhi is called so because there is no cognition of any kind in that state. Obviously, here VB has missed the following points:

1. Vyāsa’s commentary on this sūtra says that the mind-field becomes established in its own nature. This statement should not be confused with the purport of YS I.3. The statement here explains the state of the mind-field in *asamprajñāta*, whereas YS I.3 explains the spiritual self becoming established in its own nature in *asamprajñāta*.
2. The awareness in the mind is a vṛtti, a mutation, but the self-awareness of the consciousness principle is an immutable constant. It is not at all in the same category as the mental fluctuations. The whole point of *asamprajñāta* is to dwell in the self-nature, which is nothing if not self-aware.
3. The Sāṅkhya philosophy on which the edifice of the yoga system is built regards puruṣa to be a conscious principle (*Sāṅkhya-karika* 11). If VB is right, then what would happen to the consciousness of the very *chiti-śakti*? The seer is the very power, the entity, the energy of seeing, the very consciousness whom VB wants to proclaim unconscious in *asamprajñāta* samādhi!

In short, VB's statement and argument contradict the intent and the content of *YS* I.3, I.51 and IV.34 and should be ignored.

Vyāsa closes his commentary on this sūtra by reiterating briefly what he had already stated on *YS* I.1.

That yoga, the control of the operations of the mind-field, is thus twofold.

In *samprajñāta* the control is established over the vṛttis of rajas and tamas; *viveka-khyāti* is the result. When sattva also is brought under control and all guṇas are dissolved into prakṛti, the *asamprajñāta* samādhi ensues.

### Summary of Discussion

Had this sūtra said that yoga means control of *all* the operations of the mind-field, only *asamprajñāta* samādhi would have constituted yoga, but since the word "all" was not used, *samprajñāta* samādhi is also included.

Because the mind is an evolute of matter (prakṛti), the three guṇas of prakṛti are clearly manifest in the mind, namely, sattva as illumination of knowledge, rajas as activity and endeavour and tamas as both stability and stagnation. That the mind exhibits these three dispositions proves that it is material and partakes of the three guṇas.

When sattva predominates, supported by rajas and tamas, it leads one to enjoyment of success, effective power and finer sensuous pleasures. When tamas predominates, one is drawn to unrighteousness and ignorance, is averse to the neutrality of dispassion (*vairāgya*) and is unsuccessful or ineffective in the world.

When sattva is purified of tamas, it sees its way clear in all areas and in all directions. In this state a slight touch of rajas gives it the initiative towards knowledge, dispassion and sovereignty.

When the last vestiges of rajas have been eliminated, the mind-field's most sattvic, purest aspect, buddhi, becomes the instrument of that discernment, which distinguishes the material personality from the consciousness principle. This is the samādhi of wisdom

(*samprajñāta*), the final state of which is *dharma-megha samādhi*, the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things. This *saṁādhi* is defined in *YS IV.29*.

The conscious principle is called *chiti-śakti*, the potentia of consciousness. Because of its ray, the faculty of discrimination (*buddhi*) becomes operative. This *śakti* is immutable; it undergoes no change; unlike the evolutes of matter, it does not undergo transference from one form or state to another. It does not move from one locus to another and therefore does not reach out to objects. The objects are presented to her view by *buddhi*, which gathers the impressions through the mind and senses.

The process of *nirodha* is that of dissolving the *guṇa* evolutes into their origins until the mind reaches a state of equilibrium. In *samprajñāta* *saṁādhi* only *rajas* and *tamas* are brought under control; but before reaching *asamprajñāta*, all three *guṇas* are dissolved; the *vṛttis* then rest in their origin in the mind-field, from which they can arise only at the command of *puruṣha*, the spiritual self, who is now in isolation, free.

At the climax of the *samprajñāta* *saṁādhi* occurs the discernment of the distinction between the mental personality and consciousness; however, this is yet an experience within *buddhi*. Beyond this it is controlled by the conscious will to appear or disappear, but the attachment to it ceases. In *asamprajñāta* there is no concern for the "other," for the knowledge of separation, but only for what will be described in the next *sūtra* as the self residing in the self.

**Sūtra I.3**

**तदा द्रष्टुः स्वरूपेऽवस्थानम्।**

**tadā draṣṭuḥ sva-rūpe'vasthānam**

*tadā:* then

*draṣṭuḥ:* seer's

*sva-rūpe:* in own nature

*ava-sthānam:* stability, settling, remaining, being in a state

**Then (upon the dissolution of vṛttis) the seer rests in his own true nature.**

Even though the word *draṣṭṛ* 'seer' is in the masculine gender, Vyāsa explains this word to mean *chiti-śakti*, the consciousness-potentia. The seer, the spiritual self, is the same as the *śakti* called consciousness. The words *chiti* and *śakti* are both feminine; hence one could also translate the sūtra to read:

Then the seer rests in her own true nature.

### **Vyāsa's Commentary**

When the mind-field is in that state, there being no objects, what is the nature of the spiritual self who is ordinarily identified with the apprehensions of buddhi?

[*Sūtra*] Then the seer rests in his own true nature

Then the consciousness-potentia is established in her own nature, as (it is described to be) in isolation (*kaivalya*). When the mind-field is involved with the external world (*vijñāna-chitta*),<sup>8</sup> then she does not appear to be so, even though she is so.

<sup>8</sup> When the mind-field is involved in the ordinary world, or in the thoughts thereof, it is called *vijñāna-chitta*. The word *vijñāna* means "to get up (that is, from meditation) and to be wandering about."

The mind-field in the state of *samādhi* is called *nirodha-chitta* or *samādhi-chitta*. Compared to *asamprajñāta*, the mind-field in *samprajñāta* also is considered *vijñāna-chitta*, whereas compared to the relatively lower grounds, it is regarded as *nirodha-chitta* or *samādhi-chitta*. In *asamprajñāta*, the mind-field is completely *nirodha-chitta* or *samādhi-chitta*.

## Paraphrase of Vyāsa's Commentary

In the ordinary life, the spiritual self is identified with the cognitions, apprehensions, awarenesses, of the buddhi into whom his light reflects. When the mind-field has reached the state of *nirodha*, control through the dissolution of the guṇas, the mind-field has no objects. What is then the nature of the spiritual self? The sūtra answers the question: Then the seer, the spiritual self, rests in his own true nature. This spiritual self, which is the same as *chiti-śakti* (feminine), consciousness-potentia, then dwells in her own nature.

When the mind of an accomplished yogi is interacting with the ordinary world, the *chiti-śakti* still remains established in her own nature, although outwardly she does not appear to be so.

## Discussion

This sūtra has several aims (*ākāṅkṣhās*) (VB). The first one is to complete the definition of yoga as started in the previous sūtra. In the previous sūtra, only the state of the mind-field and its vṛttis was explained, but nothing was said about the state or condition of the spiritual self, which is the main concern of the *Yoga-sūtras*. That is accomplished in this sūtra by way of fulfilling the second aim, which is to explain what is the purpose of the spiritual self that is being served through *nirodha*. This second purpose is served by fulfilling the third aim, which is to draw attention to the absolute nature of the spiritual self, here, immediately after the definition sūtra, so that in the student's mind it may become connected to the *phala-sūtra* (YS IV.34), which states the ultimate goal of yoga, asserting the true nature of the spiritual self. The present sūtra, then, establishes direct connection with the final sūtra of the text; and its enunciation here points to the fact that, linking all the various subject matters discussed in the text, there runs a unifying thread (sūtra) from here to the end of Chapter 4.

We begin with the discussion of Vyāsa's clause qualifying the spiritual self (*puruṣha*).

who is ordinarily identified with the apprehensions of buddhi.

This clause is the translation of a single compound word, *buddhi-bodha-ātmā*, and needs to be understood in some detail (VM and VB).

The living entities normally bound to the identity of the physical body and the mental states do not experience the pure spiritual self. Nor do others observing a living entity see such a puruṣha. Our total apprehension of a conscious self is only by way of observing and recognizing the vṛttis that arise in the mind. In other words, the existence of consciousness without an object in the mind is not suspected. However, according to the Sāṅkhya-yoga system, the buddhi, which is an evolute of matter, is not capable of functioning by itself; it derives its semblance of awareness only through the proximity of puruṣha, from whom it receives its light, in a manner similar to that in which objects are illuminated by the light of the sun. Even the analogy of the sun is imperfect (RS) because the sun is perishable, whereas the self is eternal; yet the analogy suffices for our limited purpose here.

As the sun shines on objects, so the puruṣha shines its ray upon the buddhi and thereby knows all that passes in the buddhi, and observes everything as a witness. But this is not known to the living entities bound to the identity of body, mind-field, buddhi and its vṛttis. Therefore, it is easy for one to assume that there is no other self besides the apprehension of vṛttis in the buddhi. Fire ceases to burn when the fuel is all consumed (NB and BG). The question, therefore, arises as to the condition of the spiritual self when the vṛttis have been dissolved. Would not the puruṣha, whom we ordinarily experience only as identified with the operations of buddhi, simply cease (BG)?

The question continues (VM, AD). In *asamprajñāta*, all that remains in buddhi are the past samskāras, which are no longer active, and even those may be burnt out. Then of what can the spiritual self be conscious? If it were suggested that puruṣha would still be conscious of the buddhi itself, in which there are no more vṛttis and only samskāras remain, this suggestion would go against the entire foundation of the Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophy, which believes that all material entities from the five gross elements to

buddhi, the subtlest, exist only to serve the puruṣha. The service that buddhi performs for puruṣha is to present to him (her?) the view of all the experiences, of which he, puruṣha, remains an un-participating and neutral witness. Besides performing such a service, the buddhi has no other purpose. When there are no vṛttis, no view is being presented to puruṣha; puruṣha has no interest in buddhi for its own sake. Then what purpose do *nirodha* and the mind-field, and buddhi in the *nirodha* state, serve in regard to puruṣha? As explained in the discussion of the two previous sūtras, the twofold purpose of buddhi—the experience of external objects, and the discernment of the separation between buddhi and the self—have both ended with *asamprajñāta* samādhi. Vyāsa's question follows:

When the mind-field is in that state, there being no objects, what is the nature of the spiritual self who is ordinarily identified with the apprehensions of buddhi?

VM asks: Does puruṣha continue to illuminate the buddhi and the external objects much as was happening in the *vyutthāna* situation, except that, because there are no vṛttis, he no longer sees the objects? Or is it as the Nyāya philosophers have hypothesized, that he becomes inactive, unconscious, like a piece of wood, only to go through the necessary transmutations to become object-conscious because of certain conditions present in *vyutthāna*? Or is it, as the Buddhist philosophers believe, that he vanishes like a flame when the conditions for the continuity of the flame have ceased? These are the questions answered by the sūtra:

Then the seer rests in his own true nature.

Insofar as the actual experience of samādhi is concerned, NTC states that the seer, which had become delimited by *ahamkāra* and who is the meaning of the word *I*, dwells in the self which is exclusive (*kevala*) consciousness. When the yogi comes into ordinary life (*vyutthāna*) and sees the time that has elapsed (compare with Sūtra I.51), he infers that he was in the state of samādhi.

It is explained throughout the Sāṅkhya-yoga literature that the self is ever-pure, ever-wise, ever-free, completely unblemished, untouched, unaltered, without regard to time, space, condition or association with matter. It is buddhi alone that undergoes transformations in association with guṇas (VM).

- In association with sattva it takes on the *śhānta*, pacific, attribute
- In association with rajas it takes on the *ghora*, fierce, attribute
- In association with tamas it takes on the *mūḍha*, stupefied or somnolent, attribute

These three—*śhānta*, *ghora*, and *mūḍha*—are the major personality dispositions, depending on the inclinations, thoughts, words and acts of each. It is not puruṣha, the spiritual self, who becomes pacific, fierce or stupefied. Any appearance of *śhānta*, *ghora* or *mūḍha* attributes in puruṣha is a temporary condition of appearance (*aupādhika*) arising from a superimposed condition (*upādhi*). It is interesting to note that the terms *upādhi* and *aupādhika* are not strictly from the early Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophical system. They have been borrowed by the commentators without reserve from the Vedānta doctrinal system, thus creating a syncretic terminology. This by no means changes the Sāṅkhya doctrine itself, but only emphasizes grounds that are shared by both Vedānta and Sāṅkhya, leaving the other areas open to discussion.

In both Sāṅkhya and Vedānta, the analogy of the clear crystal is used freely (VB, VM, NB, BG, RY). A red flower placed near a clear crystal reflects in the crystal, giving it a reddish hue, which vanishes immediately when the flower is removed. The apparent reddishness in the crystal is not innate or real. It is from the *upādhi*, the temporary condition simply attributed to it; it is *aupādhika*. Similarly any appearance of *śhānta*, *ghora* or *mūḍha* personality characteristics do not belong to the soul, the spiritual self, just as nothing really happens to the crystal in the presence of the red flower. The control of vṛttis through the dissolution of the guṇas is analogous to the removal of the red flower from the vicinity of the crystal. The crystal then remains in its own nature; the spiritual self then remains in his own nature. When a condition

is removed, the object that was conditioned thereby does not vanish (VM) but reverts to its own nature. So, in the light analogy, the argument about *puruṣha* vanishing when no *vṛttis* are being presented to it by *buddhi* is untenable.

All analogies are imperfect. The analogy of the crystal and the red flower still suggests some kind of a change taking place in the supposedly unalterable *puruṣha*. The commentator VM therefore tries to improve on this analogy by borrowing another analogy from Vedānta. As one walks on the beach, he sees a silver-like glint and thinks he has found a silver object. As he approaches closer, the object turns out to be a mother-of-pearl seashell. But when the observer thought he saw silver, the mother-of-pearl did not actually turn into silver. Similarly, all the appearances of *śhānta*, *ghora*, and *mūḍha* attributed to *puruṣha* cannot cause or imply any internal change in him.

Prior to *asamprajñāta*, *puruṣha*'s self-luminosity illuminated the *buddhi*; now when the “other” object thus illuminated has fulfilled its purposes and its service is no longer needed, its master continues to be self-luminous. The assumption that he had been an agent of actions (cf. *Bhagavad-gītā* III.27) is eradicated (BR). This completes the definition of *yoga* (NB): *nirodha* that leads to the seer's remaining in his own nature totally and permanently (*ātyantika*) (cf. *Sāṅkhyakārikā* I.1 and *Sāṅkhya-pravachana-sūtra* I.2) is the definition of *yoga*. The word *ātyantika* ‘total and permanent’ implies that (a) momentary experiences of stillness are not to be included; (b) *samprajñāta* *samādhi* is not included except as a step and a means to the *asamprajñāta*; (c) sleep is not included; and (d) the dissolution of individual minds that is incidental to the cosmic dissolutions is not included. So, we may conclude in Vyāsa's words:

Then the consciousness-potentia is established in her own nature,  
as (it is described to be) in isolation (*kaivalya*).

The *Yoga-sūtras* consider the gender of “*puruṣha*” merely a linguistic or grammatical convenience. This masculine word, equated with spiritual self, soul, and so forth, is used interchangeably with the feminine words

*śakti*: energy, force, power

*chiti*: consciousness

*chiti-śakti*: consciousness-potentia, consciousness power,  
consciousness principle

*dr̥ṣhi*: sight, seeing

*dr̥ṣhi-śakti* or *dr̥k-śakti*: seeing-potentia, seeing power

This approach is based on the ancient dictum that *śakti-śaktimataḥ abhedah*, “there is no distinction between *śakti* and the possessor of *śakti*; the power and the power-possessor are one.” Hence *puruṣha* and his power are one and the same. The feminine words are used in *YS* II.16,20,25; IV.34. As we have stated, *YS* IV.34 more or less reiterates the purpose of this Sūtra I.3. Vyāsa quotes a part of *YS* IV.34—*sva-rūpa-pratiṣṭhā-chiti-śaktih*—as a commentary on I.3. The last sentence of Vyāsa’s commentary is:

When the mind-field is involved with the external world (*vyutthāna-chitta*), then she (*chiti-śakti*) does not appear to be so, even though she is so.

(The compound word *vyutthāna-chitta* has been explained in the footnote on p. 114.) Even though in outward appearances the consciousness-potentia, the spiritual self, seems corruptible, it is not so. “Even though she is so” (that is, pure and self-luminous, dwelling in her own nature), the appearances of corruptibility are misleading—much like the appearance of silver in a seashell.

“It is by the elimination (*nirodha*) of all other vṛttis that one gains the yoga of one-mindedness with Me,” says the Lord (Śhiva) in the *Kūrma-purāṇa* and similar texts. By quoting this, NTC implies that the meaning of yoga is the union with Deity. It also means, as the *Bhagavad-gītā* states, that in this state “the self, seeing the self, is contented with the self” (VI.20).

NTC goes on to say that the great yoga (*mahā-yoga*) is that in which there are no objects of concentration as supports (*ālambana*) and there remains only the manifestation (*abhi-vyakti*) of one’s own nature. He means that *mahā-yoga* is the yoga of absence or negation of all transient feelings and states (*abhāva-yoga*). This

*abhāva*-yoga is yoga in which all is contemplated as Void or Empty (*śhūnya*), whereby one then begins to see the self. In *mahā*-yoga one sees the ever-blissful (*nitya-ānanda*), unanointed (*nir-āñjana*) self (ātman).

**Sūtra I.4**

वृत्तिसारूप्यमितरत्र ।  
vṛtti-sārūpyam itaratra

*vṛtti*: (with) operations, activities, fluctuations, modifications

*sārūpyam*: similarity, assimilation, appearance of, identification  
of form or nature

*itaratra*: elsewhere

**Elsewhere, identification with the form and nature of vṛttis.**

*In states other than asamprajñāta samādhi, the spiritual self appears identified with the vṛttis.*

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

How then? Because then the objects are being presented to (puruṣha's) view,

[*Sūtra*:] Elsewhere, identification with the form and nature of vṛttis.

Puruṣha appears as having no mode (*vṛtti*) as distinguished from that of the vṛttis of the mind-field which (arise) in the *vyutthāna* situation. The mind-field is like a magnet. It renders benefits and service by its mere presence in the proximity. Being an object of (puruṣha's) view, it becomes the property and possession (*svam*) of puruṣha, who is its master and proprietor (*svāmin*). Therefore, the cause of puruṣha's cognition of the vṛttis of the mind-field is his beginningless connection (therewith). As the sūtra (of Pañchaśikha) says:

There is only one perception; reflective cognition (*khyāti*) alone is the perception

**Paraphrase of Vyāsa's Commentary**

Vyāsa continues from the last sentence of the commentary on YS I.3, which was:

When the mind-field is involved with the external world (*vyatthāna-chitta*), then she [the consciousness-potentia, dwelling in her own nature] does not appear to be so, even though she is so.

Then how does she appear to be? When buddhi is presenting objects in the form of vṛttis to her view, it appears as though *chiti-śakti's* (puruṣha's) existence or mode of being in the *vyutthāna* situation is no other than that of the vṛttis, being completely undistinguished from them. As Pañchaśikha, one of the ancient founders of Sāṅkhya, said:

“  
Both the buddhi and puruṣha then appear to have only one perception, which is their single reflective cognition, as though both were one.

The mind-field is like a magnet. It does not need to make an effort. Like a magnet, simply by its presence it serves the purpose of puruṣha, presenting to his view whatever vṛttis arise from its experience of external objects. It is the property of the master, who is puruṣha himself. Puruṣha has always been its master and it has always been his possession. This relationship of theirs is beginningless and natural. No other relationship between them is possible because of their respective natures.

## Discussion

A number of controversial points need clarification in order to fully understand this sūtra. The most important of these is the question as to what constitutes the actual personality. Even though this discussion is most relevant to *YS II.6*, where *asmitā* is dealt with, one could not follow the argument on the current sūtra and other subsequent sūtras without some introduction here.

The commentators, great *āchāryas* of the past, all agree that the spiritual self is incorruptible and immutable. But if this is so, why does it appear to be corruptible, mutable, impure, ignorant and consequently bound? Here the *āchāryas* present two hypotheses to try to explain this. The first of these can be summarized as follows:

The composite mental personality is created by puruṣha's illumination reflecting in the buddhi, and the vṛttis arising in the buddhi and mind that are thus illuminated.

- The subjective, composite personality experiences objects being presented to the senses, and sensations being conveyed to the mind-field.
- The current experiences as well as the impressions (*sāmiskāras*) produce vṛttis in the mind-field, especially in the buddhi.
- The innermost aspect of the mind-field is buddhi, which is illuminated by the rays of puruṣha reflecting in it, like the sun's rays in a mirror.
- Whatever processions of vṛttis occur in the mirror of buddhi, puruṣha remains untouched by them, a neutral witness.

To summarize the argument, the body serves as the vessel to contain this composite mental personality, and this entire complex is thus ruled by the presence, proximity, of the neutral, conscious spiritual self. In this scheme the predominantly sattvic composition of the mirror of buddhi causes it to receive puruṣha's illumination, enabling it, in turn, to illuminate external objects, experience them and create the wave-like vṛttis within itself. Here puruṣha remains completely untouched. The assumption of a personality is created only in the buddhi and chitta, while puruṣha remains immutable and ever-free. The analogy of a flower's colours reflecting in the clear crystal, then, is inappropriate with regard to puruṣha because nothing is reflected therein. The buddhi illuminated by puruṣha is alone responsible for all the fluctuations and modifications. The analogy of the seashell appearing as glinting silver, however, is more applicable. An observer sees the silver, but the seashell *sui ipse* remains unchanged. It is buddhi that says, "I am happy, unhappy," etc., but puruṣha himself is a neutral witness.

The second hypothesis (especially VB, BG, NB) is the same as the first except that the vṛttis arising in the chitta-buddhi complex are reflected back into puruṣha. In this hypothesis puruṣha mistakes himself as thinking, "I am happy, unhappy," etc., and it is here

that the analogy of the coloured flower reflecting in the crystal is relevant. The imperfections of this analogy, however, are obvious. How the sun-like puruṣha, the very source of the illumination reflected in the sattvic buddhi, can then become a crystal, receiving the reflection of buddhi's vṛttis into itself and actually falling into the semblance of a bondage, is difficult to understand. This hypothesis makes puruṣha changeable, mutable, subject to *parināma* (alteration) through the proximity or influence of a factor outside himself, which goes against the central tenets of Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophy and destroys the very foundation of the doctrine of the eternal purity of puruṣha. Possibly the āchāryas postulating this hypothesis hoped to avert its adverse effects on the doctrine by citing the analogy of the crystal and using phrases like “*semblance of mutability*” and “*as if* puruṣha were undergoing a change, but *in reality* remaining unchanged like the crystal.” In fact, however, the reflection of a red *japā* flower in the crystal does imply a temporary change in the crystal. If the states of buddhi were to reflect in puruṣha, one would have to admit puruṣha as being subject to colouration (*rāga*).

Most commentators have not succeeded in resolving this difficulty. In fact, they cannot make up their minds as to which of these two possibilities is upheld by Patañjali and Vyāsa. Consequently they have tied themselves into polemical knots of contradictions. In one paragraph the puruṣha is immutable; in the next the colours reflect in him; and in the third he thinks, “I am happy, unhappy,” and so forth. Only BR and HA have held fast to the first hypothesis, which follows the true tenet of Sāṅkhya-yoga. The other āchāryas, revered as they are, have erred, as we shall see again further on.

Vyāsa establishes the ever-pure nature of the spiritual self as follows:

Because then the objects are being presented to (puruṣha's) view.

[*Sūtra*] Elsewhere, identification with the form and nature of vṛttis

“Elsewhere” means the state other than the *asamprajñāta* samādhi referred to in the last sūtra. The antonym of *samādhi* is *vyutthāna*, literally, “getting up, being away from (meditation).” Compared to *asamprajñāta*, even *samprajñāta* is considered *vyutthāna*. “Getting up” does not imply merely moving the body away from one’s meditation seat, but rather implies the absence of stillness of the mind in which the vṛttis continue to arise.

In this *vyutthāna* state, incorporating everything lower than *asamprajñāta*, the vṛttis are shown to the spiritual self. The question naturally arises as to whether puruṣha’s state undergoes an alteration, whether he is one thing in *samādhi* and something else in *vyutthāna* and therefore not immutable (*a-parināmin*). VM says that in *vyutthāna* the mind’s vṛttis of *śhānta* (peace, calm), *ghora* (ferocity) and *mūḍha* (somnolence, stupefaction) may merely appear to become the vṛttis of puruṣha. VB insists, however, that in *vyutthāna* there occurs *sārūpya*—identity or similarity of the form or nature of the seer with that of the mind-field in the vṛtti—and that this similarity or identity consists of the reflection and counter-reflection becoming one. VB’s idea is that puruṣha’s light illuminates the buddhi and the vṛttis of the buddhi reflect in puruṣha, becoming the latter’s vṛttis; these vṛttis reflecting back into buddhi’s mirror assume identity with the original vṛttis.

The vṛttis are said to be like a candle flame (VM, NB). A candle flame exists for a moment only but appears continuous because as soon as one set of particles is consumed, another set takes its place. These are, thus, mutations of state and not merely of attributes and distinguishing marks (YS III.13). These vṛttis are like molten copper poured into a crucible taking the latter’s form. Because they are a product of the three guṇas and, therefore, seats of pleasure, pain and delusion, they become pacific (*śhānta*), ferocious (*ghora*) or stupefied (*mūḍha*). The vṛttis of puruṣha in this view become inseparable from these because the objects in the form of vṛttis are presented, shown, to puruṣha, and reflected in him. The “vṛtti” is not a mere quality, as we read in the *Sāṅkhya-pravachana-sūtra* (V.107):

The vṛtti is a principle different from a fragment or quality. It serves the purpose of causing a connection and glides forth (among objects, senses and the mind).

Unlike a spark of fire, the vṛttis in this view are not a fragment of objects, senses or the mind but a modification that simply glides along, establishing connections.

VM says that any alteration occurs in the buddhi alone and that vṛttis can be attributed only to the reflection of puruṣha present to the buddhi. As someone who seeing his clean face in an unclean mirror might go away thinking his own face to be unclean, so puruṣha's uncleanness is a mere appearance. VB says that since the reflections of the vṛttis cast upon puruṣha are insubstantial (*a-vastu*), not a real object, puruṣha's immutability remains unhampered in spite of them, again, like that of a crystal in which a colour is being reflected. As we read in the *Sāṅkhya-pravachana-sūtra* (VI.28):

As the *japā* flower does not really cause a colouring of the crystal,  
but merely an assumption

of identity, so it is in the case with the vṛttis reflecting in puruṣha. VM says: *As though* buddhi takes on the role of puruṣha, it appears *as if* puruṣha has vṛttis. But, these vṛttis, having no substance like that of objects, cannot really affect the puruṣha. All that happens is a false assumption (*abhimāna*). A superimposition (*samāropa*) occurs, which is an idea similar to Vedānta's superimposition (*adhyāropa*). Because of this, puruṣha (*a*) who has no perversive perception (*viparyaya*), may be considered as having perceived falsely, (*b*) who has no cause to experience the fruits of karma, may be considered an experiencer; (*c*) who has no discernment (*viveka-khyāti*), may be attributed to possess the discernment of the separation of self and prakṛti. *Chit-śakti* has no suffering and so forth so far as commentators such as VM are concerned. However, in the view of VB, NB and BG, she considers herself in *vṛuttihāna*, *as though* in suffering and so forth, but these false assumptions are again insubstantial (*a-vastu*). One might well ask

these commentators that if the evolutes of prakṛti are all substantial, how can the modifications in the mind-field, which is an evolute, be insubstantial?

The analogy of the crystal used in this way is inapplicable also because, we repeat, the appearance of a colour is indeed an alteration. The fact is that absolutely nothing reflects on puruṣha. The commentators have failed to grasp the actual locus of the appearance of similarity and identity (*sārūpya*) of buddhi and puruṣha. This *sārūpya* can be understood only as follows: It is not as though puruṣha mimics the vṛttis of the buddhi and cries out, “I am unclean!” Puruṣha’s luminosity remains constant and unaffected. It is the buddhi, an unconscious evolute of matter having been touched by the luminous presence of puruṣha, which masquerades as puruṣha, saying, “I am a spirit. Though I am pure, I appear as impure. Though not subject to suffering, I appear to suffer. It is all my play.” In other words, the locus of *sārūpya* is buddhi, the innermost aspect of the mind-field. Other observers see this person and think, “He suffers” “Puruṣha within him must suffer.” The buddhi also says, “I, puruṣha, suffer!” It is as though a slave at the palace gate wearing velvet and gold given by the king were to declare, “I the king am a king no more!”—yet the true king sits on his throne resplendent in all his glory.

All the repetitions of the particle word *iva* (“as though,” “as if”) and similar words and phrases employed by the commentators simply do not apply to puruṣha. They apply to the false I-ness (*asmitā*), which is the true explanation of *sārūpya*. It is in the sūtra defining *asmitā* (YS II 6) that Patañjali uses the word *iva*: “as if,” “as though” the power of the seer (spiritual self) and of the seen (mind-field, an evolute of prakṛti) had assumed an identity. Any superimposition (*samāropya*) goes only this far and does not extend to puruṣha. Any assumption of false identity (*abhimāna*) is an act of the ego (ahamkāra), and to attribute it to puruṣha is totally contrary to Sāṅkhya philosophy.

However, to support his view that the vṛttis reflect into puruṣha, VB quotes *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* I.14.35:

**Homage to Him, the universal self, Who has assumed the form of the inner instrument and Who presents to ātman, the self, the experiences grasped with the senses.**

This may be a view presented in the *Viṣhṇu-purāṇa*, but it is definitely not the tenet held by Patañjali and Vyāsa.

On the other hand, VB is more coherent when he challenges the views of others who hold that “I am happy, unhappy,” etc. are innate attributes of ātman, the self. He argues that if pleasure, pain, etc. were mutative modes (*parināmas*) of the self, then there would be no possibility of averting the vṛttis without cutting the ātman piece by piece! There would simply be no sense in pursuing liberation. If one were to propose that the innate pleasure and pain and so forth of the self were brought into activity through the union of the mind with the self, then why not suppose that mind alone is sufficient to produce the effects such as pleasure and pain. Mind is efficacious enough. To assume the mind, self and their union, all three, to be the cause where one would suffice is logically cumbersome (*gauravam*).

A possible assumption that buddhi alone, without puruṣha, might be the experiencer of its own being as the self, is contradicted throughout the Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophy and will be discussed under Sūtra IV.19ff.

The viewpoint of Patañjali and Vyāsa is upheld in texts like the *Bhagavad-gītā* (XIII.29).

Who sees the acts as being performed through prakṛti alone, he thereby sees ātman as not acting at all

It is well here to mention Pañchaśikha, who, after Kapila and Āsuri, was third in line among the founders of Sāṅkhya. His vast work, *Śhashti-tantra*, was lost in antiquity, and from it only a handful of quotations have filtered down to the present. We read Vyāsa's quotation from him:

There is only one perception, reflective cognition (*khyāti*) alone is the perception

*Khyāti* here is not to be confused with discernment of the separateness of buddhi and puruṣha (*viveka-khyāti*), which occurs in the final stages of *samprajñāta* samādhi and leads to *asamprajñāta*. The *khyāti* here is the opposite of this discernment; it is rather an appearance of the identity of buddhi and puruṣha, whose reflective cognition in the *vyutthāna* situation appears single.

The term *khyāti* then technically combines within its meaning the entire process described on p. 124, and the reader is advised to study that description again. The locus of this perception is *asmitā*, which occurs in buddhi. Here the light of self mingles with the sattva-luminosity of matter (*prakṛti*). This perception (*darśana*) is defined by VM to include only externalized perception, the mechanical process leading to the arousal of vṛttis in the mind. It is not to be confused with consciousness (*chaitanya*), which is an attribute of the spiritual self alone. It is the worldly perception that waxes and wanes, while consciousness of the self remains constant. Also what other observers perceive as a composite personality (see p. 124) is a process that occurs at this level.

We have translated *khyāti* as “reflective cognition.” Even though the term *khyāti* occurs in other Sanskrit philosophical systems in a different sense (that of cognition in logic), here it has a narrowed meaning limited to the definitions within our system. We have translated the word as “reflective cognition” to include three levels of the process of *khyāti*:

- 1 The light of self reflecting in buddhi, thereby enabling the latter to cognize objects and to experience sensations;
2. the buddhi thereby cognizing these objects as they also reflect into the buddhi; and
- 3 the reflection of the self and that of the objects mingling in buddhi, producing vṛttis, and buddhi again reflecting upon them, contemplating them.

Our process of perception consists solely of this. As Pañchaśikha has stated, there is no other perception but this process.

Because of this reflective process (HA) puruṣha and buddhi appear as if unified. They appear one (RY), like water and milk

mixed, even though they are two entirely separate entities; one is not converted into the other, but their closeness causes them to seem as one. Again it must be remembered that this commingling occurs not in *puruṣha* but in the *buddhi* alone. Consciousness (VM) is the nature of *puruṣha* and not of the *khyāti* process.

How is it possible then that the formless *puruṣha* reflects in the *buddhi*, which, though material, is so subtle as to appear formless? The answer is that (VB) the analogy of reflection needs to be analysed. It does not mean an actual reflection like that of the sun into a jar or pool of water. The “reflection” is twofold:

1. Through the proximity of *puruṣha* (VB) some natural alteration occurs in the *buddhi* enabling it to cognize.
2. A certain other alteration (*parināma*) occurs (VB, NB) in the *buddhi* upon the proximity of an object, whereby the *buddhi* subtly takes on the very form of the object thus perceived. That alteration is called the *vṛtti*.

But what exactly is the relationship between the mind-field and the self, and what causes their union? Vyāsa says:

The mind-field is like a magnet. It renders benefits and service by its mere presence in the proximity [of the spiritual self].

It is not possible, however, (VM) for something material to benefit the pure spiritual self. If the mind, a material evolute, were to affect the self in any way, that would subject the self to a certain corruptibility. The word *upa-kāra* in its conventional signification (*ruḍhi*) means “benefit,” but here it can only signify “service,” with a derivative meaning (*yaugika*): *upa* ‘near’, *kāra* ‘to do’—“to simply act in a certain way by mere presence.” The *buddhi* (HA) serves as the self’s instrument for yoga and liberation by its mere proximity, without ever touching the latter,-as a magnet (VB, NB) pulls out a pin stuck in the body without an active effort of its own. The mind-field (VM) is not in any way joined to *puruṣha*.

The service that *buddhi* performs for *puruṣha* is to be its “perceptible” (*dr̥śhya*), that is, its object of perception, so that *khyāti*

may occur and consequently puruṣha's capacity to be the master over matter may be made manifest. To serve as a *drśhya* means (VM) to be the self's object of experience when the mind-field is converted into the forms of the objects it experiences from the external world. For example, a sight or sound presented to the mind-field is refined into the mind's *vṛtti*. In the *khyāti* process such a *vṛtti* commingles with the light of self and serves the latter by its proximity without ever touching or affecting it.

The term “proximity” (*sānnidhya*) needs to be understood. It does not mean (VM, HA) proximity in space and time because according to Sāṅkhya philosophy the spiritual self is beyond space and time altogether, and matter, too, is beyond space and time in its unmanifest *prakṛti* (*pradhāna*) state. The proximity consists of compatibility (*yogyatā*) of qualities inherent in the two. That is, puruṣha has the power to make matter its servant, and matter has the capacity to serve. The locus of this proximity, the merger of the compatibilities, is in the “singularity of a cognition” (*pratyaya*), which is explained by Vyāsa as:

Being an object of (puruṣha's) view, it [matter as its evolute the mind-field or buddhi] becomes the property and possession (*svam*) of puruṣha, who is its master and proprietor (*svāmin*). Therefore, the cause of puruṣha's cognition of the *vṛttis* of the mind-field is his beginningless connection (therewith).

This “beginningless connection” needs to be understood. The Sanskrit word used is not *samyoga* ‘union’. A union is normally defined as “a coming together of those that were separate.” This definition cannot apply to the union of eternal factors such as the spiritual self and unmanifest matter. Hence Vyāsa uses the word *sambandha* ‘relationship or connection (rather than union with)’. The self has known eternally that matter is his domain, his possession and property. In that context he knows, “Buddhi is mine.” The fact (HA) that the self is the seer, and the matter is seen, is eternal, it is the innate nature of the relationship. The eternal entities have eternal natures and the connections between such are, therefore, eternal. This answers (VM) the question: If the bondage is caused

by ignorance (which is defined in *YS* II.3,5), what causes the beginning of such ignorance? That ignorance is merely the relationship between the seer and the seen, beginningless, known to *puruṣha*, and eternal; it has no other extrinsic cause.

Another question is: If the relationship is eternal, what happens during the dissolution of the universe (*pralaya*), the alternate of creation in the endless cycles of creation and dissolution? VB answers: When a person sleeps, he still remains the proprietor of his treasure. Furthermore, when a relationship is not any factor or process apart from the inherent attributes of the *relata* or the correlates, such problems do not arise. The relationship between self and matter is not a process that begins or occurs under certain conditions, such as creation, and ceases under certain other conditions, such as dissolution. The inherent quality remains as a seed. The recurrence of *khyāti* is not caused by any external factor but is retained as a seed, a potential, as part of the inherence of the attributes of each entity. The effectiveness of such inherence continues only through the impressions (*samskāras*) in the buddhi, the inclinations that their strength produces, becoming propensities (*vāsanās*) and leading to the pacific, fierce or stupefied *vṛttis*. *Sāṅkhya-pravachana-sūtra* I.104 and VI.55 say (VB) that such effectiveness of the inherent attribute ceases at the pure consciousness when isolation (*kaivalya*) occurs and *khyāti* ceases.

But, asks an objector, how is it possible (VB) that an eternal or beginningless relationship can exist as inherent in something (i.e., *mahat* or *buddhi*) which is a non-eternal evolute of matter? The problem is solved by reminding ourselves of the Sāṅkhya tenet of *sat-kārya-vāda*, that an effect always exists within its cause, and the cause does not cease simply because the cause has been transmuted into an effect. Consequently *mahat* or *buddhi* never cease to partake of an inherent relationship which is an eternal attribute of their cause, *prakṛti*.

As stated in *YS* I.22 and confirmed elsewhere (VB), the relationship discussed above exists only between the individual *puruṣha* and his personal mind-field and not between the said individual and all mind-fields, nor between the universal *puruṣha* and a specific

mind-field. Vṛttis and the spiritual self's awareness of them (*YS* IV.18) are two separate factors, like a candle illuminating the interior of a jar into which it has been placed, but from which it maintains a separate identity. At no stage do they become one, like a jewel and its light. In this context the reader should deeply contemplate the two analogies of a candle in a jar and of a jewel and its luminosity. Vyāsa's quotation from Pañchaśikha,

There is only one perception; reflective cognition (*khyāti*) alone is the perception,

was explained and discussed on pp. 129-31 and need not be repeated here. To conclude, then:

As the moon does not break up even though its reflection in turbulent water appears fragmented,  
so puruṣha (BR) remains unaltered in the *khyāti* process of buddhi.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>9</sup> For a summary of the discussion on this sūtra please read the paraphrase of Vyāsa's commentary and the first hypothesis regarding subjective composite personality defined on p 124. The rereading of this material will establish that puruṣha always remains a neutral witness. It is thus always in samādhi (refer to p 108 and subsequent discussion). In *vṛtti-thāna*, puruṣha appears to be involved in vṛttis but is not really so because the process of *khyāti* occurs in the buddhi and not in the spiritual self. Any statements or arguments proposing that vṛttis reflect into, or that *khyāti* occurs in, puruṣha are experientially fallacious as well as untenable in the light of the basic Sāṅkhya-yoga tenet that puruṣha is incorruptible. BG, NB, NBB reflect VB's opinions on these matters for the most part and are therefore not quoted extensively.

**Sūtra I.5**

वृत्तयः पञ्चतयः किलष्टाकिलष्टाः।

vṛttayah pañchatayyaḥ kliṣṭākliṣṭāḥ

*vṛttayah*: the vṛttis (are)

*pañchatayyaḥ*: fivefold (and of two kinds)

*kliṣṭa-*: afflicted, painful and impure, imbued with *kleśhas*, and  
*a-kliṣṭāḥ*: not afflicted, not painful, pure, not imbued with *kleśhas*

The vṛttis are fivefold (and of two kinds): afflicted, painful and impure, imbued with *kleśhas* (*kliṣṭa*); and not afflicted, not painful, pure, not imbued with *kleśhas* (*a-kliṣṭa*).

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, those (vṛttis) must be controlled. Though many, the mind-field's

[*Sūtra*:] vṛttis are fivefold (and of two kinds): afflicted . . . and not afflicted.

The afflicted, painful and impure vṛttis are caused by the *kleśhas* and are causes of the *kleśhas*. These become the field for the abundant growth of the domain of karmas (*karmāśaya*).

The unafflicted vṛttis are those whose subject is discernment (*viveka-khyāti*), and which impede the power of gunas. These remain unafflicted even when fallen in the currents of the afflicted ones. They remain unafflicted also in the intervals of the afflicted ones.

The afflicted vṛttis also (appear) in the intervals of the unafflicted ones

The vṛttis produce their own kind of samskāras, and in turn, the samskāras produce identical vṛttis. Thus the wheel of vṛttis and samskāras revolves incessantly.

When the mind-field becomes such that it has completed the work within its authority, it stands on its own.

Or it even goes into dissolution

## Paraphrase of Vyāsa's Commentary

The vṛttis with which puruṣha appears to be assimilated (*YS* I.4) need to be brought under control according to the definition of *yoga* (*YS* I.2). The vṛttis are innumerable but can be classified into a fivefold division of categories (*YS* I.6). Furthermore, all these five categories of vṛttis are of two types: (a) afflicted, painful, impure (*klīṣṭa*), and (b) unafflicted, not painful, pure (*a-klīṣṭa*). The afflicted vṛttis are caused by *kleśhas* and produce further *kleśhas* (*YS* II.3) and cause the growth of the domain of karma (*karmāśaya*), which leads to continued bondage (*YS* II.12).

The unafflicted, sattvic, vṛttis are those that lead to discernment (*viveka-khyāti*) by impeding the power of the *guṇas*. Even when the unafflicted vṛttis are experienced within the streams of the afflicted ones, they yet remain unafflicted. Also, when they appear in the intervals between the periods of afflicted ones, they remain unaffected by the latter.

Similarly, the afflicted vṛttis make their appearance in the intervals between the periods of unafflicted ones.

The vṛttis produce on the mind-field their own kinds of impressions (*sāṃskāras*), which in turn create similar vṛttis, and the vicious circle continues without ceasing.

The mind, however, is purified through the practice of *yoga*. Furthermore, the sattvic vṛttis are encouraged so that the mind progresses towards *saṃprajñāta samādhi*, which leads to *viveka-khyāti*, the discrimination, discernment, of the separateness of the composite personality and the spiritual self.

At this point the mind has served its purpose; it has completed the work that is within its authority. Now the vṛttis are of no further service. Mind alone remains, entirely on its own, without reference to external objects.

The relationship between the spiritual self and all the material evolutes, including the mind-field, is now severed and all the evolutes dissolve into the equilibrium of *prakṛti*. Puruṣha's isolation, *kai-valya*, is now complete.

## Discussion

We begin with Vyāsa's sentences:

Now, those (vṛttis) must be controlled. Though many, the mind-field's

[*Sūtra*:] vṛttis are fivefold (and of two kinds): afflicted . . . and unafflicted

The *Yoga-sūtras* instruct one to control the vṛttis of the mind-field. Now, one can be taught only what is possible (VM), and the control of vṛttis is not possible without first knowing them. But they are too numerous to be counted even in a thousand lifetimes. They are innumerable not only within a single person's mind-field but all together in the mind-fields of many persons (VM, VB, SS, RY, NB). How then can these innumerable vṛttis be known in order to be controlled (VM, VB)? This sūtra solves the problem by classifying the innumerable vṛttis into five categories (VM, VB). All the other vṛttis are products of these five (VB). Through control of the five, all their derivatives, the totality of innumerable vṛttis, are controlled. Vṛttis such as *rāga* (attraction) and *dvesha* (aversion) are automatically prevented from arising (BG) when their causes, the five major vṛttis, are brought under control.

The list of five is not exhaustive (VM and RY on *YS* I.6). No statement is made to exclude such vṛttis as, for example, the loss of a sense of direction, or the false impression of a single line or a circle of fire that is induced when a torch is moved rapidly (*alātachakra*). Even though it may be difficult to place such mental activity within any of the five categories of vṛttis, any exclusion is of a *paryudāsa* type (negation by omission) rather than *prasajyapratiṣhedha* (negation by direct statement) against a possibility. A *paryudāsa* negation is not very strong and implies that an entity omitted may be included to fulfil the original intent (*ākāṅkṣhā*). The *ākāṅkṣhā* here is to include rather than exclude, as indicated by the fact that the words used are *pañchatayyāḥ* 'fivefold' and *pañchadhā* (see Vyāsa on *YS* I.6) 'divided in five ways', and not simply *pañcha* 'five'.

The sūtra makes these five vṛttis known. “Vṛttis of the mind-field” refers to the genus mind-field, so that all the specific mind-fields are included. The vṛtti is a single entity, a whole, with five parts (VM, RY), namely, *pramāṇa*, etc. enumerated in the next sūtra. Hence the term “fivefold” (*pañchatayi*).

At this point VB gives a new twist to the word *vṛtti*. The original meaning of this word is as we have translated it, but its secondary meaning is “means of livelihood.” Vṛttis are the mind-field’s means of livelihood (*vṛttis*); it is by these that the mind continues to survive. Without them it has no existence.

To provide practical application (VM) to the theory and to ascertain which of the vṛttis are desirable and which are to be avoided (RY), the five are further subdivided into two: *kliṣṭha* and *a-kliṣṭha*. The mind functions (HA) both as

*pra-vartaka*: involver, engager, initiator, promoter, inducer, producer, instigator, urging and prompting one towards X, and

*ni-vartaka*: disinvolver, terminator, inhibitor, abstainer, abolisher, urging and prompting one away from X.

Thus the fivefold vṛttis are positivistic or negativistic, leading to bondage or to liberation. For example, a proof (*pramāṇa*) leading the mind (HA) to favour, to an attraction or any *kleśha* is considered *kliṣṭha*. A proof leading one to rise beyond attraction or aversion is *a-kliṣṭha*.

One may argue that a proof is neutral and the conclusions impersonal, but yoga psychology would reply that this is not the case. Because of the force of unconsciously stored past impressions (*samskāras*), and because of the resultant personal propensities (*vāsanās*), the mind is inclined towards a certain use of the proof, and draws its own favoured conclusions. For example: (a) a wolf’s mind receives proof, through its eye, that a woman is present in the forest. It concludes. “Flesh to eat”; (b) a passionate youth’s mind receives proof, through his eye, that a woman is present. He concludes: “A beauty to ravish”; (c) a yogi’s mind receives proof, through his eye, that a woman is present. He concludes: “What otherwise would have been a corpse is here imbued with the luminosity and the

consequent beauty of the spiritual self. The spiritual self is to be realized.” The first two examples are *pramāṇa* processes in the afflicted and impure category, *kliṣṭha*. The last example is in the unafflicted category, *a-kliṣṭha*.

Whether *kliṣṭha* or *a-kliṣṭha*, the vṛttis of both kinds (VB, BG) have to be brought under control. By fostering the *a-kliṣṭhas*, one controls the *kliṣṭhas* (VM, VB), and then one vanquishes the *a-kliṣṭha* vṛtti in turn through transcendental dispassion (*paravairāgya*) (YS I.16). As we read elsewhere,

Vanquish the others by sattva, then that sattva by (higher) sattva.

*Bhāgavata-purāṇa XI.13.1.*

Since all vṛttis consist of the three guṇas and are therefore *kliṣṭha* (VB), it might seem inappropriate to divide them into *kliṣṭha* and *a-kliṣṭha*. The subclassification, though, indicates only the particular degree of the relationship between the vṛttis and the *kleśhas*. Vyāsa explains this relationship:

The afflicted, painful and impure vṛttis are caused by the *kleśhas* and are causes of the *kleśhas*.

The single, compound word *kleśha-hetukāḥ* may be translated as “caused by the *kleśhas*” and “causes of the *kleśhas*.” Some commentators have stood by the first reading, and others have accepted the second. It is probably more correct, however, to side with those who have tried to include and reconcile both. The *kleśhas*, such as *asmitā* (VM) and *avidyā* (HA), are the causes that bring about the advent of vṛttis. Or (VM) it may be said that as prakṛti serves puruṣha, only its rājasic and tamasic vṛttis are the cause of *kleśha*. This view of VM is, however, a limited one, as it contradicts the statements made just above with regard to the need for vanquishing the sattvic vṛttis also. In any case, vṛttis (VM) caused by the *kleśhas* lead to further *kleśhas*.

According to VB the word *hetu* (cause) actually means a purpose, an effect. *Kleśhas*, too, are the effects of the vṛttis. The main *kleśha* (VB) is pain (*duḥkha*), which is the effect produced by the

vṛttis that take the form of objects experienced; hence, it is *kliṣṭha*.

The *kleśhas* cause affliction and pain by causing inversion (HA) of awareness (*viparyasta-pratyaya*), turning the inward consciousness outward so that awareness does not dwell in the seer's own (MA) nature. These *kliṣṭha* vṛttis are a particular mutation of the mind-field (AD) invaded (BR, AD) by the *kleśhas*, rooted in (HA) and consisting of the *kleśhas*.

Again, Vyāsa:

These (vṛttis) become the field for the abundant growth of the domain of karmas (*karmāśhaya*).

Here the word *karmāśhaya* needs to be understood. It is that domain of the mind-field on which are left the impressions of all (a) experiences from the objective world without, and (b) vṛttis from the mental world within. These impressions, saṃskāras, have internal currents of their own. When certain saṃskāras, by constant addition of like impressions, become strong enough, the propensities they create impel a person in a certain direction. The choices thus made produce pain or pleasure in the process of reincarnation (YS II.13). The substratum of this process within the mind-field is called the *karmāśhaya*, or the domain of karmas.

Because vṛttis arise only for the purpose of acquisition of *kleśhas*, they become the field for abundant growth of the *karmāśhaya* (VM). The person in this pursuit makes his determination with vṛttis such as valid proof (*pramāṇa*), etc (YS I.6). Then, whether attracted or repelled, he adds to the *karmāśhaya*. Thus it is that vṛttis can serve as the ground for the generation of an abundance of virtue or vice (VM). These (VB) vṛttis become the supporting ground for a multitude of propensities (*vāsanās*) for virtue or vice. A person smitten by a craving caused by vṛttis that take the form of objects of experience undertakes to overcome the craving by pursuits such as injuriousness or compassion, thereby gathering vice or virtue. Thus begins the stream of sorrow. This, then, is the nature of *kliṣṭha* vṛttis, which are (RY) the cause of afflictions like attraction and aversion (*rāga* and *dveṣha*) (YS II.7,8), with bondage as their fruit. That is, every being is

- bound to pleasure and so on
- by having performed actions (karma)
- because of attraction, aversion, etc
- towards the matters that he has come to know
- with vṛttis such as valid proof.

We need to remember that virtue arising from sattva is only relatively desirable. Virtue exists only in comparison to vice. A yogi's action, however, is beyond all concepts of black and white (*YS IV.7*), and the sattva of the lower samādhi is transcended in higher samādhi when the relationship with all guṇas is terminated. Here the *a-kliṣṭa* vṛttis replace the former afflicted ones. These unafflicted vṛttis are as purely sattvic as it is possible for a material evolute to be. Hence they, unlike the afflicted ones, produce no further *kleśhas*. Vyāsa's commentary reads:

The unafflicted vṛttis are those whose subject is discernment (*viveka-khyāti*), and which impede the power of guṇas.

*A-kliṣṭa* vṛttis (VB) do not result in *kleśhas*. The *kleśhas* arise from activity of the guṇas, for it is the latter's prerogative or empowerment (*adhikāra*) to initiate action, which (VM, VB) continues up to discernment (*khyāti*).<sup>10</sup> *Khyāti* (VM), which means "clarity of wisdom" (*prajñā-prasāda*), occurs when the sattvic aspect of buddhi has been washed of rajas and tamas and flows tranquilly. By whatever means discernment (*khyāti*) between the spiritual self and the sattva of buddhi is realized, those means are included (VB) in the clause "whose subject is discernment." The unafflicted vṛttis help bring about the discernment and reduce the power of the gunas until the latter have finally fulfilled their purpose. They do so by opposing or blocking the activation of ignorance (*avidvā*), desire (*kāma*) and the attendant actions (karmas). The result of *a-kliṣṭa* vṛttis is liberation (mokṣha), says RY; but this is technically incorrect. *A-kliṣṭa* vṛttis lead only to discernment, which in turn leads to *asamprajñāta* samādhi and final liberation.

<sup>10</sup> *Khyāti* is used here in the sense of *viveka-khyāti* and not as in Vyasa's commentary quoting Pañchashikha (see pp 129ff.)

What are these unafflicted vṛttis? They are the same as *pramāṇa*, etc. enumerated in the next sūtra. When these are directed towards worldly objects, they are *kliṣṭa*, and when they are directed inwards, they are *a-kliṣṭa*.

It is clear that tamasic vṛttis are afflicted (*kliṣṭa*) and sattvic vṛttis are unafflicted (*a-kliṣṭa*). The question arises regarding the category to which rajasic vṛttis might belong. BG says that they are unafflicted at best or mixed into and included in either sattvic or tamasic in a specific mental situation. VB also regards them as mixed, both *kliṣṭa* and *a-kliṣṭa*. However, this disagreement is solved by remembering that in Sāṅkhya philosophy the function of rajas is always to impel both sattva and tamas. Without the impelling force of rajas the other two guṇas are ineffective and not efficacious. In this sense the rajasic element may be considered to be mixed with either sattva or tamas, whichever is dominant, and therefore sattva or tamas is served or supported by rajas. The progress of the mind-field towards pure sattva is not possible without the operational capacity of rajas.

A counterargument posed is as follows: Since the liberated ones seldom incarnate (*Nyāya-sūtra* of Gotama III.1.25), it is understood that all beings, with the exception of liberated incarnations, bear afflicted vṛttis. It would be rare if unafflicted vṛttis should arise in the constant stream of such afflicted vṛttis. And even if unafflicted vṛttis were to arise among the afflicted ones, they would be powerless, having fallen among powerful opponents. Therefore, it is illogical that afflicted vṛttis could be controlled through unafflicted ones, and the latter, again, through transcendental dispassion (*para-vairāgya*) (VM) Against this pessimism, however, Vyāsa shows optimism:

These (unafflicted vṛttis) remain unafflicted even when fallen in the currents of the afflicted ones. They remain unafflicted also in the intervals of the afflicted ones.

The afflicted vṛttis also (appear) in the intervals of the unafflicted ones

Practice and dispassion (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*) (YS I.12-16) are the unafflicted vṛttis par excellence, even though not enumerated

among the five. Or it may be said that these two arise (VM, HA, RY) from *a-kliṣṭha* vṛttis, for example (VM), from

- *āgama*: textual authority, one of the valid proofs (*pramāṇas*), or
- *anumāna*: inference, another *pramāṇa* leading to a spiritual conclusion, or
- the instruction of a teacher and contemplation thereon.

When practice and dispassion cause a break (HA) in the flow of afflictions, the vṛttis leading to a higher good (*paramārtha*) arise. Even though these latter vṛttis arise in the stream of afflictions and afflicted vṛttis, they remain untouched by them (VM, VB, HA) and are not corrupted. The same applies to unafflicted vṛttis that appear in intervals between afflicted vṛttis.

Similarly, when unafflicted vṛttis begin to flow, their stream is often interrupted by afflicted ones. However, these corrupt vṛttis have no power to alter the purer ones; rather, as the purer vṛttis grow in strength through repeated practice, their samskāras gradually mature, and the impure vṛttis are brought under control. Then as dispassion grows and becomes *para-vairāgya*, even the pure vṛttis are discarded (VM, VB, HA, RY, MA). A few examples of vṛttis becoming unafflicted (*a-kliṣṭha*) may be given as follows (NTC):

*pramāṇa*: proof—is unafflicted when it leads to perception of the self.

*viparyaya*: perverse cognition—helps one to gain merit when one superimposes the idea of divinity upon an icon.

*vikalpa* imaginary cognition—is beneficial when the great sentences (*mahā-vākyas*) of Vedānta, such as “Thou art That,” leave some purificatory imprint on the mind, even when they have not been fully understood.

*nidrā*: sleep (cf. Sūtra I.38)—is of value when it causes one to experience sattvic pleasure.

*smṛti*: memory—helps when, upon seeing worldly objects such as the blue sky, one is reminded of the descriptions of appearances of one’s favourite incarnation of the Deity

Does it necessarily mean, then, that once an aspirant has begun his or her practice success is assured, and that the vṛttis associated

with *kleśhas* have no more power over the aspirant? This may be answered in two ways:

1. Vyāsa has rejected the disciples with distracted (*vikṣipta*) minds as unworthy of consideration as serious yogis (YS I.1). He is not talking about them.
2. The wording of most commentators suggests that unafflicted vṛttis have to be strengthened through practice and dispassion until they cease to be intermittent and create a flow (*pravāha*). Then the *kliṣṭha* vṛttis arising intermittently have no more power and will soon be conquered.

This is the essence of what Vyāsa says:

The vṛttis produce their own kind of saṃskāras, and in turn, the saṃskāras produce identical vṛttis. Thus the wheel of vṛttis and saṃskāras revolves incessantly.

Saṃskāras are the intangible and inactive state of vṛttis, and the vṛttis are the tangible and active outcome of saṃskāras (HA). The only way this wheel of saṃskāras and vṛttis can be stopped (*stambhana*) and the mind-field dissolved (*pralaya*) is through the practice of *nirodha*. Until then the struggle for supremacy continues between the afflicted and the unafflicted vṛttis.

This process may be further elaborated upon: Even when a person's mind-field is filled with impure vṛttis, the purer vṛttis arise in many ways. For example: saṃskāras of pure vṛttis from past lives remain dormant. While the karmas are maturing in the current life, and some impure karmas have already matured and fructified, the purer samskāras from the past arise and produce purer vṛttis. This may occur (a) when some external stimulant of a pure nature is presented to the mind (e.g., a sattvic or beautiful view, an "accidental" glance at an uplifting text, an inspiring sermon heard upon the invitation or insistence of friends, and so forth) or (b) when the pain and sorrow produced through worldly pursuits jolts one into dispassion and renunciation, or even a mild re-examination of one's values. These processes may occur (a) spontaneously, even in

the middle of an impure stream, or (b) during the interruptions that occur in the impure flow. The impure vṛttis still arise during the interruptions in the flow of pure ones (*YS* IV.27), but eventually—after the practice of austerities, restraints, *yamas* and *ni-yamas* and meditation ceases to be a painful discipline and becomes a habit and a natural inclination—negative emotions and painful thoughts seldom arise. Finally, the power of impure vṛttis is broken and the pure vṛttis form a stream; the intermittent appearance of impure vṛttis no longer threatens the spiritual inclination and is soon conquered.

Again, Vyāsa:

When the mind-field becomes such that it has completed the work within its authority, it stands on its own.

Or it even goes into dissolution.

“When the mind-field becomes such” means that it is controlled and progressing towards *nirodha-samādhi*. It has completed the work of (a) *bhoga*—presenting experiences to the spiritual self—and (b) *apavarga*—serving as vehicle of the thoughts of liberation. Now the mind-field withdraws from its domain of authority and the field of service in three stages:

1. Only the saṃskāras remain without activating vṛttis (*YS* I.18). There are (VB) no more conflicts and pains in the mind. Then it reaches the samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things (*dharma-megha*) (*YS* IV.29) (HA), in which (VM) the mind dwells in itself, by itself. But this stage (VM) is not the goal; it is merely incidental (*āpātatah*) on the way to the final step.
2. We have translated Vyāsa’s phrase *ātma-kalpena* to mean “stands on its own”; that is, the mind dwells in itself, by itself. Here we can go further.
  - a) The mind, being sattvic, is reflective. It reflects the light of the pure self, and all the objects of experience reflect in it, becoming vṛttis. It takes the form of whatever reflects in it and identifies with it.

- b) In samādhi there are no objects of experience, but only the light of the spiritual self reflecting in the mind, with the result that it now identifies only with the spiritual self. At this stage Vyāsa's phrase, *ātma-kalpena*, is understood to mean: identifying with the self (ātman), imagining itself to be the self, as close to self in purity as it is capable of becoming (YS III.55).
3. As the practice deepens further (VB) (*abhyāsa-pāṭavena*), the saṁskāras are burnt (NB) from the individual mind-field, which now goes through the process of *prati-prasava*, dissolution into final prakṛti (YS IV.34), following the Sāṅkhya scheme of *prati-sañchara*, the cosmic principle of the orderly dissolution of evolutes (TSS 7). This is the total and permanent (*ātyantika*) termination of the relationship between self and non-self.

This dissolution of the mind-field may be mistaken for liberation (*mokṣha* or *mukti*) (as in RY), and may be referred to as *videha-kaivalya* (as in VB), the state of becoming bodiless even when dwelling in the body. The point needs to be made that YS I.19 considers the *videha* state to be far lower than final isolation (*kaivalya*), although the dissolution of the individual mind-field into the original and final prakṛti is an inevitable stage in the process of liberation. The individual yogi who has accomplished this is called *jīvan-mukta*, liberated yet not disincarnate, still maintaining the body; this state is known as *jīvan-mukti*, liberation while yet incarnate

The final dissolution (*pralaya*) of the mind-field cannot occur in a *jīvan-mukta*, who yet needs the mind as an instrument of keeping the physical body operative, although the mind does come very close to the *pralaya* state in the samādhi of a *jīvan-mukta*. The *videha-mukti* by itself, however, is not the definition of *asam-prajñāta* or seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi (YS I.18,51) or of *kaivalya* (YS IV.34), which are not states of mind but simply the self dwelling in the self, without reference to a material evolute such as the mind. The final liberation while the self is yet incarnate means not ever (VB) leaving the state of samādhi, the self dwelling in the self, even when carrying on the mental, corporeal, and social duties,

which the yogi continues to perform, out of compassion, to help liberate others.

In conclusion: In *dharma-megha*, mind dwells in itself, and then identifies with the spiritual self. In *asamprajñāta* and *kaivalya*, the self dwells in the self.

**Sūtra I.6**

प्रमाणविपर्ययविकल्पनिनिद्रास्मृतयः।  
pramāṇa-viparyaya-vikalpa-nidrā-smṛtayah

*pramāṇa-*: valid proofs

*viparyaya-*: perverse cognition

*vikalpa-*: imaginary cognition, linguistic misconception

*nidrā-*: sleep, and

*smṛtayah*: (*smṛti*) memory

The fivefold vṛttis of the mind are: valid proofs, perverse cognition, imaginary cognition, sleep and memory.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Those afflicted and unafflicted vṛttis divided into five are

[*Sūtra*:] valid proofs, perverse cognition, imaginary cognition, sleep and memory.

Sūtra I.7

प्रत्यक्षानुमानागमा: प्रमाणानि।

pratyakṣhānumānāgamaḥ pramāṇāni

*pratyakṣha-*: direct perception*anumāna-*: inference*āgamāḥ*: and (textual, scriptural, inspired, revealed) authority*pramāṇāni*: proofs

**Direct perception, inference and revealed authority are the three categories of the vṛtti called valid proof (*pramāṇa*).**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The mind-field is drawn towards, attracted to and coloured by an external (*upa-rāga*) substance through the channels of the senses. With that as its object, a modification (vṛtti) is produced in the mind-field; this vṛtti is the valid proof (*pramāṇa*) called direct perception (*pratyakṣha*). It determines, primarily, the specific in a matter that consists of the general and the specific.

The result is the puruṣha-originated, undistinguished apprehension of the vṛtti in the mind-field. Puruṣha is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension. This we shall establish later.

Inference (*anumāna*) is the vṛtti determining primarily the general, having as its object that connection of the inferable which conforms to the homogeneous and excludes the non-homogeneous. For example, "The moon and the star have movement because they are seen to arrive at another locus," or "The Vindhya mountain does not move, for it is not seen to arrive at another locus."

A matter seen or inferred by an accomplished person is taught in the form of words in order to transfer one's knowledge into another. The vṛtti from that word, with its matter and meaning as the object, is the listener's acquisition (*āgama*)

That *āgama* overwhelms one whose teacher has not seen or inferred the matter correctly and whose presentation of the matter cannot be trusted. But the *āgama* is without such disturbance in the case of the original teacher.

## Paraphrase of Vyāsa's Commentary

When the senses present certain information to the mind-field, there occurs in the mind a certain modification (*vṛtti*) whose object is the sense data. However, there arises a doubt as to the actual properties of an object, which also shares certain of its properties with other objects. The determinative process (*ava-dhāraṇa*) helps the mind to eliminate general shared properties so that it focuses on the specific. For example, "Is that a person or a post?" In this question the general shared properties of the person and the post are eliminated, and by focusing on the specific properties one determines the visible object to be either a person or a post. This *vṛtti*, the chief determinant of the specifics, is a valid proof (*pramāṇa*) called direct perception (*pratyakṣha*).

Such an apprehension in the mind-field is possible because the origin of awareness is in *puruṣha*, who transmits to the mind its capacity to perceive. In such an apprehension or perception of a *vṛtti*, the mind-field itself does not distinguish between its experience of the object from the external world and the awareness imparted by *puruṣha*. In other words, the objects, the experience, the *vṛtti*, the mind-field and the awareness of the spiritual self are not distinguishable one from another. *Puruṣha*, however, is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension.

### Discussion

Throughout the history of Indian philosophy there have been intense debates concerning how many categories of valid proof there might be. Different schools have each accepted a varying number according to the internal needs of the particular philosophical system. Numerous scholarly treatises have detailed the preferences of these systems and the arguments that developed among them. The yoga system accepts only three categories of valid proof (*pramāṇa*) since these suffice for its purposes:

*pratyakṣha* direct perception  
*anumāna* inference  
*āgama* scriptural or revealed authority

The functions of the valid proofs (*pramāṇas*) accepted by other systems can be subsumed under these three in one way or another (VB, NTC) and need not be individually dealt with here (VM, NTC).

Neither the *Yoga-sūtras* nor Vyāsa has defined *pramāṇa* itself separately because the derivation of the word is clear and applicable to all three *pramāṇas*. First, the word *pramā* means “apprehension of a state, condition, fact, object or entity (*tattva*) heretofore not obtained” (VM, VB). Because the mind is an evolute of matter, all of its operations such as the logical processes, vṛttis like *pramāṇas* and acceptance or rejection of a postulate or a conclusion are in themselves devoid of consciousness. Like matter itself they are all unconscious (*jada*) except through the presence of the consciousness of the spiritual self (*chit*) (RS); hence *pramā* may be defined not merely as the apprehension of a state, condition, etc. as just stated above, but also as the reflection of puruṣha falling upon the vṛtti, whereby exploration of a matter formerly not known—that is, an apprehension—occurs (RY, SS). A *pramāṇa* is the instrument, means or method for reaching that apprehension (*pramā*). That proof (*pramāṇa*) is a knowledge that is consistent and cannot be challenged (*a-vi-sam-vādin*) (BR, NB).

Direct perception (*pratyakṣha*) is the root of all other proofs, which in turn depend on it; and therefore *pratyakṣha* comes first (VM).

Vyāsa states:

The mind-field is drawn towards, attracted to and coloured by an external (*upa-rāga*) substance through the channels of the senses. With that as its object, a modification (vṛtti) is produced in the mind-field, this vṛtti is the valid proof (*pramāṇa*) called direct perception (*pratyakṣha*)

An external substance (*vastu*) is a requisite in the above statement (VM), so that the type of superimposition that occurs in the perverse (*viparivara*) vṛtti (YS I.8) may be excluded.

Contact between the mind and objects occurs through the senses. Without (a) the objects, (b) the senses as channels of contact, and

(c) the process of contact, the mind cannot be transmuted into the form of a given vṛtti (VB). The formed apprehension then becomes the means of verification and the final determinant. The senses are an important constituent of this process, as we find, for example, that if a jaundiced eye sees a white conch shell as yellow, there ensues in the mind the vṛtti of a yellow conch shell, which is contradicted only by the logical processes of induction and deduction (*anvaya* and *vyatireka*) (VB, NB).

The single word *upa-rāga* is translated here as “drawn towards, attracted to and coloured by.” This threefold process is included in the meaning of the prefix *upa* ‘near, closely’ and the verb root *rañj* ‘to colour, to be drawn towards, to be attracted to’. The primary meaning of the verb root *rañj* is “to colour.” The way a clear crystal is coloured yellow in the proximity of a yellow object is suggested by *upa + rañj* = noun, *upa-rāga*. Similarly, when a person is drawn towards another person or a mind is drawn towards the experience of an object, the same *upa-rāga* takes place, with the colours of the nearby person or object reflecting in the mind. In the case of *pratyakṣha*, the “colours” of the object of experience pass through the channels of the senses. The phrase *tad-viśhayah* ‘with that as its object’ refers in Vyāsa’s commentary to the entire process of colouring the mind in this way, with the mind taking the form of the vṛtti that is being produced. If it were only a mental perception without an external object and without contact through the senses, the realist philosophers of the Sāṅkhya-yoga school would not classify it as a valid direct perception of the *pratyakṣha* type.

Vyāsa states:

It (*pratyakṣha*) determines, primarily, the specific in a matter that consists of the general and the specific

An object of experience or an entity has two aspects:

*sāmāniā* universal, generic, general  
*viśheṣha* particular, specific, individual

The word “cow” expresses the cow nature shared by all cows, without which a specific cow would not be a cow. It also refers to a specific cow.

The (HA) general, generic, universal (*sāmānya*), is often signified by words and is maintained as a mental image referring to the totality and collectivity of all the possible individuals of that genus. The specific, particular, individual (*viśheṣha*), may be experienced without any verbal signification. An age-old problem in all philosophical systems, Eastern or Western, is whether the mind’s experience of an object is of its universal or particular aspect. For instance, does the mind experience the universal cow, which might exist in the unmanifest even if all individual cows ceased to exist, or does it experience the specific cow seen grazing in a particular pasture?

The philosophers (VM, RS) who subscribe to Kumārila Bhaṭṭa’s interpretation of the Mīmāṃsā school believe that only the universals are experienced. On the other hand, Buddhist philosophers accept no universals, experiencing, as they maintain, only the particular. Nyāya, the school of logic, believes that an object is endowed with both universal and particular attributes. Each cow has both universal “cowness” and its individual “cowness” present in its configuration.

Vyāsa’s view is that the object is not endowed (VM, RS, HA) with some universal or particular attributes, but that there exists (VM, RY)

*tādātmvam:* the object in question is both universal and particular.

In other words, the object denoted by the word “cow,” and/or observed with the senses, producing a vṛtti in the mind, incorporates all the universal “cowness” and the individual “cowness,” not apart from the fact that it is a cow. However, for the purpose of defining *pratyaksha*, Vyāsa states:

It determines the specific in a matter (*ariha*) that consists of the general and the specific.

This simply reinforces Sāṅkhya-yoga realism, which holds that when the senses contact an object, no observation of the universal is possible. Even though the universal is present (VM) in the particular, it is secondary for the purpose of the observation.

We have translated the phrase *viśheṣha-avadhāraṇa-pradhāna* as “it determines, primarily, the specific.” The word “primarily” indicates that the universal is considered secondary in this instance. Without its inclusion in *pratyakṣha*, the universal would fail to serve as a basis for and an aid to inference (*anumāna*), which is the chief determinant of the concealed universal aspect from the observation of the particulars.

This realism presents a problem because all the major schools of Indian philosophy consider *yogi-pratyakṣha* to be the supremely valid proof. The ordinary person’s direct perception (*pratyakṣha*) is covered by the statements made so far, and that direct perception definitely requires the presence of external objects and the mind’s contact with them through the channels of the senses. But what is the definition and the process of *yogi-pratyakṣha*? Does Patañjali intend to include it? Is it Vyāsa’s intent to define it here? Even a cursory reading of Vyāsa’s words leads one to understand that *yogi-pratyakṣha* is not meant to be included here and that it will be described in the *Yoga-sūtras* elsewhere (for example, YS III.1.17-19,25-29,33-36,43,49,52,54). Nonetheless, commentators VM, VB, NB, RY and SS have attempted to classify *yogi-pratyakṣha* here as a type of direct perception.

The definition of *pratyakṣha* as given by Vyāsa on this sūtra is only a pointer (*upa-lakṣhana*), (VM, NB) stating a part to include a larger whole. It is a pointer to the implicit, complete idea of realization (*sākṣhāt-kāra*) and the (VM) *viveka-khyāti*.

Phrases or words like *upa-rāga* ‘colouring’ are used for the purpose of stating the cause and process of the vṛttis produced (VB) in the mind from external sources. These phrases and words should not be taken as part of the definition of *yogi-pratyakṣha*; otherwise the direct experience of self (ātman) and of God (iśvara) could not occur, not being a product of, and not having been induced through, the contact between objects and senses.

In the deeper meditation of *samprajñāta* samādhi, when the mind is no longer dependent on externals and is clear, there appears a reflection of the pure consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) (RY, SS). This is direct perception, *yogi-pratyakṣha*.

Even though this sūtra and Vyāsa's commentary thereupon do not speak of *yogi-pratyakṣha*, the view expressed by various commentators is in conformity with and supported by the *Yoga-sūtras* philosophy in general.

Returning to the common person's direct perception (*pratyakṣha*), Vyāsa says:

6

The result is the puruṣa-originated, undistinguished apprehension of the vṛtti in the mind-field. Puruṣa is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension. This we shall establish later (YS II.20, IV.22).

This extract from Vyāsa's commentary was clarified earlier, but is here presented again. The emphasis in Vyāsa's text is on the result (*phalam*). The above sentences are meant to convey the result of the process of observation and direct perception, which is that a vṛtti occurs in the mind-field. But in and of itself it would be a "dead" process, because the mind is an unconscious material evolute. What gives this process of perception and the resultant vṛtti a semblance of life, awareness and consciousness—an apprehension—is the fact that the vṛtti and its substratum, the mind-field, are being illuminated by the spiritual self (puruṣa).

The process of proof, any valid experience, is called *pramā*. It occurs as follows: When the senses are in the proximity of objects, they cause the mind to become occluded by the tamas of those objects. At once sattva arises to counter that tamas and an illumination occurs. Such a mingling of tamas and sattva is the valid experience (*pramā*). Sattva cannot rise all by itself except when impelled by the power of consciousness (*chiti-śakti*). In other words it is the grace of this spiritual force alone that causes valid experience. The light of consciousness from within reflecting in buddhi and illuminating the tamas of the objects being reflected

therein from outside constitutes the experience. Buddhi by itself is incapable of creating such a process (AD). This is what is meant by

the puruṣha-originated . . . apprehension of the vṛtti in the mind-field.

The complete phrase, however, is:

the puruṣha-originated, *undistinguished* apprehension of the vṛtti in the mind-field.

What is meant by “undistinguished” (*a-viśhiṣṭa*)? It means simply that (HA) the mind then sees itself as not distinguished from the puruṣha, through whose illumination the mind-field experiences apprehension of the vṛtti. The vṛtti and the puruṣha’s illumination thereof thus becoming undistinguished, the mind then says, “I am the conscious seer.” Thus the mental processes of the person are mistaken as being processes of the self, the illumination, the mind and the vṛtti becoming one. This is the end result, called *pramā*, and the means thereto is *pramāṇa*, the process of the proof. This is the explanation offered by the commentators (VM, HA, SS) who are true to the original intent of Vyāsa. VB takes up the word *pauruṣheya*, which can be translated as “puruṣha-originated” (as has been done here) or as “puruṣha’s own.” In the case of the latter, Vyāsa’s sentence would be translated as:

The result is puruṣha’s undistinguished apprehension of the vṛtti  
of the mind-field

But VB says that is not possible. If a vṛtti occurs in the mind-field, how can it affect puruṣha? If an axe is being used to cut an oak tree, how can that activity fell a maple tree instead? It is not the self who becomes undistinguished from the mind and its vṛttis; it is rather the mind that assumes the characteristics of the self’s illumination.

Puruṣha is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension. This we shall establish later (YS II.20, IV.22).

Just as a flame is but the tip, the end result, of the process called the lamp—with its vessel, oil and wick—so a vṛtti is but the tip of the buddhi (NB). It is for this reason that a concentrated (*ekāgra*) mind is compared to a lamp where there is no breeze (*BhG VI.19*). When, for example, a vṛtti concerning a jar occurs, the mind knows only “this is a jar.” But that “I know a jar” is a wholly different vṛtti, in which the mind's assuming the role of the self is clearer. It is a servant pretending to be the master, rather than only serving him.

As explained earlier, VB holds the view that a reflection of buddhi with its vṛttis falling on the puruṣha causes puruṣha to know the vṛttis. We have already refuted that view as not being in conformity with the formal Sāṅkhya-yoga view. Therefore his explanations (supported by NB, BG) of the phrases

*pauruṣheyah chitta-vṛtti-bodhah:* puruṣha's knowledge of the vṛttis of the mind  
and

*buddeḥ pratisarīvedi puruṣhah:* puruṣha apprehends in association with buddhi

are also inaccurate.

VB also seems to resent the realism of Sāṅkhya as the major philosophical approach of the *Yoga-sūtras* and throughout attempts an interpretation whereby the *Yoga-sūtras* may be read in the light of the idealism of Vedānta, stopping a few steps short of the extreme idealism of the Vijnāna-vāda school of Buddhism. VB's view is that the spiritual self has a myriad rays that it radiates. Some of these rays illuminating the mind produce vṛttis. Like a lamp's flame illuminating many objects, the vṛttis' lights emanate outwards through the senses and take the form of the objects perceived. The vṛttis that are experienced in dream and meditation do not arise from memories of prior experiences induced externally. They are vṛttis emanating from the light of the self remaining in the mind-

field. They have not radiated further out through the sense channels to become one with the world of objects.

This is in conformity with the Vedānta view that all experiences are emanations of Brahman. It should not, however, be confused with the view of the Vijñāna-vāda Buddhists, as the following quotation clearly shows: "We believe," says VB, "that the objects perceived are also independent emanations with which the vṛtti-emanations join in the phenomenal world." The *Vijñāna-vādin* does not accept the independent real existence of objects of perception in the phenomenal world.

This stand seems to negate the necessity for the entire process of the reflection of objects falling upon the mind-field through the senses. VB might well have written an independent philosophical treatise of his own rather than presenting his own thoughts as an exposition of Vyāsa's commentary. Therefore throughout the remainder of this work his comments in regard to this question will be ignored.

Now, to inference (*anumāna*). Vyāsa says:

Inference (*anumāna*) is the vṛtti determining primarily the general . . .

As explained in the case of direct perception (*pratyakṣha*), the senses perceive a specific object. This is not the case with inference (*anumāna*). Seeing a specific flood of waters in a stream, one infers that there is snow melting in the mountains. The snow, whose existence and melting is inferred, is not any specific snow that has been seen, it is the universal idea "snow" that is present in the mind. It is not the particular snowfall we saw last year while hiking in the mountains. This does not preclude the fact that a specific snow is melting. If we were perceiving it with our eyes, it would be that specific snow, but the specific is subordinate to the general in the process of inference and occurs only after the inference is completed. We have translated the phrase *sāmānya-ava-dhāraṇa-pradhānā* as "determining primarily." A reading of the explanation of a similar phrase regarding *pratyakṣha*, above, will clarify this translation.

Now, again, according to Vyāsa, inference (*anumāna*) has

as its object that connection of the inferable which conforms to the homogeneous and excludes the non-homogeneous.

This can be illustrated by the standard example of a five-membered syllogism of Nyāya, the Indian system of logic:

1. proposition (*pratijñā*): The mountain has fire.
2. cause (*hetu*): Because it has smoke.
3. exemplification (*dṛṣṭiṇta*): Whatever has smoke has fire,
  - like a kitchen hearth,
  - unlike a body of water.
4. recapitulation of cause (*upanaya*): The mountain has smoke.
5. conclusion (*nigamana*): The mountain has fire.

Or another example:

A pot is non-eternal.

Because it is a product

Like other objects, such as a cloth, which being products, are non-eternal

A pot is a product.

Being a product, a pot is non-eternal.

In both of these examples the attributes—"having smoke" and "being a product"—indicate an invariant association (a commonality, a homogeneity) inherent between the cause and the exemplification. Any one of the elements of the syllogism by itself has no potency—called *shakti* in formal logic—to produce any conclusion. It is the invariant association (such as the association implicit in the statement that "where there is smoke there is fire"), the homogeneity, that helps to produce a conclusion.

Now, to the third valid proof (*āgama*). Vyāsa says:

A matter seen or inferred by an accomplished person (*āpti*) is taught in the form of words to transfer one's knowledge into another. The *vṛtti* from that word, with its matter and meaning as the object, is the listener's acquisition (*āgama*)

Some of the original words in these sentences are important to understand: An *āpta* is an accomplished one, he who has attained. The word *āpta* is from the verb root *ap* ‘to attain, accomplish, find’. The attainment (*āpti*) in this sense is more technically defined as connecting together (a) the realization of reality (*tattva-darśhana*), (b) compassion (*kārunya*), that is, the motivation to eradicate the suffering of others, and (c) strength of the senses and body and expertise in the use thereof (*karanya-pāṭīava*). This defines the qualifications of a realized teacher. He has to be (VB) free of weaknesses and faults such as confusion, negligence, desire for personal gain, failure in control over the senses and inability to use the senses properly. One with such an attainment is an *āpta*, a noble teacher. It is also said that one is an *āpta* (HA) to a student by whose words that particular student is able to reach a conclusion, determination or conviction to which the student’s own rational thought (*vichāra*) had not yet led him. Vyāsa’s words,

A matter seen or inferred by an *āpta*,

mean that inference alone, that is, rational or logical processes of thought, does not make one an authority (*āpta*). First comes the fact of *drṣṭi*, having seen, realized in the state of samādhi. It is because of such an *insight* (a realization within) that a school of philosophy is called *darśhana*: a vision, insight, a realization (from the verb root *drsh* ‘to see’). The matter thus seen, says Vyāsa,

is taught in the form of words

or by the means (HA) of silent gesture, etc., as many yogis do. *Śabdena* means “through words,” “in the form of words,” and “with the accompaniment of words.” All of these meanings are applicable here. The last one is especially significant because verbal guidance may often accompany an initiation in which a guru’s knowledge is transferred to another--often without words. This transfusion of knowledge is not emphasized here, but merely suggested to those who have gone through the experience and can therefore read between the lines

The matter is taught in the form of words, says Vyāsa,

to transfer one's knowledge into another.

Not “to another” but “*into (paratra) another.*” This means (VM, VB, NB, HA, RY) that the knowledge similar to that in the teacher's own thought waves of the mind-field (chitta-vṛtti) should appear in the chitta-vṛtti of the listener (*śrotri*), that is, a student. In the tradition, the first stage of the study is listening to the teaching. This teaching should be imparted with the intention (VM) that what is beneficial to the student should accrue, and what is not beneficial should be prevented. It is all of these qualifications and processes that constitute valid proof (*āgama*), which literally means “that which comes” *into* the student. The vṛtti of the words, with their (a) intended and (b) inherent meanings arising in the student's mind, is *āgama*. That is the noble authority, a revealed knowledge, conveyed into the student directly by the teacher into whom it was revealed, or through a lineage, or in the form of sacred texts.

Further, Vyāsa says:

That *āgama* overwhelms one whose teacher has not seen or inferred the matter correctly and whose presentation of the matter cannot be trusted.

On the other hand, there may be teachers who are trusted and accepted even though they have neither realized nor inferred the matter themselves, but are faithfully presenting the knowledge originally imparted by the founder of the lineage. Vyāsa says:

But the *āgama* is without such disturbance in the case of the original teacher

These lines can be read both as (a) in the case of an original teacher, a human founder of the lineage, and (b) in the case of the original teacher (God), whose revealed knowledge (Veda) is conveyed through teachers who themselves may not have realized or inferred the contents thereof. This is *āgama*, revealed authority, the third valid proof.

**Sūtra I.8**

**विपर्ययो मिथ्याज्ञानमतद्रूपप्रतिष्ठम्।**

**viparyayo mithyā-jñānam a-tad-rūpa-pratiṣṭham**

*viparyayaḥ*: perverse cognition

*mithyā-jñānam*: false knowledge

*a-tad-rūpa-*: not in the nature, form, of that (object)

*pratiṣṭham*: established

**False knowledge without a basis in the nature or form of the respective object is the vṛtti called perverse cognition (*viparyaya*).<sup>11</sup>**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Why is this not a valid proof? Because it is refuted, contradicted and annulled by a valid proof. A valid proof has a real substance for its object. It is commonly seen that a non-proof is contradicted by a proof. For example, if someone with double vision sees two moons, this perception is refuted by the sight of the single moon.

This ignorance (*avidyā*) consists of five sections:

*avidyā* nescience

*asmitā* I-am-ness

*rāga* attachment

*dveśha* aversion

*abhiniveśha* fear of death

the five afflictions (*kleshas*) (YS II 3) These very five bear their real names as follows

darkness,

stupor,

great stupor,

nocturnal, and

blind nocturnal!

<sup>11</sup> We have borrowed the phrase "perverse cognition" as the translation of *viparyaya* from the translation of Bangali Baba

We shall speak of these further in the context of the impurities (*mala*) of the mind-field.

## Discussion

Perverse cognition (*viparyaya*) is false knowledge (*mithyā-jñāna*) not established, having no basis (*pratiṣṭhā*) in the nature or form of that object of which this purports to be the knowledge.

Perverse cognition (*viparyaya*) is defined as false knowledge (*mithyā-jñāna*) (VM, VB, BG, NB), which is then explained as "not established," etc. It gives the impression of being a cognition or a knowledge, but is (VM) either

*tad-rūpa-a-pratiṣṭham*: not established in, having no basis in, the form of that which is,

or

*a-tad-rūpa-pratiṣṭham*: established in a form or nature *not* of that object.

In other words, (VB) perverse cognition has its basis in some other object, which does not correspond to the given object's true aspect. It does not reveal the ultimate (*pāramārthika*) nature of that object (BR), as when a seashell appears to be a silver coin (BR). But this type of cognition is simply a flow within the mind (HA) whereby a *vṛtti* of *buddhi* is attributed to (VB, BG, NB) the object in question. It means that when such a superimposition is further examined and thereby contradicted, the object is found to be unable to perform the functions that it would have been capable of had the false impression been accurate (SS). Only if, though it may be contradicted, it is nonetheless efficacious in practice, can it (RY) be considered accurate.

lest the definition and the discussion be regarded as irrelevant to the needs of a spiritual aspirant, BR employs the term *paramārtha*, the ultimate nature (of an object). This suggests that we are interested not merely in ordinary objects of our sense experience but in the totality of the universe. All our cognition of the universe turns out to be false, impractical and inefficacious when, following

Sāṅkhya, we finally discover its ultimate nature to be the equilibrium of prakṛti, and, following Vedānta, we find Brahman, the transcendental (which is also a translation of *paramārtha*), to be the true reality onto which this universe has been superimposed. The definition of *viparyaya* also includes doubt (*samśaya*), except that the fact of “not being established” applies only to the mental process (e.g., “Is that a man or a post?”) (BR). Here the possibility of something opposite to its nature is present until the determination is made.

The question arises as to why the definition of *viparyaya* as given in this sūtra does not include also linguistic misconception (*vikalpa*), which is defined in the next sūtra. Since *vikalpa*, too, is a false cognition, one might expect it to be included here. The answer is given (VM, NB, RY, SS) that in the case of *viparyaya* it must be possible for an ordinary, non-philosophical person to be able to contradict the false impression by simple practical experience. In *vikalpa* we are dealing with matters open only to the philosophically conversant, as will be seen in the next sūtra. In *viparyaya* there has to be an object whose form or nature can be experienced (NB). In the case of *vikalpa*, if one says, for example, “rabbit’s horn,” there is no particular object that is being misconstrued as that horn, nor does the experience confirm the existence of some object in the place of that non-existent horn. The horn is merely a word referring to nothing. Hence *vikalpa* cannot be included in *viparyaya*.

Furthermore, in the case of *viparyaya* there has to be an agreement among all the viewers who have good vision (for example, “there was no silver, only a glinting seashell”). In the case of philosophical positions of the type presented by Vyāsa on YS I.9 and considered by him as *vikalpa*, there is never an agreement among different philosophers (RY, SS).

In other words, all intellectually held philosophical positions and purely mental experiences which have been proved false are considered *vikalpa*. When, for instance, a text says, “All things, such as the earth, are all in the mind and never outside; the experience of them as real is as in dreams, delusions and intoxication,”

the experience described is a *vikalpa* (BG, NB). Thus dreams also fall in the category of *vikalpa* (VB, BG, NB) because they are purely mental and no specific object replaces a dream object.

Now to Vyāsa:

Why is this (*viparyaya*) not a valid proof? Because it is . . . contradicted . . . by a valid proof.

This question and answer means that the imaginary experience produced by *viparyaya* is not valid, because it is later contradicted by a valid proof. Here the logicians may argue with regard to the relative strength of an anterior and posterior statement and experience. Between a prior or a posterior experience, which is the more reliable? The rules as established by the Mīmāṃsā school are that

where the posterior originates from the anterior, or the posterior's (a) existence as an object or (b) validity as an idea in some way depends on the anterior, it is the anterior that is considered more powerful.

Mīmāṃsā also states that

an anterior is normally contradicted by the posterior, the posterior arising after contradicting the anterior. But it is inconceivable for an anterior to arise or be established by contradicting a not-yet-experienced posterior.

In other words,

where the posterior does not arise directly from an anterior and its existence as an object or the validity as an idea is not dependent thereupon, then the posterior is stronger than the anterior and has the power to contradict it and to establish itself. When two intelligent suggestions or impressions arise independently of each other, the posterior overpowers and condemns the anterior.

Applied to *viparyaya* this means that when for example a perceiver has the impression that he saw a silver coin (the anterior impression), it is not out of that impression that the latter impression ("It

is a seashell and not a silver coin") originates. The posterior impression, that it is a seashell, rises from a fresh examination. The silver coin impression is not the originating cause of the seashell impression. Thus, according to the rules of Mīmāṃsā, the posterior is the valid proof proving the anterior to be a false impression. The posterior is the *pramāṇa*, the anterior is *viparyaya*. Hence, one must concur with Vyāsa:

Why is this (*viparyaya*) not a valid proof? Because it is refuted, contradicted and annulled by a valid proof. A valid proof has a real substance for its object. It is commonly seen that a non-proof is contradicted by a proof. For example, if someone with double vision sees two moons, this perception is refuted by the sight of the single moon.

The Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophers are realists. As was seen in the discussion on *pratyakṣha* in Sūtra I.7, the reality of a substance or object must be confirmed by all the senses involved. For example, silver must be seen with the eyes to be so, must tinkle like silver to the ear and must feel like silver to the tactile sense. The perception must be consistent; that is, all the senses must experience the object the same way at all times, and the observations of all the perceivers must be consistent. All the senses of all the observers must confirm the reality the same way at all times. Such a proof contradicts any perception of lesser consistence and proves the latter to be a *viparyaya*.

It is the natural inclination of intelligence to be partial to, to be inclined towards, reality (VB); hence this *viparyaya* is rejected, is treated as contemptible, and needs to be eradicated in all cases. Until the experience (VB) of an object or entity so occurs that it would not be contradicted later, the nature of that entity cannot be considered as finally ascertained.

It is well here to explain differences among selected Sanskrit words dealing with the concept of error. Knowledge (*khyāti*) is the opposite of error. An error may be

*a-khyāti* non-apprehension  
or  
*anu-athā-khyāti* misapprehension

The Sāṅkhya system proper uses the term *a-viveka*, “an absence of the correct knowledge” of the nature of puruṣha, which the teachers of formal logic then place under the category of non-perception (*a-khyāti*). It appears that the yoga system is a little different in this regard. It considers error to be a misapprehension (VB), the definition of ignorance or nescience (*avidyā*) being “mistaking the self to be non-self,” as in *YS II.3*.<sup>12</sup>

Now Vyāsa:

This ignorance (*avidyā*) consists of five sections.

In other words, ignorance (*avidyā*), which from here on will be referred to as nescience, defined in *YS II.3* and *II.5*, falls within the category of *viparyaya*. This nescience is *pañcha-parvā*, “having five sections.” The word *parvan* ‘section’ refers to segments of a bamboo or sections of mountain chains. It is used where an object consists of many segments but constitutes a single object. It is not that many segments are brought from different places to put together a bamboo, but the bamboo itself consists of the segments. So, nescience is not made up of its five sections, but they are all part of the same one ignorance or nescience. These are the very five afflictions (*kleśhas*) enumerated in *YS II.3* as

*avidyā*: nescience or ignorance

*asmitā*: I-am-ness

*rāga* attachment

*dveṣha*. aversion

*ahhiniveṣha* fear of death

Nescience is a factor (VM) common to all the afflictions, hence the rest are considered its segments. It is (VB) the seed of the calamity called *samsāra*, the revolving cycles of the great wheel, including transmigration. The *vr̥tti viparyaya*, misapprehension, therefore must be brought under control (*nirodha*).

12 Many different theories regarding erroneous perception have been discussed in different schools of Indian philosophy and refuted by the various commentators but need not be recounted here. Students interested in such detail may refer to the various texts on Indian philosophy.

Now to Vyāsa's enumeration of the five segments of nescience. The other more poetic terms, darkness, etc., follow the scheme of *Sāṅkhya-kārikā* 48, which states:

*tamas*: darkness (eight kinds),  
*moha*: stupor (eight kinds),  
*mahā-moha*: great stupor (ten types),  
*tāmisra*: nocturnal (eighteenfold), and  
*andha-tāmisra*: blind nocturnal (eighteenfold).

These divisions are explained (VM, VB) as follows:

1. *Avidyā*: nescience (YS II.5): *tamas* (darkness) is eightfold: The error of mistaking as ātman (the self) the eight that are:

- i. *a-vyakta*: unmanifest prakṛti and its evolutes
- ii. *mahat*: buddhi
- iii. *ahamkāra*: ego
- iv-viii. *tan-mātrās*: the five subtle elements

It is darkness because (VB) it veils *jñāna* (knowledge). It includes the error of identifying (VB) body, etc. as self because body, etc. are the products of the eight listed above. *Viparyayas* (perverse cognitions), such as between silver and a seashell, are not included in this category. *Sāṅkhya-kārikā* 44 says that bondage is caused by *viparyaya*. Hence *avidyā*, the major cause of bondage, is included here and not the minor confusions.

2. *Asmītā*: I-am-ness (YS II.6): *moha* (delusion) is eightfold: The error of considering the eight *siddhis* (YS III 45), powers or accomplishments, as though they were something benevolent and belonging to the self (*ātmīya*) (VB), whereas they are actually the opposite (RY)

*animā* the power to become minute

*laghīmā* the power to become light

*prāpti* the power to reach or touch the most distant things

*prākāmva* the power by which all that one may wish can be fulfilled

*mahimā*: the power to become large

*iśhīrva*: physical, vocal and mental lordship, not impeded by any

*vaśhitva*: control over all elements and beings; ability to  
create, rearrange or dissolve them

*kāmāvasāyitā*: whatever one says or intends with the mind  
comes true (whereas in others' case it conflicts and is not  
fulfilled)

I-am-ness and possession (*svatva*) are synonymous and therefore  
the above divisions apply, the *siddhis* being a form of possessive  
power.

3. *Rāga*: attraction (*YS II.7*): *mahā-moha* (great stupor) is tenfold:  
“I shall attain the eightfold *siddhis* through yoga. I shall attain a  
lordship, becoming an adept *siddha*. Thereby I shall enjoy the  
objects of the ten senses, such as sounds, both that are commonly  
tangible (*drṣṭha*) and that are ordinarily intangible but which  
are spoken of by the authoritative sources (*ānuśhravika*).” Any  
such other inclination is included in the tenfold great stupor  
(*mahā-moha*) or attraction (*rāga*).
4. *Dveśha*: aversion (*YS II.8*): *tāmisra* (nocturnal) is eighteenfold:  
When one is bent upon the above pursuits and some (VB) im-  
pediment prevents the attainment of *asmitā* (the eight *siddhis*)  
and *rāga* (the ten enjoyments of the senses), then the anger  
arising with regard to that failure and towards its cause is no-  
cturnal (*tāmisra*) or aversion (*dveśha*).
5. *Abhinivesha*: fear of death (*YS II.9*): *andha-tāmisra* (blind no-  
cturnal) is eighteenfold: *asmitā* (the eight *siddhis*) and *rāga* (the  
ten objects of the senses) having been attained, there yet comes  
the realization that all this will perish at the (VB) end of a cycle  
of creation (*kalpa*) Such fear is that of the blind night (*andha-  
tāmisra*) or the fear of death (*abhinivesha*) The night, here, is  
that of the period of dissolution in a single cycle of creation.

In the above order of five, each succeeding *kleśha* is considered  
more undesirable and of a lower grade than its predecessor, indi-  
cating progressively lower and yet lower levels of spiritual realiza-  
tion It is also interesting to note that the above definitions seem to

be of concern only to the advanced yogi. The definitions as provided under *YS* II.5-9 are wider and are applicable even to the majority of people, who are in *kṣipta* and *mūḍha* states of mind. The following scheme shows *viparyaya* from the common person's viewpoint compared to the viewpoint of one whose consciousness has become more refined and subtle, whose horizons of space and time, though far wider, have not yet reached final isolation (*kivalya*):

<u>Kleśha</u>	<u>Common View</u>	<u>Imperfect Yogi's View</u>
<i>avidyā</i>	I am the body, male or female, with consequent pleasures and attractions.	I am prakṛti and its evolutes.
<i>asmitā</i>	I have an identity; I desire success, power and wealth.	I desire <i>siddhis</i> .
<i>rāga</i>	I desire the objects of my immediate pleasure.	I will use my <i>siddhis</i> to obtain the intangible universals of refined pleasures.
<i>dveṣha</i>	I am averse to specific objects, persons or situations that have caused me pain.	I am angry at causes, persons or situations that have prevented my fulfilment of <i>siddhis</i> and consequent enjoyments.
<i>abhinevesha</i>	I fear my death, that is, the death of this body that I am.	I fear that all my powers and consequent pleasures and enjoyments of the universal evolutes will cease at the end of a <i>kalpa</i>

Even when a whole universe is provided as the body of a highly evolved yogi, the above *viparavas* or *kleśhas* remain at the indicated scale until pure liberation is reached. In the mythological literature of India called the Purāṇas, the five alternative names of *viparavas* (*tamas*, *moha*, *mahā-moha*, *tāmisra* and *andha-tāmisra*) are five of the numerous hells into which the least evolved beings are said to fall and suffer the results of their actions.

**Sūtra I.9**

शब्दज्ञानानुपाती वस्तुशून्यो विकल्पः ।

śhabda-jñānānupātī vastu-śhūnyo vikalpaḥ

<i>śhabda-</i> : word	}	dependent only upon a verbal conception
<i>jñāna-</i> : knowledge		
<i>anupātī</i> : following,	}	dependent upon a verbal conception
<i>vastu-</i> : real object		
<i>śhūnyah</i> : devoid of	}	devoid of a real object
<i>vikalpaḥ</i> : imaginary cognition		

**Dependent upon a verbal knowledge only but devoid of a real object is the vṛtti called imaginary cognition (*vikalpa*).**

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

That imaginary cognition arises neither in association with valid proof nor in association with perverse cognition. A usage appears, confined to an exaltation in the knowledge of words, even though devoid of substance. For example: "Consciousness is the form and nature of puruṣha." When consciousness itself is puruṣha, what is being designated by what? Normally there has to be an operative relationship in a designation, e.g., "Chaitra's cow."

Similarly, the attributes of a substance being denied as belonging to puruṣha, it (puruṣha) is inactive. Or, "Someone named Bāṇa stops (or will stop, or has stopped)", here, upon the cessation of movement, only the meaning of the verb is conveyed. Or, "Puruṣha's characteristic is to be devoid of birth"; here merely the absence of the characteristic of being born is understood and not a particular attribute associated with puruṣha. Therefore (it is obvious that) this characteristic is imagined (*vikalpa*) and by that imagination a usage in practice prevails.

**Paraphrase of Vyāsa's Commentary**

*Vikalpa* neither arises from nor is in any way dependent on or associated with *pramāṇa* or *viparyaya*. It is not grounded in either of them. Because there exists a certain sense of exaltation about

the knowledge of words, people bring words into usage even when there is no actual substance signified by the words, no actual object designated by such a definition. For example, the statement

Consciousness (*chaitanya*) is the form and nature of puruṣha (the spiritual self)

is meaningless or fallacious. When the actual position of our philosophy is that consciousness itself is the spiritual self, what consciousness, other than the very puruṣha, could be designated as the nature of that puruṣha? Otherwise it is as though one were talking of a cow belonging to a person named Chaitra, who as the owner is other than his possession. Similarly, the sentence

The attributes of a substance being denied as belonging to puruṣha, it (puruṣha) is inactive

is making no positive statement about any substance; only the attributes of matter as pertaining to puruṣha are denied.

Similarly, the sentences "A person named Bāṇa stops," "A person named Bāṇa will stop," and "A person named Bāṇa has stopped" are philosophically irrelevant because the true reality of a person is the spiritual self (puruṣha) who neither moves in the confines of space nor stops, nor is the concept of time applicable to him. Yet the verb "stop" implies arrested motion, and when coupled with varying tense configurations, also carries the notion of arrested motion in time and space. By definition, this is philosophical nonsense since Bāṇa's true nature is pure consciousness, puruṣha, and as such is without name or form and is quite unaffected by human limitations of time, space and motion. In another example, the content of the sentence

Puruṣha's characteristic is to be devoid of birth

is also insubstantial because to be devoid of something cannot be a positive or a substantial characteristic. The sentence makes no statement about any attributes of puruṣha. The usage of words in this way is expressive of imagination (*vikalpa*).

## Discussion

We have translated the compound phrase *śhabda-jñāna-anupāti* as “dependent upon a verbal knowledge only.” Explaining this in somewhat greater detail, *vikalpa* is that modification (*vṛtti*) of the mind-field which follows

words, knowledge of words, and the knowledge produced by words, and is productive of the same,

where no actual object or substance (*vastu-śhūnyaḥ*) exists. The question arises that if it is verbal knowledge (VM), why can it not be included in *āgama pramāṇa*, which in other systems of philosophy is known as *śhabda pramāṇa*, or verbal proof? The answer is that according to Vyāsa on the preceding sūtra, there has to be an actual substance (*arthah*) that is corroborated by an *āpta*, to be called *āgama pramāṇa*. *Vikalpa* relates to no substance.

Then why not include it under perverse cognition (*viparyaya*)? Because in *viparyaya* there is a substance which is at first wrongly cognized but then when the error is refuted, is seen in its own true nature. In *vikalpa*, however, there is no object at all.

A certain *vṛtti*, imagination, arises, and a word expresses it. The word also produces that very *vṛtti* when used again by the same speaker or by another. This particular *vṛtti* is then bound to the exalted power of verbal knowledge. So Vyāsa says:

That imaginary cognition arises neither in association with a valid proof nor in association with perverse cognition. A usage appears, confined to an exaltation in the knowledge of words . .

The mind is exalted by the fact that it knows words and uses them. The word *māhātmya*, translated here as “exaltation,” may also mean “glory” and “power.” Words have a power of their own to convey the imagined meaning (VB) and therefore a certain usage develops

The word *viavahāra*, translated as “usage,” also means “practical application” or “efficacy.” In *viparyaya* (VB) the object erroneously perceived has no practical application. A seashell perceived

as silver cannot be used by a silversmith to make silver earrings. Also in *viparyaya* words do not express (VB) the actual object. An observer says "silver" when first seeing a seashell, but the word "silver" in this case does not convey the truth of the object. It might safely be said that *viparyaya* is a cognition that does not follow a verbal conception (*śabda-jñāna-an-anupāti*). In *vikalpa* there is no refuting of an error, and the imagination expressed by appropriate words still serves practical purposes, as we shall see below. Even the most learned continue to make use of *vikalpa* in practice. There is no succession of error and refutation, and one word does not replace another; no "seashell" replaces "silver." In other words, *vikalpa* has a greater practical reality than has *viparyaya*. For example (HA), consider the word "time," which is not a substance, but generates an imaginary idea, a *vṛtti*, which produces the *vṛtti*—a concept of "time"—a word used consistently by the most learned.

There are many different types of *vikalpa* which have not been separately categorized by the commentators. Sometimes this imagination produces (VM) non-distinction among distinct objects, and sometimes it produces distinction where there is no distinction, and so forth. Sometimes the distinction of the qualification and the qualified, where the two are actually one, is unreal. "Distinction" and "non-distinction," not being substances, fall under the category of *vikalpa*. The examples given by Vyāsa are as follows:

"Consciousness is the form and nature of *puruṣa* " When consciousness itself is *puruṣa*, what is being designated by what" Normally there has to be an operative relationship in a designation

The word "designation" (*vṛapadeśha*) has been translated as "predication" (RP) and as "the relationship of qualification with the qualified" (BB). Both translations are equally accurate. But what is being qualified, designated by what, when consciousness is the same as the spiritual self? When we say a person named Chaitra has cows, the cows are something different from the owner, and there is an operational, functional relationship between them. This

simply does not apply when we know consciousness and puruṣha to bear a single identity. This is an example of *vikalpa* producing a distinction where none exists and (VM, VB) when the conception of a relationship of qualification with something qualified is artificial and imaginary. The use of the genitive case is not *vikalpa* in the case of, say, “Devadatta’s blanket” (BR), but it is so in the case of “puruṣha’s consciousness.” Again, Vyāsa says:

Similarly, the attributes of a substance being denied as belonging to puruṣha, it (puruṣha) is inactive.

Another rendering of the original would be as follows (VB):

*pratiṣhiddha-vastu-dharmā*: the attributes of a substance are denied in the case of puruṣha;  
*nishkriyāḥ puruṣhāḥ*: puruṣha is inactive.

This latter rendering presents one with two examples of *vikalpa*. The attributes that are normally ascribed to a substance are denied in the case of puruṣha because this says nothing about puruṣha. The Sanskrit adjectival compound *pratiṣhiddha-vastu-dharmā* which is supposed to be qualifying puruṣha is actually no qualification at all. Similarly, the adjective “inactive” (*nishkriya*), denying any possible activity in the case of puruṣha, expresses no qualification. These are pseudo-adjectives, works of imagination (*vikalpas*) dependent on words alone. Another rendering is based on a different reading of the text.

*pratiṣhiddhā vastu-dharmāḥ* the attributes of substances are denied.  
*nishkriyāḥ puruṣhāḥ* puruṣha is inactive

The first part here criticises the Buddhist view that “all attributes (*dharma*s) are painful, impermanent and devoid of a self.” If there are no attributes, how can any statement be made about them and, especially, how can they be denied? It is all verbal activity (*vikalpa*). The followers of the Buddhist and Nyāya schools accept negation

(*a-bhāva*) as a proof or a category in their systems, but Sāṅkhyayoga denies it as a *vikalpa*.

Next Vyāsa says:

“Someone named Bāṇa stops (or will stop, or has stopped); here, upon the cessation of movement, only the meaning of the verb is conveyed.

Stopping (VM, VB) is a cessation of movement, an absence thereof. A verb normally expresses an activity of some kind, but stopping denotes an absence, a negation of the activity called movement. This cessation of movement is further ascribed to Bāṇa, who is supposed to be the doer, an agent (*kartr̄*), performing this activity called the cessation of activity as he “stops.” To confound by compounding it further, an insubstantial concept like time—present, future or perfect (or past)—is attached to it. So we say Bāṇa stops, will stop, has stopped. First there is an absence of movement; then the verb “stop” is given a positive state (*bhāva*); and then that absent *bhāva*, which is actually a negative (*a-bhāva*), is attached to the idea of succession, an anterior or posterior incidence expressed by a tense; this produces a triple *vikalpa*! But to go yet deeper, the person Bāṇa is merely a false identification of the nameless, formless puruṣha who, not being subject to the space-evolute of matter, does not move from place to place, so no question of the cessation of movement arises. The fourth *vikalpa*! Not being subject to space, it is not subject to time, time itself being a *vikalpa*. Therefore, the present, future and past tenses do not apply. “Bāṇa stopped” is an example of a fivefold *vikalpa*!

“Puruṣha’s characteristic is to be devoid of birth” is the translation of Vyāsa’s *an-utਪarti-dharmā puruṣhah*. The first of these two words is a compound adjectival phrase with the literal meaning of “one-with-the-characteristic-of-not-being-born.” Here also the same argument applies as with the example given above, “puruṣha is inactive.” The negative adjective is false. It has no substance and is a mere verbal expression of the vṛtti called *vikalpa*. It is an absence, imagined as though a positive state, then attached to puruṣha as though his attribute—yet it expresses no attribute of puruṣha. Hence Vyāsa says:

Here merely the absence of the characteristic of being born is understood and not a particular attribute associated with puruṣha. Therefore (it is obvious that) this characteristic is imagined (*vikalpa*), and by that imagination a usage in practice prevails.

The criticism of the examples of *vikalpa* given above is directed at fallacious philosophical concepts which cannot be substantiated. Some examples of the grossest form of *vikalpa*, the non-philosophical imagination, are (BG) brought together in the following verse:

There goes the son of a barren woman;  
He has worn a crown of sky-flowers  
After bathing in the waters of a mirage.  
He carries a bow made of a hare's horns.

**Sūtra I.10**

अभावप्रत्ययालम्बना वृत्तिर्निद्रा ।

**abhāva-pratyayālambanā vṛttir nidrā**

*abhāva-*: absence, negation

*pratyaya-*: cognition principle, cognition, causal principle

*ālambanā*: resorting to, supported by, leaning on, dependent on, having as a base

*vṛttiḥ*: modification, mental state, operation, fluctuation, activity

*nidrā*: sleep

**Sleep is the modification or operation of the mind-field resorting to the cognition principle of absence or negation and to the cause thereof.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Sleep is to be considered a particular type of cognition because one reflects about it. "I slept comfortably; my mind is clear; it brightens up my discernment." "I slept uncomfortably; my mind is sluggish; it is wandering, unsteady; I am unable to concentrate." "I slept heavily and in a stupor; my mind is tired, indolent; it feels stagnant and lost."

This kind of reflection would not occur if there were no experience of cognition (during sleep), nor would there be memories based on that sleep and relating to the subjects of these reflections. Therefore sleep is a particular type of cognition. And for the purpose of samādhi, this (vṛtti called) sleep, too, should be brought under control (*nirodha*) just like other cognitions.

### Discussion

In all sūtra texts there occurs a method known as implicit succession (*anu-vṛtti*), whereby the presence of a word that occurs in a given sūtra is implied also to function as part of a number of subsequent sūtras until no longer needed. An example of *anu-vṛtti* is the word *vṛtti* that occurred in *YS I.5* and is understood in *YS I.6-9*. For example, the full translation of *YS I.9* is:

Dependent upon a verbal knowledge only but devoid of a real object is the vṛtti called imaginary cognition (*vikalpa*).

Even though the word *vṛtti* does not occur in the sūtra, it is brought down from *YS I.5*. Since the topic of the five vṛttis continues until *YS I.11*, the word *vṛtti* would be implicit up to that sūtra by the rule of *anu-vṛtti*.

Then why is the word *vṛtti* repeated in the current sūtra? The answer is that this additional confirmation of sleep as a vṛtti is essential because one normally does not consider sleep to be a modification, fluctuation, wave, operation or activity of the mind-field. About the other four vṛttis there is no question, but even experts (VM, NB) are doubtful about sleep being an operation of the mind-field. The repetition of the word *vṛtti* in the sūtra is for the purpose of challenging and refuting the possible view (RY) that sleep is an absence of awareness.

The compound phrase *abhāva-pratyaya-ālambanā* is to be explained as follows: *Abhāva* is absence of the vṛttis that occur in wakefulness and dream states (VM, VB, HA); that is, it is the absence of all the other vṛttis (BG, NB) enumerated in these sūtras. Absence means non-production or non-appearance (BG). The word *pratyaya* means cognition (*pratīti*) as well as the cause or origin; it is that from which any cognition as an effect proceeds. The cognition that causes the absence of other vṛttis (VM, VB, BR, NB, HA, RY, RS) is the guṇa of prakṛti called tamas. Tamas veils sattva, the essential nature of buddhi (VB) and of the mind-field (VM). When tamas becomes dominant (BR) and overpowers the sattva and rajas of buddhi (VB, VM), veiling the chitta (NB), it covers all the senses (VB, VM). However, this does not mean that the senses are absent, as the Vedāntins would have us believe (RS).

Then, because there are no other objects to reflect in the mind to give the mind their form (VM, VB), the substance tamas (*tamo-dravīam*), which is as real as any darkness (VB), overwhelms the mind which, obscured with this defilement (*malina*) (VB), consequently becomes impure. The mind then takes the form of this very tamas as its object (VM, VB, BG, NB, RY, SS) and identifies

with it (the experience and the vṛtti arising therefrom) as it would with external objects. Here the mind observes “I am sleeping” and enjoys the tamasic pleasure that ensues. The sleeping person is then called inwardly conscious (*antaḥ-sañjña*) (VM, VB, NB). The statement about the sleep state being inwardly conscious occurs in verses 4 and 7 of the *Māṇḍūkya Upaniṣad*, where it is called *antaḥ-prajña*. The subject of this Upaniṣad is the four states of consciousness (wakefulness, dream, sleep and superconsciousness) as inherent in the experience of the word *OM* or *AUM*. This relates not to personal consciousness alone but also to the consciousness of the cosmic Person, His wakefulness, dream, sleep and superconsciousness, how these reflect in the states of individual consciousness, and how the individual states may become the means for understanding, experiencing and realizing the states of the cosmic Person. The 12 verses of the *Māṇḍūkya Upaniṣad*, 215 verses of expository text by Gauḍapāda—who was the guru of the guru of Śankarāchārya—as well as Śankara’s own commentary on the same are a very detailed and profound body of philosophy, which cannot be treated here even succinctly. In addition, many other texts like the *Yoga-vāsiṣṭha* provide us with further detailed material. It is earnestly recommended that the reader gain access to these sources of the great teachings concerning the nature of cosmic as well as individual sleep in which the sleeping person is termed inwardly conscious.

Before continuing, it is well to understand some facts about sleep. It is obvious that sleep cannot be considered a state of unconsciousness, for these reasons:

- Only the surface layer of mind, that is, the conscious mind, is overcome by tamas
- Only that part of the mind sleeps which normally undergoes alterations of wakefulness, dream and sleep. The rest of the mind continues its normal operations (which are enumerated in *YS III 15*)
- The entire mind never sleeps during one’s lifetime

If the entire mind were to sleep, who would continue operating the lungs so one may breathe while asleep? Who would maintain the

heartbeat and keep the process of digestion going and keep the blood circulating? Who would arrange for the mind to float in and out of dreams? A person sleeps, wakes up feeling cold, covers up with a blanket, falls asleep again, and remembers nothing of it in the morning. Who tells the sleeping mind that the skin is feeling cold? A person sleeps, rolls to the edge of the bed, but, unlike an infant, does not fall off. Who tells the sleeper to roll away from the edge and back to a safer part of the bed? If the entire mind slept, having lost consciousness, who would answer, however slowly, to the person's name being called and wake up? If the entire mind slept, who could awaken whom? One would never wake up; one could not even remain alive.

It is obvious, then, that the part of the mind that experiences vṛttis is the very one that experiences tamas, the pall of mist or fog which deactivates the senses temporarily and induces sleep. All the commentators agree that during sleep (*a*) the mind identifies with tamas, which replaces the objects of other vṛttis, and (*b*) the mind observes "I am sleeping" and experiences this absence and this observation as a tamasic pleasure. This is what is meant by the phrase *abhāva-pratyaya-ālambanā* 'resorting to or being dependent on the cognition of absence and to the cause thereof'. Vyāsa's commentary reads:

Sleep is to be considered a particular type of cognition because one reflects about it.

In other words, (HA) sleep is that vṛtti of the mind in which awareness is very indistinct (*a-sphuṭa*). The object of this vṛtti, like the objects of our other experiences and their consequent vṛttis, is tamas with its dullness and stupefaction which causes the occlusion or subjugation of normal cognitions that occur in wakefulness and dream. As darkness has the characteristic of indistinctness, causing the features of all objects in it to become indistinct, as though unified, so also has sleep the quality of dullness and stupefaction (*yaḍaiṭā*) that becomes the common feature of the body, the senses and the mind-field (HA). If sleep were an absence of experience

(HA), one could not have recollections (BB) of it, because a recollection implies memory or an imprint of an event or of an experience (HA, BR).

A logician might say that one recalls an absence. For example, one might state, "There was no elephant in the hall." Whether or not this can be termed the memory of an absence of an elephant or simply a conclusion drawn on the basis of the memory one had of the actual experience of the positive conditions of the hall has been a subject of intense and complex debates among logicians of many schools. What is relevant to the point here is the fact that one does not have the recollection of a vague absence of vṛttis but reflects about the quality of various types of sleep. This proves that sleep is indeed a positive vṛtti. It should be noted that neither Vyāsa nor the subsequent commentators have raised the possibility that the quality of sleep is not a matter of recollection, but is inferred from how one feels upon awakening. This question leads to the various categories of sleep spoken of by the commentators. NTC, in fact, discusses in considerable detail various philosophical views on the nature of sleep, a full description of which would require a separate treatise.

Even though sleep means that the mind is overcome by tamas, it does not mean that the other two guṇas (sattva and rajas) are altogether absent. They are subservient to tamas in the experience of sleep. Vyāsa gives examples of the sattvic, rajasic and tamasic sleep (VM, VB, RY). Vyāsa's commentary reads:

. one reflects about it "I slept comfortably; my mind is clear, it brightens up my discernment." "I slept uncomfortably, my mind is sluggish, it is wandering, unsteady, I am unable to concentrate" "I slept heavily and in a stupor, my mind is tired, indolent, it feels stagnant and lost (literally, as though stolen)"

These three types of recollection or reflection indicate sattvic, rajasic and tamasic sleep respectively. In the first example, the tamas of sleep is aided by sattva; that is, even though sleep is primarily a tamasic experience, sattva is serving as a minister (VM, VB) to tamas the king. The person waking from such a sleep feels that the

mind is clear (*prasanna*). The word *prasanna* suggests the quality of clear, still water and a pleasantness of mind that results from such clarity. (VB) In such a clear mind, with a pleasant mood, the intelligence functions with perfect discernment and is expanded and made sharp to grasp subtle matter and detail.

(VM, VB) Rising from rajasic sleep one observes that the mind is feeling a laziness (*styāna*). (This will be defined further in *YS* I.30 among the nine obstacles in yoga.) The sleep in which tamas has altogether overpowered sattva and rajas (VM) leaves one feeling that the energy of the mind has been stolen (VB), as though plundered by others. The mind loses its initiative and becomes disinclined to undertake action. As a result, one is unable to concentrate and becomes ineffective.

We have already commented on Vyāsa's statement that

this kind of reflection would not occur if there were no experience of cognition (during sleep), nor would there be memories based on that sleep and relating to the subjects of these reflections. Therefore sleep is a particular type of cognition.

This is understood. Now Vyāsa says:

And for the purpose of samadhi, this (vṛtti called) sleep, too, should be brought under control (*nirodha*) just like other cognitions (*pratyayas*)

The question might arise that since sleep (*nidrā*) is a vṛtti in which the mind is concentrated (*ekāgra*) (see Sūtra I.1), why is it required that one practise *nirodha* of other vṛttis, such as *pramāṇa*, which occur in the wakeful state? Is the *ekāgra* of sleep all that one needs? In sleep the mind is concentrated on tamas and free from painful attractions to objects which a yogi should avoid (VB). Why, then, should he practise the *nirodha* of sleep? Because even though sleep appears like a concentration (VM), it is yet tamasic Samādhi results from the conquest of the three gunas, the least desirable of which is tamas. Sleep is, therefore, an adversary of samādhi. The purpose of samādhi is to raise one above the attributes of the three gunas

*sukha*: pleasure (from sattva)

*duḥkha*: pain (from rajas)

*moha*: somnolence and stupor (from tamas)

It has been seen that the three types of recollections about one's sleep indicate the presence of these three attributes, and it is therefore obvious that sleep is an adversary (VB) of samādhi and must be brought under control. Furthermore, samādhi is not defined merely (HA) as a state of mind (*a*) devoid of external awareness, (*b*) under the power of stupor, (*c*) merely carrying on the functions of the body, (*d*) without any remembrance of past experiences. Rather, samādhi is total absorption in the object of meditation and consequently is accompanied with restraint over activities of the body and senses. Hence *nirodha* of sleep is as requisite as that of the other vṛttis insofar as the pursuit of samādhi is concerned.

**Sūtra I.11**

**अनुभूतविषयासम्प्रमोषः स्मृतिः ।**

**anubhūta-viṣhayāsampramoṣhaḥ smṛtiḥ**

*anu-bhūta-*: experienced

*viṣhaya-*: objects of experience

*a-sampramoṣhaḥ*: non-theft, not being stolen, not being lost

*smṛtiḥ*: memory

**Objects experienced not being lost is the vṛtti called memory (*smṛti*).**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Does the mind-field remember the cognition (*pratyaya*) or the object of experience? A cognition is associated with and coloured by the object of an apprehension and resembles and manifests (*nirbhāsa*) the features of both the object apprehended and the process and instrument of apprehension. Such cognition then produces an imprint (*sarīskāra*) that is similar to them both.

That *sarīskāra* then manifests its identity with its own manifestative cause; it generates a memory. This memory is identical in form to the same (*sarīskāra*, its manifested identity, and the manifestative cause). It consists of both the object apprehended and the process and instrument of apprehension.

There, when the process and instrument of apprehension is the primary feature, it is intelligence (buddhi). When the form of the object of experience is primary, it becomes memory (*smṛti*). This memory is of two kinds: (a) where something imaginary is remembered, and (b) where something not imaginary is remembered. Of these, the former manifests in dream and the latter during wakefulness. All these memories arise from the experience of valid proof, perverse cognition, imaginary cognition, sleep and memory.

Also, all these vṛttis consist of pleasure, pain and stupefaction. The pleasure, pain and stupefaction, however, are to be explained under the afflictions (*kleśhas*). Attraction (*rāga*) is attendant upon pleasure. Aversion (*dveṣha*) is attendant upon pain. And ignorance (*avidyā*) is stupefaction.

All these vṛttis are to be brought under control (*nirodha*). Upon accomplishment of their *nirodha*, there ensues the samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) or even the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi.

## Discussion

The first part of the discussion will clarify the compound phrase *anubhūta-viṣhaya-asampramoṣhah*.

*a-sampramoṣhah*: from the verb root *mush* ‘to steal’; not being stolen, non-theft, not being lost—of  
*viṣhaya*: a subject, or an object, which  
*anu-bhūta*: has been experienced.

The phrase can be explained in many different ways.

A non-theft pertains to (VM, BR, AD) a subject, or an object experienced through valid proof, etc. Non-theft means (BR) the arising of such a subject in the buddhi by way of samskāras. The word *viṣhaya* means a subject or an object of experience, that is to say, *the subject of a memory as the object of a past experience*. This entire phrase should be substituted for “subject” or “object of experience” in reading this discussion where the *viṣhaya* of a memory is being discussed.

Only the experience based on *pramā*, etc. (see Sūtra I.7) is the father (RY) of memory. Only the subject of that experience is akin to, or, as it were, “a kin to” the memory and can be included in the process of memory. The term being translated here as “akin to” or “a kin to” is *ātmiya* (VM, RY), which means “belonging to; related to, like a relative or a kinsman; something to be included in the process as belonging to a particular realm.” A subject (VM) belongs to the realm of the awareness (*yñāna*) born of a particular samskāra when it is projected forth from the experience that caused the samskāra in the first place. Incorporating any more of a subject than that is like a theft (VM, NB). Where such a theft does not occur and no more than the object of the experience is grasped as the subject (NB), such a vṛtti is called memory. Memory must be limited to that subject which has been absorbed by the chitta and not stealing, as it were, another’s possession (HA). It could be less

than that subject, due to failure of recall, but never more (VM, NB). This “another’s possession” includes even the original object that was experienced (RY). It is not the subject of memory for the purposes of the sūtra. The sūtra does not mean to include a recognition, which requires an external object being experienced afresh with the senses even though they are also serving as an aid to the past impression. Memory, as a technical term here, is entirely an internal mental process produced from the saṃskāras (VB). The intent of Vyāsa appears to be that the subject of memory is the vṛtti that was experienced together with the substance (*artha*) of that vṛtti, but not the external object (VB, BG, NB).

Vyāsa’s commentary reads:

Does the mind-field remember the cognition (*pratīvā*) or the object of experience?

In a memory, does the mind remember the fact of a cognition (the consciousness of a perception) (VM, NB), like “I know the vessel” (HA), or does it remember the form of the object? Is it the experience that is remembered (VM) or the object of the experience?

Vyāsa’s answer is:

A cognition is associated with and coloured by the object of an apprehension and resembles and manifests the features of both the object apprehended and the process and instrument of apprehension. Such cognition then produces an imprint (saṃskāra) that is similar to them both.

The Sanskrit phrases here should be examined with care

*pratīvā* a cognition

*grāhīta-uparuktah* (is) associated with and coloured by the object of an apprehension

*U-pa-ranī* means “to be coloured by something because of its proximity.” A cognition is coloured and its nature determined by the proximity of the object that is being experienced, apprehended. Therefore a cognition carries the features or natures (*rūpa*) of the

object as well as the process or the fact of that apprehension. It contains both the *grāhya*, the object of experience, and the *grahaṇa*, the instrument, the process and the fact of experience. “It resembles the features and natures of both of these and manifests them”—this entire idea is expressed by the word *nir-bhāsa* ‘shining forth as’.

The cognition then leaves a saṃskāra in which both features are included: (1) the fact that the person cognizes the object, has gained experience thereof; and (2) the object as it actually is. *Smṛti* does not arise by itself. An experience first becomes a saṃskāra, an imprint, in the *āśhaya* (which is to be explained). From the saṃskāra it rises again as a mental operation (*vṛtti*). This process of the rising of *vṛttis* through the saṃskāra of a past experience is memory (*smṛti*) (AD). The object itself therefore ceases to be present, but the saṃskāra produces the memory. So Vyāsa states:

That saṃskāra then manifests its identity with its own manifestative cause; it generates a memory. This memory is identical in form to the same (samskāra, its manifested identity, and the manifestative cause). It consists of both the object appre-hended and the process and instrument of appre-hension.

We have translated the phrase *sva-vyañjaka-añjanah* as “manifests its identity with its own manifestative cause.” Concerning the way the samskāra was formed, the cause of its manifestation was the original cognition. So when it re-produces the experience in the form of memory, the memory also is identical to (a) the saṃskāra, as it manifests, shows itself to be identical with, the original experience, and (b) the experience itself that was the manifestative cause of the samskāra (although the memory has now been triggered by (VB) some other manifestative cause, such as an appropriate time)

The memory, then, just like the original cognition, and the saṃskāra it had formed, consists of both the object appre-hended, and the process and fact of appre-hension. This is the chain of causation here:

- (a) the experience, from which is produced
- (b) the saṃskāra, which generates
- (c) the memory,

each with the twofold process: (1) cognition that "I know the object," and (2) cognition of the nature of the object itself.

This is a synopsis of what the commentators have said about Vyāsa's paragraph. Obviously, unless the mind knows that it knows, it cannot re-produce as memory the experience of the original object. In this process the faculty of discrimination (buddhi) plays its part. Vyāsa says:

There, when the process and instrument of apprehension is the primary feature, it is intelligence (buddhi).

A more literal translation of the text would be:

When the feature of the process of apprehension is primary, it is intelligence.

But the first rendering is preferred as being better English. The word "intelligence" (buddhi) is not used here in the sense of the entire buddhi faculty but rather one of its functions, the process of apprehension. Once again, let us clarify "I know the vessel." This is an apprehension, an act of intelligence. This particular type of apprehension is called *anu-vyavasāya*, the awareness that buddhi has that it cognizes or apprehends or experiences. It is an important part of the process of memory, in which the other part of the cognition is the object (in this case, the vessel). However, when one sees the vessel a second time and says, "This is that vessel," this is not technically included under memory for the purpose of this sūtra. It is called "re-cognition" (*pratyabhijñā*). In the apprehension "I know the vessel," one *vṛtti* - "the vessel" - is the subject (*viśaya*) of the other *vṛtti* - "I know." Knowing here is the primary feature. Then, says Vyāsa

When the form of the object of experience is the primary feature, it becomes memory

Even though the *anu-vyavasāya* is an important part of the process of memory, the memory proper is a single *vṛtti*—“the vessel.” Here the awareness, “I know,” is secondary.

Vyāsa says:

This memory is of two kinds: (a) where something imaginary is remembered, and (b) where something not imaginary is remembered. Of these, the former manifests in dream and the latter during wakefulness.

In fact what appears in the dream is not memory proper because the entire scene of space, time and relationships is warped. A person familiar in one setting may be seen associated with a completely different setting, which is imaginary, of which there has been no former experience and, therefore, from which no memory could evolve. For this reason many commentators (VM, NB, RY) place the dream under memory only because (VM) it appears to be like a memory; however, strictly speaking, dreams fall under the category of *viparyaya* (YS I.8), having no substance (VM).

It may be safely said that some constituents of a dream are certainly pure memory, while the rest are imagination. VB is of the opinion that Vyāsa meant to include here only those parts that are true memory. This view is supported by Vyāsa because of the locative case “in dream,” which obviously does not mean that the dream is entirely imagination. Nor does Vyāsa himself equate the dream with imagination (*viparyaya*), although it must be agreed that those parts of the dream which are not pure memory do fall under the definition of *viparyaya* (YS I.8):

False knowledge without a basis in the nature or form of the respective object is the *vṛtti* called perverse cognition (*viparvaya*)

In the list of five *vṛttis* (YS I.5-11), memory has been placed last (VM, VB) because in Vyāsa’s words:

All these memories arise from the experience of valid proof, perverse cognition, imaginary cognition, sleep and memory.

"The experience" means the buddhi's first (VM) cognition of or involvement with the object (VM); thereafter it becomes (VB) the awareness of the apprehension that buddhi has (*anu-vyavasāya*), as explained above. It is also clear from Vyāsa's passage that a memory may be remembered, as the first-time experience of that memory. Thus there may occur the memory of a memory.

Of the five vṛttis (BR), *pramāṇa*, *viparyaya* and *vikalpa* occur in the wakeful state. The experience of these three combined, masquerading as direct perception (*pratyakṣha*), becomes the dream. Sleep is a unique state in that it is marked by the absence of other vṛttis even though it is in itself a vṛtti. Memory is the effect of any or all of these vṛttis.

Buddhi is the raw material from which these vṛttis are shaped, as images are shaped from gold (VB). These vṛttis are the mutations (*parināmas*) of buddhi. Because buddhi is made of prakṛti, which consists of the three guṇas, Vyāsa says:

Also, all these vṛttis consist of pleasure, pain and stupefaction. The pleasure, pain and stupefaction, however, are to be explained under the afflictions (*kleshas*).

However, for the sake of brevity here, he quotes *YS* II.7-8:

Attraction is attendant upon pleasure Aversion is attendant upon pain

As to stupefaction, he says:

And ignorance (*avidr̥ā*) is stupefaction

This will be defined further in *YS* II.5.

Although the desirability of avoiding stupefaction and pain is obvious, a question arises as to why the pleasure of the vṛttis should also be avoided. The traditional reply is that nowhere does pleasure exist in the vṛttis as pure and unalloyed, free from pain and stupefaction. It is, in fact, pleasures and attractions (*rāgas*) that are the direct causes of aversions.

As to *moha* (stupefaction, somnolence, delusion), it is of three kinds (HA):

1. *vichāra-moha*: confusion of thought processes
2. *cheṣṭā-moha*: confusion in the physical posture, gait, movement, effort, as though one's limbs are not being moved under one's own observation or by one's own clarity of will
3. *vedanā-moha*: confusion of feelings and emotions where one does not know even what is painful or pleasant to him

It is such confusion that produces all pain and grief. For this reason, says Vyāsa:

All these *vṛttis* are to be brought under control (*nirodha*). Upon accomplishment of their *nirodha*, there ensues the *samādhi* of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) or even the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) *samādhi*.

**Sūtra I.12**

अभ्यासवैराग्याभ्यां तन्निरोधः ।

**abhyāsa-vairāgyābhyaṁ tan-nirodhaḥ**

*abhyāsa-*: (with) practice and  
*vairāgyābhyaṁ*: with dispassion  
*tat-*: of those  
*nirodhaḥ*: control (occurs)

The control of those vṛttis occurs through practice and dispassion.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, what is the method for establishing control over these (vṛttis)?

[*Sūtra*.] The control of those vṛttis occurs through practice and dispassion.

The river of the mind-field indeed flows both ways. It flows towards beatitude (BB) and it flows towards evil (BB). The part sloping down the domain of discernment (*viveka*) towards the reservoir of isolation (*kaivalya*) flows towards beatitude. The one sloping down the domain of indiscrimination (*a-viveka*) towards the reservoir of worldly transmigrations flows towards evil.

There, the stream of worldly attractions is blocked, reduced, through dispassion (*vairāgya*). The stream of discriminative wisdom (*viveka*) is opened up through the practice (*abhyāsa*) of realizing (*darśhana*) discernment (*viveka*).

Thus the *nirodha* of the vṛttis of the mind-field is dependent upon both (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*).

### Discussion

The mind-field is like a river (HA). As some rivers (VB)<sup>13</sup> flow towards the ocean and some simply become lost into the ground, so the mind flows both ways. Vyāsa expresses it as follows:

<sup>13</sup> VB says "As the river sometimes flows towards the ocean and sometimes towards the ground or else it might just dry up" His explanation of the metaphor is not clear

The river of the mind-field indeed flows both ways. It flows towards beatitude and it flows towards evil. The part sloping down the domain of discernment (*viveka*) towards the reservoir of isolation (*kaivalya*) flows towards beatitude. The part sloping down the domain of indiscrimination (*a-viveka*) towards the reservoir of worldly transmigrations flows towards evil.

### The phrases

*kaivalya-prāg-bhāra*: towards the reservoir of isolation  
and

*samsāra-prāg-bhāra*: towards the reservoir of worldly transmigrations

present some difficulty in translation. *Prāg-bhāra* is a dam or dyke (*prabandha*). Its *yaugika*, derivative meaning (see p. 18), could also be “bearing a weight or load tipping in favour of (as on a scale); carrying a momentum towards; predisposed towards.” So the complete translation would be: “It is predisposed towards, carrying a moment towards, bearing its weight towards isolation (*kaivalya*) so its flow creates a reservoir at the dam of *kaivalya*, and similarly . . . at the dam of *samsāra*.” The word *viśaya* is a double-entendre. It means “a domain; a subject and/or an object of experience.” The river of mind flows in the domain of discernment (*viveka*) when the subject it is occupied with and the object of its experience is that *viveka*. The same applies in the case of non-discernment, indiscrimination (*a-viveka*). The mind-river is inclined (BB) down the slope of its domain (*viśaya*), subject or object—whether it be discrimination or indiscrimination.

*Samsāra* is the antonym of *kaivalya*, *nirvāṇa*, or *mokṣha*. The word expresses involvement with the world that leads one to gather karma so that one remains entangled in the continuous moving wheel of the world through the cycles of creation and dissolution and many transmigrations through birth and death.

When the mind-river is inclined towards *kaivalya*, it leads to *kalyāṇa*, all that is beautiful, benevolent, propitious and desirable, to the noble way, the way of beatitude (BB), in short, to liberation

(*mokṣha*) (VB). Otherwise it leads one towards the evil way and the evil result (*pāpa*).

Pertaining to practice and dispassion (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*) Vyāsa says:

The stream of worldly attractions is blocked, reduced, through dispassion (*vairāgya*). The stream of discriminative wisdom (*viveka*) is opened up through the practice (*abhyāsa*) of realizing (*darśhana*) discernment (*viveka*).

Thus far the definition of yoga has been given, and Sūtras 5-11 were an exposition on the word *vr̥tti* that occurred in the definition, the *lakṣhaṇa-sūtra* I.2. Now the means thereto, the method thereof (VB), are to be explained.

The practitioner is being advised to choose not just one (VM, VB, RS) of the two methods, either practice (*abhyāsa*) or dispassion (*vairāgya*), but the two together. Each of the two fulfils an essential part of the purpose (VM, VB, RS, BG). This is very clear from Vyāsa's words:

Thus the *nirodha* of the *vr̥ttis* of the mind-field is dependent upon both (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*)

Ordinarily (RY) the average person's mind-stream flows in the domain and down the slope of worldly interest towards the ocean of *samsāra*. One breaks the momentum of that flow through dispassion and turns the stream upwards through practice (*abhyāsa*) of the discrimination between *purusha* and the *sattva* of the mind.

The stream of the mind-field flowing towards the worldly involvements is turned off (SS), reduced (VB, HA), blocked (RS, BG, NB), its flow stemmed (RY), stopped (HA), through dispassion (*vairāgya*). Dispassion arises as one sees (BR, NB) the evil of worldly ways and interests, and consequently the mind's inclination is turned off from them (BR)

Practice is cultivating and nurturing *viveka*, a view of life, of reality and of oneself and one's attitudes and works in the light of the philosophy and experience of discernment or discriminating

wisdom (VB, BG, NB, HA). This view is referred to as *darśhana*, the common Indian word for philosophy. Frequently repeated observance of the means and methods of attaining *viveka* (HA), as well as practice of meditation all the way up to *samādhi* (SS), is to be included in this practice of the view of discernment (*abhyāsa* of the *darśhana* of *viveka*).

Through *abhyāsa* the stream of those vṛttis is unblocked, opened up and made increasingly stronger, leading to *viveka*, so that the stream may enter the ocean of *nirodha* (VB). In other words, it is through practice that the stream of *viveka* is opened up, releasing its flow (HA, NTC). Thus the turbulence of the mind is calmed so that it may flow pacifically (SS). The experience shows the mind that the way of peacefulness leads to comfort (BR). The result is a firmness and strength in one's practice as well as in one's dispassion.

NTC has described this process as follows: A flooded river causes havoc and at the same time provides a service. On one hand it devastates villages and towns; on the other hand it irrigates the fields. The devastation is prevented by building dams and so forth, and the irrigation is controlled and directed by digging canals and the like. Similar is the case of the river of the mind-field (*chittanadi*). Its flow upon the ground of objects towards the ocean of transmigratory cycles into the world (*samsāra*) is broken through dispassion (*vairāgya*). And its flow on the ground of spirituality towards the ocean of the joy of liberation increases through practice (*abhyāsa*) by bringing into control the obstacles like sleep.

The mind-field has two natures (RY). agitation as well as submersion (*laya*). If one has disinterest in the world (*vairāgya*) but no practice of discernment or of meditation, the mind's agitations will be pacified but the mind will enter into sleep. The yoga of *samādhi* will not be fulfilled. It is a well-known fact in the oral and experiential tradition that many people who have not prepared themselves by practice fall asleep during mental exercises while in the corpse posture (*shavāsana*). Some also fall asleep during meditation or when in the presence of a master's mental and pranic energy. Only with gradual practice are they able to absorb and assimilate the energy of *prāṇa*, *kundalini* and consciousness into themselves so

that their meditations may be elevated to greater heights.

Therefore it is to be concluded that both *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya* are prerequisite for attaining *nirodha*. Hence (VB) we read:

No doubt, O mighty-armed Arjuna, the mind is fickle and difficult to restrain, but, O Son of Kunti, it is brought under control through practice (*abhyāsa*) and through dispassion (*vairāgya*).

*Bhagavad-gītā VI.35*

Even though *nirodha* was defined in *YS I.2*, the word occurs again in this sūtra as the stated goal. Practice and dispassion bring about the *nirodha* of the vṛttis (BR), whose normal nature, based in the guṇas, is *prakāśha*, illumination; *pra-vṛtti*, involvement, initiative, adventurousness; and *niyama*, stability, restraint, control. When (BR, NB) their predisposition to flow outwards has been stemmed and they are turned inwards, the vṛttis submerge into their originating cause, the mind-field. Then they dwell within their origin, chitta, as *śakti*, power, energy, potentia. This having occurred, the river of the mind also merges into *nirodha*, which is the same (NB) as *kaivalya* (isolation).

**Sūtra I.13      तत्र स्थितौ यत्नोऽभ्यासः।**  
**tatra sthitau yatno'bhyāsaḥ**

*tatra*: there, between those (two, practice and dispassion)

*sthitau*: in the matter of, towards, settling, stabilising, coming to rest (of the mind-field); as regards stilling, steadiness

*yatnah*: endeavour, effort

*abhyāsaḥ*: practice

**Between those two, practice and dispassion, the endeavour towards stillness and stability (*sthiti*) of the mind-field is called practice.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Stillness or stability (*sthiti*) means the mind-field flowing pacifically when it is without vṛttis.

The endeavour tending towards this purpose is virility or exertion.

Practice is the observance of the means thereto, with the will to achieve its fulfilment.

### Discussion

The definition of practice is given (VB) by way of stating its nature and purpose. That is, the endeavour with regard to, for the purpose of, stilling the mind is called practice.

It may be asked (SS): One has to make the effort of a mental activity when practising the repetition of mantra for *japa* and so forth, but what could be the endeavour involved in stillness? Although Vyāsa says that

stillness or stability (*sthiti*) means the mind-field flowing pacifically when it is without vṛttis,

it does not mean a total absence of vṛttis (VM, VB). As we shall see under *YS* I 42, (VB) one does not begin even *samprajñāta samādhi* until after this stillness (*sthiti*) is experienced. This *sthiti*—

"stillness, stability, settling down, coming to rest, steadiness"—means either that the mind-field is free of any vṛtti other than that which is the object of concentration (VB), or that it is free of the rajasic and tamasic vṛttis (VM, NB, RY), and sattvic vṛttis alone (NB, RS) remain. Stillness is the one-pointedness of the mind-field when it is without the rajasic and tamasic vṛttis (RY).

Other commentators are more ambitious. According to them (BR, AD), that mutation (*parināma*) of the mind, when it is without vṛttis and dwelling in its own nature, is to be called *sthiti*. However, VB is correct in stating that this definition would raise *sthiti* beyond the experience of *samprajñāta* samādhi; the path would then come after the goal, the endeavour would supersede its own purpose. The intent of the sūtra seems to be to state implicitly that the endeavour in meditation means bringing the mind to stillness or stability, which means freedom from the rajasic and tamasic turbulences, the mind's one-pointed concentration on a single sattvic vṛtti remaining uninterrupted so that the mind flows in a calm, pacific, smooth stream. The mind then flows calmly because it is not interrupted by other vṛttis (VB) and not disturbed by emotional waves of exhilaration, grief and so forth. The word *śānta* 'pacific, calm' used by Vyāsa is explained (VB):

One who upon hearing, touching, seeing, tasting or smelling whatever pleasant or unpleasant is neither pleased nor displeased is called pacific, calm (*śānta*).

*Mahopaniṣad* IV.32

The endeavour is directed towards *sthiti*, and is explained by Vyāsa by offering two synonyms:

*virūpa* virility, vigour, strength, energy, potency, the qualities of a hero

*utsāha* enthusiasm, perseverance, fortitude, firmness, exertion, vigorous pursuit

Obviously an endeavour should be undertaken with these heroic qualities turned inwards and their intense concentration directed at the effort to bring the mind to stillness. One says to oneself again

and again: "Even though the mind naturally flows outwards, I shall definitely bring it under control" (SS).

On this sūtra NTC says stability (*sīhiti*) means one-pointedness (*ekāgratā*) upon the transcendental self (*para-ātman*) whose nature is essence (*sat*) and consciousness (*chit*). The effort (*prayatna*) means:

*utsāha*: zeal and enthusiasm that "I shall certainly restrain the mind which constantly flows outwards."

*sāhasa*: courage, that is, embarking upon the endeavour without considering "It can be done," "It can't be done," etc.

*dhairyā*: steadfastness and patience that "If not in this life then in some future one this will definitely succeed." It should be such that one is willing to try to empty the ocean by catching its drops on the end of a blade of grass!

*adhyātma-vidyā*: pursuit of spiritual science. It means that the mind-field (*chitta*) is extinguished like fire when it is provided no more fuel. It occurs when one sees the purposelessness and falsity of objects and a true purpose in ātman.

*mahat-sevā*. service of the great, which consists of prostrating before them, asking them questions and serving their person.

In addition, *yamas*, etc. will be explained in subsequent sūtras.

Returning to Vyāsa:

Practice is the observance of the means thereto . . .

The means towards this stillness are (VM) the eight limbs (*angas*) of yoga (YS II 29ff.) and others such as (VB, BG) faith, etc. (YS I 20) This state of stillness is further strengthened by following the methods taught in YS I 35-39 This observance of the method, says Vyāsa, is undertaken

with the will to achieve its fulfilment

This phrase is a translation of the single word *sam-pipādayiṣhayā*, the instrumental case of the desiderative nominal form *sam-pipādayiṣhā*, which implies a desire, an intent, a will. Without a definite

resolve and the exertion of will, one will not fulfil one's purpose, and the effort will not bear fruit. To reverse Vyāsa's sequence:

- A will and intent to fulfil the purpose is required so one may undertake
- the observance of the means and methods of yoga
- with heroic perseverance, vigour, power and virility, so that
- the mind may become one-pointed on a sattvic vṛtti, alone, and
- flow in a calm, pacific, unturbulent, smooth stream.

Another possible translation of the sūtra is: "The effort to remain there is practice." It is a common experience that whatever depth of meditation one reaches remains a temporary experience at first. No sooner does one reach it during a meditation session than he or she slips down, and during the activity of daily life meditative depth remains elusive. Only by continuous application of will and constancy of practice does it become possible for one to learn to "remain there" at first during the meditation, and later to maintain that depth in daily life. This is further discussed in the next sūtra.

**Sūtra I.14 स तु दीर्घकालनैरन्तर्यसत्करासेवितो दृढभूमिः।**

**sa tu dīrgha-kāla-nairantarya-satkārāsevito  
dr̥dha-bhūmiḥ**

*sah:* that (practice)

*tu:* however

*dīrgha-kāla-:* (for) a long time

*nairantarya-:* without interval, without interruption

*satkāra-:* respect, positive attitude, reverence, adoration, devotion

*ā-sevitah:* pursued, thoroughly served, maintained in assiduous and complete observance

*dr̥dha-bhūmiḥ:* (becomes) firm of ground

**That practice, however, becomes firm of ground only when pursued and maintained in assiduous and complete observance for a long time, without interruption and with a positive and devout attitude.**

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

Assiduously undertaken for a long time (*ā-sevitah*), assiduously undertaken without interruption, cultivated with ascetic observance (*tapas*), celibacy (*brahmacharya*), knowledge (*vidyā*) and devotion (*śhraddhā*) and thus with a positive and devout attitude, it becomes firm of ground. That is to say, it is then not suddenly overpowered by a worldly, non-meditative (*vṛutthāna*) samskāra.

**Discussion**

The firmness of practice is being advised (BG). The question arises that since the *vṛutthāna*-samskāras, samskāras of worldly involvements, have accumulated much strength in people from beginningless time (VM, VB, NB, SS), as have the impressions of rajasik and tamasic vṛttis (RY), how is it possible that a commonly infirm and weak practice, undertaken relatively recently (SS), will overpower the force of these samskāras (VM, VB, NB, RY) which await to waylay one (VM) and by which the practice is often blocked (VM, VB) and constricted (RY)? The answer is as follows.

The practice needs the three qualifications (VM) stated. It must be observed (*a*) for a long time, (*b*) without interruption, (*c*) with due respect, adoration, devotion and positive feeling. In other words, the practice must be consistent, frequent, repeated—for a long time, every day, without interruption and with a positive feeling. Yoga should be practised every day and every moment (HA). If one practises for some time and then allows an interruption, it permits an accumulation of opposite vṛttis again, which then overpower the meagre yoga-saṁskāras which had been gathered (VB, SS). To practise for a few days or months and to expect accomplishment is like a parent's saying "There are only four Vedas. My son went to study them five days ago and hasn't returned yet!" (SS). In this regard (SS) one may quote:

Reaching accomplishment after many life spans, one then arrives at the transcendental state.

*Bhagavad-gītā* VI.45

Therefore one should be prepared to practise for years and lifetimes.

As for a positive attitude: without it there will arise at the time of meditation or during meditation the problems of (SS) sleep, distraction, and the smearing of mind with the worldly dirt of attractions. A positive attitude of adoration and reverence for the path must be constantly affirmed. (This will be further discussed under Sūtra I.30, which speaks of the impediments in the way of attaining firm ground.) A positive attitude exhibits itself in very substantial ways

*tapas* ascetic practice, austerity, reducing one's material and physical pleasures and luxuries and the body's dependence on objects (to be discussed under YS II 1.32)

*brahmacharya* celibacy, maintaining control over sexual passion (to be discussed under YS II 30)

*vidyā* knowledge, proficiency (*a*) in the tradition, (*b*) in the texts, and, more importantly, (*c*) in the systematic method of practice

*śhraddhā*: faith and devotion that “Samādhi is the only worthy goal, the path I am on is the correct one, the lineage of my gurus is authentic, I shall certainly reach samādhi, and I revere, honour, adore, have faith in my goal, my path, my gurus, and myself.” This faith shows itself in the way of (a) service given to the gurus, (b) humility towards all, (c) constant examining and curbing of one’s ego, and (d) attitudes and acts expressive of devotion.

If one does not practise for a long time, or if one breaks off one’s practice many times over an extended period, it shows the absence of sufficient faith and devotion; as a result, distractions (*vikṣhepas*), despoiling emotions (*kaṣṭhāyas*), inclinations to pleasure, etc. are not countered (NTC). When the practice becomes firm of ground, one cannot be moved from it even by the strongest adversity or pain (SS), nor can one be distracted from it by the subtlest pleasure or the most powerful attraction, nor, as Vyāsa says, can it be

suddenly overpowered by a *vṛttiḥāna-saṁskāra*.

When a certain level of practice is thus firm of ground, one recognizes the greatest depth of experience it is capable of imparting. Then

one can go to that depth in an instant at any time  
under any condition or situation, and gradually  
that becomes the natural plateau of awareness  
in which one remains at all times

From here one attempts to gain yet higher ground by the same rules of this sūtra which have brought one this far.

**Sūtra I.15**

दृष्टानुश्रविकविषयवितृष्णस्य वशीकररसंज्ञा  
वैराग्यम्।

dṛṣṭānuśhravika-viṣhaya-vitṛṣhṇasya vaśikāra-sañjñā vairāgyam

*dṛṣṭa-*: seen, perceived with physical senses

*ānuśhravika-*: heard of in a tradition or scripture

*viṣhaya-*: subjects, matters, objects of enjoyment or experience

*vitṛṣhṇasya*: of one who has lost craving for

*vaśikāra-*: mastery, bringing under total control

*sañjñā*: term, definition, name

*vairāgyam*: dispassion

The mastery established by someone who has lost all craving for the matters of experience or enjoyment, whether perceived with physical senses or heard of in the tradition and scriptures (as of the subtle worlds), is called dispassion.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

When one has lost the craving for matters perceptible, such as women [i.e., the opposite sex], food, drink, power and affluence (*aishvarī*), as well as when one has lost the craving in matters that are heard of in traditions and scriptures, such as the attainment of heaven or of the states of *videha* and *prakrti-laya* (YS I 19), then the mind,

seeing the fault or the blemish that accrues in involvement,

its state,

devoid of a concept of rejectables or acceptables even in the presence of celestial and non-celestial objects and comprising a disinterest in enjoyments, which occurs through the power of *pra-sankhiāna* (the realization of the difference between matter and the spiritual self).

is termed *vaśikāra*, mastery and control, that is, dispassion (*vairāgya*)

## Discussion

The verb root *rañj* ‘to colour’, from which is derived the word *vairāgya*, was discussed earlier (p. 152) and should be reviewed before proceeding with this reading.

*Vairāgya* means “the state of being devoid of, free from, *rāga*, the attraction that accrues, as it were, from the objects of attraction reflecting in and colouring the mind.” Even though this is the expanded, derivative meaning of the word, it is not a complete definition of *vairāgya* for the purpose of yoga.

(VB) Simply the absence of this colouring process will not suffice, nor will even the freedom from attractions that is gained from seeing their faults; such a simple *vairāgya* is not conducive to the goal that is *nirodha*. Mere disinterest in certain objects of experience and enjoyment is of no value for this purpose, as for example a disinterest in objects in the case of an illness. We also see that often an attraction towards objects remains even after intelligence becomes aware of their attendant faults. Therefore, the definition of *vairāgya* here is not merely turning away from a craving, becoming indifferent (*vi-trṣṇa*), but rather total mastery and control (*vaśikāra*). NTC says that control (*vaśikāra*) is an essential part of dispassion. If this were not so one might mistakenly think he had attained *vairāgya* when he had only not found the objects of his desire or lacked the capacity to enjoy them.

The first step is to overcome the craving for the objects of this world which are perceived with the senses, such as the enjoyment of the opposite sex, food and drink; also to be overcome are affluence, success, luxury, power—all of which are expressed by the word *aishvaryā*. Although this word was discussed earlier (p. 101), here it is not used in the same sense of achieving spiritual lordship, but rather of achieving worldly success. It may also be said that even though spiritually attained lordship is naturally attendant upon a person of sattvic buddhi, the ambitious attraction towards it, which is not sattvic, is to be avoided.

The word “women” from Vyāsa’s commentary is being paraphrased here as “the opposite sex,” out of consideration for contemporary concerns. These texts were composed and taught in

monasteries by yoga masters for whose male disciples the attraction of women must have been a common problem. Although there have been many great women yogis (*yoginis*) known to the tradition, it is thought that men are not as strong an attraction to aspiring women as women are to aspiring men. This is the only explanation that can be offered at this point; and wherever such allusions appear, they will be translated as “the opposite sex.”

The perceptible objects of attraction may be conscious, such as persons of the opposite sex, or unconscious, such as food, drink, garments, etc. (VM, RS), or attractive sounds and so forth (BR). Then there are also imperceptible attractions, of which we hear only in spiritual traditions. These are experiences such as paradise or heaven, the subtle worlds of the shining ones, or *devas*, the energy realms, the so-called astral planes, the sounds of angelic music and so forth. Often human beings are taught to turn their minds from worldly objects so they may reap these heavenly experiences and such as rewards. In the yoga tradition a promise of these other-worldly enjoyments of subtle matter with the aid of a subtler mind may occasionally be used to draw a disciple's attention away from grosser worldly objects of material forms perceptible with the senses. However, as soon as this purpose has been accomplished, the spiritual teacher works towards turning the disciple's mind away from these subtle pleasures also. (The classic example of this approach is the epic by the poet Aśvaghhoṣha of the first century A D narrating the stratagems of this nature used by the Buddha to liberate his cousin, Nanda.)

The chief attractions of the subtle nature enumerated by the commentators are (NB) the eight *siddhis* (discussed on YS III.45), heaven, and the states of *videha* and *prakṛit-lava*. The last two deserve some attention here, although they will be discussed in greater detail under Sūtra I.19.

The word *videha* means “bodiless.” The yogis who, after abandoning the physical body, continue to maintain the body constituted of mahat, ahamkāra and mind are called *videhas* (VM, RS). Others say that the *videhas* maintain the *linga* body (VB), which by the definition of the word *linga* given in Sūtra II.19 would be

considered constituted of the mahat evolute alone, the first evolute of prakṛti.

Concerning the *prakṛti-layas*, the word means “those who are absorbed in prakṛti,” which is unmanifest matter, an equilibrium of sattva, rajas and tamas. This is the state of matter before creation, that is, before the equilibrium of the three guṇas is disturbed to produce even the subtlest evolute. Only a minute portion of prakṛti is at any time passing through the mutation of forms that constitute the universe and its phenomena. The *prakṛti-layas* are those yogis, those spiritual selves

- who have risen beyond all attractions of the mutative phenomena
- who have dissolved—unlike the *videhas*—even the *manas*, *ahamkāra* and *mahat* (or *buddhi*) into the equilibrium of unmanifest prakṛti
- but who have not yet reached *kaivalya*. They use the unmanifest, non-phenomenal matter beyond the universe as their playground.

(VB) The *videhas* enjoy still the sullied form of prakṛti, whereas the *prakṛti-layas* have mastery over pure prakṛti. As ordinary beings in bondage identify with the body, and *videhas* identify with the mind, *ahamkāra* and *mahat* (*buddhi*), so the *prakṛti-layas* identify solely with pure prakṛti. They may create whatever universes they wish out of the domain of their mastery and thus be the *iśvaras* (lords or gods) of a given universe. But this is not yet *kaivalya*. Through this misidentification they may again enter (VM) cycles of *samsāra*, even though the cycle is at the scale of a universe and their incarnations span the cycles of creations and dissolutions.

A truly liberated being is beyond any interest even of this ambitious scale. True dispassion is beyond an interest in even the subtlest form, beyond even a desire to drink the ambrosia of the gods (NB) This is the explanation of the condition of *vairāgya* as given by Vyāsa

When one has lost the craving for matters perceptible, such as the opposite sex, food, drink, power and affluence, as well as

when one has lost the craving in matters that are heard of in traditions and scriptures, such as the attainment of heaven or of the states of *videha* and *prakṛti-laya* . . .

Furthermore, there are two levels of *vairāgya*:

*apara*: not transcending

*para*: transcending, beyond

The current sūtra deals with *apara-vairāgya*, which is an attempt at dispassion towards the attractions described above. *Para-vairāgya* will be dealt with in the next sūtra. *Apara-vairāgya* is divided into four steps (*bhūmikās*):

1. *yatamāna*: the initial effort
2. *vratureka*: ascertainment
3. *ekendriya*: “pertaining to the single sense (i.e., mind) only”
4. *vaśikāra*: control and mastery

*Yatamāna*, the initial effort, is explained as follows:

- Resolving to discover from the gurus and the scriptures as to what is of essence and meaning and what is not so in this world (SS).
- Uprooting the mind from attractions (*rāga*) (HA).
- Understanding the nature of the freedom from craving (*vi-trṣhṇa*) and through knowledge the practice of the means of developing dispassion, such as seeing that worldly objects involve endless troubles (such as gaining, guarding, loss and consequent grief) and blemishes (such as violence to others in the entire process) (VB, BG, NB)
- Seeing that the despoilers (*kashāyas*) such as attraction (*rāga*) dwell in the mind, that they cause the senses to be drawn towards worldly objects “May the senses no longer be drawn towards these objects” – this resolution, and an endeavour to bring about the maturity of emotions (*kashāyas*) (VM, RY)
- Reducing desires (*yatamāna*) even though one is unable to give up the objects of desire (NTC)

*Vratureka*, the second step, is explained as follows:

- Developing the ability to ascertain which of the despoilers, blemishes, present in the mind, the emotions, have been brought to maturation through the practice of discernment (*viveka*) (SS), which are now in the process of maturing, and which have to begin maturing at some time in the future (VM, RY, SS).
- Ascertaining which of the senses have been conquered and which are yet to be conquered (VB, BG, NB).
- Ascertaining in which domains of attraction the dispassion has been accomplished, and in which domains it is yet to be perfected (HA).
- Abandoning those objects of desire towards which one has the least attraction until finally only the one, the most attractive, remains (NTC).

*Ekendriya*, the third step, is limited only to one sense, the mind. It is further characterized as follows:

- One knows that involvement in perceptible and non-perceptible objects is synonymous with suffering (SS).
- One's mental energies behind the attractions, aversions, etc. have matured so that they are incapable of activating the senses towards the external forms and so forth (VM, VB, BG, NB, RY, NTC).
- These attractions have become very weak (HA) and dwell only in the mind as mere interest (*autsukya*) (VM, RY, SS).
- One knows that there remain only the mental conditions, such as desire for honour and aversion to dishonour, so that one works towards and finally accomplishes dispassion towards these (VB, BG, NB)

*Vaśikāra*, control and mastery, is defined by Vyāsa:

The mind,

seeing the fault or the blemish that accrues in involvement,  
its state,

devoid of a concept of rejectables or acceptables even in the presence of celestial and non-celestial objects and comprising a disinterest in enjoyments, which occurs through the power of *pra-sankhiāna* (the realization of the difference between matter and the spiritual self),

is termed *vaśikāra*, mastery and control, that is, dispassion (*vairāgrya*)

(Some of the defects and blemishes (*doṣhas*) one sees in the worldly involvement have been explained above, but a more complete statement about them is made in Sūtra II.15.) When this view has been perfected, one rises above the first three steps of dispassion, in the last of which there remained yet a mental interest in the objects of the world even though the inclination of the senses to indulge has been withheld or restrained. Up to that point one should stay away from the presence and sight of temptations because in their presence the mental interest might, and often does, awaken and activate the sense, making the practitioner open to the danger of abandoning (NB) the path altogether. This, however, is not the situation in the case of *vaśikāra*. Here, even in the presence of objects there is neither attraction nor aversion. It is important that there be neither acceptance nor rejection, but rather indifference. In *vaśikāra* there are no more injunctions to and from, no commandments or prohibitions, no idea of “rejectables and acceptables,” but total neutrality (NTC). When such neutrality is accomplished, even the closest presence of the objects of enjoyment does not distract the mind (BG, NB, RY). One says that “I am not under the control of these objects, but rather they are the objects of my control (*vaśha*)” (BR, NB, RY)—not merely because one has seen the faults of worldly pursuits, but because the power of internal discrimination, the knowledge of the difference between *prakṛti* and the spiritual self, is gathering strength. Because this last step, *vaśikāra*, is the culmination of the previous three, they are not separately stated in the *Yoga-sūtras* or by Vyāsa (VM). Furthermore, this lower dispassion (*apara-vairāgya*) falls within the practice of *samprajñāta* samādhi but is external to *asamprajñāta*, which is beyond, and in which the higher dispassion (*para-vairāgya*) develops. Of that, in the next sūtra

**Sūtra I.16**

**तत् परं पुरुषरव्यातेगुणवैतृष्ण्यम् ।**

**tat param puruṣha-khyāter guṇa-vaitṛṣhṇyam**

*tat:* that (dispassion) (is)

*param:* supreme, transcendent, of higher kind

*puruṣha-:* (as regards) the conscious being, the spiritual self, spiritual noumenon

*khyāteḥ:* through discernment

*guṇa-:* (for) the attributes of matter (that is, prakṛti), namely, sattva, rajas, tamas

*vaitṛṣhṇyam:* state of being free of all craving

**That dispassion is of the higher kind, transcendent, supreme, when it is the freedom from all craving for the attributes, guṇas, arising through the realization of the spiritual self, puruṣha.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

One who sees the faults and blemishes of objects perceptible and of those heard of in the traditions and scriptures, is dispassionate (*virakta*).

One whose buddhi is filled, expanded and satiated with increased and strengthened discriminating wisdom because of the purification that occurs through repeated practice of realizing and seeing (*darśana*) the spiritual self is dispassionate (*virakta*) towards the guṇas, whether with manifest or unmanifest attributes.

These are the two kinds of dispassion (*vairāgya*). Of these two, the latter is no other but clarity (*prasāda*) of knowledge. When it arises, discernment (*khyāti*) rises equally and then (the yogi) contemplates and observes thus:

- Whatever was to be attained has been attained
- The afflictions which were to be eliminated have been eliminated.
- The fast-jointed (RP), transitional (*sankramah*) chain of birth (BB) and becoming has been broken, without the breaking of which one is born and dies, one dies and is born, again and again.

The ultimate limit of knowledge itself is dispassion. Immediately after this very dispassion follows isolation (*kaivalya*).

## Discussion

The last sūtra explained the lower dispassion (*apara-vairāgya*). Up to here (VM) the growth of sattva has washed off the inertia of tamas, but the dust of rajas yet clings to the mind-field. It is reiterated by Vyāsa here:

One who sees the faults and blemishes of objects perceptible and of those heard of in the traditions and scriptures, is dispassionate (*virakta*).

When (RY) the practice of the eight limbs (*āṅgas*) of yoga has led to partial purification of the mind, when one has seen the flaws in involvement with worldly objects, and has finally reached the *vairāgya* of the level called mastery (*vaśikāra*), then this lower *vairāgya* serves as the means (VM, RS) to the higher dispassion. In other words (VB), the lower dispassion is only with regard to *viśhayas*, the objects of the world. The higher dispassion (*para-vairāgya*) is with regard to guṇas (VB, BG, NB) and with regard to knowledge (*jñāna*) (VB, NB) and the means thereof (BG). Even knowledge has some similarity with the *viśhayas*. Even though knowledge shows that worldly objects are perishable, its purpose is to remove ignorance (VB, BG, NB); it may even lead to temptations like the *siddhi* of omniscience (HA). The knowledge that causes awareness of the faults of the *viśhayas* does not by itself lead to that *vairāgya* (VB, BG, NB) in which one might say "Enough!" ("Alam!") to even *viveka-khyāti*, the knowledge of the separateness of the self and the non-self. This sūtra points out that when the correct knowledge (*samyak-jñāna*) has eradicated ignorance, then there develops indifference (*upekṣhā*) towards even the fact of that knowledge, towards the means which led to that knowledge (VB, BG, NB) and towards the causes of all effects because now the yogi has reached the satiety (*trpti*) of dwelling within the self (VB, BG).

That is to say (BG), when one has mastered the lower *vairāgya*, he now further firms up his knowledge of the separateness of the *guṇas* and the spiritual self (*viveka*). This is *dharma-megha*, the samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things. As a result, one abandons all craving for the *guṇas*, which had hitherto served as the instruments (*upa-karaṇas*) of self. That self is no longer interested even in the fact of being separate *from* anything such as those *guṇas*. This is the culmination, perfection, of that state in which knowledge is at its clearest (*jñāna-prasāda*). This is self-knowledge (*ātma-jñāna*). This is the higher dispassion.<sup>14</sup> Vyāsa says:

One whose buddhi is filled, expanded and satiated with increased and strengthened discriminating wisdom because of the purification that occurs through repeated practice of realizing and seeing (*darśana*) the spiritual self is dispassionate (*virakta*) towards the *guṇas*, whether with manifest or unmanifest attributes.

In the above reading the phrase *puruṣha-darśana-abhyāsa* ‘the repeated practice of realizing and seeing the spiritual self’ means that (VB) one has received knowledge through *āgama*, scriptural authority, *anumāna*, one’s own inference, and *āchārya*, a realized teacher who has himself experienced self-realization. Thereby occurs (VB) the purification of intelligence (buddhi) as rajas and tamas are eliminated and one-pointed concentration on sattva in a single, unbroken stream (*eka-tānatā*) is accomplished. The buddhi thus purified is

*ā-pyāyita*. filled and expanded with  
*pra-viveka*: increased and strengthened (prefix *pra*) discriminating knowledge

that (VB) *puruṣha* is pure and infinite, that the *guṇas* are just the opposite, and that (BG) the power called consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) is immutable, etc. (YS I.2). There accrues a satiety (*trpti*) in such a buddhi, for it has now completed its purpose of serving the *puruṣha*.

<sup>14</sup> VB tries to reconcile Sāṅkhya-yoga with Vedānta by saying that this means the realization of either individual self or the Supreme Self

[Being] dispassionate (*virakta*) towards the *guṇas*, whether with manifest or unmanifest attributes,

means that (HA) one is indifferent towards (a) their manifest attributes: those that constitute knowledge of, and consequent activity in, the gross, visible world as well as the subtle, invisible worlds; and (b) the unmanifest attributes as experienced by the *videha* and *prakṛti-laya* yogis.

It is this lower-level *vairāgya* that is said to be the means of reaching the *prakṛti-laya* state in texts such as *Sāṅkhya-kārikā*. The yogis of these categories, then, do not go beyond *apara-vairāgya* to *para-vairāgya*; they have not reached (VM) dispassion towards the unmanifest attributes. Vyāsa says:

Of these two [levels of *vairāgya*], the latter is no other but clarity (*prasāda*) of knowledge.

To summarize (VM): Even though the mind-field's primary constituent is sattva, it becomes smeared with rajas and tamas. We have stated above that tamas is overcome by lower dispassion. Higher dispassion also eliminates the effects of rajas. (The word *rajas* in Sanskrit also means "dust.") Thus washed by the pure streams of practice and dispassion and free of the dust of rajas, the mind is now clear. This clarity is expressed by the word *prasāda*, which (a) suggests the image of clear, flowing water in which no dust swirls about, and (b) indicates a state of happiness, joyfulness and intense pleasantness felt in the mind. The suffix *mātra*, translated here as "no other but," expresses the fact that this clarity of mind is such that the mind in meditation now requires no external objects, not even as objects of concentration.

This is the explanation of Vyāsa's passage offered by VM, but it is incorrect. No matter how much the clarity of sattva may be emphasized, the passage cannot refer to a state of mind. The passage fits the definition of higher dispassion in which all three *guṇas*, including sattva, have been transcended and all dependence on the evolutes of *prakṛti*, including the mind-field, has ceased. The knowledge of *guṇas* is certainly not indicated here. The correct reading is

that the passage refers only to the pure state of self-knowledge, which is (VB) synonymous with that freedom from all craving (*vaitṛṣṇya*), the other definition of higher dispassion. This purity of self-knowledge constitutes freedom from attraction to the manifest or unmanifest forms of the gunas. When such purity of knowledge arises, says Vyāsa,

discernment (*khyāti*) rises equally and then (the yogi) contemplates and observes thus:

- Whatever was to be attained has been attained.
- The afflictions which were to be eliminated have been eliminated.
- The fast-jointed (RP), transitional (*saṅkramah*) chain of birth (BB) and becoming has been broken, without the breaking of which one is born and dies, one dies and is born, again and again.

The ultimate limit of knowledge itself is dispassion.

The three fulfilments or accomplishments appear to be a summary of the seven grounds of attainment described in *YS* II.27. “Whatever was to be attained [that is, self-knowledge] has been attained.” “The afflictions” (*kleśhas*), together with all the propensities (*vāsanās*) produced by them, have been eliminated. As to the “fast-jointed, transitional chain of birth and becoming,” it refers to the continuous cycle of birth and death (*samsāra*), which is part of the cycles of creations and dissolutions, resulting from the accumulation of good and evil actions. Its segments or joints (*parvas*) are the very states of transition through which one passes, wandering from body to body to become one person or another through numberless series of transmigrations. (More of this process is explained in the discussion on Sūtras II.12 and II.13.) This cycle continues until the final dispassion is reached. According to Vyāsa, again:

The ultimate limit of knowledge itself is dispassion. Immediately after this very dispassion follows isolation (*kaivalya*)

The samādhi which is synonymous with *kaivalya* is *a-samprajñāta*. *Asamprajñāta* follows *dharma-megha* (*YS* IV.29-31), the

samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things. The higher dispassion is the condition of *dharma-megha* (VM), and without it *asamprajñāta* cannot be reached either by knowledge or by the practice of *yamas*, *niyamas* and the other limbs of yoga (VB). RY summarizes the entire process as follows:

- A person receives authoritative knowledge from the guru.
- He develops discernment (*khyāti*).
- By the practice of *khyāti*, the initial stage of *dharma-megha* develops.
- This destroys the blemishes (*mala*) (compare the Latin word *macula*) of rajas and tamas from the mind-field, causing the mind to be purely sattvic and filled with *prasāda*.
- The higher state of *dharma-megha* is then realized, which is the same as the dispassion towards *guṇas*.
- The concomitant of this dispassion is the awareness that the reservoir of karma is cleared, all *kleshas* have been eliminated and total self-knowledge has been gained.
- Then the highest dispassion of *asamprajñāta* samādhi ensues.

**Sūtra I.17**

**वितर्कविचारानन्दास्मितारूपानुगमात्  
सम्प्रज्ञातः।**

**vitarka-vichārānandāsmitā-rūpānugamāt  
samprajñātah**

*vitarka-*: gross thought

*vichāra-*: subtle thought

*ānanda-*: ecstasy, rapture

*asmitā-*: I-am-ness

*rūpa*<sup>15</sup>: nature, form, appearance (of)

*anugamāt*: through accompaniment (of)

*samprajñātah*: *samprajñāta*, lower samādhi, cognitive samādhi, samādhi of wisdom

***Samprajñāta***, the samādhi of wisdom, occurs through the accompaniment of the appearances (RP, BB) of gross thought (*vitarka*), subtle thought (*vichāra*), ecstasy (*ānanda*) and I-am-ness (*asmitā*).

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, when one's vṛttis of the mind-field have been brought under control (*niruddha*) through the two means (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*), in what ways is *samprajñāta* samādhi said (to ensue)?

[*Sūtra*:] *Samprajñāta*, the samādhi of wisdom, occurs through the accompaniment of the appearances of gross thought (*vitarka*), subtle thought (*vichāra*), ecstasy (*ānanda*) and I-am-ness (*asmitā*).

The mind-field's gross expansion (*ābhoga*) towards the supportive factor is called the gross thought (*vitarka*). The same when it is subtle is the subtle thought (*vichāra*). Rapture is ecstasy (*ānanda*). The perception of a unified self is I-am-ness (*asmitā*).

There the *vitarka*-conjoint samādhi actually accompanies all four.

<sup>15</sup> Some texts do not include the word *rūpa* (nature, form, appearances) as part of the sūtra

The second one, with the gross thought (*vitarka*) having been terminated, is accompanied by the subtle thought (*vichāra*). The third one, with the subtle thought having been terminated, is accompanied by ecstasy (*ānanda*). The fourth one, with that ecstasy having been terminated, is merely I-am-ness (*asmitā*). All these samādhis are dependent on, conjoint with, or accompanied by supportive factors.

## Discussion

### I. The Stages of Samādhi

So far yoga in general has been defined in Sūtras 2-16. In Vyāsa's commentary on Sūtra 1 it was stated that

**Yoga is samādhi.**

Now (VB) the specifics of that samādhi are being described. When one has brought the rajasic and tamasic vṛttis under control (*nirodha*) by means of practice and dispassion (RY, SS), what are the different ways or kinds of samādhi that follow? This is how Vyāsa introduces the sūtra:

Now, when one's vṛttis of the mind-field have been brought under control (*niruddha*) through the two means (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*), in what ways is *samprajñāta* samādhi said (to ensue)?

[*Sūtra:*] *Samprajñāta*, the samādhi of wisdom, occurs through the accompaniment of the appearances of gross thought (*vitarka*), subtle thought (*vichāra*), ecstasy (*ānanda*), and I-am-ness (*asmitā*).

The definitions of *samprajñāta* in general are based on the derivations of the word from:

*sam*: well, proper, deep, harmonized, balanced, holistic

*pra*: forth, expansive, perfect, complete

*jñā*: knowing

As realization (*sākṣhāt-kāra*) increases through its four stages (BG, NB), *samprajñāta*, the samādhi in which wisdom (*prajñā*) comes to

its most harmonized, perfect expansion, is gained (VB). It is a special type of cultivated concentration (*bhāvanā*) (BR, NB, AD, SS). *Bhāvanā* means impressing the object of concentration (*bhāvya*) again and again onto the mind-field (BR) by preventing any other object from entering the mind (NB). It is by *bhāvanā* that the form and nature of the object of meditation is completely realized (*pra-jñā*) so fully as to leave no residue of doubt or the possibility of *viparyaya* (YS I.8) (BR, NB). This realization of the true nature of the objects of meditation is called *pra-jñā*, the process of awakening of wisdom, and *prajñā*, the wisdom itself.

*Samprajñāta samādhi* differs from *asamprajñāta*, the acognitive samādhi, in that the former requires *ālambanas*. The word *ālambana* is translated here as “supportive factor.” In *samprajñāta* the mind needs an object, whether of a gross or subtle nature, until *dharma-megha* samādhi is reached. These objects on which the concentrated thought of the mind is dependent are termed here the supportive factors (*ālambanas*).

Any of the categories of reality from the Sāṅkhya system of philosophy may be employed as an *ālambana*. For these categories see TSS 2, 3 and YS II.19. Briefly, these can be (VB, NB, BR) any of the following:

- Unconscious categories:
  - prakṛti, primordial matter 1.
  - 23 evolutes of matter 2-24.
- Conscious categories:
  - puruṣha; individual self 25.
  - an aspect or incarnation of godhead } 26
  - God

Theistic Sāṅkhya philosophers as well as most commentators on the *Yoga-sūtras* include the twenty-sixth category, God. An *ālambana*, supportive factor, can be any combination of the above categories, individual or cosmic. For example, in meditation on a gross thought (*vitarka*), one may concentrate

- on the five gross elements, or
- on any material forms (such as a flame, the sun, the moon, a star, etc.) or

- on the physical form of an aspect, or
- on the incarnation of the godhead (such as Viṣṇu, or Śiva, or Jesus, etc., as venerated in Christian countries, or forms of Buddha as taught in Buddhist lands) or
- on *Virāt*, the Cosmic Immanent form of the godhead (an example of which may be seen in *BhG* chaps. IX, X, XI).

However, when we look closely at the question on concentration, it is found that among the conscious categories:

- only the physical, incarnate form, or *Virāt*, the cosmic form of the godhead
- but not the formless consciousness of the pure spiritual self, nor the formless transcendental Supreme Self

can be an *ālambana* of the mind-field. The mind, an evolute of unconscious matter, has no capability to grasp the pure consciousness principle. Even a semblance of such grasping does not begin until *asmitā* is realized, and only upon reaching discriminating wisdom (*viveka*) (VB) does mind come within reach of the spiritual principle, which is realized not as an *ālambana* of the mind but as the free self. This is so in the case of the individual self; the transcendental Supreme Self is far beyond.

The experiences to be realized in the four stages exist in everyone as a potency (*śakti*). The potency of each is realized and then abandoned, left behind, till the final samādhi is reached (BR). The mind cannot enter the subtlest stages at once—at least it is not the common experience (*prāyaśhaḥ*) (NB). Hence it is said: The mind, conquered at the grosser level, should then be led slowly to the subtler factors. It is not likely that an average practitioner could leap to the highest samādhi and gather the processes of the intermediate states as part of such an instantaneous development. If such an instantaneous process should occur, there would be no need for such an order (NB) as described in this sūtra. Only by starting from gross objects does the mind gradually move to harmony with the subtlest and settle there (BG).

It is not that the realization of a relatively grosser object of concentration by itself leads to the higher ground of a subtler

object. A material object cannot lead to spiritual realization because even in its thought form only a *vṛtti* is produced. Realization of the true nature and form of an object of concentration only leads to the *siddhis* which are described in *YS III* and which are declared (in the discussions on sūtras such as *YS I.8, I.15, and III.37*) to be undesirable goals for a true yogi's pursuit.

What then is the purpose of such realization at these various levels in *samprajñāta samādhi*? They are to fulfil the purpose described in *YS I.15,16*: to develop dispassion towards each level of the material evolutes. At each level one feels that the next subtler level is purer. But upon examination by realization it is found that the purity is only relative, at best derived from *sattva*, which is an attribute of matter. Each level is successively found to be attended by some faults and blemishes (NB) that have been described earlier. Thus a *vairāgya* towards each successive state develops. Simply perfecting the level of realization is not conducive to progress towards isolation and liberation. It is only when full dispassion develops towards that very experience and realization that the next step can be taken towards a yet subtler object of concentration.

A basic principle of the Sāṅkhya philosophy is that the categories of evolutes are divided in the order of causational succession (VM, NB, RY):

- Each cause produces an effect.
- An effect is grosser, coarser—that is, more tangible, closer to the world of senses and to the gross elements—than its cause.
- Concentration on each effect leads to the realization of the form and nature of that effect
- When the mind's *vṛttis* concerning that effect are controlled, the mind's doors open to the cause of that effect.

A tangible object is seen, experienced, thought of, contemplated, but its cause is hidden, intangible. When we see a jar, we normally do not think of the clay the jar is made of. But when the realization of the nature of the jar reaches a certain fulness, the clay becomes more real and the jar becomes more a subsidiary of clay. As the mind focuses on the normally experienced, conventional nature of

an object, it slowly transcends its tangible nature and grasps the intangible, the cause which was previously not seen, experienced, thought of, or contemplated (NB). This is the meaning of progress in Sāṅkhyā-yoga: When the mind becomes as unified with the object of concentration as a red-hot ball of iron is with fire, the former ground is abandoned and the next exercise to gain the yet higher ground begins (VB, NB).

Another Sāṅkhyā principle is:

An effect is less real, durable, stable;  
a cause is more real, durable, stable (NB).

A jar breaks easily; its durability and stability is minimal compared to that of its cause, the clay. It is for this reason that the subtler objects of concentration lead to greater stability of the mind.

- The *vṛtti* of the effect is
  - brought to *nirodha*, fully controlled, and
  - dissolved into (*laya*) the *vṛtti* of its cause.
- Because a cause is always subtler, that is,
  - less tangible,
  - closer to the mind, buddhi and ahamkāra, and thus to the spiritual self,
- the next step in meditation is also always subtler.

Thus a process of *nirodha* and *laya* of the

- gross into subtle, and
- effects into causes,

continues until one reaches prakṛti. According to Sāṅkhyā philosophy

- each effect carries within it the properties of all the successive causes in a chain of causation which has led to that particular effect as its end-product. But
- each cause carries within it only the potential of all the effects likely to be produced within the chain of the succession of effects starting from the given cause.

For example,

- clay includes a jar only as a potential, but
- a jar includes both the nature of the jar as an effect
- and its cause, the clay itself.

Since the various levels of the samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) lead from the vṛttis of grosser effects to those of subtler causes, the lower-level meditations include the subtler levels, but at each level the former coarse experience is abandoned. The four levels of *samprajñāta* are respectively:

- sa-vitarka* or *vitarka-anugata*: with *vitarka* or accompanied by *vitarka*
- sa-vichāra* or *vichāra-anugata*: with *vichāra* or accompanied by *vichāra*
- sānanda* or *ānanda-anugata*: with *ānanda* or accompanied by *ānanda*
- sāsmitā* or *asmitā-anugata*: with *asmitā* or accompanied by *asmitā*

By the argument presented above concerning the chains of causation and their relevance to the different levels of samādhi, it is clear that (VM, RS)

- *sa-vitarka* samādhi actually accompanies all the other subsequent factors also, namely, *vichāra*, *ānanda*, and *asmitā*
- *sa-vichāra* samādhi has abandoned *vitarka* but also accompanies *ānanda* and *asmitā*.
- *sānanda* samādhi abandons *vitarka* and *vichāra* but includes *asmitā*.
- *sāsmitā* samādhi has no other accompaniments

As to objects of concentration, since the mind must be brought to gradual refinement, it must move along the scale of the various evolutes of matter until it reaches an identification with the subtlest, finest possible state. The twenty-four states of matter with which the mind may identify are divided fourfold (YS II.19):

1. The sixteen *viśeṣhas*, distinct, specific forms of matter:
  - the five gross elements: earth, water, fire, air, space

- the five active senses: hands; feet; organs of speech, elimination and generation
  - the five cognitive senses: smell, taste, sight, touch, sound
  - the lower mind (*manas*)
2. The six *a-viśheśhas*, the general causes of the *viśheśhas*, namely
    - the five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*), the ‘merest measures of those’ that produce the five gross elements; and
    - ego (ahamkāra), the identifying principle by which the composite sentience (*asmitā*) begins to identify itself as such-and-such being.
  3. *Līṅga-māṭra*, the ‘barest sign’ of the presence of matter, the subtlest evolute, mahat, the universal and individual buddhi. It is the receptacle of the spiritual self, the point where a material evolute first appears to unite with the spiritual self, producing *asmitā*, I-am-ness, the composite sentience further defined in *YS II.6*.
  4. *A-līṅga* ‘without a mark’ prakṛti—principal matter—in the state of equilibrium, not manifest as the phenomena of the universe.

Of these, the *viśheśhas*, *a-viśheśhas*, and *līṅga-māṭra* are the *ālam-banas* in *samprajñāta samādhi*. As the components of a sentient personality, they are further divided into a scheme of apprehension as follows:

- *Viśheśhas*, the objects apprehended by *asmitā*, are *grāhya*, objects of apprehension. Ahamkāra, ego, is the instrument by which *asmitā* apprehends the *grāhyas*. Ahamkāra is *grahana*, the instrument of apprehension.
- *A-viśheśhas*, the five subtle elements, are also *grāhya*.
- *Līṅga-māṭra*—buddhi or mahat—receives and reflects consciousness from puruṣha, thus creating *asmitā*, the composite sentience. This, and not puruṣha, is the agent of apprehension. This is *grahītṛ*, the one who apprehends

This scheme of apprehension is important in the classification of samādhis, as will be shown in *YS I.41* and throughout this sūtra:

- *Grāhyas* (objects of apprehension) are the field of concentration in *vitarka*-accompanied samādhi and in *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi.

- *Grahana* (the instrument of apprehension) is the field of concentration in the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi.
- *Grahitr* (that which apprehends) is the field of concentration in the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi.

The earlier yoga tradition, that of Patañjali and Vyāsa, states these to be the objects of concentration. Any other objects are only either parts or composites of these. Vyāsa states:

The mind-field's gross expansion (*ābhoga*) towards the supportive factor is called the gross thought (*vitarka*).

The word *ābhoga* 'expansion' means the awakening of a wisdom (*prajñā*) in which a realization of the true nature of an object of concentration has occurred (VM). It is a fulness or perfection of the mind-field with regard to that object (VB). At the first level it is considered gross (*sthūla*) because the object of concentration is in its gross form (VM), thereby giving to the mind the like *vṛtti*, the mind identifying with that form.

A note of care and caution should be given here regarding *sam-prajñāta* concentrations, especially those on the sixteen *viśheśhas*, and particularly the five gross elements. One may mistake these to be concentrations on the *external* earth and earthly forms, etc., with all the gross elements. It should be remembered that (a) a perception of gross elements in the ordinary world falls within the category of *pratyakṣha-pramāṇa*, direct perception, a *vṛtti* to be controlled, and (b) holding the perception in the mind is memory, another *vṛtti* to be controlled. For the practice of samādhi the concentration on these factors is *internal*, as they exist, operate and are apprehended within the sentient personality. It is therein that their nature is observed and mastered.

It needs to be noted that this concentration consists of the convergence of the particular evolute, as one of the subjectively inherent components of the inner sense, *antaḥ-karaṇa* (see p. 230) or chitta, with its counterpart in the objective world. For example, since mind is the controller of all the senses, their powers and those of the objects of the senses are all included in the mind. The

mind concentrates on the objects and assimilates the vṛtti arising from the same; thus the lower-level agent of concentration, the lower mind (*manas*), and the object of concentration converge and merge, establishing a unity, a fulness and perfection of the wisdom of that level. This applies not only to *sa-vitarka* but to all the levels of samādhi.

## **II. *Sa-vitarka Samādhi***

As an archer under training first learns to shoot at a wider and more visible target, so the yogi first develops his attention on a grosser form and then moves towards a subtler one (VM, RY). *Virāṭ* as well as the manifest or incarnate forms of a deity and also the sixteen *viśheśhas* are the gross objects of concentration. Taking such an ālambana, one concentrates on its (NB, BR, BG)

- whole aspect and
- parts,
- past, present and future manifestation(s),
- nearness to one (as within the person or in the proximity of the senses), or
- distance,
- desirable or undesirable qualities, or the faults inherent in the fact that it is constituted of the guṇas,
- even those manifestations that one has
  - not seen personally,
  - not heard of in the teachings,
  - not contemplated with the mind.

The concentration includes

- examining all relevant order and sequences, and
- cultivating the full grasp of
  - words or names,
  - their meanings (that is, the object denoted by the word), and
  - the knowledge consisting of the relationship between the word and the meaning.

A process of thought examining these details of an object is called *vitarka* in the normal language. In yoga it has the technical sense

of concentration on the sixteen *viśheśhas*, with attention to these aspects, with the goal of finally realizing the whole nature of the object. One need not at first concern oneself with regard to those aspects of the object of concentration which may not be within one's reach; for example:

- being too subtly hidden within the personality,
- too distant,
- not seen,
- not heard of, or
- not ever contemplated!

As concentration is mastered and refined, the next step comes into view and the hidden nature of the *ālambana* is gradually revealed (NB) in the natural process of yoga. The concentration should remain constant, continuously maintained (*ava-dhāraṇa*) (VB). By cultivating it thus, the *bhāvanā* then causes the object, the sense of its perception, and the mind to become one. This entire process explained hitherto is called *vitarka*. In the final realization of the nature of the object the knowledge of all the aspects listed above occurs at once, not in sequence, not in parts, not apart from the perceiving mind. When such a total, whole realization is maintained without a break, that state is termed “the samādhi accompanied by *vitarka*.” It is *grāhya-samāpatti* (YS I.41); its field of command is *grāhya*, the objects grasped, within the gross body. It is further divided into *sa-vitarka samādhi* and *nir-vitarka samādhi*, which will be explained in Sūtras I.42 and I.43.

### *III. Sa-vichāra Samādhi*

Seeing that *sa-vitarka samādhi* is still involved only with gunas and their products, the yogi rejects it and thereby opens the doors to the next, *sa-vichāra samādhi*. Vyāsa says:

. the gross thought (*vitarka*) The same when it is subtle is the subtle thought (*vichāra*)

The *vitarka* refined becomes *vichāra*. The word should not be taken in its dictionary meaning of “thought.” It is used here in a

sense specific to this science (VB).

The word *vi-chāra* is derived from *vi* + *char*, expressing a progressive movement. Here it means the movement of the mind away from gross objects to subtler objects of concentration (VB). Having seen the faults of the involvement in gross objects, however perfectly realized in *sa-vitarka*, one looks at the causes of those gross objects, which inhere in them. The yogi thus moves from the sixteen *viśheśhas* (products of the *a-viśheśhas*) to the six *a-viśheśhas* themselves. He concentrates on these subtler essences of the elements and on the senses (NB, BG)

- with each of their parts, and
- the totality of their wholeness (NB, BG), including their
- space,
- time, and }      and their relationships,
- attributes,

together with all the details explained on p. 227. The mind takes the form of the *vṛtti* of concentration and becomes identified with it. *Vichāra* then becomes the expansion (*ābhoga*) of chitta towards the subtle *ālambanas*, awakening wisdom (*prajñā*), in which the realization of the true nature of an object of concentration occurs. It is the same fulness and perfection of the mind-field with regard to subtle objects of concentration as has already been described with regard to the gross objects on pp. 226-27.

It is well here to examine a point made by a commentator in relation to *sa-vichāra samādhi*. HA(E) suggests that *vichāra* is a refined analytical process. The philosophical analysis of the relationship of *prakṛti* evolutes with *ātman* and Brahman finally leads to the realization that "I am none of these *prakṛti* evolutes with which I have identified the self." But such an analytical process is part of the practice of intense *vichāra* contemplations on the path of *jñāna-yoga* as taught in the Vedānta lineage. For the purpose of yoga practice according to Patañjali and Vyāsa, it will fall within (a) the *anumāna-pramāṇa*, inference as valid proof, a *vṛtti* to be brought under control, or (b) *svādhyāya*, the study of scriptural sentences leading to liberation, the fourth of the *niyamas* (which

are the second *an̄ga* of yoga) (YS II.32). Both of these, the *pramāṇa* vṛtti and svādhyāya, are left far behind when one begins to enter samādhi. Therefore *vichāra* here does not denote an analytical thought process. It is a technical term (*tāntrīki paribhāṣhā*) for a particular concentration on certain evolutes in order to master their nature and then to negate their influence on the ego (ahamkāra).

Among the subtle evolutes, the objects of this realization are

- the five *tan-mātrās*, subtle elements in the subtle body, the causes of the five gross elements and the subtle essences of the five cognitive senses (smell or odour, flavour or taste, sight or illumination of forms, touch, sound), and
- ahamkāra, ego.

As the immediate cause of the *tan-mātrās*, ahamkāra begins to be brought under control in this samādhi, but primarily it is the object of concentration in the next samādhi.

Some commentators (BR, SS) prefer to replace ahamkāra with the total *antah-karana*, the inner sense, which is collectively called *chitta* in yoga and is threefold in Sāṅkhya:

1. *manas*, mind, which is one of the sixteen *viśheśhas*, the objects of concentration and realization in *sa-vitarka* samādhi
2. ahamkāra, ego, included by all commentators as one of the six *a-viśheśhas*, objects of concentration and realization in the later stages of *sa-vichāra* samādhi, and in *sānanda* samādhi
3. mahat, buddhi, intelligence, *linga-mātra*, the first evolute of prakṛti, the object of concentration and realization in *sāsmita* samādhi

It is obvious, however, in the light of the above definitions of the various levels of *samprajñāta* which specify the different components of the *antah-karana* involved, that it would be erroneous to assume that the entire *antah-karana* is an ālambana of *sa-vichāra* samādhi.

Even though the primary objects of concentration in *sa-vichāra* are five of the *a-viśheśhas*, with ahamkāra only beginning to be

touched, it must be remembered, as explained on p. 223, that effects include causes; therefore, the subtler causes of the *a-viśheśhas* are included: *mahat* (*liṅga-māṭra*) and *prakṛti* (*a-liṅga*). The *sa-vichāra samādhi* is also *grāhya-samāpatti* (*YS* I.41); its field of command is *grāhya*, the objects grasped, not in the gross body, which is the field of *sa-vitarka*, but in the subtle body. *Sa-vichāra* is further divided into *sa-vichāra samādhi* and *nir-vichāra samādhi*, which will be explained in Sūtras I.42 and I.43.

#### **IV. *Sānanda Samādhi***

About the third samādhi, Vyāsa says:

Rapture is ecstasy.

The word for ecstasy, *ānanda*, does not denote here bliss, the *ānanda* of Brahman, who is the Supreme Self. It is initially the property called *sukha*, pleasure inherent in the *sattva-guṇa*. In *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi the yogi captures the pleasure of *sattva*.

*Sattva*, as one of the three *guṇas*, is part of the entire scheme of *prakṛti* and its evolutes. Even though that scheme includes the delusion of *tamas* and the pain of *rajas* as well as the pleasure of *sattva*, beings involve themselves with the world only in pursuit of the pleasure of *sattva*. It is that attachment to the pleasure derived from *sattva* which causes bondage and which initiates the continuance of *samsāra*. In *sa-vitarka* and *sa-vichāra samādhis* the realized wisdom shows one the futility of pursuing the various objects of concentration, starting from the *vitarka* of the earth element and going up to the *vichāra* of the subtle elements and possibly the initial stages of *ahamkāra*, the ego. As the evolutes gradually dissolve into their subtler and yet subtler causes, in *sānanda samādhi* they dissolve into *ahamkāra*. Since tamasic *ahamkāra* produces the elements, and sattvic *ahamkāra* produces the mind and cognitive senses, both with the aid of *rajas*, it can be seen that a gradual refinement of awareness would lead a yogi to the more subtle *sattva* of *ahamkāra*. Even though like all other evolutes it consists of all three *guṇas*, *rajas* and *tamas* here are subordinated

to sattva (SS), especially now that the yogi has ascended beyond the *vitarka* and *vichāra* grounds. The essence of pleasure that was tasted through the lower evolutes has its fount here. The yogi then concentrates on the pleasure of sattva of *aharṇkāra* and enjoys a state of rapture (VB). Most mystics have mistaken this to be the bliss of God, which is yet far beyond.

This pleasure, *ānanda*, must also be seen (BG, NB)

- in its parts, and
- as a whole,

until the oneness of the enjoyer and the enjoyed is perceived and the expansion (*ābhoga*) of awareness to a fulness occurs, that is, its nature is fully realized.

In the *ānanda-anugata* samādhi the only vṛtti (VB) that prevails is,

“I am in pleasure, happy, enraptured.”

**VB quotes:**

He knows that ultimate pleasure which is grasped by intelligence (buddhi), and which is beyond the senses. It is that settled wherein he is no longer shaken from reality. . . . Know that to be the freedom from the contact with pain; it is called yoga.

*Bhagavad-gītā VI.21,23*

Even though mahat or buddhi proper is not reached until the next (*asmitā*-accompanied) samādhi, the sattvic nature of mahat here filters through into *aharṇkāra*, adding to the rapture.

Those who reach only this far (to *sānanda* samādhi) are lost in mystic ecstasy and consider that to be the supreme attainment. Many powers (*siddhis*) may attend upon them. They have mastered the ego of the body—everything from the body made up of the *viśheśhas* to the *aharṇkāra*—and are called *videha*, the bodiless ones (for which see the discussion in Sūtras I.15 and I.19).

The field of this *sānanda* samādhi is *grahaṇa*, the instruments of apprehension (to be discussed in Sūtra I.41), and includes in the

object of concentration its inherent causes, *asmitā* and the *a-linga prakṛti*. Unlike *sa-vitarka*, *nir-vitarka*, *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra*, this samādhi is not subdivided (for example, into *sānanda* and *nir-ānanda*).

A summary discussion of selected commentators on the subject of *sānanda* and *sāsmita* samādhis follows. Even though *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi is still the topic, the question under discussion below will not be understood without defining *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi. It must be clearly pointed out here that there is little agreement among the commentators with regard to the objects of concentration in both *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi and the next, *asmitā*-accompanied, samādhi. Table 1 presents a summary of their views. These views will be examined one by one in the order shown in the table, according to the object of concentration in *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi.

**Rapture inherent in the senses.** VM (and RY) have given completely erroneous explanations of the cause and nature of the rapture in this samādhi. VM says:

Because the nature of sattva is illumination—mahat is predominantly sattvic and all the senses are derivatives of mahat—the chitta's expansion (*ābhoga*) in concentration on the sattvic pleasures inherent in the senses is the rapture of this samādhi.

**TABLE 1** Objects of Concentration,  
According to Various Commentators

	Object of Concentration	
Commentators	Ānanda-accompanied Samādhi	Asmitā-accompanied Samādhi
VM, RY, BM	Rapture inherent in the senses	Puruṣha qualified by ahamkāra
VB, BG, NTC	Rapture	Puruṣha both as <i>jīva</i> and <i>īshvara</i>
SS	Mahat with dominant sattva penetrated with a residue of rajas and tamas	Mahat with pure sattva
NTB	Senses	Puruṣha qualified by ahamkāra
HA(E)	Rapture experienced in total relaxation of senses and <i>antah-karana</i>	Buddhi whose vṛtti is intent upon puruṣha
BR	Ahamkāra	Buddhi

While this statement is correct in pointing out the source of the pleasure in the senses, it is absolutely incorrect in suggesting that the object of concentration here might be that pleasure inherent in the senses. VB, in refuting VM's view, points out that such a suggestion confuses this *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi with *sa-vitarka* and *sa-vichāra*, in which the full realization of the nature of senses has already occurred and they have been abandoned as unworthy of pursuit. If the pleasure inherent in the senses were the object of concentration in this samādhi, they would produce the kind of vṛttis in which attraction and aversion are implied. This would—like the *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka* samādhis, and the *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra* samādhis—necessitate two levels in the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi:

- one with the vṛtti, and then
- a higher one without the vṛtti of the rapture.

Neither Patañjali nor Vyāsa has suggested two divisions of this samādhi, and therefore VM's interpretation is erroneous.

VM, RY and BM, stating the rapture inherent in the senses to be the object of the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi, consider puruṣha, qualified by ahamkāra, to be the object of the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi. This raises a question about mahat, the first and finest evolute in the order of manifestation and the last to be mastered. If ahamkāra, the product of mahat, is the object in the *āsmita*-accompanied samādhi, in what other samādhi would mahat (buddhi) be mastered? Again, in what samādhi would *asmitā* be realized? There are no further samādhis after the *asmitā*-accompanied with any supportive factors (*ālambanas*) or objects of concentration. Nor does this conform to the scheme of apprehension, which for the sake of clarity is repeated here:

- Sixteen *viśheśhas*, gross objects of apprehension (*grāhya*) in *sa-vitarka*
- Five *a-viśheśhas*, subtle objects of apprehension (*grāhya*) in *sa-vichāra*
- Ahamkāra (the sixth *a-viśheśha*), the instrument of apprehension (*grahana*) in later stages of *sa-vichāra* and in *sānanda*

- *Linga-mātra*, mahat or buddhi, *asmitā*, the agent of apprehension (*grahītr*) in *sāsmita*

**Rapture alone.** This view of VB, BG and NTC does not sufficiently explain the source and nature of the rapture. VB states that the realization of the increase of sattva, as the mind rises to higher grounds in the *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi, is the rapture. According to BG the rapture also consists of the pleasure which is identical to the realization of the general and particular aspects of the objects of the *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi. The same view is supported by NTC. They all include *aharṇkāra* and mahat among the objects of *sa-vichāra* samādhi. In this case, again, the *grāhya* and *grahaṇa* become confused. Since *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi has *grahaṇa* as its field, rapture (*hlada*) alone cannot be its object of concentration; an instrument of apprehension like *aharṇkāra* must find a place herein.

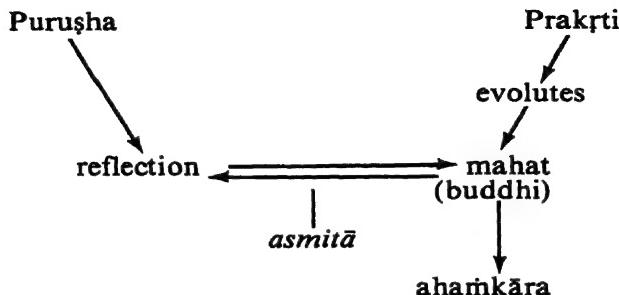
**Mahat.** The view held by SS that

mahat with dominant sattva penetrated with a residue of rajas and tamas is the object in *sānanda*, and mahat with pure sattva is the object in *sāsmita*,

is closer to the truth. However, this view places *aharṇkāra* in *sa-vichāra*, which again confuses *grāhya* and *grahaṇa*. Since buddhi or mahat forming *asmitā* is the true agent of apprehension (*grahītr*) and *grahītr* is the field of *sāsmita* samādhi, it cannot be the object of concentration in *sānanda*, which holds *grahaṇa*—*aharṇkāra*—as its field.

**Senses alone.** The objections presented to oppose the view that rapture inherent in the senses is the object of concentration in *sānanda* apply equally to the view of NTB that senses alone are the object. Furthermore, NTB's view that *puruṣha* qualified by *aharṇkāra* is the object of concentration in *sāsmita* samādhi is untenable because it presents *aharṇkāra* as *grahītr*, whereas it is actually buddhi among the evolutes that unites with the reflection of *puruṣha* to produce *asmitā*, the true *grahītr*. Moreover, NTB's view is incorrect because (a) *puruṣha*, being immutable, cannot be qualified, and (b) it could not in any case be qualified by *aharṇkāra* at

all because puruṣha has no direct contact with ahaṁkāra in the universally accepted Sāṅkhya scheme below:



*Asmitā*, the composite sentience, is produced by the union of puruṣha's reflection with mahat (buddhi). Ahaṁkāra is a product of mahat and can have no direct contact with puruṣha. That being the case, how can puruṣha be qualified by ahaṁkāra?

**Rapture of relaxation.** HA(E) has presented the view that the rapture arises from the feeling of relaxation in the five active senses, the five cognitive senses and the three constituents of the inner senses: *manas*, ahaṁkāra and buddhi. There is no doubt experientially that such is the case, but this view confuses the careful classification scheme of apprehension related to these samādhis and therefore remains incomplete with regard to the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi. His statement, however, that the object of concentration in the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi is buddhi intent upon puruṣha is absolutely correct.

**Ahaṁkāra.** Similarly BR's view that ahaṁkāra is the object in *sānanda* and buddhi in *sāsmita* is what we have accepted. However, BR errs in a different direction from the other commentators in defining *ānanda*. He seems to consider the pleasure of this samādhi to be the attribute of consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) which is without guṇas. BR says:

When (concentration on the) sattva of the *antah-karana* somewhat penetrated by a residue of rajas and tamas is cultivated (*bhāvyate*), then, there being no guṇas in the *chiti-śakti*, the

excellence of its essence (*sattva*), whose nature is pleasure and illumination, being cultivated, is called the *ānanda*-accompanied *samādhi*.

The entire statement seems self-contradictory. If the concentration is still on the *sattva* of the *antah-karaṇa*, then the pure consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) has not yet been realized. Furthermore, *sattva*, whose nature is pleasure and illumination, is a part of *prakṛti* and not an attribute of *chiti-śakti*. The reader can stretch the statement somewhat and read it to mean that one is now closer to *chiti-śakti*, whose own bliss (*sukha*, pleasure in the case of the *sattva guṇa*) and illumination have begun to penetrate the *sattva* of the inner sense, causing the excellence of the latter's pleasure and illumination to expand, thus overcoming the residue of *rajas* and *tamas*. In any case BR's comment suggests that in the *ānanda*-accompanied *samādhi* *sattva* is still somewhat alloyed with a trace of *rajas* and *tamas*.

#### *V. Ahamkāra and Asmitā*

Some commentators (e.g., BR) consider *asmitā* to be the counterpart of the *ahamkāra* evolute in Sāṅkhya philosophy, but they are mistaken. *Ahamkāra* has been left behind in the *ānanda*-accompanied *samādhi*. The “*samādhi* of rapture” has been completed, in which the concentration on the *ahamkāra* evolute has been accomplished. If *asmitā* and *ahamkāra* were at all identical, there would be no possibility of the *asmitā*-accompanied *samādhi*.

Like many other commentators of the *Yoga-sūtras*, BR insists upon maintaining the identity of *ahamkāra* and *asmitā* but divides them by function, saying:

The identity of *ahamkāra* and *asmitā* should not be doubted. Where the inner sense (*antah-karana*) referring to itself as “I” (*aham*) apprehends the objects of experience, it is called *ahamkāra*. When the mind-field is turned inwards in the process of the dissolution of the evolutes and in it a mere reflection of “presence,” “existence,” appears, that is called *asmitā*.

While it is accurate that *ahamkāra* is outward-going towards the mind, the senses and the objects of the senses and that *asmitā* is an

inward process that occurs in the inner face of buddhi, there still cannot be an identity of ahamkāra and *asmitā*. *Asmitā* occurs in mahat, which is subtler than its product, ahamkāra.

VM also equates *asmitā* with ahamkāra, even though in Sāṅkhya the senses are an evolute of ahamkāra, not of mahat. VM says:

Senses are products of *asmitā*. Therefore *asmitā* is their subtler form. That buddhi unified with the self (ātman) is referred to as the “perception of a unified self.”

Here he confuses buddhi with ahamkāra. The criticism directed at BR also applies to VM in this regard.

Vyāsa uses the term *asmitā* clearly as the equivalent of ahamkāra on YS II.19. Yet it is shown above in the present sūtra that ahamkāra is the object of concentration in the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi, and mahat is the object of concentration in the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi. This seeming contradiction will be resolved in the discussion on Sūtra II.19. The definition of *asmitā* given here is accurate for the purposes of the present sūtra.

## VI. *Sāsmita Samādhi*

Having fully realized ahamkāra in *sānanda* samādhi, the yogi sees the flaws of the guṇas present therein (NB). He therefore develops distaste and dispassion (*vairāgya*) towards the powers over matter (*siddhis*) and moves to the yet higher ground of the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi. Just as the products among the evolutes are gradually dissolved into subtler and yet subtler causes, ahamkāra dissolves into mahat, the universal and individual buddhi, the evolute called intelligence. Since

- all the coarser evolutes have been dissolved, and
- mahat is the first evolute of prakṛti,

it has no other object of concentration but itself. It is *līṅga-māṭra*, a bare presence, ‘the first sign’ that prakṛti gives of its presence. The principle of convergence and unification of the object and the agent of concentration (pp. 226-27) reaches its finest dimension here. Vyāsa says:

The perception of a unified self is I-am-ness (*asmitā*).

Since the inner face of buddhi is the most sattvic, purest part of the evolutes of prakṛti, it is closest to the consciousness principle. The rays of the consciousness principle reflect in buddhi as into a clear crystal. They are amalgamated like a piece of white marble thrown into milk, or milk poured into a clear, marble cup (RS). It is here and nowhere else that puruṣha and prakṛti meet. Just as the sun seen in a mirror is not really the sun and is not affected by the flaws in and the colours of the mirror in which its reflection is seen, so also puruṣha is not affected by its reflection in the buddhi. It is here in the union of the reflected ray and buddhi that ignorance and bondage begins and ends, a process with which puruṣha has no association. This is the primary constituent of the “person”; all else are its projections, adjuncts and instruments. Here the person first says “I am.” (This I-am-ness is *asmitā*.) “I am this conditioned, delimited being, a composite of spirit and matter” (VB, VM, RY). In realizing the nature of *asmitā*, one understands it as being the final break between spirit and matter, whereby the two constituents of the composite sentience,

- matter in its finest essence of the sattva of buddhi, and
- the reflection of puruṣha therein,

dissolve their marriage. The phrase “composite sentience” will be used interchangeably with “I-am-ness” to translate the word *asmitā*. (*Asmitā* will be explained in detail under Sūtra II.6.)

Thus the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi means (SS) the realization of mahat in which sattva is predominant. BR elucidates this by contrasting it with the preceding samādhi as follows: In the ānanda-accompanied samādhi, as BR pointed out (p. 236f.), sattva is still somewhat penetrated by residual rajas and tamas. In *asmitā* the rajas and tamas have been completely subdued and only the purity of sattva dominates. With this purity the sattvic inward face of mahat is turned away from its outward-facing evolute, ahamkāra or ego. When facing outwards it produces the ego, which in turn produces mind, senses and their objects. When it is turned inwards,

the purity of its sattva receives the reflection of puruṣha, because of whose life-force and consciousness channelled through the buddhi all the processes of the personality are initiated and sustained. In the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi (BR) even this sattva becomes subsidiary (*nyag-bhāva*) and the presence of *chiti-shakti* is exalted. There is only an awareness of existence (*sattā-mātra*) alone without any conditions, productions, evolutions or devolutions.

We have translated Vyāsa's *eka-ātmikā samvit* as "the perception of a united self." The sattvic illumination of the mirror of buddhi and the reflected light of puruṣha are unified in *asmitā*. VB says that the word *eka* 'one' here signifies "only one," that is to say: "Only one, the self (ātman), is its object." He interprets this to mean that in this samādhi there is only one *ālambana*, the mind-field's perception of only the puruṣha, by which one realizes that "I am." As the object of concentration merges with the agent thereof, the agent, mahat or buddhi in this case, sees itself unified with the spiritual self. In this view it is correct that buddhi is seen unified with the spiritual self, but it is incorrect that the pure, unreflected ātman is its object of concentration. Commentators such as VB and NB have erred in stating that in *sāsmita* samādhi one knows "I am thus—thus alone," that there is nothing further to know, and that this is the ultimate ground of realization. Actually the realization of ātman does not begin until *asamprajñāta*, the acognitive samādhi.

In the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi,

- first the object of concentration is *asmitā* itself.
- When *asmitā* has been examined
  - in all its parts, and
  - as the complete whole,
  - its nature is fully realized.

That realization means *viveka-khyāti*, re-cognition of the separateness of buddhi and puruṣha, and of the separateness of puruṣha from the evolutes of prakṛti--mind, body, etc. Puruṣha, the conscious principle, is twofold:

1. the individual *jīva*
2. the universal iśvara, godhead

Both of these reflect in the buddhi (VB, NB, BG). Of these, first the realization of the *jīva*-self as apart from the false identifications of buddhi occurs. Whereas the conditioned, manifest deity in a pseudo-material visual image is an object of concentration only in the first two samādhis, here the quest for the formless God ensues and an awareness of the presence of the Supreme Self occurs. However, statements by the commentators that the *final* God-realization takes place here are erroneous and at this point they must simply have been carried away to make such stipulations.

This is *grahitr-samāpatti*; the field of this samādhi is the agent of all apprehensions (to be explained in Sūtra I.41). Because of the unified awareness, this samādhi also is not divided into *sāsmitā* and *nir-asmitā*. Here mahat is finally dissolved into the unmanifest, *a-liṅga* prakṛti. Those who attain this state and consider it to be the final destination are called *prakṛti-laya* yogis. They have dissolved the evolutes into prakṛti but not realized the self or the Self. (For further details see the discussion on Sūtras I.15 and I.19.)

For those who continue further, the ultimate in the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi is the beginning of *dharma-megha*, the samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things (YS IV.29). The lower dispassion (*apara-vairāgya*) (YS I.15) is accomplished and the transcendent *para-vairāgya* (YS I.15) commences.

To recapture the four samādhis in the words of Vyāsa:

There the *vitarka*-conjoint samādhi actually accompanies all four. The second one, with the gross thought (*vitarka*) having been terminated, is accompanied by the subtle thought (*vichāra*). The third one, with the subtle thought having been terminated, is accompanied by ecstasy (*ānanda*). The fourth one, with that ecstasy having been terminated, is merely I-am-ness (*asmitā*). All these samādhis are dependent on, conjoint with, or accompanied by supportive factors.

These samādhis with supportive factors (*sālambana*) are also called seeded (*sa-bīja*) samādhis, which will be explained in *YS* I.46. The terms *sālambana* and *sa-bīja* separate (VM) the samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) from the acognitive samādhi (*asamprajñāta*), which is seedless (*nir-bīja*), and which will be explained in Sūtra I.51. Of the five states of the mind explained in Sūtra I.1, the samādhi of wisdom constitutes the fourth—*ekāgra*, one-pointed—because it requires objects of one-pointed concentration.

### **VII. Concentrations on a Deity**

The question arises as to whether this methodical and analytical approach is essential in order to prepare the aspirant for *asamprajñāta* samādhi. Is an allowance made for concentration on, devotion to and an uplifting grace from God? What is the guidance given in this matter?

In discussing the matter of godhead, the commentators have mostly expressed their own religious credos and have tried to find a place for it within the scheme of the *Yoga-sūtras* and Vyāsa's commentary. (See *YS* I.23,24 and II.1,32,45.) According to them, the realization of the various aspects or incarnations of the godhead may fall into two categories (NB):

- In one the yogi develops his concentration to such a degree that his expanded consciousness may ascend and project itself to the subtle worlds which are the domains of particular aspects of the godhead.
- In the other the godhead is so pleased by the devotee's *japa* (mental concentration on a mantra) and meditation that he projects an appearance of himself to grant the grace of his descent and presence to the devotee.<sup>16</sup>

As an experiential fact, however, the two cannot be separated. The ascent of the devotee's consciousness is the same as the descent of the divine grace.

As has been stated above, if a devotee's *bhāvanā* is on a par-

<sup>16</sup> See the authors' book *God* (Honesdale, Pa: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1979)

ticular deity, it is indeed required that the mind take this same *ālambana* through all the four stages of *samprajñāta* (VB, BG, NB) in the order in which they occur. A failure to maintain this consistency would, for example, mean (NB) repeatedly abandoning one form of deity for worship of another, leading to constant unsteadiness and fickleness of the mind, which is obviously contrary to the pursuit of *samādhi*.

The order in which the four stages are practised and mastered is important (BG, NB). It is clearly stated, however (BG), that if a yogi makes a spontaneous ascent to a higher ground by the grace of God, he then need not climb methodically and laboriously over the lower steps (BG). Grace, then, is a shortcut which bypasses the method. It must be remembered, however, that when one climbs to a higher plateau through the force of such grace, the lower *siddhis* attendant upon the practice of the earlier steps do not accrue. It is only if for some reason one needs those *siddhis*—even though they are irrelevant to one's spiritual attainment, station and progress—that he may go back down and practise the lower methods (NB)! Although the possibility of such instantaneous realization of a higher state is acknowledged, for the purposes here it is assumed that a method is generally requisite for mental purification and mastery in order that one may become a deserving vessel for grace.

As was mentioned earlier, in the tradition of Patañjali and Vyāsa all objects of concentration are either parts or composites of *grāhya*, *grahana*, or *grahitṛ*. For example, a candle flame for concentration is part of the fire element. An icon may be considered a composite product of all the five gross elements. The theism of yoga as acknowledged in *YS* I.23-28, II.1,32,45 also encouraged the later commentators to state more clearly that the mental image of *Virāṭ*, the universe-form of God, or the figure of a deity or incarnation is often used as the object of concentration. Even though at first glance these mental images may appear not to be included in the scheme of Patañjali and Vyāsa, the theology of the Purāṇa texts explains that iśhvara, God, may take forms that appear material to the devotees, even though the energy used for such appearances is actually non-material. From the point of view of a devotee seeking

*samprajñāta samādhi*, the form of such a divine manifestation is a visible one, subject to experience with the senses; therefore, concentration on such an image is concentration on the *viśheśhas*. One begins concentration with mental devotions offered to the deity in manifest forms. Hindus may devote the concentration to figures like Viṣṇu and Śhiva, Buddhists to the various forms of Buddha, Christians to Christ, and so forth. In Sūtras I.23-29 the subject of devotion to God is explained more elaborately. Here commentators primarily include among the objects of concentration a physical appearance of the divine being or some other cosmic form manifest in the material universe. Neither Patañjali nor Vyāsa has dealt with this form of concentration at this point, so it appears that the concentration here is not on the Supreme Being as the Transcendental Spirit as such but only on those manifestations of Him which are possible among the evolutes which comprise the objects of concentration in the *sa-vitarka* and *sa-vichāra* stages.

It is well to clarify how concentrations on a deity differ in the first and second samādhis. In the discussions on the objects of concentration in *sa-vitarka* the manifestations of iśvara are included. In *sa-vichāra*, when a deity is still the object of concentration, the visual image of a pseudo-material form is abandoned and a subtler presence, perhaps with an appearance consisting of the universal *tan-mātrās*, is invoked, to which mental worship is offered.

On the other hand, a *sādhaka* not attracted to such mental images of a deity may begin his concentration on other parts or composites of the *viśheśhas*. As already mentioned, a single object of concentration used as an *ālambana* begins at the level of a gross form and continues through the various stages of *samprajñāta*.

### **VIII. The Systems of the Sharīras and the Kośhas**

Before bringing this sūtra to a conclusion, it needs to be shown how the samādhis relate to the systems of the three bodies (*śharīras*) and five sheaths (*kośhas*) within the composite sentience (*asmitā*). It must be borne in mind, however, that the classifications of the various evolutes and faculties as apportioned among the different bodies and sheaths are not unanimously agreed to and may differ greatly in various texts.

As the light of puruṣha filters down through *asmitā*, the ego process (*aharmkāra*) causes one to mistake puruṣha or ātman, the spiritual self, to be a delimited and mutable being.

- In *ānandamaya koṣha* the self, by nature devoid of the dichotomy of pain and pleasure, is mistaken to be happy or unhappy, suffering pain or enjoying pleasure.
- In *vijñānamaya koṣha* an assumption of delimited knowledge and ignorance accrues.
- In *manomaya koṣha* the processes of mentation are attributed to the self.
- In *prāṇamaya koṣha* the self is thought to be the agent of actions.
- In *annamaya koṣha* a mortal personality, passing through various physical states, is erroneously identified as the self.

As the process of samādhi advances, the assumptions of false identifications with each sheath are dropped and gradual freedom from mortality, action, mentation, ignorance, pain and bondage is achieved. One is sequentially freed from each level of assumed bondage. This is the wisdom (*prajñā*) of the samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta*). In the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi the final enlightenment occurs.

TABLE 2 Samādhis in the Three Bodies

<i>Samādhi</i>	<i>Supportive Factor (Ālambana)</i>	<i>Body</i>
<i>asmitā</i> -accompanied	<i>asmitā</i> (māhat; higher buddhi)	causal ( <i>kāraṇa sharīra</i> or <i>lūga sharīra</i> )
<i>ānanda</i> -accompanied	{ lower buddhi ego (aharikāra) }	
<i>vichāra</i> -accompanied	subtle elements	subtle ( <i>sūkṣma sharīra</i> )
<i>vitarka</i> -accompanied	{ mind subtle senses <i>prāṇas</i> external senses five gross elements }	gross ( <i>sthūla sharīra</i> )

TABLE 3 Samādhis in the Five Kośhas (Sheaths)

<i>Kośha (Sheath)</i>	<i>Supportive Factor (Ālambana)</i>	<i>Samādhi</i>
<i>anandamaya</i> (bliss)	<i>asmitā</i> (māhat; higher buddhi)	<i>asmitā</i> -accompanied
<i>vijñānamaya</i> (knowledge)	lower buddhi ego	<i>ānanda</i> -accompanied
<i>manomaya</i> (mind)	subtle elements mind	<i>vichāra</i> -accompanied
<i>prāṇamaya</i> ( <i>prāṇa</i> )	subtle senses <i>prāṇas</i>	
<i>annamaya</i> (food)	gross elements gross senses	<i>vitarka</i> -accompanied

TABLE 4 Composite Interrelationships

YS Classification	Causative Schema	Field of Concentration	Samādhi
Puruṣha		Prakṛti	
<i>linga-mātra</i>	<p>reflection</p> <p><i>asmitā</i> (composite sentience) → <i>mahat</i> (buddhi)</p> <p><i>in</i> <i>yoga</i>      <i>in</i> <i>Sāṅkhya</i></p> <p><i>ahamkāra</i> → <i>tamasic</i> <i>ahamkāra</i></p> <p><i>sattvic</i> <i>ahamkāra</i> → <i>rajas</i></p>	<p><i>grāhīt</i> → <i>asmitā</i>-accompanied</p> <p><i>grahaṇa</i> → <i>ānanda</i>-accompanied</p> <p><i>grāhya</i> → <i>vichāra</i>-accompanied</p> <p><i>grāhya</i> → <i>vitarka</i>-accompanied</p>	
6 <i>a-viśeṣas</i>		5 subtle elements	
16 <i>viśeṣas</i>		5 gross elements	
	{ 10 senses and mind }		

**Sūtra I.18**

**विरामप्रत्ययाभ्यासपूर्वः संस्कारशेषोऽन्यः।**

**virāma-pratyayābhyaśa-pūrvah saṁskāra-  
śheṣhaḥnyah**

*virāma-:* cessation

*pratyaya-:* cognition principle, cognition, causal principle

*abhyāsa-:* practice

*pūrvah:* preceded by, having as a prerequisite

*saṁskāra-śheṣhaḥ:* leaving its saṁskāra as residue

*anyah:* the other

(*Asamprajñāta*) is the other (samādhi), having as its prerequisite the practice of the cognition and causal principle of cessation and leaving its saṁskāra as residue.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, what are the means to the acognitive samādhi (*asamprajñāta*) and what is its nature?

[*Sūtra*] (*Asamprajñāta*) is the other (samādhi), having as its prerequisite the practice of the cognition and causal principle of cessation and leaving its samskāra as residue.

When all the vṛttis of the mind-field have submerged and only the samskāras remain as a residue, such control (*nirodha*) is the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi. [Or: When all the vṛttis have ceased, the control (*nirodha*) wherein only the samskāras remain as a residue is the samādhi of the mind-field called the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*).]

The means thereof is the transcendent dispassion (*para-vairāgya*); the practice with supportive factors (*ālambanas*) is not efficacious as a means of achieving it. Therefore the awareness of cessation, devoid of object, is used as the supportive factor, and it is without a substance, without interest<sup>17</sup> or purpose.

Preceded by such a practice, the mind-field which is without a

17 BB translates *artha-śhūnya* as "devoid of interests."

supportive factor becomes as though it has reached a state of non-being (*abhāva*). This is the seedless (*nir-bija*), acognitive (*asam-prajñāta*) samādhi.

## Discussion

This sūtra continues with the definitions of samādhis. Going back to the last two of the samādhis of wisdom:

- In the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi the mind's identification was, "I am happy."
- In the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi, the mind's identification with its vṛtti of puruṣha's reflection falling into mahat or buddhi was simply, "I am."

These thoughts are also supports (*ālambanas*) for the mind. So long as these vṛttis remain, dispassion (*vairāgya*) has not yet transcended the lower limitations of prakṛti, and the highest samādhi is not reached. This sūtra presupposes two questions:

1. What are the means to attain the acognitive samādhi?
2. What is the nature of this samādhi?

The first compound phrase in the sūtra, *virāma-pratyaya-abhyāsa-pūrvah*, answers the first question, and the remainder of the sūtra (a phrase and a word), *saṃskāra-śeṣhah anyah*, answers the second question (VM). Or we may surmise that (VB)

- the first phrase explains the means (*upāya*),
- the second phrase defines (*lakṣhana*), and
- the last word names the state aimed for (*lakṣhya*).

First let us take part of the phrase *virāma-pratyaya-abhyāsa-pūrvah*. This is explained in different ways:

- (VM) *Virāma* is the absence of all vṛttis. The awareness which is its cause is *virāma-pratyaya*
- (VB) That even the vṛtti may cease, such an awareness is *virāma-pratyaya*. The transcendent dispassion says even to the wisdom

of *samprajñāta*, “Enough!” (“Let even the disturbance of such knowledge come to pacification.”) Such an awareness is *virāma-pratyaya*.

- (HA) *Virāma* itself is the causal awareness of the absence of all cognition. This transcendent dispassion itself is *virāma-pratyaya*.
- (BR, AD) That by means of which one reaches cessation, that is, one abandons all concern with *vitarka* and such supports, is in itself (as the causal cognition) *virāma-pratyaya*.
- (BG) That even the *vṛtti* signified as the knowledge of reality may cease—this is *virāma-pratyaya*.
- (SS) Even the effort to turn the *vṛttis* off (*uparama*) is *virāma-pratyaya*.

The practice of *virāma-pratyaya* means constantly, repeatedly, entering into that awareness (VM, VB). The process of *virāma-pratyaya-abhyāsa* is establishing it again and again into the mind-field (BR, AD, BG, SS). It is brought to perfection when even the *vṛtti* “I am” from *asmitā* is abandoned (HA). In other words, whatever *vṛtti* arises in the mind is rejected as

*neti, neti:* not this, not this.

The phrase “preceded by such a practice” means that this cessation is the prerequisite of the acognitive samādhi. This samādhi is characterised by the presence of residual samskāras only (*samskāra-śheṣha*).

We have translated a single sentence of Vyāsa in two ways:

- When all the *vṛttis* of the mind-field have submerged and only the samskāras remain as a residue, such control (*nirodha*) is the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi.  
Or
- When all the *vṛttis* have ceased, the control (*nirodha*) wherein only the samskāras remain as a residue is the samādhi of the mind-field called the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*).

Both clauses, “*vṛttis of the mind-field have submerged*” and “*vṛttis have ceased*,” are renderings for the image produced by the original

word, *pratyastamaye*. That is, they have set like the sun into the very source from which they had arisen.

While the main intent of both possible translations of the complete sentence appears to be the same, the most important difference in the second translation is in the phrase “*samādhi* of the mind-field.” Actually, *samprajñāta* is a *samādhi* of the mind-field and *asamprajñāta* is not. *Asamprajñāta* is only the self dwelling in the self. This was made clear in Sūtra I.3 and will be further clarified in the fourth chapter of *YS*. This sūtra, however, only seems to contrast *asamprajñāta* with the *samprajñāta* of the preceding sūtra by indicating not the nature of self in *asamprajñāta* but what happens to the mind-field *after samprajñāta*: simply that it receives *nirodha-saṁskāras*.

In the second translation, therefore, “*samādhi* of the mind-field” does not mean *samādhi* in the sense in which we generally use the term; rather, the word *samādhi* in this instance signifies the derivative meaning from *sam-ā-dhā*, that is, “harmonizing all conflict, bringing together of all contrastive factors” so that the juxtaposition between the mind and its supports (*ālambanas*) also ceases. Vyāsa says:

The means thereof is the transcendent dispassion (*para-vairāgya*); the practice with supportive factors (*ālambanas*) is not efficacious as a means of achieving it.

It was explained earlier in Sūtra I.5 that the *saṁskāras* themselves produce *vṛttis*, which in turn feed the *saṁskāras*. It was also explained that *saṁskāras* are the dormant form of *vṛttis* and that *vṛttis* are the operative form of *saṁskāras*. When the *vṛttis* are brought totally under control and are pacified, they are no longer fed into the *saṁskāras*. The *saṁskāras* cease to produce the operations of *vṛttis* but simply lie as inoperative residue. The progressive stages of the mind-field are as follows (BR):

- *vyutthāna*: absence of concentration, as in *kṣipta* and *mūḍha* (see Sūtra I.1., p. 78)
- *samādhi-prārambha*: the beginnings of *samādhi*, as in *vikṣipta*

- (ibid.) when sāttva gains ascendancy
- *ekāgratā*: one-pointedness
- *nirodha*: total control

The saṁskāras of *vyutthāna*, worldly activity and stupefaction, are brought under control as the saṁskāras of the next stage (the beginnings of samādhi, however distracted) are nurtured. The saṁskāras of this second stage are replaced by those of one-pointedness. Even the one-pointed vṛtti must be pacified when final *nirodha* gains strength. When total *nirodha* has occurred in the acognitive samādhi, the transcendent dispassion produces no saṁskāras other than its own imprints on the mind. The mind has now left the neighborhood of the world and has begun to dwell close to the spiritual self. All the former saṁskāras have been replaced by those of *nirodha*. There being no next stage after this, no other saṁskāras can replace the *nirodha-saṁskāras*, which then remain as the residue.

We read from Vyāsa:

The practice with supportive factors (*ālambanas*) is not efficacious as a means of achieving it. Therefore the awareness of cessation, devoid of object, is used as the supportive factor, and it is without a substance, without interest or purpose.

This awareness is practised under two conditions:

During samādhi.

During ordinary involvement in the world.

One constantly bears in mind that worldly phenomena and relationships are not conducive to samādhi. While performing all the necessary duties of the world, the yogi continues to turn the awareness of the self on the self until the mind's ordinary saṁskāras become so weakened that samādhi is integrated with the wakeful state. Up to this time it is interrupted constantly by the world but now, even remaining open to the world, the yogi finds repose in an uninterrupted samādhi. Such an awareness must be diligently

cultivated by whittling away the saṁskāras of objects, even of the objects of concentration.

It must be borne in mind that between *samprajñāta* and *asamprajñāta* comes *dharma-megha*, the samādhi of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things. It is both

- the higher stage of the *asmitā*-accompanied, and
- the initial stage of the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*).

This will be more clearly defined in YS IV.29. (VM) It cannot be reached with supportive factors (*ālambanas*) of the preceding samādhis. The lower *vairāgya* cannot lead to it. A cause and its effect must be homogeneous. The lower dispassion needs some objects of concentration to lead to the lower samādhi. *Dharma-megha* samādhi is described (VM) as arising from that state of buddhi in which rajas and tamas have been completely washed off and the objects of buddhi are transcended. It is the endless state wherein the yogi perceives worldly objects as totally unworthy of attention and, abandoning them, he dwells only in his own essential nature. Thus, denying all supports, *dharma-megha* serves as the supportless (*nir-ālambana*) acognitive samādhi.

(VB) Mere one-pointedness can never produce such a state. There is no object, short of puruṣha's own abiding in his own nature, that can lead to the acognitive samādhi. Even buddhi's vṛtti with regard to the nature of puruṣha, as experienced in *asmitā*, must cease. To all such knowledge it must say, "Enough!" At this point it seems Vyāsa's intent to say that the objectlessness becomes the object of concentration. Whatever vṛtti arises in the mind is negated by *neti, neti*: that is, "This is not the self, this is not the self." The mind is thus left behind and puruṣha's pure awareness is turned inwards.

Vyāsa says:

Preceded by such a practice, the mind-field which is without a supportive factor becomes as though it has reached a state of non-being (*abhāva*)

The mind has not ceased to exist. But

- because its vṛttis have become inoperative, its presence is not noticeable;
- the awareness of spiritual self is so centered in the self that the mind is no longer being used.

The yogi's mind and body appear to have died. The lower awareness has ceased. The mind is now truly objectless. One might think that the mind was in a state of sleep; however, the word *abhāva* 'non-being' used here reminds the reader of the definition of sleep in Sūtra I.10:

Sleep is the modification or operation of the mind-field resorting to the cognition principle of absence or negation and to the cause thereof.

In Sūtra I.10 it was made clear that sleep is tamasic, whereas samādhi is beyond the guṇas. However, the yogi may often resort to the *abhāva* of vṛttis in the mind for his rest rather than subject himself to the tamas of ordinary sleep. This *abhāva*-like state of the mind, known to the Buddhist tradition as "no-mind," is the true *nirodha*. Its saṁskāras completely transform the nature of the yogi's mind.

The purpose of the *nirodha-saṁskāra* remaining even as a residue in the mind is so that the yogi may be able to get up from samādhi (NB, BG) when he chooses and attend to simple bodily needs in order to maintain his physical presence and thereby help the world. He maintains total control over his mind so that he may continue to use it as an instrument in the world. In this aspect also *nirodha* means control, as all of the yogi's personality systems are operated by his yoga (*yoga-yantrita*) (NB).

Vyāsa says:

This is the seedless, acognitive, samādhi.

The term "seedless" (*nir-bija*) will be explained further in Sūtra I.51, but here it may be understood to mean that, there being no

further objects in the mind, the saṁskāras can no longer produce vṛttis, kleśhas, karmas, and consequent cycles. (BG, NB) This presence of the *nirodha-saṁskāras* remains in the mind so long as the yogi is embodied because the spiritual self needs a mind to operate the body. When the spiritual self is disembodied and dwells in total liberation (*mokṣha*), all dependence on material evolutes, including the mind-field, is dissolved, and there are not even *nirodha-saṁskāras*. This is the meaning of Vyāsa's statement *artha-śūnyaḥ*, which has been translated as "without a substance, without interest or purpose." The spiritual self is freed of contact with all delimiting "substantiality." Self has no more "interest" in prakṛti, which has already served its "purpose" (*puruṣhārtha*) and withdrawn. The seeds of ignorance have been burnt in the fire of realization.<sup>18</sup>

18. We strongly recommend to the student that he add to his reading on this sūtra from the commentary in English by Swami Harīharānanda Āraṇya, *Yoga Philosophy of Patañjali* (Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1977).

**Sūtra I.19**

**भवप्रत्ययो विदेहप्रकृतिलयानाम्।**

**bhava-pratyayo videha-prakṛti-layānām**

*bhava-pratyayaḥ*: (the samādhi) of causal cognition of being, at (re)birth

*videha-*: (of) *videha*, bodiless, yogis, and

*prakṛti-layānām*: of the *prakṛti-laya* yogis, those who have merged (the awareness) into *prakṛti*

The samādhi of the bodiless (*videha*) yogis and of those who have merged into *prakṛti* (*prakṛti-layas*) is called *bhava-pratyaya*, the samādhi of the causal cognition of being. [Or: Samādhi naturally experienced at rebirth comes to the *videha* and *prakṛti-laya* yogis. Or: *Bhava-pratyaya*, the samādhi of the causal cognition of being, accrues to the bodiless (*videhas*) and to the *prakṛti*-dissolved (*prakṛti-layas*).]

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now this samādhi is indeed of two kinds:

- *upāya-pratyaya*: the causal cognition of which develops from method
- *bhava-pratyaya*: the causal cognition of which develops into the continuity of worldly being and at (re)birth

Of these, *upāya-pratyaya* accrues to the yogis, and

[*Sūtra*] *bhava-pratyaya* accrues to the bodiless (*videhas*) and to the *prakṛti*-dissolved (*prakṛti-layas*).

*Bhava-pratyaya* samādhi is (the experience) of the bodiless shining gods (*videha devas*). Their mind-field using only its saṃskāras, they experience what only appears to be the state of absolute isolation (*kaivalya*). They carry over the same kind of maturation and fruition (*vipāka*) of the saṃskāras.

Similarly when the mind-field is still active in its domain and is merged into *prakṛti*, the *prakṛti-layas* experience what only appears

like the state of absolute isolation (*kaivalya*), and then only until the mind, active in its domain, returns again (into re-incarnation).

## Discussion

The state of the *videhas* and the *prakrti-layas* was discussed in Sūtras I.15 and I.17. In this sūtra we encounter a very special problem. The sūtra follows the one on the acognitive (*asamprajñāta*) samādhi, which has been described as

- *nirodha-samādhi*: the samādhi of total control and final cessation of vṛttis, and
- *nir-bija*: seedless, so that the saṃskāras can no longer produce kleśhas, karmas, and their fruition.

Yet Sūtra I.19 appears to indicate that the seedless final samādhi of the last sūtra is further subdivided into

- *upāya-pratyaya* of the true yogis, and
- *bhava-pratyaya* of the *videhas* and *prakrti-layas*.

However, *bhava-pratyaya* samādhi described by Vyāsa does not match the descriptions of the seedless, acognitive, *nirodha-samādhi*. A second look at the definitions and explanations already presented on the *videhas* and *prakrti-layas* clearly shows that

- the *videhas* stop at *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi, and
- the *prakrti-layas* stop at *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi.

It is not possible that the samādhi of *videhas* and *prakrti-layas* could be a division of *asamprajñāta*, yet with the exception of BR and AD all the commentators have considered *upāya-pratyaya* and *bhava-pratyaya* to be so. It is inconceivable that a yogī who has already reached *asamprajñāta* now needs to develop the methods (*upāyas*) to be described in Sūtra I.20. It is further inconceivable that one in *asamprajñāta* still has the mind active in its domain, causing re-incarnation! It is obvious that these commentators have failed to establish proper connection among the sūtras:

Sūtra 17 describes *samprajñāta* samādhi.

Sūtra 18 points out that there is another (*anyah*) samādhi (*asamprajñāta*).

Sūtras 19-50 continue on the topic of *samprajñāta* with intermittent secondary references to *asamprajñāta* where relevant.

Sūtra 51 finally returns to the topic of *asamprajñāta*.

In other words, Sūtras 17 and 18 list the two kinds of samādhi. Then the following sūtra explains the first one on the list, *samprajñāta*. Only when that one has been explained is the second one dealt with, in Sūtra 20. The commentators have erroneously applied Sūtra 19 to qualifying the second topic on the list. Only BR and AD imply that Sūtra 19 follows 17. BR says:

*Videhas and prakṛti-layas have been explained in the sūtra dealing with vitarka and so forth. Their samādhi is bhava-pratyaya, a samādhi the causal cognition of which is of the worldly being (bhāva) of saṃsāra. They are yet confined to worldly power (adhimātra) in the cycle of saṃsāra. They are qualified to attain only a samādhi of a like kind. Because they are unable to see the supreme reality, this samādhi of theirs is merely a semblance of yoga. Therefore, one who seeks liberation should with great exertion strive for the knowledge of the supreme reality and cultivate it in meditation.*

This indeed is the true intent of Patañjali and Vyāsa. All the commentators excepting BR and AD have produced confused arguments trying to fit *upāya-pratyaya* and *bhava-pratyaya* samādhis into *asamprajñāta*. They all in one way or another confirm especially *bhava-pratyaya* not to be yoga proper. It is not necessary to present their divergent views, and only a summary of what is acceptable in the light of what has been established above will be given.

Right from the beginning of one's practice one needs to avoid erroneous philosophical views such as those that fall into the category of *vikalpa* (Sūtra 1.9) and confusion of philosophies (*bhrāntidarśhana*) (Sūtra 1.30); otherwise one is prone to fall into philosophical complacencies (*tuṣhpis*) (see TSS 15), which are elaborated by NTC as follows:

- Everything happens from nature or matter (*prakṛti*), and if only I realize all the modes of its evolution, I will be liberated.
- The householders cannot attain liberation; renunciation by becoming a monk will give me liberation.
- Everything happens in its own time; thus time will give me liberation.
- Everything is predestined; I'll be liberated when it is my destiny to be so.

When one holds such erroneous views from the very beginning, the ground is laid for stopping one's spiritual practice at the state of *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas*.

### ***The Videhas***

The word *videha* means “bodiless,” that is to say:

- While yet embodied, the *videhas* have eliminated identification with all evolutes—from the five gross elements that constitute the physical body, up to *ahamkāra*.
- When they depart from the body, they remain bodiless, achieving the status of *videha devas*: ‘the bodiless shining ones’.

As was seen in Sūtras I.15 and I.17, the status of *videha* accrues only upon reaching the *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi. Here the *siddhis* of the subtle worlds made up of the six *a-viśheśhas* are mastered. When one conquers a higher peak, it is understood that one has climbed the lower peaks also. The *videhas* are not merely masters of *ahamkāra* and the rapture of the third *samprajñāta*: they have under their command the lower pleasures also. Without needing a physical body the *videhas* may yet control all (a) gross and subtle elements, (b) senses and their powers, (c) subtle celestial essences of fragrances, etc., and, of course, (d) *ahamkāra*. In the subtle worlds they become masters of the rapturous and ecstatic pleasures of celestial fragrances, flavours, sights, forms, lights and visions, tactile sensations and incomparable music.

We can explain *bhava-pratyaya* in five ways:

1. The cause of the *videhas'* cognition of these rapturous conditions is their continued involvement with *bhāva*, the existence

limited to evolutes of prakṛti which maintain *samsāra*.

2. Their actual experience is also not spiritual but of *bhāva*, delimited material existence.
3. The result of this cognition is their continued involvement in the *samsāra* cycle. They are reborn after a time.
4. Upon birth they naturally remember the samādhi they had already attained.
5. But they are still bound to ignorance (*avidyā*) as both the cause and the content of worldly continuity (*bhava*).

All of these five explanations are implicit in the compound phrase *bhava-pratyaya*.

Vyāsa says:

Now this samadhi is indeed of two kinds:

- *upāya-pratyaya*: the causal cognition of which develops from method
- *bhava-pratyaya*: the causal cognition of which develops into the continuity of worldly being and at (re)birth

Thus, samādhi may be attained in two ways:

1. By the practice of a method.
2. By birth as a result of samskāras continuing from previous lives.

Further, Vyāsa says:

Of these, *upaya-pratyaya* accrues to the yogis, and

[Sūtra:] *bhava-pratyaya* accrues to the bodiless (*videhas*) and to the prakṛti-dissolved (*prakṛti-layas*).

*Bhava-pratyaya* samādhi is (the experience) of the bodiless shining gods (*videha devas*). Their mind-field using only its samskāras, they experience what only appears to be the state of absolute isolation (*kaivalya*). They carry over the same kind of maturation and fruition (*vipāka*) of the samskāras.

Samādhi gained by the observance of method is the subject of the next sūtra. Here the concern is with the *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas*,

whose samādhi is *bhava-pratyaya*. The mind of the *videhas* is not occupied with external objects but uses past saṃskāras. This is implicit in the phrase *sva-saṃskāra-mātra-upayoga*.

Some readings of the text change *upayoga* to *upabhoga*, which expresses that such yogis enjoy only their saṃskāras. In such a mind involved with past saṃskāras, the fresh saṃskāras formed are those of the samādhi of one-pointed concentration. Their concentration on these objects continues to bind them and produces like saṃskāras. Here the fact of the pacification of other vṛttis constitutes the experience of samādhi. The fact that unmatured saṃskāras are still active keeps such yogis from the purest samādhi. Because of the rapture of their experience and the vast time scales of their subtle, celestial plane of existence, they think they have reached absolute isolation (*kaivalya*), which is the true goal of yoga. Because saṃskāras of the elements, senses and subtle, rapturous enjoyments keep becoming stronger, they need to go through the death process and attain the state of *devas*, celestial shining ones or angelic beings without physical bodies composed of gross elements. While in that celestial station they continue to maintain mastery over the world of subtle senses and enjoy the rapturous experiences of subtle, celestial fragrances; flavours; forms, visions and lights; tactile sensations; sounds and music; and the works of ego and cosmic power.

However benevolent, they are delimited and not one with the infinite. Vyāsa uses the verb *ati-vāhayanti* ‘they carry over’. It suggests that these yogis maintain their *ātivāhika śarīras*, their subtle bodies, as vehicles of migration in which the saṃskāras continue to be maintained. It is the force of these saṃskāras that determines the mode and the place of their rebirth (country, parentage, condition, and so forth). No matter under which condition they are born, they do not have to make an effort to learn the ways of samādhi. What they had already attained comes naturally to them, but since theirs was not a seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi, they must bear the fruition of the remaining saṃskāras (per *YS* II.13) while progressing further on the path of samādhi.

### **The Prakṛti-Layas**

Vyāsa says:

Similarly when the mind-field is still active in its domain and is merged into prakṛti, the *prakṛti-layas* experience what only appears like the state of absolute isolation (*kaivalya*), and then only until the mind, active in its domain, returns again (into re-incarnation).

The mind of the *prakṛti-layas* is still active in its domain, continuing with its *adhikāra* (which was discussed under Sūtra I.5). The *prakṛti-layas* have accomplished *asmiitā*-accompanied samādhi. The chitta in its mahat or buddhi aspect has reached the finest evolute and has touched prakṛti. There appears to be nothing further to attain at this point. The *sādhaka* does not realize, without a guru, that this actually is not the end. The constituents of the material personality have been dissolved into their causes, but at this point the direction of meditation changes. There are no objects. The spiritual self must now turn towards itself. However, if this direction does not become clear and the proper guidance is not available or accepted, the yogi takes this point to be the end. His mind-field touches unconscious prakṛti. It finds an absence of consciousness there, reaching the samādhi of the unconscious (*jada-samādhi*). Just as the awareness had progressively identified itself with the various evolutes, it now identifies with prakṛti. All the other vṛttis have been eliminated, but *avidyā* is not yet conquered. These yogis dwell in the causal body (*linga sharīra*), which consists of mahat alone.

While the *videhas* control various evolutes in the cosmos, *prakṛti-layas* are beyond that cosmic consciousness. They are involved only with unevolved prakṛti, from which (like the sage Viśvāmitra) they may create their own universes over which they are as Brahmā, the creator, with *devas* under their control. However, this state of godhood is yet not supreme consciousness. Their ignorance is still a type of *viparyaya* (Sūtra I.8), and they still need to purify themselves beyond the desire to control prakṛti and to create universes. The cosmic ego must also be dissolved. To do this they must again

incarnate as human beings and practise *asamprajñāta* samādhi. Upon rebirth they also, like the *videhas*, remember the practice of samādhi and can proceed to *asamprajñāta*.

Both the *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas*—sometimes together referred to as “the shining ones bound to action (*karma-devas*)”—are called *tauṣṭikas* in the Sāṅkhya system. They have experienced *tuṣṭi*, a feeling of satisfaction while yet short of the goal. (For details see TSS 15 and *Sāṅkhya-kārikā* 47, 50.) Neither the *prakṛti-laya* nor the *videha* is considered to be a yogi proper by Vyāsa. Only those who go into *asamprajñāta* are to be considered true yogis.

How long do these *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas* remain in their particular station? We paraphrase the answer (VM, VB) from *Vāyu-purāṇa*:

- Those who have become masters of concentration on the senses dwell at their station as *videhas* for the duration of ten Manu-intervals, the masters of elements for a hundred, and the masters of ego for a full thousand.
- Those who have mastered buddhi dwell there free of fever for ten thousand Manu-intervals, and those who contemplate the unmanifest prakṛti stay for a hundred thousand. After reaching puruṣha, who is beyond the guṇas, there is no further measure of time.

The commentators suggest that the order of sūtras here follows the maxim of the needle and the cauldron. If one has to clean both, it is expedient to take first the smaller and easier object, the needle, and then go on to cleaning the cauldron. The sūtra on *bhava-pratyaya* came first, by that maxim, and now we come to the sūtra on *upāya-pratyaya* samādhi.

**Sūtra I.20**

**श्रद्धावीर्यस्मृतिसमाधिप्रज्ञापूर्वक इतरेषाम् ।**

**śhraddhā-vīrya-smṛti-samādhi-prajñā-pūrvaka  
itareṣhām**

*śhraddhā-*: faith

*vīrya-*: strength

*smṛti-*: mindfulness, memory, remembrance, intentness or presence of mind

*samādhi-*: meditation

*prajñā-*: awakening of wisdom, *samprajñāta*

*pūrvakah*: preceded by, having them as a precondition or prerequisite

*itareṣhām*: of others

**The samādhi of (some) others has as its preconditions faith, strength, intentness, meditation and the awakening of wisdom in *samprajñāta*.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Samādhi, the causal cognition of which is cultivated through method (*upāya-pratyaya*), accrues to the yogis.

- Faith (*śhraddhā*) means full clarity and pleasantness of the mind-field. Benevolent like a mother, she protects the yogi.
- When that yogi holds to faith and seeks discriminating wisdom (*viveka*), strength (*vīrya*) gathers in him.
- As strength gathers in him, intentness attends upon him.
- At the presence of intentness the mind, free of disturbance, becomes harmonized and established in samādhi.
- When the yogi's mind-field has become harmonized and established in samādhi, the discrimination from awakening wisdom (*prajñā-viveka*) appears, and one then knows the exact reality (*yathārthaṁ vastu*).

By the practice (*abhyāsa*) of that and through dispassion (*vairāgya*) concerning it, the *asamprajñāta* samādhi occurs.

## Discussion

In introducing Sūtra 19 Vyāsa said that samādhi is attained in two ways: by birth, as continuity from previous lives; and by practice of a method. The *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas* are rejected as unworthy of being included among the yogis until, upon rebirth, they practise the method to its ultimate conclusion, the *asamprajñāta* samādhi. To reassert that only those who allow the method to lead them up to *asamprajñāta* are true yogis, Vyāsa says:

Samādhi, the causal cognition of which is cultivated through method (*upāya-pratyaya*), accrues to the yogis.

As we read on, we find that the method (*upāya*) does not mean merely the techniques of concentration but also attitudes of mind and the philosophy of life expressed in words like “faith (*śraddhā*),” “strength (*vīrya*),” “intentness (*smṛti*),” and so forth. This is the path (SS) for one desiring liberation (*mumukṣhu*). It is the path of the fivefold means shown in this sūtra.

The question arises (VM, HA, RY): Since those who follow the path up to becoming *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas* also do so by having faith, then why is it included only among the methods for those who pursue the *upāya-pratyaya*? The answer is in the way *śraddhā* is to be defined. It was partly explained in Sūtra I.14, but here it will be explained further. It is said that (RS)

having *śraddhā* as his wealth, one would see the self by the self.

This imples that *śraddhā* is faith in the fact that one has chosen the way of self-realization (RS). This is a particular mutation (*parināma*) of the mind (RS). Vyāsa says:

Faith (*śraddhā*) means full clarity and pleasantness of the mind-field.

This clarity and pleasantness is called *prasāda*, discussed earlier in Sūtra I.16. It arises when (VM) the mind begins to feel an interest

in and attraction towards knowledge of true reality through

*āgama*: tradition and scriptural authority that one accepts,

*anumāna*: rational processes one applies, and

*upadeśha*: the teaching of one's guru.

It is the happy and pleasant feeling that comes with the intention to achieve discernment (*viveka*) (HA). It is a sattvic quality (RY). It is an enthusiasm (BD) and a pleasant-mindedness and feeling of love (*prīti*) with which one feels the desire, "May I attain yoga" (VB). Such *prasāda* comes from *āstika*-buddhi, an attitude of affirmation (NB) and recognition that "This yoga I undertake is indeed the way to the highest purpose of being" (SS). Such an attitude or view often arises by hearing of its eminence, as, for example:

The yogi is greater than the ascetic, greater than those on the path of knowledge, even greater than the ones involved in action.  
Therefore become a yogi, O Arjuna.

*Bhagavad-gītā* VI.46

*Śhraddhā* is a feminine word, expressive of a gentle quality, associated with humility and reverence, and not overassertiveness or fanaticism. Vyāsa says:

Benevolent like a mother, she protects the yogi.

She is a capable and strong (*samartha*) mother (VB, NB), who protects the yogi from the possible calamity of falling onto the wrong path (VM) and from becoming attracted to allurements of pleasure (NB). She crushes the power of a thousand impediments (NB, VB) so that no breach in the process of yoga may occur (VB).

Such is not the *śhraddhā* of those who have wavered and gone off the path to become *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas*. Even though they may have started off with a certain strength of faith and all the rest, they have weakened and turned away from unwavering pursuit of self-realization. This *śhraddhā*, the will to attain the final objective (VM), produces endeavour, maturing in a certain virility and vigour (*vīrya*). Says Vyasa:

When that yogi holds to faith and seeks discriminating wisdom (*viveka*), strength (*vīrya*) gathers in him.

One becomes enthusiastic (SS), puts forth effort (RY), does not quit, and maintains firmness (NB) in his practice of yoga as he seeks knowledge of the reality of either the individual self (*jīva*) or God (*īshvara*) (VM). He consequently develops the capability to guide his students (RS). He endures.

It will be seen later that *vīrya* means “the capacity to initiate,” and does not develop without the practice of celibacy. The word is related to the Latin *vir* ‘a man’, to the Sanskrit words *vīra* ‘a brave hero’ and *vīrya* ‘the seminal strength of a celibate’, and also to the English word “virility.” *Vīrya* will be discussed further in Sūtra II.38, which says:

Through the practice of celibacy one gains *vīrya*.

There the commentators define *vīrya* (*inter alia*) as “the capacity to initiate.” This *vīrya* produces *smṛti*. We have translated the word *smṛti* as “intentness” in Vyāsa’s sentence:

As strength (*vīrya*) gathers in him, intentness (*smṛti*) attends upon him.

The word is derived from *smr* ‘to remember’ and its conventional meaning is “memory.” In the context of yoga it is seldom common memory, but rather memory in the way Arjuna, the hero of the *Bhagavad-gītā*, uses the term when he says:

I have gained memory

*Bhagavad-gītā* XVIII 73

*Upanishad-Brahma-yogin* explains this statement to mean:

I have gained the recollection of my true nature that I am Brahman.

The *YS* commentators say *smṛti* means contemplation (RS) or meditation (*dhyāna*) (VM, VB, NB, RY) to which one has been led by *viryā*, the endeavour with regard to the eight *āṅgas* of yoga (*YS* II.29ff.). It is the awakening of one-pointedness (BD). According to HA, it means that one is always mindful, aware.

The fivefold method of this sūtra is identical to the Buddhist tradition of cultivating five strengths (*indriyas*), among which *smṛti—sati* in Pali—is the most important. Practising mindfulness (*sati-paṭṭhāna*) of

body: *kāya*,  
 emotions: *vedanā*,  
 mind: *chitta*, and  
 conditions: *dhamma*,

as well as cultivating repeated awareness (*anu-smṛti—anussati* in Pali), which includes the paramount

*ānāpāna-sati*: mindfulness of exhalation and inhalation,

is perhaps the most central part of Buddhist meditation practice. Thus it appears that the true meaning of the word *smṛti* as it occurs in this sūtra is preserved in the Buddhist practice of *sati-paṭṭhāna*, a mindfulness that is maintained not only on one's meditation seat but throughout daily endeavours. This practice of constant mindfulness is taught universally by the yogis of the Himalayas, irrespective of their affiliations. There is no doubt, therefore, that *smṛti* in this sūtra is not ordinary memory, remembrance or recollection, but rather the practice of remaining intent upon self-observation, such as being mindful of breathing. In the next sentence, Vyāsa's phrase *smṛti-upasthāna* is identical to the Buddhist Pali phrase *sati-paṭṭhāna*.

Vyāsa says:

At the presence of intentness the mind, free of disturbance, becomes harmonized and established in samādhi.

We have translated *smṛti-upasthāna* as “the presence of intentness.” No commentator has anything more to say about it. *An-ākula* ‘free of disturbance’ means that the mind rises from the *vikṣipta* state (see p. 83) to the higher ground of one-pointedness (NBB). “Becomes harmonized and established in *samādhi*” is expressed in the original by one word: *sam-ā-dhiyate*. It means that the mind becomes free of polarities and conflicts. At this point there is a convergence of the method of *śhraddhā*, *vīrya*, *smṛti*, and so forth, with that of the eight *āṅgas* of yoga (*YS* II.29ff.) that begin with restraints (*yamas*) (VM, HA, RS, VB, RY), without which no *samādhi* is possible (VM). The fivefold method is clearly supportive of the eight limbs even at the *smṛti* stage, which might mean mindfulness of the practice of *yamas*, etc., (SS) which finally leads to *samādhi*. When one orders a servant to go shopping, arrangement for a necessary vehicle is automatically implied (RS)—this is a common analogy in Sanskrit texts. Since no *samādhi* is possible without the *yamas*, etc., the sūtra implies their practice in mentioning *samādhi*.

With the convergence of *upāyas* and *āṅgas*, realization of the objects of concentration occurs as discussed in Sūtra I.17. Since the word *samprajñāta* includes wisdom (*prajñā*), it is obvious that this sūtra separates the actual practice of *samādhi* or concentration from the resulting wisdom (*prajñā*). According to Vyāsa:

When the yogi’s mind-field has become harmonized and established in *samādhi*, the discrimination from awakening wisdom (*prajñā-viveka*) appears, and one then knows the exact reality (*yathārtham vastu*).

According to BR, the yogi then realizes the nature of the object of his *bhāvanā* (see Sūtra I.17, p. 220). This realization must first be effected. Then, as concentration grows, the separateness of the evolutes from the spiritual self (*jīva*) or *iśvara* is seen (VM, VB, RY). Knowing the exact reality, then, means that

- initially the nature of the objects of concentration is realized,
- then *viveka-khyāti* occurs, and
- that leads to *dharma-megha* *samādhi*.

Vyāsa says:  
‘

By the practice of that and through dispassion (*vairāgya*) concerning it, the *asamprajñāta* samādhi occurs.

From *śraddhā* to *prajñā* are the means (*upāyas*) for attaining *samprajñāta* samādhi and its resulting wisdom. When one develops dispassion even towards this knowledge, as in *YS I.16*, *asamprajñāta* samādhi ensues. *Samprajñāta*, then, serves as the *upāya* for *asamprajñāta*.

**Sūtra I.21**    **तीव्रसंवेगानामासन्नः ।****tīvra-samvegānām āsannah***tīvra-*: acute, intense, fast, speedy*samvegānām*: of those with vehemence, speed, velocity, force, momentum, progress*āsannah*: near, very close, impending, imminent

**For those whose rate of progress is fast and whose momentum is great, samādhi is very near and even imminent.**

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

There are indeed nine kinds of yogis by virtue of the fact that their observance of the methods (*upāyas*) is mild, medium or intense. So that there are:

*mrdu-upāya*: those of mild *upāya**madhya-upāya*: those of medium *upāya**tīvra-upāya*: those of intense *upāya*

Among these, again, those of mild *upāya* are divided threefold:

*mrdu-samvega*: those of mild progress*madhya-samvega*: those of medium progress*tīvra-samvega*: those of speedy progress

Those of the medium *upāya* and intense *upāya* (are divided three-fold) similarly. Among these, for those whose *upāya* is intense,

[*Sūtra*:] whose rate of progress is fast and whose momentum is great,

the attainment of samādhi as well as the fruit of samādhi

is very near and even imminent.

## Discussion

If *shraddhā*, etc. are the normal methods (*upāyas*), then samādhi and its fruits should accrue equally to everyone who undertakes to travel on the path of yoga (VM); but it is seen that some succeed, some fail, some take a very long time, some yet longer, while some others attain very quickly. It is stated (RS):

Of all the yogis whose inner self is intent on me, the one who devotes himself to me with *shraddhā* is the one most favoured by me.

*Bhagavad-gītā VI.47*

No one who takes to the blessed way suffers misfortune.

*Bhagavad-gītā VI.40*

Thus we are assured that anyone actually undertaking the observance of *shraddhā*, etc. is bound to reach the final goal. Yet we are told that success does not attend upon everyone equally. Some have to pass through many lifetimes.

One who has not completed yoga in this life, a *yoga-bhraṣṭa*, is born in the home of the pure ones endowed by grace.

*Bhagavad-gītā VI.41*

At the end of many births the knowing one reaches me.

*Bhagavad-gītā VII.19*

This sūtra explains the way of progress. Vyāsa's introduction to the sūtra can be summarized. These are the nine grades of yogis: those of

mild *upāya* and mild momentum,  
 mild *upāya* and medium momentum,  
 mild *upāya* and great momentum,  
 medium *upāya* and mild momentum,  
 medium *upāya* and medium momentum,  
 medium *upāya* and great momentum,  
 intense *upāya* and mild momentum,  
 intense *upāya* and medium momentum,  
 intense *upāya* and great momentum.

Many practitioners are impatient and anxious concerning the rate of their progress. One's rate of progress is dependent upon the intensity of one's *upāya* and the degree of one's momentum (*samvega*). The *upāyas* were explained in the last sūtra. Their strength in a person depends on the past *samskāras* (VM). The commentators have not explained what constitutes that strength in the varying degrees of mildness or intensity. If one has practised the *upāyas* in past lives, he is capable of undertaking advanced practices in depth with a certain intensity. For example, if one has practised the *smṛti upāya* of breath awareness in past lives, when he begins the practice in this life,

he will naturally sit steady and for a prolonged period,  
his awareness of the breath will be uninterrupted and  
the breath will flow smooth and fine,  
leading to a higher awareness.

That being the case, he can be taught a higher method of breath awareness, which a person of mild *upāya* is not qualified to receive. A person of mild *upāya* cannot undertake his practice for any extended length of time:

- his body is an obstacle,
- his mind is interrupted by extraneous thoughts and emotions,
- the excuses of worldly duties cause him *vyutthāna*—he must get up,
- he does not reach the depths of awareness.

This brings us to *samvega*. VM and RY consider this word to mean the strength and the degree of *vairāgya*. No other commentators have explained it this way. No doubt a person's rate of progress and momentum do depend on his degree of *vairāgya*. However, the derivative meaning of the word *samvega* includes vehemence, speed, velocity, force, momentum, rate of progress. By implication it means a strong *samskāra* from the past (BR) and a strong (HA) *ichchhā*—desire and will—to make fast progress. BG considers this to include the fact that the practice remains uninterrupted. The importance of this has been explained in Sūtra I.14.

All the commentators are agreed that both the intensity of the *upāya* and the momentum of progress depend on the accumulated *sarīskāras* from past lives (VM, VB, RS, NB, RY), and when the strength of *upāya* and *sarīvega* reaches its peak, samādhi is imminent. Vyāsa says that this includes

the attainment of samādhi as well as the fruit of samādhi,  
that is, (VM) *samprajñāta* and its fruit, *asamprajñāta*. The fruit of  
*asamprajñāta* (VM, VB) is *kaivalya*, as it is said:

One who has attained samādhi gains *mokṣha* in that very life.

*Viṣhṇu-purāṇa* VI.7.35

**Sūtra I.22** मृदुमध्याधिमात्रत्वात् ततोऽपि विशेषः।  
**mṛdu-madhyādhimātratvāt tato'pi viśheṣah**

*mṛdu-:* mild, slow

*madhya-:* medium

*adhimātra-:* extreme, ultimate

(*mṛdu-madhyādhimātratvāt*): because there exists a division of slow, medium and ultimate

*tataḥ:* from that

*api:* even, also

*viśheṣah:* distinction

**Even from among those of great momentum there is a distinction of the slow, medium and ultimate.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Even from among those (of great momentum described in Sūtra I.21) there is a distinction of those with

- mild intensity,
- medium intensity and
- ultimate intensity.

With this distinction

- the attainment of samādhi and
- the fruit of samādhi

are

- imminent for those of mild intensity,
- more imminent for those of medium intensity, and
- most imminent for those of ultimate intensity and extreme *upāya*.

### Discussion

In the last sūtra nine grades of yogis were described. Of these, the last ones, those of intense *upāya* and great momentum, are

further subdivided here. At the ultimate stage the effort is most intense (BR); the ground becomes completely firm; the mind becomes completely incapable of causing *vyutthāna* and simply dissolves (SS). The yogi then remains in the glory of the inward conscious self without any interruption ever, and with no further impediments.

The word *api* has two meanings: “even” and “also.” Translated as “even,” it refers to those whose *upāyas* and rates of progress have been mentioned in Sūtras I.20 and I.21. “Also” implies that there is yet some other category of yogis to be considered: namely, those who follow the methods to be mentioned in Sūtras I.23 and I.33-39. This especially includes yogis who are at the ultimate stage of receiving the grace of God as in Sūtra I.23 (VB, NB). In other words, the subdivisions established in this Sūtra I.22 apply to yogis who practise methods propounded in all these sūtras: I.20,21,23 and 33-39.

Sūtra I.23 इश्वरप्रणिधानाद् वा।  
iśhvāra-praṇidhānād vā

*iśhvāra-*: God's

*praṇidhānāt*: by practising the presence

*vā*: or

Or, samādhi can be attained quickly<sup>19</sup> through practising the presence of God.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Does samādhi become imminent by this fivefold method (*upāya*) alone? Now, is there some other way (*upāya*) for its attainment or not?

The practice of the presence of God (*praṇidhāna*) is a specific form of devotion (*bhakti-viśheṣha*). Through this practice God is won over and turns towards the yogi, and when the yogi merely directs his thought (*abhi-dhyāna*) towards Him, He favours him with grace.

Also, merely by the yogi's turning his thought towards Him, his attainment of samādhi as well as the fruit of samādhi becomes closer, imminent (*āsannatara*).

### Discussion

Is (HA) the samādhi for the attainment of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) concerning the

- objects of apprehension (*grāhya*),
- instruments of apprehension (*grahaṇa*) and
- the agent of apprehension (*grahītr*)

imminent only by these methods of *śraddhā*, etc., and only through the extreme practice of these with great momentum? No; another

<sup>19</sup> The word *āsannah* is brought down to this sūtra from Sūtra I 21 by way of *anu-vṛtti* (see Sūtra I 10, p 178)

way is by practising the presence of God (*iśhvara-praṇidhāna*).

*Iśhvara-praṇidhāna* in this sūtra is not to be confused with the definition of the term to be given in *YS* II.1. Here it means *dhāraṇā*, *dhyāna* and *samādhi* with regard to the practice as taught in Sūtra I.28 (BG, NB), the result of which is stated in Sūtra I.29. If one does not read the present sūtra in light of Sūtras I.28 and 29 but looks at it by itself, he would correctly see that its intent is to state that the grace of God when invoked by a true devotee leads to *samādhi*. But he would also mistakenly think that faith, etc. are of no consequence. The real intent is that *samādhi* through the grace of God is within reach of yogis of the ninth category, those of intense *upāya* and great momentum (Sūtra I.21), who are further subdivided in Sūtra I.22. To reach that grade of intensity, one does need to practise the five *upāyas*. However, the sūtra does not present a choice between the five *upāyas* and the practice of the presence of God. Lest the word “or” (*vā*) in this sūtra give the impression of a choice, it has been preempted by the word “also” (*api*) in the preceding sūtra (see p. 276). The practice of the presence of God needs to start right from the beginning as part of faith (*śraddhā*) and continue to develop. When all of these together reach a certain peak of intensity, all other practices may be dropped, and at the last stage God’s grace alone suffices to help the yogi reach the final *samādhi*.

The *Yoga-sūtras*’ definition of God follows in the next sūtra. Some commentators (BG, NB) prefer to state that *iśhvara* is the Supreme Self (*parama-ātman*), bearing appellations such as “Brahman.” According to BG, *iśhvara* is the non-qualified pure consciousness. According to NB, *iśhvara* is the special *puruṣha* who is pure consciousness, identical to the *qualified Brahman*. These discussions have no bearing on the theory of the *Yoga-sūtras*, which do not concern themselves with the transcendental nature of Brahman. The *Yoga-sūtras*’ main concern is the *kaivalya* of the one who is in ignorance and in suffering. Because the nature of the transcendent most likely will become known to the individual *puruṣha* only after *kaivalya* has been attained, one should not concern

oneself too much with this type of controversy concerning the nature of God.

According to VB and NB, *samprajñāta samādhi* leading to the knowledge of the individual self (*jīva-ātman*) then leads to *asamprajñāta* through perfection of the *upāyas* like *śraddhā*, whereas a yogi reaches *asamprajñāta* of the Supreme Self even without those *upāyas*. It is thus (VM, NB) that all the textual traditions insist that liberation (*mokṣha*) is attained through knowledge of Brahman.

For those who do not believe in God and cannot practise His presence or surrender to His will, it has been seen that the path of *upāyas* is available, in which the definition of *śraddhā* incorporates no such requisite belief or surrender (see Sūtra I.20). For those endowed with a high degree of intensity it is possible that the practice of *pranidhāna* may serve as a shortcut so that the other *upāyas* present themselves on the journey without effort and serve as secondary supports for the practice of the presence of God. This also explains the difference between concentration on aspects of God in *sa-vitarka*, etc. and *iśhvara-pranidhāna* itself.

Vyāsa says:

The practice of the presence of God (*pranidhāna*) is a specific form of devotion (*bhakti-viśheṣha*).

*Pranidhāna* means “placing something near, in the proximity of; putting something down.” *Iśhvara-pranidhāna* is to place oneself down in all humility and egolessness in the proximity of God, to dwell near and close to God, to surrender and place oneself at the disposal of God even though one will not know the nature of God till after *asamprajñāta samādhi* is reached. This devotion should be (VM, RY) (1) mental, (2) vocal, and (3) physical.

This is the secret (NB) and easy path (NB, AD). It is (BR) to reject all other desires of worldly pleasures and to offer all one's actions to Him who is the Supreme Guru (BR, RS). It is not merely the surrender of an action after the fact but *bhāvanā* (as explained in Sūtra I.17) before and during the acts also (HA).

While one practises this *bhāvanā* through daily acts, it also involves another *bhāvanā*, that of cultivating the object of concentration in meditation. Even though one does not know the nature of God until after *asamprajñāta samādhi* has been perfected, one fills oneself with love, invokes His presence and concentrates on Him in the heart lotus, offering one's entire self to Him without any other concern or worry. A yogi does not limit this practice to his separate meditation alone but applies it to his entire life. Such *bhakti* indeed leads to *samādhi*. Vyāsa says:

Through this practice God is won over and turns towards the yogi, and when the yogi merely directs his thought (*abhi-dhyāna*) towards Him, He favours him with grace.

Also, merely by the yogi's turning his thought towards Him, his attainment of *samādhi* as well as the fruit of *samādhi* becomes closer, imminent (*āsannatara*).

All the commentators prefer this passage to be translated thus:

Through this practice God is won over and turns towards the yogi and, by His mere will and thought directed towards him, graces him. By God's mere will and thought directed towards him, the yogi's attainment of *samādhi* and the fruit of *samādhi* becomes closer, imminent.

The commentators are correct here in explaining that *abhi-dhyāna* (will and thought directed towards Him) is a reciprocal process. The yogi directs his thought towards God, who then directs His grace towards the yogi, whereby the yogi receives God's grace and attains *samādhi*. The grace of realization may come by this alone, without any other effort (VM). It is stated in the Upanishads (RS):

Whomsoever He chooses, by him is He to be found.

Unto him this Self of his own reveals His person

*Muṇḍaka Upaniṣhad III.2.3*

Whosoever wins God over and thus becomes qualified is chosen by God, who deems, "May he know Me." By such a qualified one (*adhikārin*) is God to be found. The devotee, a yogi, wins God's

favour through that devotion (RS) which causes him to lovingly think of God constantly (NB). God directs His will towards him—“May his wish be fulfilled,” “May his desire be fulfilled” (VM, RY, SS)—thus He graces the person who was burning on the embers of worldly cycles (*samsāra*) (SS). Even if the devotee is unable to follow the rules and observances because of physical illness, problems, impediments or any incapacity, God remains favourable to him and wills that he may attain samādhi and *mokṣha* (VM, NB).

God often graces devotees by assuming an incarnate form, *nirmāṇa-kāya*, a Buddhist term used by SS for the historical, physical body of the Incarnate One. HA says God has promised in many texts (as also stated by Vyāsa in YS I.25): “Throughout the cycles of creations, dissolutions and great dissolutions through my teaching of knowledge and virtue I shall deliver the puruṣhas who are transmigrating in *samsāra*.” And a quotation from Pañchaśikha (also given by Vyāsa in YS I.25) confirms: “The first wise being, the illustrious supreme sage, directing a produced mind, taught the tradition (*tantra*) out of compassion to Āsuri, a seeker after knowledge.” Thus God favours devotees by assuming a *nirmāṇa-chitta* (see YS IV.4), which is not a physically incarnate form but an incarnation of God into an individual mind. This He does through the Golden Womb (Hiraṇya-garbha), the first guru (Sūtras I.1 and I.26). Thus God’s grace can descend in many different ways. He may incarnate in a physical body or send His grace through the Golden Womb or incarnate into an individual guru’s mind or into the mind of the devotee himself. This is also the meaning of surrender to the guru. If one is unable to find the mental way of surrender to God, he begins with surrender to the guru, who in turn leads him to the Supreme Guru of whom Sūtra I.26 speaks.

Attainment of samādhi and the fruit of samādhi in Vyāsa’s commentary on this sūtra are the same as in the preceding sūtra. The yogi gains *samprajñāta* when he practises the presence of the incarnate form of the guru and God. The fruit thereof is *asamprajñāta* samādhi in the presence of the Supreme Being, whose grace is the final liberation (*mokṣha*).

The following sūtras will explain *iśhvara-praṇidhāna* further.

**Sūtra I.24**

क्लेशकर्मविपाकाशयैरपरामृष्टः  
पुरुषविशेष ईश्वरः।

**kleśha-karma-vipākāśhayair a-parā-mṛṣṭah  
puruṣha-viśheṣha iśhvaram**

*kleśha-*: afflictions

*karma-*: actions

*vipāka-*: maturing, ripening, fruition of actions

*āśhayaiḥ*: with propensities, accumulations, domains

*a-parā-mṛṣṭah*: unsmeared

*puruṣha-viśheṣhaḥ*: a special puruṣha

*iśhvaram*: God

**A special puruṣha not smeared by afflictions, actions, their frui-  
tions and the domains of their accumulated propensities is God.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, in addition to prakṛti and puruṣha, who is this one named God (iśvara)?

[*Sūtra*:] A special puruṣha not smeared by afflictions, actions, their frui-  
tions and the domains of their accumulated propensities  
is God.

The afflictions (*kleśhas*) are ignorance (*avidyā*) and so forth. The actions (*karmas*) are well or ill (*kuśhala* or *a-kuśhala*). Their fruit is the maturation (*vipāka*). The propensities of like nature are the accumulations in their domain (*āśaya*). Though operative in the mind, they are attributed to puruṣha as though he were the experiencer of their fruits, as defeat or victory actually occurring to the fighting warriors is attributed to the king. The one who is not smeared by such experience of the results of actions (*bhoga*) is God (iśvara), the special puruṣha.

There are many absolute entities<sup>20</sup> who have attained isolation

<sup>20</sup> BB's translation of *kevala*, the word literally means "one alone, one who has attained *kaivalya*, or isolation of self from matter"

(*kaivalya*). They attained *kaivalya* after rending the three bondages. For God, however, there never was any connection with those bondages nor will there ever be.

Though a liberated one's preceding condition of bondage is known, such is not the case with God. Similarly, though the way the succeeding condition of bondage of one who has entered *prakrti-laya* is known, such is not the case with God. He is indeed always free (*mukta*), always the Lord (*iśvara*).

Does this perennial supremacy of the Lord (*iśvara*), which is derived from the fact that in Him obtains the excellence of essence and intelligence (*sattva*), have a purpose and a proof (*nimitta*) or not? Its proof and purpose is the Law, the revealed teaching and the scriptures (*śhāstra*).

What is the purpose and the proof of the scriptures (*śhāstra*)? Its purpose and proof is the excellence of its essence and intelligence. These—the Law, its teaching and the scriptures (*śhāstra*) on the one hand and the supremacy on the other—subsisting in the essence and intelligence of the Lord (*iśvara*), have a beginningless, mutual relationship. That is why it is thus: always the Lord, always free (*mukta*).

“This Lordship of His is without equality to another and without being exceeded in excellence by another. It is not exceeded by some other lordship. Whatever could be the unexceeded excellence, that would be That Lordship. Therefore, wherever the Lordship (*aishvarya*) reaches its extremity, that is God (*iśvara*).

Nor is there a Lordship equal to His. Wherefore? If there were two equals who had simultaneous intentions with regard to a certain matter, one would say, “Let it happen in the new way,” and the other would say, “Let it be in the old way,” and the wish of only one of them would be fulfilled while thwarting the other’s power of fulfilling a wish (*prākāmya*); this would occasion the contingency of one of the two “equal” *iśvaras* being the less. And between two equals it is impossible to attain a simultaneous fulfilment of the wish of both because they have contradictory purposes.

Therefore, whose Lordship is free of any other equal or someone

excelling, only He is the Lord (iśhvara) and He is the special Conscious Being (*puruṣha-viśheṣha*).

## Discussion

This is a *lakṣhāṇa-sūtra*, a sūtra of definition, defining iśhvara. From the last sūtra, where surrender to God is enjoined, a question arises. The Sāṅkhyā-yoga system believes in two entities, the conscious puruṣha and the unconscious prakṛti. If iśhvara is unconscious, He is prakṛti; if He is conscious, He is no other than puruṣha. If He is unconscious prakṛti, how can He be won over? If He is conscious puruṣha, or consciousness-force (*chiti-shakti*), being neutral and unaffected, how can He be won over by any observance (VM)? Obviously then, this iśhvara is neither prakṛti nor the entity normally referred to as puruṣha. Hence Vyāsa asks:

Now, in addition to prakṛti and puruṣha, who is this one named God (iśhvara)?

The sūtra provides the answer:

A special puruṣha not smeared by afflictions, actions, their frui-tions and the domains of their accumulated propensities is God.

This definition is sufficient so far as the needs of the *Yoga-sūtras* are concerned.

Commentators like VB have used enormous amounts of space trying to fit this definition of iśhvara within the framework of the Vedāntic discussions of Brahman. We shall not try here to summarize or reproduce VB's discussion because it has no direct bearing on the aims of the Sāṅkhyā-yoga system. The Sāṅkhyā system gives a questioning human being an insight into the facts of his ignorance, bondage and pain by defining its causes and explaining the relationship between prakṛti and puruṣha. In the oral tradition (as taught by Swami Rama) the *Yoga-sūtras* is a *prayoga-śāstra*, a text to teach a practical method by which puruṣha's connection with prakṛti may be sundered so that puruṣha may dwell in his own nature and (as in the current sūtra) so that a qualified

aspirant may receive the grace of God that leads to liberation. The *Yoga-sūtras* end with *kaivalya*; however, the nature of God as experienced in *kaivalya* is definitely not a *Yoga-sūtras*' topic. It is sufficient for the individual *puruṣha* in bondage to know that there is a God who, unlike himself, is free of afflictions and whose grace can help to liberate him. Where *īśvara* fits within the scheme of Brahman and Its emanations is certainly not the topic of the *Yoga-sūtras*. Other texts, such as some of the *Upaniṣads*—especially *Kaṭha*, *Muṇḍaka*, *Māṇḍūkya* and *Śvetāśhvatarā*—as well as the *Bhagavad-gītā* and the *Purāṇas*, have with varying degrees of success developed ways of fitting the *Sāṅkhya-yoga* and *Vedānta* systems together.<sup>21</sup>

Returning to the sūtra proper, *Vyāsa* says:

The afflictions (*kleśhas*) are ignorance (*avidyā*) and so forth.

The word *kleśha* (BR) is derived from the verb root *kliṣh*, meaning “to cause pain.” The *kleśhas* afflict and cause pain and are the five (*avidyā* and so forth) which were partly discussed as the five perverse cognitions (HA) (*viparyayas*) in Sūtra I.8 and which will be further enumerated in Sūtra II.3. They afflict a *puruṣha* by attacking him with all kinds of worldly sorrows (VM). Their attack means only their attaching themselves to him (RS). Again, *Vyāsa*:

The actions (karmas) are well or ill (*kuśhala* or *a-kuśhala*).

The actions are virtue and vice (*dharma* and *a-dharma*) (VM, VB, BG, NB, HA), those (BR) (*a*) enjoined and prescribed, (*b*) prohibited and (*c*) mixed. Because they cause the well or the ill, they are referred to as *kuśhala* and *a-kuśhala*, respectively. The word *kuśhala* normally means “wellness.” Even in the spoken language one normally asks, “Are you *kuśhala*?”—that is, “Are you well?” To be *kuśhala* is to be free of all ill condition—physical, mental or situational—to be a person whom no calamity or accident befalls.

<sup>21</sup> The most commonly accepted arrangement of the combined *Vedānta* and *Sāṅkhya* categories has been charted and may be studied in the author's work *God* (Honesdale, Pa. Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981)

Such a condition is not arrived at by chance or predestination but as the result of one's acts (karma) which cause the wellness or illness. Therefore the word developed a secondary meaning: to be skillful, an expert, proficient in any area. Thus, someone expert at surgery is *śhalya-kriyā-kuśhala*. Wellness in life requires an expertise, a proficiency, in the exact science called life. Hence *Bhagavad-gītā* II.50 states:

*yogah karmasu kauśhalam.*

Yoga is skillfulness (*kauśhala*) in actions (*karmas*).

Some commentators (e.g., HA) say that saṁskāras are included in karmas here, but that would be redundant since *āśhaya*, the domain of karmas, is about to be mentioned. More about karmas will be discussed in Sūtras II.12-14, II.22, IV.2 and IV.6-9. Vyāsa says that

Their fruit is the maturation (*vipāka*).

The derivative meaning of the word *vipāka* is “ripening (like a fruit).” The karmic seed ripens, comes to fruition and maturation. The *vipākas*, accordingly, are (VB, VM, BR, BG, NB, RY, AD, SS) (a) the species in which one is reborn (*jāti*), (b) the life span after the birth (*āyus*), and (c) the pleasant or painful experiences (*bhoga*) during that life span. This will be discussed further in conjunction with Sūtra II.12. Vyāsa says:

The propensities of like nature are the accumulations in their domain

Or more literally:

The *vāsanās* of like qualities are the *āśhayas*.

The *vāsanās* are the saṁskāras, imprints of actions left in the mind, and the propensities towards the like *vipāka* that develop in the mind. The word *āśhaya* means “that which lies dormant” or “that wherein something lies dormant; a storehouse.” The *vāsanās*

lie dormant in the mind (VB, VM, RY) until the maturity of karma (BR, AD); hence they are the *āśhayas*.

The presence of a saṃskāra in the mind begins to produce certain mental tendencies, fantasies, thoughts, wishes, images and so forth even before the maturity of a karma. Thus they provide a certain momentum and propensity towards the external choices one makes. These choices, apparently conscious but in fact the results of the propensity from the dormant and unconscious *āśhaya*, expose one to the immediate external causes of maturation, which are then credited with or blamed for one's fortune or misfortune, wellness or illness. As a matter of fact, in the propensities inhere the qualities of past action and of the fruits that are to ripen in due time. They may consist of tendencies towards knowledge (BG) or the opposite. These are, like the *vipāka*, the *vāsanās* of (HA) the species in which one will be born, the life span after that birth, and the pleasures and pains during that life span.

These very *vāsanās* also produce the basic instincts. A human being to be reborn as an elephant *unconsciously* begins to develop certain mechanisms, momentum and propensities within the internal world of his dormant saṃskāras. When he is finally born as an elephant, he already knows how to act towards, for instance, trees, without which knowledge he would not be able to survive (RY).

The word *āśhaya* is also translated as "the domain wherein something lies dormant." The aspect of chitta in the subtle body, where the saṃskāras and *vāsanās* dwell, is their domain (*āśhaya*). Hence the words

*karmāśhaya*: (*karma* + *āśhaya*),  
*vipākāśhaya* (*vipāka* + *āśhaya*),

or as in this sūtra, after parsing the euphony, *karma-vipāka-āśhaya*.

A question can be raised here: (VM) Since all these *kleśhas*, karmas and so forth are the attributes (*dharma*s) only of buddhi and do not in any case smear the puruṣha, why is it that only the special puruṣha named iśhvara is mentioned as not being smeared by them? Vyāsa replies:

Though operative in the mind, they are attributed to puruṣha as though he were the experiencer of their fruits, as defeat or victory actually occurring to the fighting warriors is attributed to the king.

It is not that puruṣha is truly the experiencer (*bhoktr*), but rather that it is the source and cause of the mind's awareness (*chetayitr*) (VM). The experience (*bhoga*) simply means feeding chitta with the sattva of the objects of experience and causing it to take on like vṛttis (VB). It is only for practical purposes (HA) that *kleśhas*, etc. are attributed to puruṣha. When it is said "The king is victorious" or "The man is wealthy," these are not statements concerning the actual person (VB). On YS II.19 Vyāsa says:

Devadatta is becoming impoverished because his cattle are dying out. Devadatta's impoverishment is due to the death of his cows but there is no actual loss in his own person.

Similarly, when we say that puruṣha is, for instance, happy, or unhappy, or stupefied, these are not statements regarding puruṣha's own being at all. Thinking that there is any relationship of inherence (*samavāya-sambandha*) between puruṣha and the experience of happiness, etc. is indeed ignorance (*avidyā*) (VB). Any attributing of such qualifications is mere speculation for practical purposes. Yet the individual *jīvas* are considered as owners (*svāmin*) of their individual buddhis and cittas and thereby also the owners of the happy, unhappy or stupefied conditions and *kleśhas*, etc. that smear the minds.

Then there is a special puruṣha, concerning whom even such hypotheses for practical purposes are not possible. Vyāsa says:

The one who is not smeared by such experience of the results of actions (*bhoga*) is God (iśvara), the special puruṣha.

He is unique in that the qualifications and conditions of the buddhi and chitta cannot be attributed to Him (VM, VB, BR, RY) in past, present or future (BR, BG, NB, RY, HA). Even though the *kleśhas*, etc. cannot touch Him, He may associate Himself with a *nirmāṇa-*

chitta, a mind-field specially created to serve as a vehicle of incarnation (HA). The word *iśhvvara* is derived from the verb root *iśh* ‘to govern’, which includes the capacity to impart grace (see discussion on p. 101, Sūtra I.2). He is able to save all the worlds simply by His will (NB, BR); hence, “iśhvvara.”

That His freedom from *kleśhas*, etc. is not in any way subject to time is emphasized in the next statement of Vyāsa:

There are many absolute entities (*kevalin*) who have attained isolation (*kaivalya*). They attained *kaivalya* after rending the three bondages. For God, however, there never was any connection with those bondages nor will there ever be.

The word *kevalin* used by Vyāsa has been translated as “absolute entities” for want of a better phrase. Those who attain *kaivalya*, according to the *Yoga-sūtras*’ definition, are called *kaivalin* and not *kevalin*. *Kevalin* is a Jaina term. It appears that Vyāsa is challenging the view of the Jainas, who do not believe in a creator God but do believe that those who reach the highest perfection through yoga and are called *kevalin* become iśhvargas after death. In Vyāsa’s view, Patañjali’s definition of iśhvvara does not apply to them.

VB recognizes that some Vyāsa manuscripts have the reading *kaivalin*, which means those who have attained *kaivalya*. He considers Hiranya-garbha as an example of those who have attained *kaivalya*, are leaders among the liberated ones and might possibly qualify for the title “iśhvargā.” VB seems to regard Hiranya-garbha as an historical personage who attained *kaivalya*. This mistaken assumption will be refuted in the discussion on Sūtra I.26.

In any case, neither the Jaina *kevalins* nor the *kaivalins* can be considered equal to iśhvvara, on the ground that at one time, unlike iśhvvara, they had to free themselves from the three kinds of bondage. These three kinds of bondage (*bandha*) in the Sāṅkhya system are as follows:

- *Prakṛta* (or *prakṛti*) *bandha*, by which one identifies the self with prakṛti or with any of its evolutes. The *prakṛti-layas* are at the highest rung of the ladder of this bondage.

- *Vaikṛta* (or *vaikārika*) *bandha*, by which one becomes attracted to celestial pleasures, as do the *videhas*, or by which a renunciate may be drawn to the ordinary, worldly attractions.
- *Dākṣhiṇa* (or *dākṣhiṇika*) *bandha*, by which worldly people remain involved with desires and hope for liberation through ritual practices. Also included in this category of bondage is the dependence of renunciates on the offerings of basic necessities received from householders.

For God there was never any connection with such bondages nor will there ever be. Vyāsa continues:

Though a liberated one's preceding condition of bondage is known, such is not the case with God. Similarly, though the way the succeeding condition of bondage of one who has entered *prakṛti-laya* is known, such is not the case with God. He is indeed always free (*mukta*), always the Lord (iśvara).

At this point the fact of Lordship (*aiśhvarya*) is defined in various ways. The Lord (iśvara) is endowed with a will that can never be impeded and is always efficacious (VB). His Lordship refers to His ability to save the entire world and all the worlds by mere will (NB). This Lordship means to possess the supreme power of (VM, RY, VB, NB) knowledge (*jñāna*) and action (*kriyā*), which remains even when the world is dissolved in *pralaya* (VB) and renders possible the Lord's capability as a saviour of the worlds (NB).

Again we read Vyāsa:

Does this perennial supremacy of the Lord (iśvara), which is derived from the fact that in Him obtains the excellence of essence and intelligence (sattva), have a purpose and a proof (*nimitta*) or not? Its proof and purpose is the Law, the revealed teaching and the scriptures (*śāstra*)

What is the purpose and the proof of the scriptures (*śāstra*)? Its purpose and proof is the excellence of its essence and intelligence. These—the Law, its teaching and the scriptures (*śāstra*) on the one hand and the supremacy on the other—subsisting in the essence and intelligence of the Lord (iśvara), have a beginningless, mutual relationship. That is why it is thus: always the Lord, always free (*mukta*).

The single word *sattva* has been translated as

- essence (that is, being) and
- intelligence (that is, knowing)

both as intertwined, one not subsisting without the other. The word *sattva* in this sense is not to be confused with that *sattva* which is a *guṇa* of *prakṛti*, but rather refers to the very essence and intelligence, being and knowing, which is an innate attribute of the Lord.

The single word *śāstra* is translated here as (1) the eternal Law, which is synonymous with God's knowledge and the application of which is manifest in the power of action (*kriyā-śakti*), creativity, by which the world comes into existence and is maintained within the Law, (2) the revealed teaching, which is conveyed from the Lord to the individual *jīva* so the latter may be raised and saved, and (3) the scripture itself in that verbal form which is conveyed by *jīva* to *jīva*, from teacher to disciple. The scripture in this tradition is the *Veda*, as well as any knowledge passed on as revealed authority (*āgama pramāṇa*) (YS I.7).

*Vyāsa* means to say here that the purpose of the Lord's essence and knowledge is manifest in the fact that from His compassionate grace He gives this knowledge to the *jīvas* to help raise and liberate them. The proof of this fact lies in the statements given in the *Vedas* and by other revealed authorities. The purpose of the *Vedas*, the other scriptures and revealed words is to lead the *jīva* to the knowledge of God. God reveals the texts; the texts reveal God. Because God reveals the scriptures, they are authoritative—and God is the supreme authority because of scriptural testimony. One is the proof of the other and vice versa. Even though this appears to be a circular argument, the eternal relationship of God and His revelation is a fundamental tenet of all traditional spiritual paths. When one follows the steps prescribed by the *Yoga-sūtras*, the truth of the revealed statements is verified by individual experience.

It is fitting at this point to reread the last quotation from *Vyāsa* because all the commentators have interpreted the first paragraph in a way different from *Vyāsa*'s intention. This difference is based

on the term *sattva*, which in this case is properly translated as “God’s own essence and intelligence.” All the other commentators use the term to express the usual *guṇa* of *prakṛti*. However, if *sattva* were to be read as a *guṇa*, Vyāsa’s paragraph would be translated as follows:

Does this perennial supremacy of the Lord, which is arising from His taking up and holding to the excelling *sattva*, have a purpose and proof or not?

This translation will not be challenged because it does not conflict with our own interpretation. The Lord’s essence and intelligence reaches out and touches the *sattva* of *prakṛti*, which He knows as His *sva* (own property), and over which now He acts as *svāmin* (owner).

The argument now develops further. It is understood that the Lord is the saviour of all and that He cannot function as saviour without the powers of knowledge and action (NB). But (VM, RY) how can these powers become operative in the consciousness-force (*chiti-shakti*), which is stated to be immutable? It is answered (VM, NB) thus: Out of compassion for the *jīvas* the Lord, as it were, reaches down and touches the pure *sattva* of *prakṛti*, the power of *sattva* excelling beyond the reach of *rajas* and *tamas*. The Lord touches this *sattva* as it prevails in the *chitta*. The Lord thus asserts His proprietorship over this aspect of *prakṛti*. But unlike us, He does not thereby become subject to *avidyā* and bondage. He sees—the texts do not say that He desires—He sees that

I shall raise these beings from the oceans of the sorrows of rebirth and threefold pains.

I shall do so by revealing the true knowledge to them.

It is not possible to reveal the true knowledge without extending forth my preeminent power of knowledge and action.

I can extend it forth only by touching that pure *sattva* of the *chitta* which is free of *rajas* and *tamas*.

Thus He touches the *sattva* without identifying with it, unlike the ordinary *jīvas*. One becomes ignorant (*a-vidvān*) only when he

identifies with that ignorance (*avidyā*) that is constituted of mistaking the self for the non-self. One is not ignorant when he *uses* *avidyā* qua *avidyā*, knowing it to be so. An actor representing a hero on the stage does not become confused as to his own true identity. The Lord, unlike the *jīva*, does not identify with *avidyā* on the stage of a sattva-dominated chitta. Thus His power of knowledge and action continues to send His grace into the chitta to liberate beings.

Another difficulty (VM, NB) arises here. Only by touching the chitta can the Lord see that a being needs to be liberated. On the other hand, it has just been stated that the Lord touches the chitta in order to liberate it. The answer to this logical dilemma lies in the fact that the relation of the Lord and *prakṛti* is *śāshvatika* (perennial), as Vyāsa says. At the time of each dissolution of the universe the Lord knows: "Even in the next cycle of creation shall I similarly liberate beings" (see Sūtra I.25 commentary). This compassion and grace is synonymous with the Lord's powers (*śakti*) of knowledge and action. In such perennial relationship, the question does not arise as to whether the compassion to liberate comes before touching a chitta, or after.

Here it needs to be remembered that the cosmic chitta is the instrument of that grace which flows from the Lord to the individual chitta of a *jīva*. In fact, the *Yoga-sūtras'* philosophy, in contrast to that of Sāṅkhya, recognizes only the cosmic chitta, which, becoming operative in an individual personality, appears individuated. Īśvara assumes the cosmic chitta to be His mind wherewith to run the universe and to grace individual beings out of compassion. Because īśvara is always the Lord and always free, unlike individual *jīvas*, there is no question of His falling into ignorance and identifying Himself with the cosmic chitta. When (NB) He takes hold of the sattva of *prakṛti*, the universe is created, and in touch with that sattva-chitta the Lord expresses His knowledge and action. When the Lord takes hold of the tamas of *prakṛti*, the universe is dissolved and the Lord rests in his yoga sleep (*yoga-nidrā*). This perennial and perpetual cycle continues

because iśhvāra is forever and always the Lord and ever free.

Vyāsa's next three paragraphs are self-explanatory and need no comment.

This Lordship of His is without equality to another and without being exceeded in excellence by another. It is not exceeded by some other Lordship. Whatever could be the unexceeded excellence, that would be That Lordship. Therefore, wherever the Lordship (*aishvarya*) reaches its extremity, that is God (iśhvāra).

Nor is there a Lordship equal to His. Wherefore? If there were two equals who had simultaneous intentions with regard to a certain matter, one would say, "Let it happen in the new way," and the other would say, "Let it be in the old way," and the wish of only one of them would be fulfilled while thwarting the other's power of fulfilling a wish (*prākāmya*); this would occasion the contingency of one of the two "equal" iśhvāras being the less. And between two equals it is impossible to attain a simultaneous fulfilment of the wish of both because they have contradictory purposes.

Therefore, whose Lordship is free of any other equal or someone excelling, only He is the Lord (iśhvāra) and He is the special Conscious Being (*puruṣha-viśheṣha*).

The paragraphs establish that there is only one God. If there were many Gods acting in concert, adds VM, none of them would be iśhvāra, as in a committee no single person has the supreme power. On the other hand, in a battle of wills between two hypothetical Gods, the one whose will is proved to be paramount will emerge as that one iśhvāra. Beyond the extreme preeminence of Lordship there can be no other God. By practising the presence of that one God and surrendering all mental, vocal and physical acts to His will, one receives the ever-flowing grace, enters samādhi and is liberated.

**Sūtra I.25****तत्र निरतिशयं सर्वज्ञबीजम् ।****tatra nir-atiśhayāṁ sarvajñā-bijam***tatra:* there, in that (God)*nir-atiśhayāṁ:* ultimate, not exceeded (by any other), unexcelled*sarvajñā-:* of omniscient*bijam:* seed**In Him the seed of the omniscient is unexcelled and ultimate.****Vyāsa's Commentary****Furthermore,**

[*Sūtra:*] In Him the seed of the omniscient is unexcelled and ultimate.

All this lesser or greater apprehension and the process of apprehension arising from the past, future or the immediate, relating to each severally or collectively as well as supersensually, is the seed of the omniscient. Expanding gradually, the one in whom it reaches its ultimate and is unexcelled, is the omniscient one. The seed of the omniscient has a limited measure and does excel; hence (it is to be concluded that) it also reaches its ultimate dimension.

The one in whom knowledge reaches its ultimate dimension is the omniscient one. He is the special *puruṣha*; this is it.

The power of inference is exhausted in producing a conclusion regarding only the general. It has not the power to help determine the particular. Therefore one should seek out the particulars concerning Him, such as His names, from the authoritative textual tradition (*āgama*).

Even though He has no reason to benefit (*anu-graha*) Himself, His purpose is to confer grace (*anu-gṛaha*) to the beings, (deeming) that "Throughout the cycles of creations, dissolutions and great dissolutions through my teaching of knowledge and virtue I shall deliver the *puruṣhas* who are transmigrating in *samsāra*."

As is said, "The first wise being, the illustrious supreme sage,

directing a produced mind, taught the tradition (*tantra*) out of compassion to Āsuri, a seeker after knowledge."

## A Review of Vyasa's Commentary

Vyāsa lists the various limitations of the knowledge of delimited beings. Their knowledge may be

- (a) of the past, the future, or the immediate present,
- (b) in relation to a single object, entity or experience, or to a collective, aggregate or composite of many,
- (c) gained through the senses, or supersensual (*atindriya*).

The word *atindriya* means that the knowledge may be gained by means other than the senses, as in the case of yogis. Yet this type of knowledge has its limitations and does not make the accomplished yogi into an omniscient being. The word *atindriya* also refers to the knowledge of objects which cannot be perceived with the senses because they are too small (RS) (for example, atoms), too distant, or concealed in some other way.

The knowledge of beings may be extremely little or may increase in degrees. *Grahana* is translated to mean both the process of apprehension as well as the instruments of apprehension. The degree of knowledge of each living entity depends on the limit of the instruments of apprehension that it possesses. With each degree of knowledge manifest in delimited beings it is assumed that a higher degree of knowledge exists. Knowledge itself may be little or its scope may be of little things and thus delimited. Similarly it may become expanded and become greater knowledge, or the knowledge may be of things larger in scope.

All of this knowledge in the delimited entities is yet the seed of omniscience, in that it contains knowledge from the omniscient one. We observe the fact that knowledge increases and expands, the higher knowledge excelling the lower. The one in whom this excelling reaches its ultimate limit, beyond which there is no higher excellence, is the omniscient, special puruṣha. We reach this conclusion about His omniscience through inference; seeing the gradual expansion of knowledge among beings, we infer the existence

of a Being in whom it reaches its ultimate excellence.

An inference leads to a conclusion about the general only. For specific knowledge concerning the names and so forth of iśvara, our source of information is in the scriptures and traditions. This knowledge found in the scriptures and traditions is not arrived at through inference but is conferred upon realized beings by iśvara, who has no reason to benefit Himself but benefits beings only as a way of compassionate grace. It is not a desire or a want on His part; rather, He sees within His omniscient nature that “Throughout the cycles of creations, dissolutions and the larger cycles of the same I shall cause deliverance of puruṣas who are transmigrating in the world. I shall do so by inspiring into them the teachings of knowledge and virtue.” It is thus that the sage Pañchaśikha states that the first wise one, Hiraṇya-garbha, created a great mind into whom He incarnated, becoming the sage Kapila, the founder of the Sāṅkhya-yoga system. Kapila then taught his disciple, named Āsuri, and the tradition continues even to the present day.

Now, in the light of this review, the various points need to be discussed.

### Discussion

It is first necessary to settle on a correct reading of the sūtra. Vyāsa and most other commentators (VM, VB, BR, BG, Sh, RY, AD, NTB, BM) have preferred the reading

*sarvajña-bijam.* seed of the omniscient.

NB, AD and SS clearly favour

*sārvajña-bijam:* seed of omniscience.

Because Vyāsa is the ancientmost commentator, and himself a *rishi*, his reading will be adhered to. Some commentators, however, failing to follow Vyāsa’s explanation, do not fully understand the meaning of the phrase “seed of the omniscient,” which is clarified in the review above. Although VB acknowledges the alternative rendering “seed of omniscience,” he feels that the two readings

have the same intent. NB and SS accept only “seed of omniscience.”

It is clear that the phrase “seed of the omniscient” indicates the presence of the omniscient one as a seed within all, because of which a *little* knowledge is manifest in delimited beings. That knowledge is the seed of the omniscient one (*sarva-jñā*), the iśvara Himself, who is then called (in the next sūtra) the guru of all. The rendering “seed of omniscience” indicates the presence of only one power, that of omniscience, in living beings, and consequently there is no doubt that Vyāsa’s original reading, *sarvajñā-bijam* ‘seed of the omniscient’, is accurate.

The (NTB) knowledge of entities like ourselves has as its sine qua non (*a-vinā-bhāva*) the presence of the knowledge of the omniscient one, for anything delimited is always dependent upon a homogeneous unlimited, the excelled dependent upon the unexcelled of its own kind. For example, the larger space is the sine qua non of the lesser space in a jar (NTB, RY, SS). The increase or decrease of tamas, which normally veils the buddhi, determines one’s capacity for more or less knowledge (VM). As the moon is naturally overpowered by the sun, so rajas and tamas are easily overcome by sattva (RS). This enhanced sattva increases the capacity for knowledge among the various beings. Thus there exist varying capacities for knowledge, the limitations of which have been delineated by Vyāsa as follows: Some know only the past or the present or the future or some very minute items like atoms or vast things like space; some know these a little, some know them more and some others know them yet more; some know a single object, others know objects collectively, compounded or aggregated; some know few, others know many; some know the objects that are within the grasp of the senses, others know suprasensual objects also.

The fact remains in any case that small things indicate the existence of objects of larger dimensions. The small size of a berry (VM) indicates the possibility of the existence of a larger fruit. But if we keep enlarging our vision, the idea of greatness and expansion eventually reaches the point where there is no possibility of any

greater excellence. There has to be some final entity beyond which excellence and expansion cannot be thought of (NB). There the finitude ceases. Such is the case with ātman, the self (VM), or with iśhvara. The knowledge in each delimited entity has within it a seed of the omniscient; it grows till each being reaches iśhvara.

The word *bija* (seed) is also explained as *linīga* (the sign, an indicator) (VB, NB, BM) to help in an inference. The degrees (RS) of finitude help one to infer an infinitude. An inch, a foot, a yard, a mile, a light-year finally go on to support the idea of an unexcelled distance—*infinite space*. The degrees of material objects starting from the minutest atom to the vastest radical matter, prakṛti itself, are thus inferable, the vast from the minute. The finitude is excelled by larger finitudes, but infinitude is unexcelled by any beyond. Similarly, the capacity of knowledge begins with small degrees, such as that of an insect, and goes on to that of a human being, all excelled by the relatively higher knowledge, till we reach, by inference alone, that one whose knowledge is infinite. Here RS blunders by saying:

Iśvara is the one who possesses the mind-field, chitta, with the capacity of infinite knowledge.

Mind being a material evolute, God cannot be dependent on such an evolute for His knowledge. He may rule over the universe through a universal mind (*samaṣṭi-chitta*), but within Himself His omniscience cannot be dependent on the capacity of such a mind.

According to BR, AD and SS, *bija* means the root. The root of all knowledge, even that seen in small degrees among beings of varying capacities, exists in that iśhvara. Obviously this pertains to such statements as

The universe is the *ashvattha* tree with its roots above, branches below.

*Bhagavad-gitā* XV.1

The above concludes the discussion on the following paragraphs from Vyāsa's commentary on Sūtra I.25:

All this lesser or greater apprehension and the process of apprehension arising from the past, future or the immediate, relating to each severally or collectively as well as supersensually, is the seed of the omniscient. Expanding gradually, the one in whom it reaches its ultimate and is unexcelled, is the omniscient one. The seed of the omniscient has a limited measure and does excel; hence (it is to be concluded that) it also reaches its ultimate dimension.

The one in whom knowledge reaches its ultimate dimension is the omniscient one. He is the special puruṣa; this is it.

Further, we read from Vyāsa:

The power of inference is exhausted in producing a conclusion regarding only the general. It has not the power to help determine the particular. Therefore one should seek out the particulars concerning Hīm, such as His names, from the authoritative textual tradition (*āgama*).

Seeing that in degrees of knowledge, the lesser is always excelled by the greater, we infer in general that there must be some omniscient being in whom knowledge reaches its highest excellence. The particulars of the nature of such a being are to be learned only from the authority of *āgama*, statements of realized ones whether in person, in a tradition or in the scriptures. For a discussion on the self-authenticated veracity of *āgama*, see Sūtra I.7.

Vyāsa says that

One should seek out the particulars concerning Hīm, such as His names

Names such as śhīva (the Benevolent One), iśhvara (the Lord) (VM), brahman (the Expansive One), *antar-yāmin* (Pervading Within All Things and Beings), *parama-ātman* (the Supreme Self) (VB) and others preferred by different commentators which are referred to in various texts. The phrase "such as His names" implies that not only the names but other facts also can be known. These facts might be, for instance, statements regarding His *ṣhaḍ-āṅgatā*, "being constituted of six complements," or His *avyayatā*, "immutabilities." For example, it is said that

Those who know His order, ordinance or system (*vidhi*) state that

- sarvajñatā*: omniscience
- trpti*: satiety
- anādhi-bodha*: beginningless wisdom (enlightenment)
- svatantratā*: sovereignty
- nityam a-lupta-śakti*: power, potentia (*śakti*) that never suffers a loss or reduction
- ananta-śakti*: infinite power, potentia (*śakti*)

these six constitute the complements, *arīgas*, of the Great Lord.

*Vāyu-purāṇa* XII.33

Furthermore,

- jnāna*: knowledge
- vairāgya*: dispassion
- aiśhvarya*: lordship
- tapas*: ascetic power
- satya*: truth
- kshamā*: forgiveness
- dhṛti*: fortitude
- sraṣṭṛtvā*: creativity
- ātma-sambodha*: full self-awareness
- adhiśhṭhātrtvā*: command over the dominion

these ten immutables are definite in the Lord.

*Vāyu-purāṇa* X.65-66

Such are the powers of the Lord (VM, NB, NTC, RY) as expressed in the scriptures. Similarly (VB) the attributes such as perfect bliss, perfect compassion, transcendence, and being the cause and support of the universe are to be included and understood on scriptural authority.

This raises the question as to the true identity of the Lord. There are (VB, NB, NTC) numerous names and forms to which the divinity is attributed. These include the trinity of Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śhiva, their incarnations (*avatāras*) such as Rāma and Kṛṣṇa, the various celestial beings, and so forth. Which of these beings is the true Lord? The question is answered by quoting *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* I.22.58 and stating that all these are simply the powers, *śaktis*, of the One Lord (VM, NB, NTC). No distinction can ever

be made between the power and the powerful one, between the potentia (*śakti*) and the omnipotent (*śaktimān*). It is thus that all these beings, manifestations of one Lord, are said to possess the attributes of the One. By themselves they are not the Lord. For example, among the trinity of Brahmā (the Creator), Viṣṇu (the Preserver), and Rudra (Śhiva) (the Dissolver), Brahmā takes the universe as his body much as the little *jīvas*, individual souls, identify with their limited bodies. He is not the Lord (HA). As explained in Sūtra I.19, such beings are simply advanced souls. Often these souls identify with the Lord (NTC), and attaining such a height, serve as vehicles for the Lord's descending power and become *avatāras*.<sup>22</sup> Such ones are worshipped and honoured only as the various powers of the one God, sharing in His identity, inseparable from Him as His powers. Thus only the one God is praised when they are praised. Ultimately they, too, have to liberate themselves from their universe-bodies, returning into the Supreme One, whose *śaktis* they are and who never enters into the play (*lilā*) of the universe. It is He whose name is *OM*.

The question arises: Since God is ever free (VB), ever satiated (VM, NB) and maintains supreme *vairāgya* (VM), how can He have any craving to achieve anything? Being compassionate, He can produce only happiness, and it would be unthinkable that He could create a world full of pain for the beings therein (VM, NB). Even though He has the total power of activity (*kriyā*), there seems to be no reason or purpose for any endeavour on His part with respect to producing the universe or revealing knowledge. Vyāsa answers:

Even though He has no reason to benefit (*anu-graha*) Himself, His purpose is to confer grace (*anu-graha*) to the beings, (deeming) that “Throughout the cycles of creations, dissolutions and great dissolutions through my teaching of knowledge and virtue I shall deliver the puruṣas who are transmigrating in *samsāra*.”

The Lord has no reason to act in order to accomplish anything to favour or satisfy Himself. His endeavour arising from His knowledge

22. For further discussion see pp. 121-28, including chart 1, of the author's book *God* (Honesdale, Pa Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1979)

and will, however, continues eternally through the cycles (*pravāha-anādi*) (NB). The fact of His compassion cannot be challenged simply on the grounds that beings suffer in His creation. He provides knowledge all the way from scriptural revelation to discriminating wisdom. Beings enjoy pleasure when acting in accordance with that knowledge and suffer pain when failing to do so. Discriminating wisdom in beings matures only through the combination (*samucchaya*) of *jñāna* (knowledge) and *dharma* (virtue), and not by either one separately. These beings transmigrate in *samsāra*, die and are reborn within *kalpas* (cycles of creation), *pralayas* (partial dissolutions of universes), and *mahā-pralayas* (total dissolutions after one thousand cycles). It is not that the Lord takes a vow or makes a declaration to bring deliverance in the future, but rather that His will, knowledge and compassion being eternal, He simply knows that He is to help their deliverance continuously by imparting the scriptural revealed knowledge and discriminating wisdom (*viveka-khyāti*) (VM, NB, HA). Obviously, the revealed knowledge is open to all, but *viveka-khyāti* is arrived at only through the practice of *dhyāna* and *samādhi*, which cannot be achieved without the Lord's grace.

In the current *kalpa* the revealed knowledge was imparted by Kapila, an incarnation of God. Vyāsa quotes an ancient saying of Pañchaśikha:

“The first wise being, the illustrious supreme sage, directing a produced mind, taught the tradition (*tantra*) out of compassion to Āsuri, a seeker after knowledge.”

According to the tradition, knowledge is revealed in the minds of great sages in the beginning of each cycle of creation. However, the revelation may be granted again and again to wise beings in *samādhi* throughout the cycle.<sup>23</sup> Kapila is the first *rishi* to whom the knowledge of Sāṅkhya-yoga was given; he is therefore the first wise being, the illustrious supreme sage of this lineage. He is regarded as one of the twenty-four incarnations of Viṣṇu, and the

23. For further information see pp 17-19, 65-102, and 147-76 of the author's book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981)

story of his birth and teaching is given in the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*.

The phrase “produced mind” (*nirmāṇa-chitta*)<sup>24</sup> will be explained in Sutra IV.4. An incarnation, sage or guru may send forth a spark of his *asmitā* into the mind of a disciple in an initiatory process whereby the reality and the experience of the object of teaching is transferred into the disciple’s mind, the disciple then being known as the teacher’s “mental offspring” (*mānasa-putra*),<sup>25</sup> the pure part of his mind having been produced from a spark of the guru’s mind. It is thus that the lineage of produced minds, the mental offsprings, continues to impart knowledge down through the generations. Kapila thus taught Āsuri, whose disciple was Pañchaśikha, from whom the sage Vyāsa quotes:

“The first wise being, the illustrious supreme sage, directing a produced mind, taught the tradition (*tantra*) out of compassion to Āsuri, a seeker after knowledge.”

<sup>24</sup> Ibid., pp 147-76, for a detailed description of the initiatory process

<sup>25</sup> Ibid

**Sūtra I.26**

**पूर्वेषामपि गुरुः कालेनानवच्छेदात्।**

**pūrveṣhām api guruḥ kālena  
an-avachchhedāt<sup>26</sup>**

*pūrveṣhām:* of the first, ancient, former (teachers)

*api:* even, also

*guruḥ:* guru

*kālena:* by time

*an-avachchhedāt:* there being no delimitation, break, division

**He is the guru even of the very first, the ancient and the former teachers, because in Him there is no delimitation by time.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The same one

[*Sūtra:*] is the guru even of the very first, the ancient and the former teachers, because in Him there is no delimitation by time.

The past and ancient teachers, even the very first ones, are delimited by time. The one in whom time does not approach and revolve as a condition (RP) with the effect of delimitation is the guru of even the past, the ancient and the very first ones. Just as this is proved in the beginning of the current creation on the grounds of His supremacy, which initiates and propels the process of creation and revelation, so also the same should be understood with regard to the creations that have already transpired, and so forth.

### Discussion

The word *pūrva* can mean “anything past, former, anterior, preceding,” “ancient,” and “the very first one.” God is the guru of all the ones who have preceded us: those of the immediate past; the

26 Some texts read the sūtra as

*sa eṣha pūrveshām api guruḥ kālena an-avachchhedāt*  
but we concur with VM that the words *sa eṣhaḥ* are Vyāsa's introduction to the sūtra

ancient ones; as well as the very first gurus of the creation,<sup>27</sup> even of those like Hiranya-garbha (BG, NTB, HA), Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śiva (VB, NBB, AD, SS, BM) and others. He is the guru of Brahmā, etc. and of the preceding creations as well (NB). The word *api* ‘also’ is meant to include both *prakṛti* and the individual souls (*jīvas*) because He is their true self (ātman). The ruling power (*adhiśṛṣṭhātr*) of any entity is often called its self (ātman); for example, the sun is the ātman of the eye, and the soul (*jīva*) is the ātman of the body (NB). Being the ātman of souls, God pervades them, is their indweller (*antar-yāmin*) (VB, NB, NBB) and their father (VB, NBB). In the Vedāntic interpretation this fatherhood simply means that souls are to God as sons and daughters are to a father or sparks are to a fire. Being the dweller within (*antar-yāmin*) them, He gives them the eye of knowledge (VB, BG, NB, NBB). Souls are delimited by the divisions of time, from which He is free. The universe and the universal mind from which individual minds are further created are all His creation and partake of His knowledge. They become conditioned by time, but He remains untouched. They have a beginning through Him, but He is beginningless (BR et al.).

This applies not merely to this creation but to all the past creations. We have translated the single, compound word *prakarṣha-gati* as:

His supremacy, which initiates and propels the process of creation  
and revelation

*Prakarṣha* means supremacy (from *pra* + *krsh* ‘to draw forth’). He draws the universe forth from *prakṛti* and is therefore supreme over it. The prefix *pra* expresses “initiating” and “propelling”; the propulsion from iśvara continues through the entire process of producing the modifications of *prakṛti*, from *mahat* to the very earth element. This is creation. Within the same creation occurs

<sup>27</sup> For further detail see the rendering of the verses from chapter 1 of the *Laws of Manu* in the author’s book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981), pp 135-38

the multiplying of soul sparks to whom knowledge is revealed and through whom it is transmitted in the guru lineage. The sense of this movement in creation and revelation is expressed by the word *gati*, from the verb root *gam* ‘to know; to move; to reach’, normally translated into English as “to go.”

VB, NB, NBB have raised a question here. The Sāṅkhya philosophy upholds the sovereignty of both *puruṣha* and *prakṛti* as two independent, coequal entities. How is it possible then that *puruṣha* draws nature forth into the process of creation and propels its modifications? This is answered by referring to YS IV.3. An efficient cause does not produce an effect out of the material cause but rather provides the condition to which the inherent nature of the material cause responds and thereby produces its own modification. For example, a farmer does not create the essence of his plants. He merely opens the water channel; the water flows naturally and irrigates the plants. Or, the fact that a potter, the efficient cause, turns the potter’s wheel does not detract from the inherent capacity of the wheel to help shape the pot. Similarly, God’s presence as the efficient cause of the universe does not detract from *prakṛti*’s inherent capacity for the modifications that occur in the process of creation, in which revelations also occur (VB, NB, NBB).

In this context, the beginnings of the yoga lineage in the current creation have already been stated in Vyāsa’s commentary on the last sūtra. The tradition and texts (*āgama*) also tell us that the same process has occurred in the preceding creations (*pūrvā*) and that God is the guru of the gurus (such as Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śhiva, and others) of those creations as well (NB). As Vyāsa says,

The same should be understood with regard to the creations that have already transpired, and so forth.

Obviously “and so forth” has the force of including any future creations, because what is past or future to us is not so to God; time as a condition of delimitation has no connection with God, does not approach or revolve as a condition which might delimit His will, knowledge, and action by any division of time. In future

creations the substance of this very sūtra will be revealed within the self of the sages again and again, so that the term *pūrva*, “the preceding gurus,” may refer also to those who are yet to come even in any current or future creations.

**Sūtra I.27****तस्य वाचकः प्रणवः ।****tasya vāchakah pranavaḥ***tasya:* his*vāchakah:* signifier, signifying word or name (is)*pranavaḥ:* the word *OM*

**The word *OM* is His signicator (name).**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

God (*iśvara*) is the signified meaning of *OM*. Now, is this relationship of the signified with the signifier established by convention or is it like the lamp and the light?

This relationship of the signified with the signifier is permanent. God's convention, however, carries forward only the permanent meaning, just as an already established relationship of a father and a son is elucidated by conventionally indicating, This is his father, This is his son.

So in different creations too the convention, being dependent upon the inherent power (*śakti*) of the signified and the signifier, is indicated the same way as before. Those who know the tradition categorically assert that the relationship of the word and the meaning is eternal because the perception of knowledge in consciousness as well as the continuity of usage is eternal.

### Discussion

Because Sūtra I.23 asserted the possibility that samādhi may be attained through the practice of the presence of God (*iśvara-pranidhāna*), Sūtras I.24-26 were devoted to explaining *iśvara*. Sūtra I.27 is preparatory to Sūtra I 28, which explains *pranidhāna*.

The name of God is *OM*. It is a tradition of the mantra science that certain mantras are given specific names. The mantra *OM* is called *pranava*. Many different etymological derivations are suggested by various commentators. For instance:

1. From prefix *pra* and verb *nu*: “whereby He is eminently eulogized” (BR, SS, Sh), or “that which eulogizes Him” (BR, Sh).
2. From prefixes *pra* and *ni* and verb *dhā*, as in *pranidhāna*: “whereby He is placed close, brought close, by those who practise His presence (*pra-ni-dhātṛs*)” (Sh). Or “whereby one places God in the mind,” for it is by a word or a name that one bears those in mind who are absent or intangible (Sh).
3. From *pra + ni + dhā* and *av*: “He who protects from *samsāra* the devotees (*pra-ni-dhātṛs*) who practise His presence,” or “He who leads (*pra + nir + vā*) the devotees to *nirvāṇa*” (Sh).

The only way one who has not yet realized God can practise His presence is through His name, which is *OM*. The perennial question of Indian philosophy is raised again here: What is the relationship of the word and its meaning?<sup>28</sup> Although this is answered in greater detail under *Yoga-sūtras* III.17, here only the relevant part is briefly discussed. In this regard (HA) there are two kinds of objects: (1) Those which can be experienced without a name. For example, even if one does not know the word “blue,” the colour is experienced with the eye. (2) Those which cannot be experienced without a word and its inherent meaning. For example, one cannot know a certain John as the son of Jack and Jack as John’s father without the words “father” and “son” and the meaning that these words connote. Since God, unlike the colour blue, is not tangible to the senses, He cannot be experienced by the unrealized. He can only be signified by His name, *OM*. Only thus can *pranidhāna*, His presence, be practised.

Now, there are some philosophers of language who believe that the relationship of words and meanings is established by the convention of usage alone. So Vyāsa raises the question:

God (iśvara) is the signified meaning of *OM*. Now, is this relationship of the signified with the signifier established by convention or is it like the lamp and the light?

<sup>28</sup> A detailed examination of the origins, levels and significances of words is found in chapters 3, 5, 7, and 8, and pp 75-77 and 121-31 of the author’s book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981)

If this relationship between the word and the meaning were eternal, inherent or natural and not a conventional one, a word should need no other pointer than “This word signifies this object”; it should simply convey itself. Thus where a word was not applicable, it would simply not signify the unrelated object. A thousand lamps cannot illuminate a jar that is simply not there (VM, NB). It is obvious, however, that if one so wishes, one can use the word “elephant” for a camel and start a fresh convention (VM). Similarly, is not God’s name, *OM*, simply a matter of usage and convention, the way a father gives his son the appellation, say, “Devadatta” (VB)?

In other words, one may ask (RY) whether the relationship between word and meaning is produced by convention or only expressed by it. It is not produced, because then *iśhvara* would have to produce it by fitting together the words and the meanings in the beginning of each cycle of creation, independent of the convention of the preceding cycle, thus contradicting the convention. Nor can it merely be expressed, because if it already exists, its expression (for example, by a father indicating about his son that “This is the son”) is superfluous insofar as its effect on the relationship is concerned.

To resolve these doubts and contradictions, Vyāsa says:

This relationship of the signified with the signifier is permanent. God’s convention, however, carries forward only the permanent meaning, just as the already established relationship of a father and a son is elucidated by conventionally indicating, This is his father, This is his son.

The relationship of the word and the meaning is like the lamp and its light, *sine qua non*, indivisible (NBB).

The superimposition (*adhyāsa*) of one on the other (NB, NBB) will be explained further in Sūtra III.17 Even though in the *Mahābhāṣṭya* Patañjali the grammarian has said that ordinarily *sarve sarvārtha-vāchakāḥ*, “all words may denote all meanings,” yet it is God’s convention and revelation that is determinative and elucidative (VM) He carries forward an eternally established power from

one creation to the next, each time connecting the words to their meanings and revealing the same in the Vedas in passages such as:

**OM KHAM BRAHMA  
OM SPACE BRAHMAN**

*Yajur-veda XL.17*

The relation between the two is one of identity. The two are identical, inseparable. This is their inherent power (*śakti*) (VB, NB, NBB), which is not a third, separate factor. This, however, does not rule out the human freedom to establish fresh conventions so long as they do not transgress the eternal, divine ones; a father may still name his son "Devadatta," which is not his eternal name. But God has to reveal the eternal words and meanings in the beginning of each creation because during the dissolution period the samskāras gathered around the *jīvas* also are dissolved and there is no continuation of memory (RY).

It is a principle of Sāṅkhya philosophy that a word or sound is one of the five *tan-mātrās*, subtle elements, modifications of prakṛti. At the dissolution of the universe they all dissolve, together with their meanings, which are the objects related to them and connoted by them. Their *śakti*, thus having been dissolved, is by no means permanently destroyed. As some plants become dormant in the hot season but regenerate at the touch of the rain in the season of the monsoons, so the objects—the meanings signified—and the words as their signifiers reappear together with their inherent *śakti* upon the moment of the new creation. God's will alone (BM) then indicates, Let this be the word; let this be the meaning. Vyāsa says:

So in different creations too the convention, being dependent upon the inherent power (*śakti*) of the signified and the signifier, is indicated the same way as before. Those who know the tradition categorically assert that the relationship of the word and the meaning is eternal because the perception of knowledge in consciousness as well as the continuity of usage is eternal.

Āgamin, those who are versed in the āgama, the textual authority as the tradition of the yoga lineage, uphold the view that

*nityaḥ śabdārtha-sambandhah.*

The relationship of the word and the meaning is eternal.

This echoes Vararuchi's first *vārttika* in Patañjali's *Mahābhāṣhya* (I.1) on Pāṇini's grammar:

*siddhe śabdārtha-sambandhe,*

which has the identical translation.

In Vyāsa's passage we have translated the word *sam-prati-patti* as:

the perception of knowledge in consciousness as well as the continuity of usage.

Of these two meanings, the first is the derivative (*yaugika*) meaning and the second is the conventional (*rūḍhi*) meaning. The commentators (VM, VB, NB, NBB, RY, HA) have all translated the word *sam-prati-patti* only as the equivalent of *vyavahāra-paramparā*, "continuity of usage," but we have chosen to give prominence to the derivative meaning. In Sūtra I.25 it was stated that God's names, etc. should be learned from *āgama*, the textual authority and the tradition of the lineage. Such authority begins and the lineage is derived from the fact of revelation, the perception of knowledge in consciousness. Especially with regard to the name of God, the usage has no other basis and its continuity in the usage is dependent thereupon.

We have said above that the sound is a modification of prakṛti and is subject to creation and dissolution. However, knowledge of God is eternal. The spoken word is its grossest vehicle. The knowledge, which is not a possession of God as an object separate from Him but rather is one with His self-nature, uses the sound and the word as His vehicle. The knowledge part of the word is *kūṭastha-nutya*: eternal as an Absolute; immutable and never modified. It is the half mora of *OM*, the silence, beyond the three—*a*, *u*, *m*—which the yogis experience in samādhi. Only the physical sound is the modifiable eternal (*pravāha-nutya*) which is manifested and unmanifested, appears and disappears, with creations and dissolutions.

At a transcendent level to say that “God” is the meaning of the word *OM* falls within the category of linguistic misconception or imaginary cognition (*vikalpa*) defined in Sūtra I.9 (NB). *OM* as the eternal and immutable knowledge is not a name of God, separate from Him. It is the same as God, just as its syllabic components *a,u,m* are the very Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śhiva who revolve in and with the cycles of *samsāra*. These sounds are their sonar bodies, as the silent knowledge beyond them is God’s own knowledge-self. This truly is the essence of this sūtra but it can be understood only by studying the *Māndūkya Upaniṣhad* with Gauḍapāda’s *kārikā* verses and Śhankarāchārya’s commentary thereupon.

VB and BGG quote Yajñavalkya:

He is the Divine Being, deva, with intangible form,  
to be grasped only by intent concentration,  
unified with the mind.

His name is *OM*.

Called by this name, pleased,  
He confers grace.

*Brhad-yogi-yajñavalkya-smṛti* II.61

“Unified with the mind” in the above passage means that His power is drawn into the mind when the meditator calls upon Him in particular, advanced meditative processes (NTC). This being the origin and the end of all mantras renders to the devotee the fruit of the practice of all other mantras

**Sūtra I.28****तज्जपस्तदर्थभावनम् ।****taj-japas tad-artha-bhāvanam***tat-japah:* repetition, recitation of that (and)*tat-:* of that*artha-:* meaning*bhāvanam:* absorbing, cultivating

} cultivating, absorbing,  
the meaning of that

**The japa<sup>29</sup> of that name, and cultivating and absorbing its meaning (is called *iśhvara-pranidhāna*, the practice of the presence of God).<sup>30</sup>**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

When the yogi has understood the nature of the signifier and the signified, his

[*Sūtra:*] *japa* of that name and cultivating and absorbing its meaning (is called *iśhvara-pranidhāna*, the practice of the presence of God).

(This means) the *japa* of *OM*, and cultivating, impressing upon one's mind and absorbing it into God who is the *significatum* (*abhidheya*) of the word *OM*. As the yogi performs the *japa* of *OM* and becomes intent upon cultivating and impressing upon the mind the meaning of the word *OM*, his mind-field succeeds in becoming one-pointed. As is said:

With the aid of silent recitation (*svādhya*) let one establish the posture, sitting in yoga. Through yoga too they sit for silent recitation. By perfecting silent recitation and yoga together the Supreme Self shines forth

29 The word *japa* is left untranslated for want of an appropriate Western equivalent. Chant, mantra recitation, contemplation, are all parts of the complete process of *japa*. For the various progressively refined states of *japa*, see chapter 13 in the author's book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981).

30 The parenthetical addition in the translation is an *anu-vṛtti*, a word brought forward (in this instance, from Sūtra I 23).

## Discussion

As explained in the previous sūtra, since it is not possible for an ordinary person to practise the presence of God (*iśhvara-praṇidhāna*) without having reached the samādhi of God-realization, some other medium within reach of the mind has to be resorted to. The sound that is God's name, and is identical with Him, is within reach of the mind so far as its first three components, *a*, *u*, *m*, are the objects of concentration. The tradition of the Upaniṣads and the lineage of the yogis speaks of the silent half mora that follows the three articulate components and is experienced only beyond the mind. The last sūtra defined this medium, *OM*, as the name of God, and the current sūtra explains practising the presence (*praṇidhāna*) of God. Says Vyāsa:

When the yogi has understood the nature of the signifier and the signified,

only then does the actual *praṇidhāna* which is *japa* begin.

Patañjali equates *pranidhāna* with the practice of *bhāvana*, which is translated as “cultivating or absorbing the real meaning (in meditation)” (VM, BR, AD, BM). It begins at a level within the limits of a practitioner's capacity. One may recite the word methodically or let it become a silent mental contemplation (BM). But *japa* must not be purely the recitation of the word, but rather *bhāvana* of the meaning of the word, that is, of the God who is signified by that word and is one with it. The *japa* must be accompanied with meditation (*dhyāna*) on Brahman (VB), or the Supreme Self, with faith and devotion (NB). In fact the *bhāvana*, contemplation of Brahman, should continue all the way through *dhāraṇā*, *dhyāna* and *samādhi* (BG). In other words the *japa* of the word, through its association, reminds one of that which it signifies, and the mind begins to dwell upon Him whose omniscience and other attributes are known to the practitioner (HA). *Japa* cannot be done without this association of the word and its meaning. (The significance of *bhāvana* has also been explained and discussed in Sūtra I.17, q.v.).

VB and NBB explain that *bhāvana* or *praṇidhāna* is experienced

at two levels. First, the practitioner knows that parts and a whole are inseparable, effect and cause are unified, the power and the powerful (*śakti* and *śaktimān*) are one, and thus he contemplates and then experiences himself permeated by and unified with Brahman—like heat and fire in a hot iron ball, the heat and the hot object being unified. Later, the practitioner discriminates between *prakṛti* and *puruṣha* and then knows “I am Brahman.” This explanation of *bhāvana* is Vedāntic and is not mentioned by Patañjali or Vyāsa.

As the yogi undertakes this practice, says Vyāsa:

his mind-field succeeds in becoming one-pointed.

In the gross, recitative level of the articulate *japa*—even if the tongue is silent and the mind alone recites the word—the mind is in the *vikṣipta* state, distracted by other thoughts. As the meaning, the very presence of God, becomes the primary experience, the first stages of *samādhi* ensue. In *sa-vitarka* the relationship of the word and the meaning is maintained. As one approaches *nir-vitarka* (*samādhi* without *vitarkas*), the separation of the word, the meaning and their relationship ceases, and the experience is unified. This entry into *samādhi* is what is meant by referring to the mind-field’s becoming one-pointed, moving away from *vikṣipta* to *ekāgra*.

Even if the meditation is on the lesser components of the meaning of *OM* (on Brahmā, Viṣṇu, Śhiva and so forth, who are signified parts of *OM*—*a*, *u*, *m*) the same process of development occurs, for that concentration also is on the divine consciousness that pervades these deific presences (NB). We have translated *sampadyate* as “succeeds.” The meaning is actually much richer: “one prospers, reaches the desired enrichment, finds fulfilment in all directions (NB); one comes to rest in the Supreme Self, becomes filled with the Supreme Self.”

In the last sūtra we spoke of the power (*śakti*) of the word and the meaning of the word, respectively known as *vāchaka* (that which enunciates, signifies) and *vāchya* (that which is enunciated, signified). As the *japa* becomes more and more refined, the power

of the *vāchaka* is reduced till only the *vāchya* remains; the word ceases and meaning alone shines so as to totally occupy the mind until even the mind becomes, as it were, absent, taking the form of the object of concentration as stated in *YS* I.43 and III.3.

Following this thought comes the verse quoted by Vyāsa, attributed to his father, Parāśhara, in *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* III.6.2:

With the aid of silent recitation (*svādhyāya*) let one establish the posture, sitting in yoga. Through yoga too they sit for silent recitation. By perfecting silent recitation and yoga together the Supreme Self shines forth.

The word *svādhyāya* is defined by Vyāsa in *YS* II.1 as

*japa* of the purificaries like *OM*, and the study of scriptures that lead to liberation,

and again in *YS* II.32 in almost identical words. Its effects are described in *YS* II.2 and H.44. The background meaning of the term is in *adhyāya* 'study' (in the formal sense of the study of the Vedas), which traditionally has required reciting the Vedas, adhering to strict principles of enunciation and accentuation, and memorizing each word and annotation accurately. In fact both for the purpose of study and the rituals, the Vedas must be recited aloud. In this sense mere *adhyāya* is not *japa*. However, when the recitation is to oneself only, then it becomes *sva-adhyāya*, self-study, and then as a mental act it is called *japa*.

The term *yoga* in the verse under discussion means samādhi as it was explained by Vyāsa in *YS* I.1.

It can be experientially proved that as one begins *japa*, the mind is stilled and thereby the posture becomes steady. The verb form *āsīta* has been translated as

Let one establish the posture, sitting in yoga.

As the *bhāvana* of the meaning of the mantra becomes firm, the presence of God is experienced and samādhi ensues. Repeated

experience of deep meditation thus firms the practice of *japa* in turn. It is felt by some commentators that *svādhyāya* and *yoga*, that is, *japa* and *samādhi*, cannot be simultaneous (VB); the thought here is that one begins a meditation session with *japa*, which leads into *samādhi*, and at the end one emerges from *samādhi* into *japa* (VB, BM). This indeed is the case for a beginner in *samādhi*. But the verse states clearly that fulfilment, enrichment, perfection (*sampatti*) of both *japa* and *samādhi* leads to illumination of the Supreme Self. At that level *praṇidhāna* or *bhāvana* reaches the silent mora, the half that is beyond the articulate three. There *japa* is not even a mental endeavour and becomes one with *samādhi*.

Before we move on to the next sūtra, let us recapture the process that has occurred so far.

- One has engaged in *japa* and *bhāvana* (Sūtra I.28) of *OM*, for a long time, without interruption and with deep faith and commitment (Sūtra I.14).
- The articulate form of the word has ceased.
- The power of that which enunciates (*vāchaka*) has been extinguished by that which is enunciated (*vāchya*).
- All *vikshepas* having been eliminated, the mind-field has become *ekāgra*.
- All external objects of concentration have been abandoned.
- No further *samskāras* are gathered.
- Only the past *samskāras* maintain the momentum of physical continuity.
- The self now dwells in the self.

The next sūtra explains the natural concomitants of the yogi's development to such a degree.

**Sūtra I.29**

**ततः प्रत्यक्चेतनाधिगमोऽप्यन्तरायाभावश्च।**

**tataḥ pratyak-chetanādhigamo'py  
antarāyābhāvaś cha**

*tataḥ:* then, through that (practice of the presence of God)

*pratyak-*: inward

*chetanā-*: consciousness

*adhigamah*: attainment, realization

attainment of inward  
consciousness, or realization  
of the inwardly  
conscious (self)

*api*: too

*antarāya-*: (of) obstacles, impediments, obstructions

*abhāvah*: absence, removal

*cha*: also

**Then through the practice of the presence of God accrues the attainment of inward consciousness and the realization of the inwardly conscious self; also the impediments are removed, made absent.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

As to the impediments such as illness: well, through the practice of the presence of God (*iśhvara-praṇidhāna*) they cease to be. And the realization of one's true nature occurs. Just as God (*iśvara*) is pure, joyful, absolute (*kevala*), without encumbrances, so also this (little) *puruṣha*, who is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension, is of the same nature—this is what he realizes.

### Discussion

Patañjali and Vyāsa are aware of many questions, doubts, problems, obstacles and impediments that appear all along the path. No doubt their own disciples asked many questions. This can be surmised from Vyāsa's wording here.

As to the impediments such as illness. well, through the practice of the presence of God, they cease to be.

This is by way of assurance so that disciples would continue the practice of *japa* following the prescriptions of Sūtra I.14.

There is, however, a slight discrepancy between the sūtra and Vyāsa's commentary. The order in the sūtra is, first, the realization of the inward consciousness and, second, the absence of impediments. Vyāsa, however, starts with removal of impediments, which is, of course, more logical because only when the impediments are removed can there ensue self-realization. The order in the sūtra, however, has its own reason. The first phrase of the sūtra,

*pratyak-chetanā-adhigamah,*  
the attainment of inward consciousness and the realization of the inwardly conscious self,

states the natural end result of what has been discussed from Sūtras I.23 to I.28.

The grace of God, invited through the practice of *japa* and so forth, naturally reverses the outward flow of awareness and draws it inwards until it finally reaches the ultimate goal of self-realization. All along the way the obstacles and impediments are removed through the same continuous practice and by the same grace that responds and uplifts and clears the paths and channels. This is what the experience of initiates confirms. Since the inward flow of consciousness and the removal of obstacles are concomitants of each other, either one could be stated first.

Since a commentator's work consists of clarifying subtleties for those who are naturally more concerned about the present impediments and obstacles, Vyāsa assures them that these obstacles will be overcome by continued practice of *japa* and so forth until final realization is reached. For those of greater experience he says that grace turns the consciousness inwards, and thereby the impediments are naturally removed. In this order, the next sūtra naming the impediments naturally follows.

There are differences of opinion on the meaning of the compound phrase *pratyak-chetanā*, which has been translated here as attainment of inward consciousness, or realization of the inwardly conscious, the self. The word *pratyak* is derived from the prefix *prati* 'towards' and the verb root *añch* 'to be directed; pointed or turned towards a certain direction'. VM (and NB, RY, NTC) sees *prati* to

be a shortened form of *pratipam* ‘opposite’. So *pratyāñch* or *pratyak* to him means not “turned towards the spiritual self,” but the opposite, “outwards,” and thus *pratyak-chetanā* is that little, ignorant self who is turned outwards because of *avidyā* away from the Supreme One.

But others (BR, AD) see it differently. *Pratipam* ‘opposite’ to them means the opposite of the common outward consciousness; it means the power of the seer (*dṛk-śakti*) as explained in Sūtras II.6.20. This is more in accordance with the tradition. In the *Kaṭha Upaniṣhad* IV.1,2 the outward consciousness is referred to as *parañch* or *parāk*, from *para* + *añch* (‘turned away, directed away’ from the inward self towards distant objects). The word *parañch* or *parāk* is used in that sense elsewhere too (e.g., *Āitareya Upaniṣhad* III.3, *Chhāndogya Upaniṣhad* I.6.8 and *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣhad* IV.4.1). Thus *parañch* or *parāk* and *pratyāñch* or *pratyak* are antonyms. *Pratyak* is, thus, definitely inward consciousness. Even if *prati* is short for *pratipam* ‘opposite’, it indicates to an initiate that state whereby and wherein all previously held values are literally turned inside out. What was previously held to be reality now loses its significance and the reality that is experienced inwards alone holds sway over one’s awareness.

VB and NBB explain *prati* in *pratyak* to mean “each.” Thus God (*iśvara*) is *pratyak-chetanā*, the consciousness that is turned towards each object. This explanation does not appear to fit the context or the intent of the sūtra. The realization intended is not of that consciousness which is turned towards all objects, but rather the one withdrawn, turned towards the self. Granting that omniscience ensues after self-realization, the current sūtra is not referring to that *siddhi*. The intent of the sūtra is simply to state that through *iśvara-praṇidhāna* the consciousness is drawn inwards by divine grace, naturally leading to realization of the inwardly conscious self. This is the same (RS) as the seer dwelling in his own nature, explained in Sūtra I.3. So Vyāsa says:

And the realization of one’s true nature occurs.

What exactly is meant by this realization? What does the yogī see as the nature of the self? Vyāsa explains:

Just as God is pure, joyful, absolute (*kevala*), without encumbrances, so also this (little) puruṣha, who is the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension, is of the same nature—this is what he realizes.

(The phrase qualifying puruṣha as “the cause of buddhi's accurate apprehension” was discussed in Sūtra I.7 and need not be repeated here.) That puruṣha who was thus qualified hitherto is now seen beyond buddhi and other evolutes. It has re-cognized that it is *kevala*, alone and without prakṛti and free of the encumbrances (*upasargas*) of the karmic cycles such as birth in a species, life spans and pains and pleasures in those species and life spans (YS II.13). The divine nature in the self is perceived. VB interprets the statement in accordance with the Vedāntic doctrine of the unity of the little self and the Supreme Self. Here Vyāsa comes closest to stating the identity of the lower and the higher puruṣha but does not quite do so. The particles *yathā* ‘just as’ and *tathā* ‘so also’ indicate similarity but not identity.

The sūtra, it appears, means to say that *iśhvara-praṇidhāna* leads to self-realization; in self-realization one sees the similarity of the natures of the little self and *iśhvara*. The sūtra says nothing of the next step, which may be the Brahman-realization of Vedānta but is not stated here to be so.

The question arises: How is it that the practice of the presence of God can bring forth the realization of the nature of the individual self? How can attention directed towards one entity or object ever bring forth the closeness of another? The answer (VB, VM, NB, NBB, RY) is that attention directed towards something of a totally contradictory or nonhomogeneous nature cannot bring forth the understanding or the presence of its opposite. But, for example, the study of one science helps us to understand another related science also. That is why Vyāsa has drawn attention to the similarity of natures of the little and the greater puruṣhas. The attention directed towards the greater puruṣha naturally brings about the realization of the nature of the little puruṣha.

**Sūtra I.30**

व्याधिस्त्यानसंशयप्रमादालस्याविरति-  
आन्तिदर्शनालब्धभूमिकत्वानवस्थतत्वानि  
चित्तविक्षेपास्तेऽन्तरायाः।

vyādhi-styāna-saṁśhaya-pramādālaśyāvirati-  
bhrāntidarśhanālabdhabhūmikatvānavasthitatvāni  
chitta-vikṣhepās te'ntarāyāḥ

*vyādhi*-: illness

*styāna*-: mental laziness, procrastination, mind's idleness

*saṁśhaya*-: doubt

*pramāda*-: negligence

*alaśya*-: laziness, languor, sloth

*a-virati*-: failing to turn away from the world and the senses, non-abstention

*bhrānti-darśhana*-: wrong views, confusion of philosophies

*a-labdhā-bhūmikatva*-: failing to gain a ground (and)

*an-avasthitatvāni*: instability, inability to maintain the ground or level

*chiita-vikṣhepāḥ*: (are) distractions of the mind-field

*te*: they (are)

*antarāyāḥ*: obstacles, impediments

**Illness, mental idleness, doubt, negligence, sloth, non-abstention, confusion of philosophies, failure to gain a ground and instability are the distractions of the mind-field; they are the impediments.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, what are the impediments? The same as the distractions of the mind-field. Again, what are those and how many?

[*Sūtra*] Illness, mental idleness, doubt, negligence, sloth, non-abstention, confusion of philosophies, failure to gain a ground and instability are the distractions of the mind-field; they are the impediments

The nine impediments are the distractions of the mind-field. They exist together with the vṛttis of the mind-field. In their absence

the vṛttis of the mind-field explained before do not exist. Of these:

- Illness is the imbalance of the body constituents, fluid essences and senses.
- *Styāna* is the mind's idleness and procrastination.
- Doubt is the observation touching both ends: "It might be thus, it might not be thus."
- Negligence is not cultivating (*bhāvana*) the means that lead to samādhi.
- Sloth is the lack of initiative, propensity and perseverance because of heaviness of the body and the mind-field.
- Non-abstention is the mind-field's failure to turn away from the world and the senses, lustfulness consisting of involvement in sensuality arising from proximity of and contact with sense objects.
- Confusion of philosophies is the condition called *viparyaya*.
- Failure to gain ground means not reaching the ground of samādhi.
- Instability is the mind-field's failure to be sustained in the ground that has been attained.

Only upon achieving samādhi would that, the mind-field, stabilise.

These distractions (*vikṣhepas*) of the mind-field are called the nine impurities of yoga, adversaries of yoga, obstacles or impediments to yoga.

## Discussion

These impediments are called *vikṣhepas* because they throw the mind off (*vi + kship*) from the path of yoga (VM, VB). They cause it to fall from yoga (RY, SS), thus causing the aspirant to become a *yoga-brahṣṭa* (one who has fallen from the path of yoga), which is discussed in chapter 6 of the *Bhagavad-gītā*. They appear with the growth of the power of rajas and tamas (BR, NB, BM) and prevent accomplishment of one-pointedness (BR), the *ekāgra* state, which is the fourth of the five grounds (*bhūmis*) of the mind-field explained in Sūtra I.1. Unless the *vikṣhepas* are mastered, the mind-field cannot progress from *vikṣipta* to the *ekāgra* state because *vikṣhepa* consists of the presence of a variety of vṛttis (NBB).

Some of the nine impediments, *antarāyas*, are by themselves

vṛttis. VM says this of doubt and of the confusion of philosophies or *viparyaya*. It appears, however, that any of the *antarāyas* consisting of a mental state are vṛttis. For this purpose they do not have to have been named in Sūtras I.5 and I.6 because it was clarified there that the list was not exclusive; there are not only five vṛttis, but rather innumerable vṛttis divided fivefold.

Whether or not an *antarāya* is a vṛtti in itself, other vṛttis always accompany it. In fact these *antarāyas* produce vṛttis, and no vṛttis are produced without them (NBB). Vṛttis cease to interrupt the practice of samādhi as soon as the *antarāyas* are mastered. Then and only then the mind-field progresses from *vikṣipta* to *ekāgra*. A few comments on each *antarāya* need to be included here.

Illness (*vyādhi*) is the imbalance of *dhātus*, *rasas* and *karaṇas*. The *dhātus* are the constituents of the body such as blood, flesh, bones and so forth. The three humours, namely, air, bile and phlegm, are also called *dhātus*. The *rasas* are the fluid essences such as hormones, gastric juices and so forth. *Karaṇas* are the active and cognitive senses, as well as the mind. Their imbalance is an obstacle in the practice of yoga because the mind reacts to an illness, and an unbalanced or sick body disturbs meditation in many ways. It is possible through the practice of *japa* for the mind to cease to react to physical illness and not be depressed or otherwise emotionally troubled by it. Disciplines of diet and regularity of life habits as well as the practices of *haṭha*-yoga help to purify the body and bring about restoration of its internal balances so that discomforts of the body may cease to distract the mind.

There is no single English word expressive of *styāna*. When the mind is habituated to restlessness and fickleness, it refuses to settle down to being applied in a constant manner. It procrastinates, postpones, finds excuses, does not become fixed on anything for long. Its capacity for concentration is limited. Even without an external cause it remains distracted and refuses to work for the purpose the *sādhaka* has set for himself.

Doubt (*samshāya*) can exert a strong, adverse effect on the efficacy of yoga (BR, NBB, BM) as taught by the tradition, the texts and the guru, as well as on one's own capacity and the possibility

of one's success (NT). In doubt the mind keeps oscillating between two possibilities (VM, VB, BG, NB, RY, AD, SS) as to whether what has been taught is correct or incorrect, and whether one should undertake to apply it or not. Along with confusion of philosophies, it is the most difficult adversary in the endeavour to bring about the *nirodha* of vṛttis (VM).

Negligence (*pramāda*) is a failure in the practice of *bhāvana* (constantly impressing an experience on the mind through repeated observance). It can take the form of the arousal of passion, etc. (NTC) or the failure to gather the sixfold wealth of *śrama*, *dama*, *uparati*, *titikṣhā*, *shraddhā* and *samādhāna* (NB) (see p. 67). One fails to pay attention to the observance (VM, BG, AD), remains disinterested (BR) and especially fails to practise the *āṅgas* of yoga (NTB, RY) such as non-violence and truth (SS) or any other means of samādhi (NBB, BR, BM).

Sloth (*ālasya*) is failure at the endeavour owing to heaviness of the body because of fat, phlegmatic tendencies, etc., and heaviness of mind because of tamas (VM et al).

Non-abstention (*a-virati*) is a craving for sense objects. This is all that the commentators say. In our view this is the opposite of *uparati* (see p. 67), which is the first stage of *vairāgya*. The strong pull of the senses prevents one from concentrating on the path.

Confusion of philosophies (*bhrānti-darśhana*) is identified by Vyāsa with *viparyaya* and should be studied in Sūtra I.8. In this *antarāya* one views a fact as a non-fact (BM), sees what is not there in any entity (SS), and decides against what has been taught by the gurus and so forth (VB, NB, NBB, BG). Here there is no oscillation as with doubt; instead the mind has become settled on the issue, has taken a side that is in error (NT). In doubt a possibility was allowed that the fact might be accepted as fact; here it has been totally rejected. Together with doubt, this is the most difficult adversary of the *nirodha* of vṛttis.

*A-labdha-bhūmikatva*, failure to gain a ground, refers to the condition in which in spite of much observance one has not yet reached the plateau of confirmed achievement of a state of consciousness. It may be because the conditions of Sūtra I.14 have not

yet been fully and effectively fulfilled or because one is in the category of a person of little momentum and lower capacity (per Sūtras I.21-22). In any case, the progressively higher grounds (*bhūmis*), the *madhumatī*, etc., listed on p. 78, are referred to by all commentators. Unless one has overcome all the previous *antarāyas*, the higher ground is simply not gained.

The same reasons apply to the next *antarāya*, instability (*anavasthitatva*), wherein one gains the higher ground but falls from it. Unless the anterior ground becomes firm the posterior one remains weak (NT): one reaches the higher state but keeps slipping from it. It is not enough that one should practise any kind of samādhi once or twice or a few times and be satisfied by that experience. The endeavour should continue until *asamprajñāta* becomes the normal state, from which one no longer falls.

Once again it should be remembered that this and the next sūtra occur in the context of *iśvara-prañidhāna*. It is through the practice of the presence of God in *japa* that all the *antarāyas* are gradually overcome by the grace of God.

**Sūtra I.31**

दुःखदौर्मनस्याङ्गमेजयत्वश्वासप्रश्वासा  
विक्षेपसहभुवः।

**duḥkha-daurmanasyāṅgamejayatva-śhvāsa-**  
**praśhvāsā vikṣhepa-saha-bhuvaḥ**

*duḥkha*-: pain

*daur-manasya*-: frustration, anguish, bad mood, ill-mindedness

*āngam-ejayatva*-: unsteadiness, movement of limbs

*śhvāsa*-: inhalation (and)

*pra-śhvāsāḥ*: exhalation (these are)

*vikṣhepa*-: of *vikṣhepas*, of distractions

*saha-bhuvaḥ*: natural accompaniments, correlates

**Pain, frustration, unsteadiness of limbs, involuntary inhalation and exhalation—these are the natural accompaniments of distractions.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Pain (*duḥkha*) is (of three kinds):

*ādhyātmika*: within oneself

*ādhikṛta*: caused by other beings

*ādhidaivika*: caused by deities or natural forces

Pain is that afflicted by which beings endeavour to ward it off

Ill-mindedness (*daur-manasya*) is the mind's agitation and anguish (*kshobha*) when a desire is frustrated.

Unsteadiness (*angam-ejayatva*) is the movement of limbs.

Inhalation (*śhvāsa*) is the *prāṇa* breathing in external air. Exhalation (*pra-śhvāsa*) is (the *prāṇa*) breathing out visceral air.

These natural accompaniments or correlates of distractions (*vikṣhepas*) appear with them and accrue to one whose mind-field is in the distracted (*vikṣipta*) state. They do not happen to one whose mind is harmonized in *samādhi*.

## Discussion

This sūtra requires only a few comments.

*Duḥkha* is any kind of pain, grief, sorrow or suffering. It is that which all beings seek to avoid. It is the first of the fourfold noble truths of the Buddhist doctrine and the first concern of the Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophy. *Sāṅkhya-kārikā*, the most important Sāṅkhya text, begins with the statement:

Because one intends to prevent the three kinds of pain, there arises inquiry as to the means of that prevention.

The same sorrow is spoken of in *YS* II.16, and *YS* II.15-26 are devoted to understanding pain, the cause of pain, the removal of pain, and the means of removing pain. Whereas the sūtras in Chapter 2 deal with the totality of the universal problem of pain, the connotation of *duḥkha* in this sūtra is somewhat limited to the personal experience of pain. Both universal and personal pain are experienced from three sources:

1. *Ādhyātmika*: internal to oneself—physical (such as illness) and mental (such as passions and desires)
2. *Ādhībhautika*: caused by other beings (such as beasts of prey or one's enemies)
3. *Ādhidaivika*: caused by planetary influences (NT, RY) and other natural forces (such as heat, cold, etc.)

Even though all pain is experienced mentally, one attributes it to various external forces; it is only in this sense that the above three classifications are made (VB). All of this pain is actually the mind's rajasik mutation (BR, AD) and always impedes the practice of yoga. When it is realized that all pain actually originates and is experienced in the mind as a correlate of the previous nine obstacles and the vṛttis, then one is in a position to control it mentally. In spite of the presence of pain, one may elect to suffer it less and may prevent it from becoming a barrier on the path of yoga.

If the mind in daily life is filled with *duḥkha*, pain of desires, the mind in meditation remains disturbed (*vikṣipta*) and sattva fails

to overcome rajas. More about *duḥkha* will be discussed in Chapter 2.

*Daurmanasya*, literally “bad-mindedness” (from *dur* ‘bad’ + *manas* ‘mind’), is the antonym of a widely used Sanskrit word, *saumanasya*, “good-mindedness” (from *su* ‘good, happy, harmonized’ + *manas* ‘mind’). Since mental pain (*duḥkha*) is desire, its product is *daurmanasya*, frustration, anguish, despair, bad moods, emotional disturbances and instability. All of these are expressed together in *daurmanasya*, ill-mindedness, all the way to psychopathic situations.

If the mind in daily life is filled with *daurmanasya*, meditation also remains disturbed (*vikṣipta*).

*Āṅgamejayatva*, shaking of body and twitching of limbs in meditation, is part of the same rajasic tendencies which keep a person restless and listless in daily life and is caused by emotional instability. Without mental stability there can be no stabilisation of the body in meditation. Unless sattva helps settle one down, this inability to sit still is not brought under control and the posture does not fulfil the requirements (*YS II.46*) of steadiness and comfort.

*Shvāsa* and *pra-shvāsa*, involuntary inhalation and exhalation, are the well-known symptoms of mental and emotional disturbance. They are the opposite of the total control of *prāṇāyāma* described in *YS II.49-53*. Involuntary inhalation is the opposite of *pūraka*, the *prāṇāyāma* of controlled inhalation. Involuntary exhalation is the opposite of *rechaka*, the *prāṇāyāma* of controlled exhalation. Without this control the ultimate natural *prāṇāyāmas* of *YS II.50-51* cannot be accomplished. In daily life this symptom of a disturbed mind is seen in gasping, sighing and such. The same mental conditions cause the breath to flow unevenly and in jerks during meditation. Until the breath flows smoothly and evenly without jerks or pauses during meditation, it should be understood that desire and frustrations (*duḥkha* and *daurmanasya*) are present.

All five symptoms are correlates of the nine obstacles (*antarāyas*) and should be seen as five aspects of a single condition, that of a personality disturbed both in life and in meditation. These five aspects have to be cured altogether. Only then does *vikṣipta*

progress to *ekāgra* (Sūtra I.1). Vyāsa states clearly that these symptoms accrue to one whose mind-field is in the distracted (*vikṣipta*) state; they do not happen to one whose mind is harmonized in samādhi.

The word *samāhita* means “harmonized; that in which conditions of conflict have been resolved, as though previously broken pieces have been set and fused together” (from *sam* + *ā* + *dhā* ‘to set together, join together’ [as of broken bones]); and “that which is in samādhi.” The two, again, are actually one condition. From *sam* + *ā* + *dhā*, “samādhi” is the abstract noun and *samāhita* is the perfect participle expressing the fact that this harmonizing, resolving, of the conditions of conflict has been accomplished by reaching samādhi. Only then are the nine impediments and their five correlates overcome.

Sūtra I.32

तत्प्रतिषेधार्थमेकतत्त्वाभ्यासः ।

tat-pratiṣhedhārtham eka-tattvābhyaśaḥ

*tat-*: those*pratiṣhedha-*: prevention, opposing,  
prohibiting, negating, voiding,  
nullifying*artham*: for the purpose of*eka-*: one*tattva-*: principle, factor, reality, real element*abhyāsaḥ*: practiceFor the purpose  
of negating those  
(*antarāyas* and their  
companions)

**To prevent and negate those impediments, the distractions and their correlates, the practice of a single reality, one principle, is enjoined, prescribed.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now, these distractions, being the adversaries of samādhi, should be brought under control by the same practice and dispassion (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*) (which have been explained). Of those, to sum up the topic of practice (*abhyāsa*), he (Patañjali) says

[*Sūtra*:] To prevent and negate those impediments, the distractions and their correlates, the practice of a single reality, one principle, is enjoined, prescribed.

For preventing and negating the distractions (*vikṣhepas*) one should make a practice of the mind-field's resorting to a single reality or one principle alone.

For someone who holds the opinion that chitta is distinct and limited only to each experienced factor, comprises only a single cognition and is momentary, then that entire chitta is already one-pointed (*ekāgra*) and is never and not at all distracted (*vikṣipta*). If, however, it is gathered together from all over, withdrawn from there and placed into samādhi on a single matter (*artha*) and thereby becomes one-pointed (*ekāgra*), then it is not, cannot be considered to be, limited only to a given object.

If someone believes that the mind is one-pointed when it is flowing along similar cognitions and that this one-pointedness is an attribute of the flowing mind-stream, then at the same time there could be no such mind-stream, the chitta being momentary in this view. If, however, it is an attribute of that single cognition which is a part of the flowing stream, the mind being confined to a single experienced factor, it will be one-pointed all the same whether flowing along similar cognitions or dissimilar ones. Then it would be inappropriate to postulate a distracted mind. Therefore we must conclude that there is only one mind conditioned towards many factors of experience, changing in condition according to each of the many purposes.

Furthermore, if the cognitions arise that are by nature distinct and not associated with a single mind-field, how is it possible that one should remember a cognition experienced by some other? And, how is it possible that one cognition should experience (the results of) the domain of karmas gathered by some other? No matter how one tries to reconcile this, still the analogy of the cow dung and the milk pudding applies. Not only this, but if we adhere to the separateness of chittas, one's own experience has to be disowned. How? "I am touching what I saw"; "I am seeing the same thing that I touched"—such cognition is present as the non-distinction of the cognizer when all the cognitions are separate and distinct. If all the chittas were completely distinct, how could this idea, the subject of a single cognition, persist and substrate in one common cognizer as "I am a nondistinct, undivided self"? And this cognition that "I am a nondistinct, undivided self" is grasped and proved by one's own experience. Nor can the power of direct experience (*pratyakṣha*) be overwhelmed by any other proof. Any other proof, however, becomes effective only on the strength of direct perception.

Therefore, we conclude, the mind-field is one and conditioned to many factors of experience, constant, yet changing its condition to serve many purposes with regard to many objects.

### Discussion

Are these distractions overcome only by the practice of the presence of God as has been stated in Sūtra I.29? The answer appears

to be that *iśhvvara-praṇidhāna* precludes the arising of distractions. One who practises the presence of God is naturally free of these distractions (NB). But one who cannot fully succeed in *praṇidhāna* requires the aid of another practice (NB). Once the distractions do arise, the only resort is the practice (VB).

There still appears to be a contradiction between Sūtra I.29 and this one. Some commentators (VM, RY, SS, BM) resolve it by saying that, in Vyāsa's phrase,

a practice of the mind-field's resorting to a single reality or one principle alone

means, again, *iśhvvara-praṇidhāna*. God (*iśhvvara*) is that reality, that principle whose presence is practised. Others (VB, NBB) are of the opinion that it refers to the gross elements, etc. that are progressively the objects of concentration in the various samādhis discussed in Sūtra I.17. Yet others (BR, NTB) say that one may practise concentration on any object of one's choice (*abhimata*) (BG, NB). But this last interpretation of the sūtra would render Sūtra I.39 redundant.

The correct interpretation of the sūtra would reconcile the various views. If one could successfully maintain the practice of the presence of God, the *vikṣhepas* would not arise. It was stated in the previous sūtra that these *vikṣhepas* occur to one whose mind-field is distracted (*vikṣipta*) and not to one whose mind is harmonized in samādhi. However, it is not possible for a large majority to maintain this presence fully and all the time. To arrive at the practice of the presence of God, most seekers require going through other practices, starting from concentration on gross elements in *sa-vitarka* samādhi. Even when one comes to *iśhvvara-praṇidhāna*, this itself requires continuously directing the mind towards God until one maintains himself in the great presence. Furthermore (HA), in the beginning of *iśhvvara-praṇidhāna* the mind wanders to all the different notions concerning the attributes of God: His omnipresence, kindness, love, etc. Here, again, the mind must be withdrawn from all these notions and trained to maintain only the awareness of a single reality, the One Principle, God alone.

In this context it must be made clear that only until one actually reaches the presence of God are there various notions to which followers of different credos try to remain loyal and about which others merely speculate. When God is experienced, however, it is found that none of these notions is accurate. God is not at all as He is thought to be; the experience of the One Reality (*eka-tattva*) is entirely apart from all ideas which were held before.

Vyāsa says:

Now, these distractions, being the adversaries of samādhi, should be brought under control by the same practice and dispassion (*abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*) (which have been explained). Of those, to sum up the topic of practice (*abhyāsa*) [this sūtra is taught].

In other words the topic of *abhyāsa* that was begun in Sūtra I.12 is now summed up and concluded here. Since Sūtra I.12 had made *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya* associates (*saha-kārin*), Vyāsa includes *vairāgya* here in his comment even though it is not found in the sūtra itself (VM). *Vairāgya* is not out of place here, as that topic still continues through all these sūtras and is concluded in Sūtra I.40. In everything stated from Sūtra I.12 up to here, *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya* remain the necessary accompaniment and condition, an aid to everything, a precondition for all realizations. Furthermore, just as *abhyāsa* is accompanied with *vairāgya* in this sūtra without the latter's being mentioned specifically, *abhyāsa* will continue to accompany *vairāgya* up to Sūtra I.40 even though the topic of *abhyāsa* as a primary factor is being brought to conclusion here. Such are always the implications in the way the sūtras are organized.

Here Vyāsa challenges the Buddhist view of mind. In this, especially in *vijñāna-vāda*, the theory of "ideation only," no external objects exist. Only idea (*vijñāna*) arises as an error from within. A corollary to this view is *kshamika-vāda*, the theory of momentariness. All ideas exist for a moment only. Any continuity that appears is merely a string of independent ideas arising one after another and subsisting for a moment only. Consequently, there does not exist an entity called the mind. The ideation at each moment brings into existence the mind (*chitta*) of that moment,

which immediately upon the expiration of that moment, ceases. Thus nothing is permanent, nothing lasts more than a moment. Vyāsa challenges this view, constructing his argument on the basis that the Buddhist also believes that the mind is distracted, and needs to be brought to one-pointedness. Vyāsa's argument may be paraphrased briefly as follows. If the mind is momentary and exists only for the duration of a single, momentary ideation or cognition thereof, then obviously for that moment the mind remains one-pointed on that idea or cognition. Immediately after that moment the said cognition, idea and the mind vanish and some other cognition, idea and the mind arise. This next momentary mind also is one-pointed with reference to that cognition and idea in relation to which it has come into being. Where then is there any distraction from which the Buddhist wishes to lead the mind into one-pointedness?

The Buddhist might defend himself by saying that his definition of one-pointedness is that at each moment in each successive momentary mind a similar ideation and the cognition thereof should occur. This is based on the notion of *pravāha-chitta*, a flowing mind, the mind-stream in which each successive wave causes the appearance of continuity even though there is no stream by itself, only the succession of waves. When the waves arising in each successive moment are dissimilar, the mind-stream is considered distracted and when they are similar, it is one-pointed. Vyāsa challenges this definition. Whether the successive cognitions and ideas arising with each momentary mind are similar or dissimilar is irrelevant since the Buddhists do not believe that there is a single continuous mind at all. This brings us back to the implication that each momentary mind is already concentrated on its relevant idea and cognition. There is no distraction at all, and that being so, what other samādhi can there be for the Buddhist?

Vyāsa, therefore, refutes the entire notion of the succession of momentary minds. If there is no single, continuous mind-field, and each cognition and each successive mind is distinct and separate, how is it possible that we remember anything at all? Only a single, continuous mind can be a repository of memories. If one Chaitra

memorizes the scriptures, it is not someone named Maitra who remembers them! How can one momentary mind remember something that transpired in and expired with another momentary mind, a million moments—or even a single, contiguous moment—ago? Also, without a single, continuous entity can there be any kind of effectiveness in the world? Can the mere idea of a momentary fire warm our hands? Again, if the idea of momentary minds were taken seriously, the entire doctrine of karma and its fruition would fall into dire straits. Since in this view there is no continuous mind and no continuous personality, who gathers the karmas and who deposits them in the *karmāśaya*, the repository or domain of the karmas? Yet again, how can one independent, momentary mind be responsible for, suffer or enjoy the karmas gathered by a million other momentary minds? It sounds like the analogy of the milk pudding and the cow dung, which goes as follows:

All that a cow produces is milk.

Milk pudding is produced from the (milk of a) cow.

Cow dung is produced from a cow.

Therefore, milk pudding and cow dung are one and the same!

That is to say, in the Buddhist view there appears to be no cause and effect relationship between the successive, momentary minds nor between the karma of a preceding one and the pain-pleasure fruition thereof in a subsequent one. Yet, both are in a single substratum, in a single personality. What exactly is that personality? Merely the process of unbroken succession? A process such as succession by itself is nothing concrete, not a substance nor an entity. How can the succession by itself perform karma, gather it and enjoy or suffer its consequence? The whole argument is even more fallacious than the analogy of milk pudding and cow dung (VM). The Buddhist thinks that the cow named “Succession” produces both karmas and their results!

The Buddhist view, says Vyāsa, contradicts all personal experience. By experience we know, for example, “I am touching exactly the object I previously saw,” or “What I touched is what I am seeing now.” We see that the cognitions “object,” “touching,” and

“seeing” are each separate and distinct, but they unite in the single cognizer. By this experience we know “I am an undifferentiated, continuous, single entity.” How could this experience occur if there were only distinct, momentary minds?

Experience is the supreme arbiter, the highest proof. The validity of all other proofs is derived from that of direct experience (*pratyakṣha*) which alone renders them effective. On the basis of our experience we know that the mind-field is a single, continuous entity, constant through the changing cognitions, yet undergoing a variety of conditions to serve many purposes with regard to many objects.

Vyāsa’s word *ava-sthitam* is loaded with meaning. On one hand it means “constant, stable.” On the other, it is derived from *ava + sthā*, “to go through a process or condition.” The mind is a single constant but passes through many conditions, *aneka-artham*, “to serve many purposes (*arthas*) with regard to many objects (*arthas*).” This mind is to be brought under control, freed from obstacles and their correlates, through the practice of concentration on a single principle alone.

**Sūtra I.33**

**मैत्रीकरुणामुदितोपेक्षाणां सुखदुःख-  
पुण्यापुण्यविषयाणां भावनातश्चत्प्रसादनम्।**

**maitrī-karuṇā-muditopekṣhāñāṁ sukha-duḥkha-  
puṇyāpuṇya-viṣhayāñāṁ bhāvanātaś  
chitta-prasādanam**

*maitrī-*: (of) amity, love

*karuṇā-*: compassion

*muditā-*: joyfulness, gladness, and

*upekṣhāñām*: of indifference, equanimity

*sukha-*: (of) pleasure, comfort; those comfortable

*duḥkha-*: pain, sorrow, suffering; those suffering

*puṇya-*: virtue, merit, virtuousness, meritoriousness; the virtuous and meritorious (and)

*a-puṇya-*: vice, nonvirtue, nonvirtuousness, nonmeritoriousness; the nonvirtuous and nonmeritorious

*viṣhayāñām*: in relation with, with regard to

*bhāvanātaś*: through cultivating, by impressing into (upon) oneself

*chitta-*: (of) mind-field

*pra-sādanam*: purifying, rendering clear, making happy, making serene, pleasing, making pleasant

**By cultivating and impressing into oneself the sentiments of amity and love, compassion, gladness, and indifference with regard to those comfortable, those suffering, the virtuous and the non-virtuous (respectively), the mind is purified and made pleasant.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

That mind-field the purification (*parikarman*) of which is advised by the Scripture—how is that?

[*Sūtra*:] By cultivating and impressing into oneself the sentiments of amity and love, compassion, gladness, and indifference with regard to those comfortable, those suffering, the virtuous and the nonvirtuous (respectively), the mind is purified and made pleasant

Of these, one should cultivate amity towards all living beings who are endowed with comfort and pleasures, compassion towards those who are suffering, gladness towards those of virtuous nature and indifference towards (those of) nonvirtuous disposition. As one cultivates himself thus, his white nature increases, grows. Then the mind is purified and becomes pleasant. Purified and pleasant, it attains the state of one-pointed stability.

## Discussion

Sūtra I.20 enumerated the various methods (*upāyas*) for perfecting yoga. The topic of their practice (*abhyāsa*) was brought to summation in the last sūtra. The subject of the highest kind of lower dispassion (*apara-vairāgya*), called *vaśikāra*, was introduced in Sūtra I.15 and will be brought to conclusion in Sūtra I.40. Both *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*, however, are interdependent, and since the consideration in the sūtras is never confined to either one exclusively, the two topics weave in and out of the discussion.

It is understood that the mind-field must become one-pointed (*ekāgra*) to experience samādhi. The five methods of faith and the other four *upāyas* stated in Sūtra I.20 are the prerequisite means for attaining one-pointedness (VB) and *samprajñāta samādhi* (SS), but success in the practice of these is blocked and the mind cannot reach one-pointedness if it is filled with undesirable sentiments such as intolerance and jealousy (*asūyā*) (VM, RY). For this reason one seeks to purify the mind and to make it pleasant. This can be done only by warding off the blocks of negative emotions by establishing the controls of *vaśikāra* (Sūtras I.15, I.40). Otherwise the sentiments of jealousy and so forth continue to destabilise the mind no matter how much the five *upāyas* are practised. The practices described in Sūtras I.33-39 provide a way to attain final control (*vaśikāra*). Sūtra I.35 uses the term *sthiti-nibandhana*, which means not merely “stabilising” but “rendering (that stability) permanent, unshakable; making (it) binding and fastening (it).” That term is synonymous with *chitta-prasādana* ‘purifying the mind and making it pleasant’, as it occurs here (BG, NB, NBB). Let us summarize the above approach as follows:

- Samādhi being synonymous with yoga, its lower stage, known as *samprajñāta*, can be attained only when the mind is made one-pointed (*ekāgra*).
- Through practice of the five *upāyas* stated in Sūtra I.20 the mind is made *ekāgra*. This practice (*abhyāsa*) (YS I.12) must be undertaken together with dispassion (*vairāgya*), the highest level of which is the final control (*vaśikāra*) (YS I.15).
- Though *abhyāsa* is defined (I.13) as the endeavour to make the mind stable, one fails to maintain such stability because the undesirable sentiments such as jealousy and intolerance keep intervening.
- Sūtras I.33-39 explain the ways to make that stability permanent (I.35), which is the same as purifying the mind and making it pleasant (*chitta-prasādana*) in the current sūtra.

The way to purify the mind, to make it pleasant and permanently stable, so that one-pointedness of *samprajñāta* may become the yogi's natural state, is to impede and counteract the force of the undesirable and destructive sentiments by cultivating, imprinting upon the mind, developing, the *bhāvanā* of the positive sentiments described in this sūtra. The practices spoken of in Sūtras I.33-39 are in general called *pari-karman* or *pari-karma* (ways of adorning, polishing, preparing, training the mind). The primary four *parikarmas* are stated in this sūtra. The Buddhist tradition also refers to them as *parikarmas* or *brahma-vihāra* (frolicking in Brahman). *Parikarman* is actually a supportive act in any science (BR). It is also like polishing, seasoning, giving a final protective or enhancing touch that prevents deterioration.

This purification of mind means abolishing the dark stains and taints (BG, NB) such as attachments and aversions (*rāga* and *dveṣha*) (BG, BN); transgressions, evil acts, sin (*pāpa*) (BG, NB, SS); meritorious acts, virtue (*pūṇya*) (SS); jealousy (*irṣhyā*) (NB); malice (*asūyā*) (NB); and intolerance (*amarṣha*) (NB).

The dichotomies of attachments and aversions, virtue and sin, stain the mind (SS). Attachments and aversions are the primary agents of sulllying the mind (BR). If these two can be eradicated, then the mind becomes pleasant and consequently one-pointed (BR). The antidotes to these sulllying sentiments are the four right attitudes described in this sūtra.

The sūtra provides therapeutic prescriptions, antidotes, for the poisons of negative sentiments. In following these prescriptions one learns to replace rajasic and tamasic vṛttis with sattvic ones, starting with *maitrī*, known in Buddhism as *mettā* in the Pāli language. *Maitrī* is *sauhārda* (VM, VB, BR, NB, AD, NT, BM), *eucardia* or goodheartedness, amity, friendship. It is not affection, because affection binds (BM) instead of freeing an individual. This becomes clear when one understands jealousy (*irṣhyā*) (VM, HA, BR, NT, NBB, BM) and other sentiments such as the inability to acknowledge others' good qualities (*asūyā*) (i.e., being fault-finding) and small-mindedness in general (*mātsarya*). These various maladies have been included by different commentators. Jealousy (*irṣhyā*) is closely coupled with attachment (*rāga*). *Rāga* is not merely an attachment to something specific but a certain general tendency of the mind which gives rise to specific attachments. One broods upon pleasures one has experienced in dreams or has heard of or seen elsewhere. But when the tangible or the intangible means of fulfilling the desire for the objects of attachment are not available, this rajasic vṛtti or *rāga* darkens the mind (SS). To ward off this vṛtti one cultivates the sentiment of friendship even towards malevolent beings who are enjoying comfort and happiness. Let one be happy at their happiness as though they were all one's friends (HA). Let one think that all these beings and people are one's own (SS). As their happiness thus becomes one's own the darkness of *rāga* vanishes (SS), and all the other attendant weaknesses listed above also drop off.

*Karunā*, compassion, is the desire to remove the pain of others as if it were one's own (VM, BM), with the constant thought as to how their pain may be reduced or removed (BR, BM). This must be an unconditional sentiment (VB, BG, NB, NBB) towards friend or foe (HA). This prevents the desire to hurt others (BM) and the pride that develops at seeing oneself comfortable while others are in suffering (SS). When fully cultivated, this virtue of compassion wards off hatred (*dveṣha*) (SS).

One should cultivate joyfulness at seeing others virtuous, consenting to and rejoicing at their virtue (BM). Whether they are one's equals or unequals in virtue, one should always be happy at

seeing, hearing or remembering the good deeds performed by them (HA) and not belittle their goodness (BR). Beings often incline towards evil and away from good. Then this conflict of good and evil causes *paśchāt-tāpa*. *Paśchāt-tāpa* is a very common term in Indian teachings of ethics. Literally, it means “afterwards (*paśchāt*) burning (*tāpa*).” This “burning” within oneself “after” the fact of an evil deed is very desirable if it leads to a redemption in the future. It is a defeatist guilt feeling if it does not lead to the vow of self-purification. When one rejoices at the good acts of others, the imprint created on the mind leads to purification and enhances one’s own inclination towards virtue. This gladness saves one from tendencies to commit evil, and also serves as an antidote to the internal burning of *paśchāt-tāpa*.

Towards the nonvirtuous, those who are not one’s equals (HA), one cultivates *upekṣhā* or indifference, that is, a sense of neutrality (*audāśinya*) (VB, BR, BG, NB, NBB), which is the middle way (VB, RY, BM), so that one neither consents to their acts nor feels hatred or condemnation (BR, BM, HA). This serves as an antidote to intolerance (*amarṣha*) (VM, NT, BM). One cultivating indifference towards the nonvirtuous himself turns away from evil and, again, frees himself from burning in *paśchāt-tāpa*.

Thus the sattvic vṛttis replace rajasic and tamasic ones. Without cultivating these four *parikarmas* of amity, compassion, gladness and indifference, the five *upāyas* mentioned in Sūtra I.20 do not stabilise (VM) and the practitioner continues to totter. Vyāsa says:

As one cultivates himself thus, his white nature increases, grows. Then the mind is purified and becomes pleasant. Purified and pleasant, it attains the state of one-pointed stability.

Cultivating these attributes, one develops a fresh mental personality in which one’s “white nature” has gathered strength, *upa-jan* ‘increased, grown’. This sentence of Vyāsa’s will be more clearly understood with reference to Sūtra IV.7:

The action, karma, of a yogi is non-white and non-black; of others, however, it is of three kinds.

On that sūtra, Vyāsa explains:

The species called karma is four-footed. (Karma may be) black, white and black, white, or neither white nor black. The black one is of the wicked. The white and black is effected through external means so that the domain of karma is strengthened by hurting and helping others. The white belongs to those who practise ascetic endeavour (*tapas*), *japa* and self-study (*svādhyāya*) and meditation (*dhyāna*). This extends in the mind alone and because it is not dependent on any externals, it is accomplished without hurting others. The neither white nor black belongs to the renunciates. . .

A person who needs to cultivate the *parikarmas*, the attributes of amity and so forth, is not yet a full yogi or renunciate. There is yet in him a conflict between black and white. By cultivating these attitudes, he reduces the strength of the black sentiments which impede his progress and he strengthens the white characteristics of a meditator, the habits of *tapas*, *svādhyāya*, and *dhyāna*. He is yet at the seventh *āṅga* (See YS II.29) and has not reached yoga, that is, samādhi. By constant practice of the four *parikarmas* he becomes pleasant-minded so that ugly thoughts of jealousy, hatred, intolerance, etc. no longer arise in his life or in his meditation. This then leads to firming up, sealing, the stability of his mind. Only then does his mind cease to be distracted (*vikṣipta*) and attain to one-pointedness (*ekāgra*) that abides undisturbed and uninterrupted. Such a one-pointed mind enters samādhi.

Sūtra III.23 gives the effects (*siddhis*) that accrue from the practice of these *brahmā-vihāras*. A distinction is made, however, between the first three that do lead to samādhi and the fourth one, indifference (*upekṣhā*), which is neutral with regard to attainment of samādhi since it is not a positive cultivation of any given concentration or attitude.

**Sūtra I.34****प्रच्छर्दनविधारणाभ्यां वा प्राणस्य।****prachchhardana-vidhāraṇābhyaṁ vā prāṇasya***prachchhardana-:* (by) expulsion, exhalation*vidhāraṇābhyaṁ:* and restraint, control*vā:* or*prāṇasya:* of *prāṇa*

**Or, by exhalation and restraint of breath and *prāṇa* (mind's stability is established).**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

A careful expulsion of the visceral air through the nostrils is *prachchhardana*. *Vidhāraṇa* is the expansion of breath and *prāṇa* (*prāṇa* + *āyama*). Also through these one should effect stability of the mind.

### Discussion

Now that the mind has been purified, pacified and made pleasant, naturally the next step is to affirm its stability (RY). In most commentaries and translations the word *vā* is indicated to mean the optional "or," which would imply that the practice of breath control is an alternative to the four *parikarmas* prescribed in the last sūtra. The commentators are agreed that this would not be true to the intent of the sūtra. They are, therefore, of the opinion that this sūtra does not take the *anuvṛtti* of *chitta-prasādanam* from the preceding sūtra, and that this is a case of *anuvṛtti* in reverse, drawing here the words *sthiti-nibandhani* from the next sūtra (VB, BM), so that this sūtra begins the topic of firming up the stability of the mind, with *vā* expressing an optional method for effecting the same. These methods are described in Sūtras 34-39. This is definitely Vyāsa's opinion. The option expressed by *vā*, therefore, is not meant as an alternative to the four *parikarmas*; they must be practised for the purification of mind as per Sūtra 33 (RY, BM) even as one embarks on effecting the mind's stability, as per Sūtras 34-39. It was explained in the last sūtra that without

mental purity and pleasantness, *chitta-prasādana* (Sūtra I.33), it is not possible to effect stability of the mind, *sthiti-nibandhana* (Sūtras I.34-39), which alone leads to the one-pointed (*ekāgra*) state so that *samprajñāta samādhi* may ensue. VB, BG, and NB contradict Vyāsa in thinking that the *prāṇāyāma* prescribed here first leads to *prasādana* and then to *nibandhana*. However, these and other commentators agree in stating that *chitta-prasādana* is the essential prerequisite to any attempt at or method for *sthiti-nibandhana* (NB, RY, BM).

The next issue needing clarification is the subject of *prāṇāyāma* being introduced in this sūtra. Many commentators are confused as to why *prāṇāyāma* is prescribed here when it is also discussed in greater detail in Sūtras II.49-53. Since the sūtra system requires the utmost economy of words, it is not the custom of the sages to indulge in repetition. It is clear then that what is prescribed here will not be repeated in later sūtras describing *prāṇāyāma*.

In this context special attention needs to be paid to the unusual terms *prachchhardana* and *vidhāraṇa* used in this sūtra. These terms are not commonly found in the texts and passages on *prāṇāyāma* and are most probably expressive of some method not included in Sūtras II.49-53. The commentators who have failed to notice this (VB, BR, NT, BG, NB et al.) have interpreted *prachchhardana* as the familiar exhalation of visceral air. Similarly, *vidhāraṇa* is interpreted by them as the ordinary retention (*kumbhaka*). In other words they have tried to read in this sūtra the same *rechaka*, *pūraka* and *kumbhaka prāṇāyāmas* described elsewhere. Others (BR, NT) see in *prachchhardana* a measured breathing pattern, even to the ratio (SS) of 16:32:64, performing perhaps the *nāḍi-śodhana prāṇāyāma* using one nostril at a time (VB, NT, SS), while others see *vidhāraṇa* as retention of exhaled breath outside (NT) or after inhalation (VB, BR, BG, NB, NBB). Clearly, these commentators are reading here the techniques they know of. Only two commentators (VM, BM) seem to have an idea of the simple and effective technique that is actually meant to be conveyed. VM (echoed by BM) says:

*Prachchhardana* is explained: it is whereby the visceral air is slowly exhaled through the nostrils with a particular care, effort and method (*prayatna*) as taught in the yoga science (*yogaśāstra*). . . . *Vidhāraṇa* is stretching or expanding (*āyama*) of the visceral air, that is, maintaining it outside, and not a quick or sudden (*sahasā*) intake.

The technique is similar to what is known among the Buddhists as *ānāpāna-sati*, or among the Himalayan yogis as breath awareness. It involves a slow exhalation and inhalation and training oneself not to allow a sudden, quick and jerky inhalation. The slow exhalation is *prachchhardana*, and the careful, slow inhalation is *vidhāraṇa*. The term *vidhāraṇa* not only means controlling the flow of breath but also suggests the sixth *arīga* of yoga, called *dhāraṇā* (mental attention). The mind should be attentive to the flow of breath and observe it as is taught in the Himalayan tradition as well as throughout the Buddhist world. The verb root meaning of *vidhāraṇa*, “to hold or restrain,” here does not indicate the well-known practice of retention of breath but refers to holding a steady flow, restraining it to prevent the sudden and jerky intake that often occurs. This practice is the antidote to *śhvāsa* and *prāśhvāsa*, uncontrolled inhalation and exhalation, which are two of the correlates of the *vikṣhepas* (YS I.31).<sup>31</sup> To anyone experienced in this type of practice the term “visceral air” (*kauṣṭhyavāyu*) suggests the diaphragmatic breathing which is the fundamental method of breathing in all yoga practice.

The personality and the body (VM and BM) become lighter by such practices, and then the mind naturally gains steadiness and stability. In the entire yoga system there is no other breathing practice equal to this. All other practices are variations on this one. Only if this is mastered can the rest be undertaken. It may be done with *japa* of the mantra and with mind concentration directed to any one spot or a *chakra*.

31 It is worth observing that where the lack of breath control is described as a symptom of mental distraction (*vikṣhepa*) the words used for inhalation and exhalation are *śhvāsa* and *prāśhvāsa* expressive only of the physical aspects of breath. In this sūtra, where concentration and awareness are emphasized, the word used is *prāna*.

Since the entire tradition states that *prāṇāyāma* is the best way to burn dross from the mind and cleanse it of stains, strains, sin and evil (*pāpa*), it is consistent that with this practice the mind should become stabilised (NTB). The *Lawbook of Manu* (V.72) states:

As the impurities of minerals are burnt off by being smelted,  
so the corruptions of the senses are burnt through  
control of breath and *prāṇa*.

One should burn the impurities by the *prāṇāyāmas*,  
the sins by the practices of *dhāraṇā*,  
by *pratyāhāra* the attractions of senses, and  
by meditation the ungodly attributes.

**NB quotes from an unknown source:**

The *prāṇas* are the force of the senses; by controlling them with effort the heaps of impurities of the senses that are the causes of distractions (*vikṣhepas*) are burnt.

All the operations of the senses are dependent on the operations of *prāṇa*; therefore the control of breath and *prāṇa* calms the senses.

Because the activities of the mind and *prāṇa* are intertwined, when the *prāṇa* is made lighter and subtler, the senses are controlled and finally the mind-field becomes one-pointed (BR). SS quotes the *Yoga-vāsiṣṭha*:

That which is the vibration of the *prāṇa* and air is the same as the vibration of the mind-field. Therefore a wise man should make great effort towards the diminution of the vibration of *prāṇa*.

“Diminution” here assuredly means making the *prāṇa* vibration subtler by refining the breath. This is the intent of the sūtra. The topic of effecting the mind’s stability continues in the forthcoming sūtras.

**Sūtra I.35**

**विषयवती वा प्रवृत्तिरूपश्च मनसः स्थिति-  
निबन्धनी।**

**viṣhayavatī vā pravṛttir utpannā manasah  
sthiti-nibandhanī**

*viṣhayavati:* having sense objects, having sense experiences  
*vā:* or, also

*pravṛtти:* inclination, manifestation, direct perception,  
 apprehension

*utpannā:* born, appeared, occurred, become manifest, an advent  
 having taken place

*manasah:* mind's

*sthiti-:* (of) stability, steadiness

*ni-bandhani:* that which binds, fastens, firmly establishes, seals

**The advent of direct perception of the experiences of subtle or celestial sense objects is called *viṣhayavatī pravṛtti*, which also firmly establishes the stability of the mind.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The apprehension of celestial fragrance that occurs when one holds the mind at the front point of the nostrils is called the manifestation of smell, *gandha-pravṛtti*. The apprehension of taste occurs at the tip of the tongue, the apprehension of form at the palate, the apprehension of touch at the mid-tongue and the apprehension of sound at the root of the tongue. It is thus that the occurrence of these manifestations fastens the mind-field into stability, blows away doubt and becomes the gateway to the wisdom of samādhi. By these examples one should consider included the manifestation that occurs (through concentration) on the moon, the sun, planets, jewels, a candle, rays and so forth.

Even though it is true that the fact of the matter comprehended from the texts of particular sciences, inferential processes and the teachings of the āchāryas indeed becomes real because they expound the matter exactly as it is, yet, so long as at least some one part is not experienced directly with one's own instrumentation, everything is invisible and as though absent. That fails to produce

a firm belief in the subtle facts such as the *summum bonum* (*apavarga*). Therefore, in order to reinforce (the conclusions drawn from) the Scripture, inference and the teachings of the āchāryas, it is necessary that something specific be experienced directly. In that, when a fact which is one part of the teachings of those has become the subject of direct experience, then the very subtle matter all the way up to the final liberation (*apavarga*) is easily accepted on faith.

It is for such purpose that this refining (*parikarman*) of the mind-field is directed, so that when there has occurred what is defined as total mastery (*vaśikāra*) with regard to the indeterminate fluctuations, vṛttis and their objects, the mind-field should become fit for and capable of the direct experience of the given matter.

And when this has happened for one, the faith (*śraddhā*), vigour (*vīrya*), mindfulness (*smṛti*) and harmony (*samādhi*) will develop for him without an obstruction.

### Discussion

Vyāsa's commentary on this sūtra is very clear and requires little elaboration. This sūtra explains that the experiences of (a) the individual subtle body and (b) its universal extension, the celestial world, consist of the realization of the subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) well known to students of the Sāṅkhyā-yoga philosophical system. Even though the detailed methods are to be taught in Chapter 3, a glimpse is given here. By way of an illustration, concentration on various parts helps gain entry into different powers of the subtle body and the celestial world, resulting in certain extrasensory perceptions. These may be listed as follows:

- where the center base, the septum, of the nose joins the upper lip: celestial smell
- at the tip of the tongue: celestial tastes
- in the palate: celestial forms and visions
- at the mid-point of the tongue: celestial touch
- at the root of the tongue: celestial sounds

Other experiences occur when one concentrates on the moon, the sun, planets, gems, a candle flame, rays and so on. Even though all translators translate *nāsāgra* as the tip of the nose, I follow the practical instructions given by my master and translate the phrase as the spot where the center of the nose just ends and the upper lip begins.

We concur with HA(E) concerning the rationale for these practices and quote him:

The optic nerve is situated above the palate. On the tongue the sense of touch is most developed. The root of the tongue is closely related to the ear for purposes of articulation. Therefore, concentration on these points develops a finer power of perception of the sense organs.

Through these practices, which must be undertaken for a long period of time with perfect intensity, one becomes master of the specific elements within the subtle body (*viśheśhas*), for which see Sūtra II.19.

The word *pravṛtti* has many meanings. Here it is used in the sense of *pra-vṛtti*, an intense *vṛtti* of the mind-field, one that remains in concentration, unlike those which appear and disappear fleetingly. The word *pravṛtti* also means “a natural urge, inclination or tendency.” In the context of this sūtra and the next, when such a concentration is so fully mastered that the intense *vṛtti* and the attendant inner experience manifest effortlessly and become a natural inclination, then it is called a *pravṛtti*. Perfecting any such concentration finally changes the mind’s habit of wandering, and then the mind can easily be applied to a higher and more worthwhile pursuit. In other words the experiences are only a by-product of the concentrations; the actual purpose is to train the mind, to habituate it to stability.

The use of the word *karana* is significant. *Sva-karana-samvedya* has been translated as

experienced directly with one’s own instrumentation.

*Karanas* are senses, including the *antah-karana* (the inner mental instrument). In practices of this nature it is the subtle senses and

their subtle objects such as the internal faculty of smell, etc. that are brought under control of the mind. The instrumentation for the entire process of concentrations is meant here by the word *karaṇa*.

For the mind to be able to experience and withstand the explosion of power that occurs and to be able to direct and channel it after such experiences, it is essential that the mind be made *samartha* 'strong and capable', the term used by Vyāsa. This means that the mind's power of concentration must be intensified and its capacity increased. Its *sāmarthyā*, increased capacity, shows itself in the yogi's daily life and acts, as well as in the duration, depth and intensity of concentration.

Vyāsa says that success in such concentrations, which shows itself by way of the extrasensory experiences, then

- (1) fastens the mind-field into stability,
- (2) blows away doubt, and
- (3) becomes the gateway to the wisdom of samādhi.

The wisdom of samādhi is inherent in the term *prajñā* that occurs as part of the word *saṃ-prajñā-ta*, which was explained in Sūtra I.17. In other words, these experiences indicate the lower states of *saṃprajñāta* samādhi. The beginning of this wisdom is in the *upāyas* of Sūtra I.20 and the culmination is in the Truth-bearing wisdom of Sūtra I.48, which will be elucidated there.

Are these experiences not detrimental to spiritual awakening, as will be stated in *YS* III.37? Vyāsa implies that they could be detrimental if one had no higher goal. On the other hand, they can be supportive of the higher goal. When, from sources such as

- (a) texts and scriptures,
- (b) one's own rational analysis, and
- (c) the teachings of the sages and teachers,

one has learned of that higher goal called *apavarga* 'deliverance, the Supreme Good', there nonetheless yet lingers a doubt about the reality of any existence subtler than that of the gross physical elements which are the objects of our daily, direct experience,

*pratyakṣha*. That *pratyakṣha* proof, defined in Sūtra I.7, therefore needs to be extended and expanded to the *yogi-pratyakṣha*, the direct experience of the subtler world. This is only a small part of the teaching; but when one experiences this directly with one's own instrumentation, it reinforces the faith that what one has inferentially arrived at and what the texts and the teachers have propounded is indeed true. It strengthens one's resolve to proceed to the greater inner reality which one has not yet experienced.

As stated under Sūtras I.15, 16 and 17 and further insisted upon in Sūtra I.40, at each step of the subtle and yet subtler realizations one finds them to be short of the ultimate spirituality, full of the faults of impermanence and of a painful nature. So one develops dispassion (*vairāgya*) towards them until the fourth order of *vairāgya*, called the final mastery (*vaśikāra*), is reached. As this wisdom (*prajñā*) develops in the mind that has been made to work at its most intense capacity (*sāmarthyā*), it removes obstacles from the way of the other four *upāyas* known as *śraddhā*, *vīrya*, *smṛti* and *samādhi*, which were defined in detail in Sūtra I.20.

This sūtra has described the second method for effecting stability of that mind which has already been brought to *prasādana*, the pure and pleasant state explained in Sūtra I.33.

Sūtra I.36

विशोका वा ज्योतिष्मती।

viśhokā vā jyotiṣhmatī

*viśhokā*: free of grief or suffering*vā*: or*jyotiṣhmatī*: luminous, full of light (of sattva), lucid

**Or, the natural mental state that becomes manifest as free of grief is called lucid and effects the stability of the mind.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

This natural mental state (*pravṛtti*) having arisen, “effects the mind’s stability”—this thought is brought forward from the preceding sūtra. As one practises concentration (*dhāraṇā*) in the heart lotus, the apprehension of buddhi there is such that the sattva of buddhi is luminous and clear like the sky. By mastering the steadiness there, the manifestations alternate as the appearances of the light of the sun, the moon, planets or gems.

Similarly, the mind-field that has reached accomplishment (*sāmāpatti*) in *asmitā* becomes pacific and infinite like a great ocean without any waves and is identified only as “I am.” Concerning that, it is said, “Having found that self who is minute like an atom, one realizes himself only as ‘I am.’”

This *viśhokā* (without grief) is twofold: one relating to objects (*viśhayavatī*); and the other only as I-am-ness (*asmitā-mātrā*). This manifest, natural state (*pravṛtti*) is called the luminous one (*jyotiṣhmatī*), by which the yogi’s mind reaches the state of stability.

### Discussion

In the heart center there is an eight-petaled lotus turned downwards. Concentration on exhalation, when the *prāṇa* is made to flow through the *kundalini* slowly, makes the lotus turn upwards. Then the state called *viśhoka jyotiṣhmatī* ‘the one without grief, and luminous’ manifests itself (VM, VB, BM, RY, SS, NTC, NTB). The advent of such a *pravṛtti* (as this word was defined in the

previous sūtra) effects the stability of the mind. The thought “effects the stability of the mind” (*sthiti-nibandhanī*) is brought forward by way of an *anuvṛtti* from the last sūtra.

The *suṣumnā* stream connects the heart center to the internal solar region and so forth, as well as to all the external lights such as the sun. Concentration (*dhāraṇā*) (as defined in *YS III.1*) practised in the heart center connects this center to the regions of inner lights (VB, VB, BM) whereby the yogi experiences his own faculty of intelligence and wisdom (buddhi) and grasps its sattva. It is the light of the sattva of buddhi that manifests itself within (BR, AD). This light of the sattva of buddhi shows itself in many alternative luminous forms, rays and radiances such as the sun, the moon, planets, gems and so forth. These luminosities shine brilliantly within the expansive space (*ākāsha*) of buddhi. That is, the buddhi is experienced like a clear, illuminated sky or space (VM, VB). It is not broken apart or cluttered by any other object nor surrounded by a delimiting horizon (HA); and it is within this clear expanse that the various radiant manifestations are experienced. This expansiveness of buddhi is experienced because here the individual buddhi has broken its barriers and the universal buddhi is realized as all-pervading (*vibhu*) (VB). Then all directions are unified and the buddhi cannot be divided into numerous parts (HA).

Even though the buddhi itself is being experienced as a single expanse of sattva, it still contains alternative radiances, luminosities, that appear and disappear. Hence this *pravṛtti* is called *viśhayavatī*, “having objects of experience.” This *viśhayavatī* is not to be confused with the lower *viśhayavatī* of the last sūtra, which operates within the realm of subtle senses, subtle elements and their corresponding or derivative objects. The *viśhayavatī* of this sūtra has only the internal objects (*viśhayas*), which are constituted of the light of sattva.

The next stage of this *pravṛtti* is called *asmutā-mātrā* ‘only the awareness, “I am”’. Here the yogi experiences the inward face of buddhi and its universal counterpart, mahat, in which the reflection of puruṣha is seen (as explained in Sūtras I.8, I.17 and II.6). Here not even the diversity and manifoldness of the lights continue.

Because puruṣha is like an infinite, undisturbed ocean, the inward face of buddhi as *asmitā* receiving its reflection appears like an infinite ocean, calm and without waves. The experience of this reflection of puruṣha is both expansive like the ocean and minute like an atomic particle. (The expansive aspect will be discussed further in Sūtra II.19.) Here Vyāsa quotes from Āchārya Pañchaśikha:

“Having found that self who is minute like an atom, one realizes himself only as ‘I am.’”

There is no contradiction between the description of the self or of its reflection as both minute and expansive. It is repeatedly described as minute as, or in the Upaniṣads more minute than, an atomic particle. (For example, *Kaṭha Upaniṣhad* II.8, *Maitrī Upaniṣhad* VI.20, VI.38, VII.7, *Muṇḍaka Upaniṣhad* II.2.2, III.1.9, and *BhG* VIII.9.) But it is also described as great, expansive (*mahān*), as in the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣhad* IV.4.20,22, *Kaṭha Upaniṣhad* II.22 and so forth. Both ends of the great, subtle force are brought together by stating that it is

More minute than the atom, greater than the great.

*Kaṭha Upaniṣhad* II.20

The one more minute than whom there is none, nor is there one greater.

*Śvetāśhvatarā Upaniṣhad* III.9

It is noteworthy that the descriptions of the experience of ātman or puruṣha and of its reflection in *asmitā*—the mahat ātman or *mahān ātmā*—are very similar. It is as though one person were to describe the sky and another speak of its reflection in a pond. This sūtra, however, is concerned with the experience of *asmitā* alone.

Briefly again, the *pravṛtti* called *viśhoka jyotiṣhmati* ‘the one without grief, and luminous’ is experienced at two levels. First the yogi experiences it as *viśhayavatī*, where the lights and radiances like the sun, etc. are seen shining and alternating as though in a clear sky. Thereafter comes *asmitā-mātrā*, wherein the reflection of

puruṣha is subtler than the subtle and more vast than an ocean and yet without any waves, not even the alternation of lights appearing or disappearing but only a pacific, infinite span. The reason for its name, *jyotiṣhmaṭī* ‘the luminous or lucid one’, is obvious. It is called *viśhokā* because the mutation of rajas called *śhoka* (sorrow, grief, pain and suffering) ceases here (BR) as the process called restiveness (*chāñchalya*), by which rajas produces pain, stops (BG, NB). This causes sattva to become dominant, and the consequent, repeated pleasure in the mind-field (AD) and the illumination of wisdom that accompanies it (BR) cause the mind to become established in the habit of stability.

Sūtra I.37

वीतरागविषयं वा चित्तम्।

vīta-rāga-viṣhayam vā chittam

<i>vīta-:</i> devoid of	}	those from whose mind the attraction towards sense objects is gone
<i>rāga-:</i> attraction, attachment		
<i>viṣhayam:</i> sense objects		
<i>vā:</i> or		
<i>chittam:</i> mind-field		

Or, the mind-field having as its objects (of concentration) those (sages) who are free of attachments (becomes stabilised).

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The yogi's mind-field, coloured by and reflecting as support (*ālambana*) the mind-fields of those from whom all attraction for and attachment to sense objects is gone, attains the state of stability.

### Discussion

There is an apparent bringing together of two conflicting ideas in Vyāsa's phrase

*vīta-rāga-chitta-ālambana-uparaktam.*

Someone totally dispassionate and free of attractions and attachments is *vīta-rāga*. The word *rāga* is derived from the verb root *rañj*, meaning "to colour," as explained in Sūtra I.7. *Upa-raktam*, also from *rañj*, means "coloured by proximity." While on one hand one aspires to free oneself from all worldly *rāga*, it is advised here to let one's mind be drawn to those minds which have perfected *vairāgya* and to let the light of those minds reflect into one's own. One exposes one's mind to this process of becoming *upa-rakta* by the minds of the *vīta-rāga* saints because they will not permit an aspirant to become attached to them. Their love reflects into one's mind without forming a worldly kind of dependence and attachment.

Only one commentator (AD) has misunderstood this sūtra to

mean that a mind from which the attraction to sense objects has gone becomes calm. This is indeed not the intent of the sūtra. *Vītarāgas* are those sages whose mind-fields have perfected *vairāgya*. They are part of that guru lineage which begins with Hiranya-garba. They are considered disembodied masters helping the aspirants. An aspirant practises the teachings of this sūtra in the following steps: (1) First he turns his mind to the lives, personalities and beings of these sages. (2) Then he concentrates on surrendering his mind to link up with theirs so that their *vīta-rāga* chittas, dispassionate mind-fields, become his *ālambanas*, supportive factors (see Sūtra I.17) or objects of concentration.

This is as far as the aspirant can go on his own. The guru then initiates the aspirant to link the aspirant's mind to his own and through himself to the mind-fields of the sages of the lineage. Then the minds of the sages descend into that of the aspirant, purify and still his mind, and he goes into involuntary meditation. All their knowledge descends into him and he slowly ascends to their higher consciousness. It is these sages of the lineage, such as Sanaka, Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana Vyāsa and so forth—and all the past Buddhas in the Buddhist tradition—to whom homage is paid by the disciple.

The deeper meaning of this sūtra cannot be understood by those not initiated into this tradition of linkage with the lineage.

**Sūtra I.38****स्वप्ननिद्राज्ञानालम्बनं वा।****svapna-nidrā-jñānālambanam vā***svapna-*: dream*nidrā-*: sleep*jñāna-*: knowledge, awareness, observation*ālambanam*: supportive factor, object of meditation*vā*: and, or, also

**Also, the mind-field whose object in meditation is the observation, awareness and knowledge of the dream or sleep state becomes stabilised.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The yogi's mind-field attains the state of stability when

- its object in meditation is the observation, awareness and knowledge of the dream state, or
- its object in meditation is the observation, awareness and knowledge of the sleep state,

and it is identified with the same.

### Discussion

The words in the sūtra are not simply *svapna-nidrā-ālambanam*, “resorting to dream or sleep state”; rather, the word *jñāna*, “knowledge,” is added. It is clear, therefore, that the mere experience of ordinary dream or sleep is not meant here. But the intent of the word *jñāna* needs to be understood. In the opinion of some (RY, BM, NTB, NTC), the word “knowledge” here means the objects of knowledge (*jñeyā*). Since there can be no knowledge without an object of knowledge, both the knowledge and the object thereof are to be included (VM). Therefore the dream experience implies some of the dream objects which may be used as supportive factors or objects of meditation (*ālambanas*). Such an object should be attractive to the mind and approved by texts and traditions (SS).

In particular, if one sees the deity in a dream and then wakes up, he should immediately fix his mind on that image and meditate on it (RY, BM, NT). Vāchaspati puts it in accordance with the bhakti tradition of the Purāṇas:

When one wakes—  
 having in dream worshipped the image of the great Lord,  
 so attractive that it drew the mind,  
 adorned with garlands of the most fragrant jasmines,  
 made of the most virtuous moonstone,  
 as though sculpted from the moon itself,  
 with all the limbs so gentle and tender  
 as though imitating a lotus stalk,  
 dwelling in the solitude of a pleasant grove—  
 when one wakes up from such a dream with a pleasant mind,  
 then contemplating the same image, his mind-field  
 becomes totally absorbed in it,  
 becomes one with it and attains the state of stability.

It is known that such dreams occur

- (in rare cases) when a devotee's mind projects an image it has longed for and makes it real in the dream, or
- (in even rarer cases) when the deity presents itself to the devotee
  - to draw him to worship, or
  - to respond to his prayers

Such dreams may, of course, also be symptoms of a disturbed mind, but that is not a consideration here. The *Yoga-sūtras* deal only with minds which have embarked on the path to stillness and not those in the *kṣipta* or *mūḍha* categories (YS I.1). Hence Vāchaspati clarifies:

When one wakes up . . . with a pleasant mind (*prasanna-mañāḥ*).

The word *prasanna* has a special sense in yoga,<sup>32</sup> which does not apply in psychopathological cases. Such dreams of one with a

<sup>32</sup> See *prasāda-guna* (Sūtra I 2, p 102), *prasāda* (Sūtra I 16, pp 212 and 215) and *prasādana* (Sūtra I 33, p 340)

pleasant mind are considered in all spiritual traditions to be either (a) the mind's genuine response to its own longing for God or (b) a vision conferred by God in response to the devotee's longing. It is, however, the consensus of all commentators that indiscriminate experience of all kinds of dreams is not meant here but only those whose images are conducive to the mind's stability.

As to concentration on sleep, it is suggested that one should fix the mind on the pleasure that occurs in sleep (RY, NTB, SS) and that, remembering, one should contemplate that pleasure (NTC). The sleep, however, must be that sattvic one waking from which one makes the observation, "I slept pleasantly," (VM, BM) as explained in Sūtra I.10. It is also a matter of experience that such a sleep is a good preparation for meditation by rendering the mind light and alert. The sattva of such a sleep lingers on in the mind when one wakes up and meditation after such a sleep is very refined and pure. One should let the mind become filled with the sattvic impression created by such dream or sleep (NTC); preferably one should contemplate it and get into meditation immediately after the experience of such dream or sleep.

The commentators (VB, BG, NB) who are more biased towards a Vedāntic interpretation of the *Yoga-sūtras* follow the themes provided in the *Māṇḍūkya-kārikās* and the *Yoga-vāsiṣṭha*. According to this philosophy one views the ordinary wakeful world as the cosmic dream. The entire worldly existence is a sleep in which the pure self has forgotten itself. As one develops dispassion (*vairāgya*) towards it, the mind attains stability.

All of the above interpretations are accurate but incomplete without the special practices prescribed to the initiate in the experiential tradition. Here one learns to observe one's own dream and sleep states. First one learns to observe the dreams, then he learns to monitor, modulate and direct them. Finally as the unconscious mind, whose samskāras produce dreams, is purified, and a full understanding and mastery of the sleep state is established, the habit of dreaming is altogether eliminated. It is thus that the observation, awareness and knowledge of the dream state stabilises the mind.

Training for mastery of the sleep state also follows several steps. Philosophically, one views the experience of personal sleep as part of the cosmic sleep of tamas, which has befallen consciousness. Knowing, however, that the pure self is ever-awake (*nitya-buddha*) and that only a small part of the mind actually sleeps (*Sūtra I.10*), one learns to observe the sleep process by dwelling in the light of the pure self and by resorting to the higher mind, which observes the lower, sleeping mind. Thus one learns to enter *yoga-nidrā*, conscious sleep. When the mind becomes absorbed in this experience of consciousness, the true knowledge of sleep thus becomes the object of meditation. The mind then becomes established in stability.

**Sūtra I.39****यथाभिमतध्यानाद् वा।****yathābhimata-dhyānād vā***yathā-*: as*abhimata-*: agreeable, desired, favourite, object of choice*dhyānāt*: by meditation*vā*: or, and, also

**Also through meditation in whatever way or on whatever object agreeable the mind-field attains stability.**

### **Vyāsa's Commentary**

Let one meditate on whatever is agreeable. (The mind-field) attaining stability there becomes stabilised on whatever else, too.

### **Discussion**

Different individuals have varying inclinations; likewise the yogi also feels reverent faith (*śhraddhā*) towards different entities. By meditating on these he may attain desired perfection (BR). These objects of one's meditation can be many—such as various deities and divine incarnations (VB, VM, BG, NB, BM, RY, SS, NT), or external objects (AD) such as the moon (BR), or internal ones such as the network of channels (*nādis*) (BR) of nerves and the *kundalini* flow. These objects should be those approved of in the texts and traditions (SS) and not something licentious like nude women, etc., (RS) such as some people imagine.

While all the other commentators are very brief on this sūtra, NTC fills many pages and provides an exhaustive list of the possible internal objects or points of meditation. Gradually the external objects must be replaced by the corresponding internal ones. For example, if one is inclined to make pilgrimages to sacred places, let him give way to that inclination; but then the practice should help him to discover that all sacred places of pilgrimage are within oneself. NTC has given a complete map of consciousness (such as the *chakras*, nerve channels and energy channels, which he identifies with various sacred rivers and holy cities and temples). *Yantras*,

visual concentrations for each *chakra*, are given, following the norms of the tantric tradition. He also lists the points on which concentrations called *nyāsa* are performed; these concentrations require one-letter mantras contemplated into particular points of the body. The loci of various deities within the personality are indicated.

The correspondence of the *tattvas* (the five gross elements) with the states of breath is explained by NTC in accordance with the *svara* science. The secrets of the *hamsa*-mantra (*soham*) are abridged from the *Hamsa Upanishad*. Various ways of contemplation and concentration on all these objects of meditation are also suggested. All these are not being elaborated here, because each individual needs to learn the method appropriate to his personality from a qualified guide only. The selection is made on two grounds:

1. On the basis of a person's natural inclinations, which are of two kinds:

*a.* The ordinary objects of attraction and experience in life. If one is unable to practise restraint and turn the mind away from a particular object, let him enter into total one-pointed concentration on it. For example if one loves delicious foods, let him so concentrate on the experience of the taste buds that a minute amount of food produces great ecstasy. Gradually one will thereby establish mastery over the object of attraction and will no longer be enslaved by it.

The habit of concentration thus formed can be applied to other meditations.

*b.* The objects of one's faith (deities, incarnations and so forth). One may concentrate on these and the success in such concentration, again, can be applied to other meditations.

2. On the basis of the fact that a meditator's mind is often drawn towards certain points (such as the heart center) or certain sensations and experiences (such as of light). When the experience becomes persistent and consistent, one should respond to it and let the mind become absorbed in it.

Sūtras I.35-39 list the various ways of stabilising the mind on objects of meditation. In addition, Sūtras I.33-39 give the *chitta-parikarmas*, the ways of adorning, refining, purifying, preparing, the mind through diligent practice (*abhyāsa*). By so doing, the mind may reach the perfection of stability and of *vairāgya* (to be defined in the next sūtra) so as to be readied for the attainments of samādhi (to be explained in Sūtra I.41).

**Sūtra I.40**

परमाणुपरममहत्त्वान्तोऽस्य वशीकारः।

**paramāṇu-parama-mahattvānto'sya vaśikāraḥ**

*parama-anu-:* (from) minutest atom

*parama-:* (up to) ultimate

*mahattva-:* greatness, magnitude

*antah:* ending in, extending up to

*asya:* of this one

*vaśikāraḥ:* power, mastery, control

**This yogi's mastery and control is established over (the subtlest, starting from) the minutest atom and extending up to the ultimate magnitude.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

As he enters into the subtle, his mind-field attains the state of stability at every level, all the way up to the minutest atom. As he enters into the large, the mind-field's level of stability reaches the ultimate greatness. Thus, his remaining unhindered as he pursues both ends is what is called the highest mastery (*vaśikāra*). The yogi's mind-field, brought to all-round perfection through such mastery, no longer requires the preparation (*parikarma*) that is produced through practice (*abhyāsa*).

### Discussion

The preparations and purifications of the mind-field (*chitta-parikarmas*) through various practices (*abhyāsas*) have been described in the previous sūtras. This sūtra states their final result, the total mastery and control (*vaśikāra*), which we shall explain below.

There are two kinds of concentrations in yoga: those on the subtle and those on the expansive. Concentrations on subtle objects lead to the experience of the minutest entity. For example, if one concentrates on a flame or a white circle, gradually the area of concentration should be narrowed until only the minutest spark remains in the mind. Conversely, to expand the mind one may send the thought as though the mind is spreading out to touch all

the possible dimensions, up to infinite space. On all these paths the mind encounters many obstacles, and consequently it wavers. Gradually the *parikarmas* help it to settle down, until all obstacles are overcome. The mind-field grasps the ultimate in the subtle and the minute as well as in the most expansive, not one or the other at a time (*ekatara koṣī*) but *ubhayāṁ koṣim* (both simultaneously), or at any level of the yogi's choice in either direction. When the mind becomes thus settled, it no longer encounters even physical obstructions such as hunger and thirst (NTC) as interruptions of samādhi. Wherever the yogi chooses, his mind remains settled indefinitely. This *vaśikāra* is not to be confused with the highest of the four states of *apara vairāgya*, explained in Sūtra I.15. This is no mere dispassion but, in Vyāsa's words, *para vaśikāra*, "supreme mastery." As this mastery is established over the mind, the objects of concentration also come under the yogi's total control.

There are disagreements among commentators as to the intent of the word *mahattva*, which in ordinary Sanskrit simply means "greatness." Contrasted with the subtlest and the minutest, it becomes "the largest" or "the most expansive." In the view of some commentators, this "most expansive" is twofold: the internal and the external. The internal is the endless universal *asmitā*, and the external is the cosmos (HA).

In the view of others (BR, RY, AD), the expansive objects are those such as space (*ākāśha*). Whether one is speaking of the cosmic physical space or the internal space of consciousness (*chid-ākāśha*) is not specified. To BM the word *mahattva* has suggested *mahattattva* or *mahat*. *Mahat*, the first evolute of *prakṛti*, is indeed the most expansive of the material modes and is the substratum of *asmitā* in the samādhi experience. In the opinion of VB, NB, BG, and NTC the phrase *parama-mahattva* in this sūtra refers to the great beings of high accomplishment, *puruṣhas*, the great spirits in the universe whom NTC calls the *virāṭ-puruṣhas*, or "shining space-persons"—in other words the beings of deific attainments. All these meanings seem acceptable, each being the ultimate in its own dimension. The expansive objects may be divided into the following categories:

- Among the five physical elements, *tattvas*, the greatest is space (*ākāśha*).
- Among the evolutes of matter, mahat is the first and the most expansive.
- Among the objects of *samprajñāta samādhi*, *asmitā*, whose substratum is mahat, is the highest.
- In the entire inward journey one continues to gain greater access into the inner space of consciousness (*chid-ākāśha*) and finally rests in it.
- Those who are the greatest among the accomplished ones are the deific beings with whom one establishes contact, which finally becomes unhindered and permanent.

All of these are within the yogi's reach as his mind stabilises and reaches total mastery.

**Sūtra I.41**

क्षीणवृत्तेरभिजातस्येव मणेर्ग्रहीतृग्रहणग्राह्येषु  
तत्स्थतदञ्जनता समापत्तिः ।

**kṣhīṇa-vṛttēḥ abhijātasyeva maṇeḥ  
grahīṭ-grahāṇa-grāhyeṣhu tat-stha-tad-añjanatā  
samāpattiḥ**

*kṣhīṇa-vṛttēḥ*: of one whose vṛttis have subsided

*abhijātasya*: of pure-born

*iva*: like

*maṇeḥ*: of gem, crystal

*grahīṭ*: in, towards, the apprehender

*grahāṇa*-: process of apprehension, instrument of apprehension

*grāhyeṣhu*: apprehended objects

*tat-stha*-: becoming stable on them

*tad-añjanatā*: coalescence with them

*samāpattiḥ*: encounter, transmutation, coalescence, attainment of a state of consciousness, proficiency

**When one's modifications (vṛttis) have subsided, his (mind's) stability on and coalescence with the apprehender (grahīṭ), the process and instrumentation of apprehension (grahāṇa) and the objects of apprehension (grāhya), like pure crystal (which takes on the reflection and colour of proximate objects), is called *samāpatti*.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Now that one's mind-field has attained stability, what is the nature and the field of his proficiency, attainment and transmutation? It is explained:

[*Sūtra*] When one's modifications (vṛttis) have subsided, his (mind's) stability on and coalescence with the apprehender (grahīṭ), the process and instrumentation of apprehension (grahāṇa) and the objects of apprehension (grāhya), like pure crystal (which takes on the reflection and colour of proximate objects), is called *samāpatti*.

“When one’s modifications (*vṛttis*) have subsided” means “when one whose causal cognition (*pratyaya*) has set.” “Like pure crystal” proffers an analogy. As a crystal depending on a particular proximate object (*upāshraya*) becomes affected by its colour and appears to take on the form of that proximate object, so also the mind-field coloured by that object of apprehension (*grāhya*), which is its supportive factor (*ālambana*) in meditation, and transmuted into that very object, appears to take on the form of that *grāhya*. Similarly, when coloured by the subtle aspect of elements, it appears as the subtle element. Again, coloured by the gross *ālambana*, transmuted into that gross *ālambana*, it appears as the gross *ālambana*. Yet again, coloured by the diversities of the universe, and transmuted into those diversities, it appears in their form.

The same should be applied in the case of the senses, which are the instruments of apprehension (*grahaṇas*). The mind-field, coloured by the *grahaṇas*, which are its *ālambana*, appears in their form. Similarly, when coloured by that *puruṣha* who is the agent of apprehension (*grahītṛ*) and its *ālambana*, the mind becomes transmuted into such a *grahītṛ* (*puruṣha*) and appears to take on the nature of the same. Again, when it is coloured by the liberated *puruṣha* who is its *ālambana*, transmuted into that liberated *puruṣha*, it appears in the nature of that liberated *puruṣha*.

The mind is like a pure-born crystal. The *puruṣha*, the senses and the elements are respectively the agent, the instruments and the objects of apprehension (*grahītṛ*, *grahaṇa* and *grāhya*). The mind-field’s “stability on and coalescence with” them means that it remains concentrated on them and takes on their form. This is called proficiency, transmutation, coalescence and attainment of the given state of consciousness (*samāpatti*).

### Discussion

The methods for stabilising the mind have been presented (VM, BM, RY, SS), starting with *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya* (Sūtra I.12) and continuing through the *chitta-parikarmas* (Sūtras I.33-39). *Vaśikāra*, the indication of a stabilised mind (VM, BM, RY), also has been explained. The two levels of yoga, *samprajñāta* and *asamprajñāta samādhīs*, have been discussed in general (VB); now their

principal end-result will occupy the rest of Chapter 1 (BG). First to be explained are the field (*vishaya*) and nature of *samprajñāta* (VM) samādhi, the samādhi with seed (*sa-bija*) (VB, SS). When the mind-field has reached the one-pointed ground (*ekāgra bhūmi*), what is its nature and its field (HA)? Vyāsa says:

“When one’s modifications (vṛttis) have subsided” means “when one whose causal cognition (*pratyaya*) has set.”

The term “set” was explained in Sūtra I.18 as, “(All the vṛttis) have set like the sun into the very source from which they have arisen.” But that description referred to *asamprajñāta* samādhi, hence *all* the vṛttis. It was explained in Sūtra I.2 that that sūtra does not read “Yoga is the control of all vṛttis” because *all* vṛttis are controlled only in *asamprajñāta*, whereas *samprajñāta* is meant to be included in yoga. Since the current sūtra (I.41) deals with *samprajñāta*, Vyāsa here omits the word “all.” In other words, the clauses “modifications have subsided” and “causal cognition (*pratyaya*) has set” mean that vṛttis other than those of the object of concentration (*dhyeya*) have been brought under control (VB, BG, NB), because the *samāpatti* defined in this sūtra is also a vṛtti (NBB). The subsiding of vṛttis in this context is limited to the rajas and tamasic ones such as valid proofs (*pramāṇas*) (VM, RY, BD). For an explanation of *pratyaya* the reader is referred to Sūtra I.10.

Even though the mind-field has the full capacity to realize all matters, it fails to do so because of the intervention of other objects of thought (*vishayas*); only when such interruption is totally prevented through concentration does the full realization (*sākṣhāt-kāra*) of the objects of concentration (*dhyeya*) occur naturally (VB, NB, NBB). This is the true direct perception (*pratyakṣha*). Such a state of the mind-field occurs only in *samprajñāta* and not in the lower concentrations, where the totality of the object of concentration (*ālambana*) cannot be fully grasped (VB). *Samāpatti*, the proficiency, attainment and transmutation of the mind, is the wisdom (*prajñā*) thus gained as derived from *samprajñāta* (VB) and is technically defined in Sūtra I.17.

This is elaborated by way of an example. Vyāsa says:

"Like pure crystal" proffers an analogy. As a crystal depending on a particular proximate object (*upāśhraya*) becomes affected by its colour and appears to take on the form of that proximate object, so also the mind-field. . . .

An *upāśhraya*, a proximate object, is an external condition (*upādhi*). For example, when a red flower is placed near a crystal, the crystal is affected, overshadowed by it (VM). This is possible only because the crystal is pure by nature. It receives the reflection of a nearby object only when external blemishes, such as dust, are cleansed off (VB, BG, NB, BD). The way it is affected by the colour of the proximate objects is a subduing of its true nature (RY, SS).

When *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya* have cleansed off the external impurities of the mind-field, the objects of concentration (*ālambanas*) can clearly and fully reflect in it (BD, RY), and a coalescence occurs like that of milk in a marble cup (RS).

The objects of concentration (*dhyeyas* or *ālambanas*), which were clearly defined in Sūtra I.17, are classified differently here. Their order in Patañjali's sūtra is

1. *grahītr*: the agent of apprehension, the one who grasps or experiences or cognizes
2. *grahaṇa*: the process and the instruments of apprehension, with which one grasps, experiences or cognizes
3. *grāhya*: the objects of apprehension, the ones that are grasped, experienced or cognized

The order in Vyāsa's commentary is the opposite: object, instrument and agent (*grāhya*, *grahaṇa*, *grahītr*). This discrepancy has been taken note of by VM, VB, BR and RY. VM states that the order in the sūtra is contrary to the sequence of attainments and should simply be ignored. VB and BR favour and justify Vyāsa's order on the ground that it follows the sequence of one's development in samādhi (VB), that is, the plateaus (*bhūmis*) that the yogī gains (BR). No commentator has explained the reason for Patañjali's order. An explanation is attempted here.

In Sūtra I.17 the progression was shown from the outward to the inward, from the gross to the subtle, from the objects perceived

to the inner perceiver. This order is followed also in *YS* I.42-44. Patañjali's intent in the current sūtra might be to draw attention to the true sequence in any cognition, apprehension or perception. It is the perceiver whose will initiates the experience, who utilises the instruments of cognition which thereupon grasp the external objects. The sūtra does not state explicitly what it suggests implicitly: One whose mind is trained through *abhyāsa*, purified through *vairāgya* and brought to stability through *chitta-parikarmas* now begins to view not the objects as the principal constituent of a cognition but rather the cognizer as the principal constituent; hence the order is reversed, and the innermost one now predominates. Patañjali's order emphasizes that the *grahitṛ-samāpatti* is the principal attainment (NTC). Vyāsa only appears to be mute concerning the reason for his apparent contradiction of Patañjali. In fact, upon looking at his commentary closely, it becomes clear that even though he explains *grāhyas*, etc. in an order opposite to that of Patañjali (perhaps to help the non-proficient), in the last paragraph of his commentary he reverts to Patañjali's order:

The puruṣha, the senses and the elements are respectively the agent, the instruments and the objects of apprehension (*grahitṛ*, *grahaṇa* and *grāhya*).

It is also noteworthy that in subdividing *grāhyas* he reverses himself and takes the subtler to the grosser progression! To quote Vyāsa:

The mind-field coloured by that object of apprehension (*grāhya*), which is its supportive factor (*ālambana*) in meditation, and transmuted into that very object, appears to take on the form of that *grāhya*. Similarly, when coloured by the subtle aspect of elements, it appears as the subtle element. Again, coloured by the gross *ālambana*, transmuted into that gross *ālambana*, it appears as the gross *ālambana*. Yet again, coloured by the diversities of the universe, transmuted into those diversities, it appears in their form.

The agent, instrument and object are subdivided and explained here as follows:

## I. *Grāhya*

*Grāhyas* are divided into three categories:

1. The subtleties of the elements (*bhūta-sūkṣhma*)
2. The gross objects of concentration (*sthūla-ālambanas*)
3. The diversities of the universe (*viśva-bhedas*)

This threefold division is explained in two ways:

### A. (VB, HA, NBB)

- The subtleties of the elements include all existence from the subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) up to and including prakṛti.
- The gross objects of concentration are the five gross elements.
- The diversities of the universe (included in the gross objects by HA), are the conscious and unconscious entities and objects (such as (VM) cows and jars, respectively).

### B. BG and NB hold that the *grāhyas* are divided into:

- gross: the five elements and presumably their modifications,  
namely the diverse external objects
- subtle: the five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*)
- subtlest: prakṛti

VM's opinion appears more consistent with *YS* I.17 and *YS* I.42-45, wherein *grāhyas* are the objects of concentration only in *sa-vitarka* and *sa-vichāra* samādhis, as shown in the chart on p. 247.

## II. *Grahaṇa*

Concerning the *grahaṇas*, Vyāsa says:

The same should be applied in the case of the senses, which are the instruments of apprehension (*grahaṇas*). The mind-field, coloured by the *grahaṇas*, which are its *ālambana*, appears in their form.

*Grahaṇas* are similarly subdivided into three (VB, NBB):

1. The diversities in the universe, that is, the physical senses of various beings
2. The gross senses (the perceiver's own)
3. The subtle senses, namely, *ahamkāra* and *buddhi*

In HA's opinion, the physical senses having been included in the gross elements, only the inner powers of senses (*indriya-śaktis*) are to be understood as *grahaṇas*.

### III. *Grahītṛ*

Vyāsa's commentary on *grahītṛ* is:

Similarly, when coloured by that puruṣha who is the agent of apprehension (*grahītṛ*) and its ālambana, the mind becomes transmuted into such a *grahītṛ* (puruṣha) and appears to take on the nature of the same. Again, when it is coloured by the liberated puruṣha who is its ālambana, transmuted into that liberated puruṣha, it appears in the nature of that liberated puruṣha.

*Grahītṛ*, the agent, cannot be subdivided between gross and subtle, and no such attempt is made by the commentators. Vyāsa, however, differentiates between (a) *grahītṛ* puruṣhas, spiritual selves that appear to be agents, and (b) *mukta* puruṣhas, the liberated ones. Vyāsa not only says "*grahītṛ*," the agent, but adds "puruṣha" so as to preclude buddhi alone (VB) but to include the puruṣha reflected in *asmitā* (VM, BR, RY) or in chitta (NBB), totally identified with it as *mahān ātma* (HA) (to be defined in Sūtra II.19).

The question arises: Are there indeed two kinds of puruṣhas? Certainly not. There is no difference between puruṣhas dwelling in a bound (*baddha*) personality and puruṣhas which are liberated. Puruṣha is ever-free by nature (*nitya-mukta-svabhāva*). The subject of the sūtra, however, is not the nature of puruṣha but the stages in the samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta*). The final stages may be divided into three levels:

1. The realization and mastery of buddhi and the mahat principle. There is not yet a realization of puruṣha.
- 2 Realizing the reflection of puruṣha in *asmitā* as the principal constituent, the agent, *grahītṛ*.
- 3 Realizing that the reflection is not the puruṣha. Puruṣha is ever-free (*mukta*), puruṣha is the conscious principle whose reflection is seen in *asmitā*

Vyāsa, therefore, differentiates between the proficiencies of samādhi (*samāpattis*) between 2 and 3 above.

Another explanation of “*mukta puruṣha*” is that the term refers to the great liberated, historical figures like Śukadeva (who was Vyāsa’s son) (VM, VB). If such were the case, this type of meditation should be placed under the category of *sa-vitarka samādhi*, in which such external personages can be an object of concentration. But Vyāsa places *mukta* puruṣhas after and beyond the puruṣha reflected in *asmitā*. In fact, Vyāsa’s statement and VM’s and VB’s subtle suggestion point to the greatest mystery in yoga. “*Mukta puruṣha*” does not refer to the bodies or physical appearances of historical personages, but to the puruṣhas themselves, the liberated spiritual selves. These disembodied masters do guide the aspirants who become linked to them in *samādhi*. These liberated puruṣhas, spiritual selves, may reflect into the *chitta* or *asmitā* of the aspirant in *samādhi*, thus imparting their purity to such a mind. This is the mode of the guru’s guidance all the way to *Hiraṇya-garbha* and beyond.

And beyond the greatest *mukta* puruṣha is God (*iśvara*), who, thereafter, begins to reflect in such a mind (NBB).

Vyāsa concludes his commentary thus:

The mind is like a pure-born crystal. The puruṣha, the senses and the elements are respectively the agent, the instruments and the objects of apprehension (*grahītṛ*, *grahana* and *grāhya*). The mind-field’s “stability on and coalescence with” them means that it remains concentrated on them and takes on their form. This is called proficiency, transmutation, coalescence and attainment of the given state of consciousness (*samāpatti*).

At each of the stages of attainment of concentration on the various subdivisions of *grahītṛ*, *grahana* and *grāhya* (namely: puruṣhas, senses, and elements), *samāpatti* is to be defined as the mind-field (*a*) dwelling on the object, becoming stable thereupon (*tat-stha*), and (*b*) achieving coalescence (*tad-añjanatā*) therewith (like milk in a marble cup), so that the mind takes the nature and form of that object and is identified with it. The relationship of the three—*grāhya-samāpatti*, *grahaṇa-samāpatti*, and *grahītṛ-samāpatti*—with the four levels of *samprajñāta* *samādhi* has been shown in the

chart on p. 247 and should be studied there.

Sūtras I.17, 19, 20, 41, and 42-50 constitute the explanation of *samprajñāta*, and therefore the current sūtra should be studied within that context.

**Sūtra I.42**

**तत्र शब्दार्थज्ञानविकल्पैः सङ्कीर्णा सवितर्का  
समापत्तिः।**

**tatra śabdārtha-jñāna-vikalpaiḥ saṅkirṇā  
sa-vitarkā samāpattiḥ**

*tatra:* there, among them

*śabda-:* (with) word

*artha-:* meaning, object denoted or signified

*jñāna-:* knowledge

*vikalpaiḥ:* with options (RP, BB), alternations, imaginary cognitions

*saṅkirṇā:* mixed, mingled, commingled, alloyed

*sa-vitarkā:* *vitarka*-accompanied, accompanied with gross thought

*saṁpattiḥ:* encounter, transmutation, coalescence, attainment of a state of consciousness, proficiency

**Among them, the one commingled with alternations and imaginary cognitions<sup>33</sup> of word, the object signified as meaning and knowledge is called the *vitarka*-accompanied *saṁpatti*.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Thus, for example: “cow”; this is a word. The cow is the object denoted as the meaning (*artha*). “Cow” is the knowledge (*jñāna*). Even though they (that is, the word, the object, and the knowledge) are all distinct (*vi-bhakta*), it is seen that they are apprehended as not divided by distinction (*a-vibhāga*). When divided and separated (*vi-bhajyamāna*), the characteristics of the word are different, the characteristics of the object—which is the meaning—are some other, and the characteristics of the knowledge yet other. Thus their paths are divided and separated (*vi-bhakta*). When the yogī has reached *saṁpanna*, (an accomplishment) of coalescence (*saṁpatti*) with regard to them (*tatra*), (an awareness of) the object meant<sup>34</sup> (*artha*) by “cow” and such imposes itself upon his *saṁādhi*-wisdom

33 *Vikalpa*, as explained in Sūtra I.9, also includes linguistic misconception

34 This translation of the word *artha* is taken from HA(E).

(*samādhi-prajñā*). If it (this awareness) revolves<sup>35</sup> as intertwined (*anu-viddha*) with the alternating (sequences) of the word, the object meant and the knowledge (derived therefrom) and (the attendant) imaginary cognition, such a commingled *samāpatti* is called “the one accompanied with gross thought” (*sa-vitarka*).

## Discussion

The last sūtra provided a general definition of *samāpatti*. Now specific *samāpattis* are being explained.

Of the four samādhis of wisdom (*samprajñāta*) which were explained in Sūtra I.17, the first two are further subdivided into two levels each. *Sa-vitarka samādhi* is thus divided into *sa-vitarka samāpatti* and *nir-vitarka samāpatti*. This sūtra explains *sa-vitarka samāpatti*. The field of both of these levels and the objects of concentration therein are the same as explained in Sūtra I.17, but the attainments are different.

Before a better understanding of these levels and of Vyāsa’s commentary can be gained, one needs to fathom the meaning of the term *vikalpa*. *Vikalpa* was defined in Sūtra I.9 and translated as (1) “imaginary cognition,” which also included linguistic misconception, all explained in that sūtra. This is the technical application of the word to *yoga*; however, more commonly the word also means (2) an option or alternative, (3) an alternation of occurrences between two or more factors (for example, there is a *vikalpa* of positive and negative currents), and (4) (in psychology) an alternative negative thought in opposition to and alternating with a positive thought or resolution (*sankalpa*). For example, “If I look at it this way it seems right, and I shall/should do it” is a *sankalpa*; but, “If I look at it from a different perspective it seems wrong, and I shall/should not do it,” is a *vikalpa*.

All these contents of the term seem to be intended in the use of the word *vikalpa* in this sūtra. More specifically:

1. The word, the object denoted, and the knowledge or idea (RP, HA(E), BB) produced are distinct and separate, but a speaker or

<sup>35</sup> That is, takes turns or appears in turns

listener commingles the three as though they were one. This is an imaginary cognition or linguistic misconception, the *vikalpa* defined in Sūtra I.9.

2. However, there remains an option open to a clearer thinker as to which of these three (word, object or idea) he wishes to cognize or concentrate on at any given moment.
3. Thereafter these three or any two may alternate between moments.
4. As a consequence the sequence of *sankalpa-vikalpa* may continue on however subtle a basis.

All these *vikalpas* are present when the yogi is concentrating on any one word-object-idea complex in *sa-vitarka samāpatti* of the *sa-vitarka samādhi*. The word *tarka* designates any thought accompanied by words. *Vi-tarka* is a variation denoting that only particular objects are to be considered. Concentration in *sa-vitarka samāpatti* is invariably accompanied by the names of the objects of concentration; hence the discussion in this sūtra centres upon the words, the objects denoted thereby, and the knowledge which is the relationship between the words and objects grasped by the mind.

Because the primary objects of concentration in *sa-vitarka* are the five gross elements and the eleven senses themselves, as gross a combination of them as a cow would rarely be an *ālambana*. Vyāsa says:

Thus, for example: "cow";<sup>36</sup> this is a word. The cow is the object denoted as the meaning (*artha*). "Cow" is the knowledge (*jñāna*). Even though they are 'all distinct' (*vi-bhakta*), it is seen that they are apprehended as not divided by distinction (*a-vibhāga*). When divided and separated (*vi-bhajyamāna*), the characteristics of the word are different, the characteristics of the object—which is the meaning—are some other, and the characteristics of the knowledge yet other. Thus their paths are divided and separated (*vi-bhakta*).

<sup>36</sup> Vyāsa might have used words like "jar" or "cloth" (RY), but the word "cow" was chosen to illustrate this point, following the tradition of exposition used by grammarians of the schools allied with yoga. In discussing secular words, "cow" was almost always the first one chosen, perhaps because cows were the mainstay of an ashram's subsistence, and the disciples were almost always tending to "the guru's cows" when not attending to their studies.

(VM) When there is a word (in this instance, "cow"), there arises the misconception (*vikalpa*) that the object denoted (the cow itself) and the mental ideation (of the cow) are not distinct from the word. That is, when the cow is an object, there arises the *vikalpa* that the word and the ideation are not apart from the object. Similarly, when the mental idea of the cow appears, the *vikalpa* is that the word "cow" and the external object perceived as cow (which was denoted by the word) are both indistinct from the mental idea (VM, RY, BD). But (VB) when the learned experts apply the affirmative and negative methods of logic—somewhat similar to induction and deduction—and examine the three carefully, it is found that these components of the word-object-ideation complex named "cow" are all distinct, each with its own characteristics (VM, VB).

What, then, are the distinct characteristics of the word, the object meant, and the mental ideation? What attributes or qualifications divide, separate and distinguish them from each other? These can only be illustrated as examples rather than listed completely.

- A. The word is of two kinds (BR), one a unitary revelation (*sphoṭa*)<sup>37</sup> and the other the sound qualified, for example, by high and low notes (VM, VB, NB, NBB). It is grasped with the sense of hearing (BR, HA) and dwells in the sense of speech. It is not the cow in the pasture that has high or low notes or is uttered or heard as the sound, nor is it the understanding, "cow."
- B. The object denoted has genus, species, etc. (BR, AD). Furthermore, it has qualities like form (*mūrti*) or non-sentience (*jaḍatva*) (VM, VB, NB, NBB) (although the attribute of non-sentience is not applicable to a cow, the example in question).
- C. The object is experienced with the senses of touch and sight, and dwells in the cow-pen (HA). It is not the word "cow" that

<sup>37</sup> To explain the concept of *sphoṭa* in this present work would add great volume. The reader is encouraged to see the author's book *Mantra and Meditation* (Honesdale, Pa: Himalayan International Institute of Yoga Science and Philosophy, 1981). There are also numerous academic studies on this subject in the field of Indian linguistics which do not relate the topic to the origin, practice and experience of the mantra.

is seen nor does that cow from the cow-pen migrate into the mind as the idea so that it is no longer seen in the cow-pen or pasture!

D. Knowledge or ideation (*jñāna*) is the predominantly sattvic vṛtti of buddhi (BR). It has the attributes of elucidation and formlessness (VM, VB, NB, NBB). It dwells in the mind-field (HA).

The word is formed of syllables or letters of the alphabet; the object has hardness, etc.; the idea is devoid of dimension and parts, and so forth (HA). In *vikalpa* the error of non-distinction (*abheda-bhrama*) among these appears (VB, NB, NBB, BG, NTC), causing them to be identified with each other (SS). But each takes its own path, its own development in causation, and undergoes independent mutation. Each has its own way of presenting its nature (VM, VB, HA).

Let us read Vyāsa further:

When the yogī has reached *samāpanna*, (an accomplishment) of coalescence (*samāpatti*) with regard to them (*tatra*), (an awareness of) the object meant (*artha*) by “cow” and such imposes itself upon his samādhi-wisdom (*samādhi-prajñā*). If it (this awareness) revolves as intertwined (*anu-viddha*) with the alternating (sequences) of the word, the object meant and the knowledge (derived therefrom) and (the attendant) imaginary cognition, such a commingled *samāpatti* is called “the one accompanied with gross thought” (*sa-vitarka*).

In *sa-vitarka samāpatti* the word, the object and the ideation are commingled, causing the samādhi to be alloyed, mixed, with the notions and ideations whose constituents are unanalysed and consequently are several. Having these many constituents as the *ālamhana*, as though they were one, superimposed (*adhyāsa*) on each other (BR), prevents the true one-pointedness from developing in its fulness. Hence this samādhi is the lowest, the most impure. The processes of this commingling occur in such patterns as the following.

The yogī experiencing the presence of a single word-object-

ideation complex such as “cow” does not distinguish among these three constituents. Therefore it is uncertain which one of these three constituents is being realized or mastered. The mastery is, therefore, incomplete.

Also the coalescence of the object of concentration (*ālambana*) with the mind-field is incomplete. There remains a separation between the observing mind and the *ālambana* of concentration so that (VB) there may appear such observations as

- “This is a cow I am concentrating on.”
- “This is a vision of God (Nārāyaṇa)” (VB).
- “This is space, this is light or fire (*tejas*) that I am experiencing; it all consists of material elements and should be avoided with the help of *vairāgya*” (HA).

Of these the first is a translation of the expression *gaur-ayam bhāsate* (VB, NBB), literally, “Here this cow shines forth, appears, is being experienced.” In this experience the occurrence of the thought “cow” comprises the superimposition (*vikalpa*) of the word and the object. In the occurrence of the thoughts “appears, is being experienced,” it is the object and the ideation that are commingled (NBB).

Since these superimpositions of word, object and idea upon each other (causing the appearance of an imagined unity in a manifold reality) only present what, in effect, is unreal, all such superimpositions come under the category of *vikalpa*. Such a superimposition does not aid the yogi to realize fully or master the reality of any of its constituents (RY), just as water and milk mixed together cannot be classified separately either as one or the other (RS).

Furthermore, where there are many constituents to an idea, there are many ideas. They cannot occur simultaneously. Therefore, just as in ordinary consciousness, where thoughts come and go one after another—and are called *sa-vikalpa* (NB)—so also on the subtle level of *sa-vitarka samādhi* this *vikalpa* occurs. Also, as explained earlier, the mind is divided into three thoughts or *vṛttis*, and the constituents of this threefold complex revolve, occur in

turns, producing alternations of *sankalpa* and *vikalpa* (BG).

The same applies to all objects of concentration, among which the mantra must be mentioned here. Since a mantra in its utterable, audible form is a physical sound, in the Sāṅkhyā scheme it would be a product of the subtle element of sound (*śabda-tanmātrā*). Space (*ākāśha*) is the gross element produced from *śabda-tanmātrā*, and the audible sound is described both as an attribute of space and as having space as its locus. Thus concentrations on an articulate, audible mantra, until such time as it is refined into and experienced as a subtler vibration, may be considered as coming within the realm of concentration on space, one of the five gross elements which serve as *ālambanas* of *sa-vitarka samādhi*. So long as any of the following (or similar) observations remain in the mind, full coalescence has not occurred and the meditation is still alloyed and impure:

- “The mantra is a sequence of syllables.”
- “The mantra has such-and-such particular meaning associated with it.”
- “I am practising the mantra.”
- “The mantra is becoming refined.”

Because the gross thought is a *vikalpa* by definition, the *sa-vitarka samādhi* is also called *sa-vikalpa*, that is, accompanied by *vikalpa* (NBB). Because it is still touched by ignorance (*avidyā*), it constitutes a lower category of direct perception (*apara pratyakṣha*) (NBB), as against the transcendental direct perception (*para pratyakṣha*) to be explained in the next sūtra.

**Sūtra I.43**

**स्मृतिपरिशुद्धौ स्वरूपशून्येवार्थमात्रनिर्भासा  
निर्वितर्का।**

**smṛti-pariśuddhau svarūpa-shūnyevārtha-  
mātra-nirbhāsā nir-vitarkā**

*smṛti-:* (of) memory

*pariśuddhau:* upon purification all-round, upon complete puri-  
fication

*svarūpa-shūnyā:* devoid of its own form

*iva:* as it were, as though

*artha-mātra-:* (of) only the object meant

*nir-bhāsā:* illuminative

*nir-vitarkā:* without a gross thought

**When there has occurred complete and all-round purification of  
memory and (the mind-field) is, as it were, devoid of its own  
form and illuminative of only the object signified, it is called the  
samādhi without a gross thought (*nir-vitarka*).**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

When, however, there has occurred all-round and complete puri-  
fication of the memory of the conventional usage and meaning  
(*sanketa*) of the word, then the object signified remains only in its  
own form in the samādhi-wisdom (*samādhi-prajñā*), which has be-  
come devoid of the imaginary cognition and linguistic misconcep-  
tions (*vikalpa*) of the knowledge which results from teaching (*śhruta*)  
and inference (*anumāna*).

(The object of concentration then) excludes all else and remains  
distinctly in the form of its own nature. That is the *nir-vitarka*  
coalescence (*samāpatti*). That is the transcendental (*para*) direct  
perception (*pratyakṣha*). That is the seed of the teaching (*śhruta*)  
and of the inferential process (*anumāna*).

Teaching and inferential knowledge (*anumāna*) originate from  
that. That perception and realization (*darśhana*), however, is not  
an accompaniment of the teaching and of the inference. Therefore  
(it is to be concluded that) the yogi's realization (*darśhana*) arising

from *nir-vitarka* samādhi is not intermingled with and confused by other valid proofs (*pramāṇa*). That's it.

This sūtra elucidates the definition of *nir-vitarka samāpatti*:

[*Sūtra*.] When there has occurred complete and all-round purification of memory and (the mind-field) is, as it were, devoid of its own form and illuminative of only the object signified, it is called the samādhi without a gross thought (*nir-vitarka*).

When the all-round and complete purification of the memory of the imaginary cognition and linguistic misconceptions (*vikalpas*) of the knowledge that originates from the teaching and inferential processes has occurred,

- wisdom (*prajñā*) then becomes coloured by the object apprehended (*grāhya*) because of its proximity (*upa*),
- it (wisdom) abandons, as it were, its own nature and form as the instrument of apprehension (*grahana*), and
- it takes on the nature and form of the object (*padārtha*) itself alone, transformed, as it were, into the nature and form of the object apprehended (*grāhya*),

that is called the *nir-vitarka samāpatti*. It is also explained as follows. Its world, introduced by a unitary intelligence, consists of the self-nature of the real object (*artha-ātman*), such that it is a particular (*viśheṣha*) collection of atoms—the “cow” and so forth, or the “jar” and so forth.

And that particular configuration (*sāṁsthāna*) consists of a common characteristic (*dharma*) of the subtle (origins of) elements having taken on a self-nature. It is inferred by the results manifested. It manifests itself as representing that which has revealed it, given its appearance. It disappears when another characteristic (*dharma*) rises. This characteristic (*dharma*) is called the whole (*avayavin*) constituted of separable parts (*avayavas*). It is that, the one, the large or the minute, the tangible; it has processes, activity, practicability, motion and efficacious execution (*kriyā*) as its attribute. It is non-eternal. It is with such a whole consisting of parts (*avayavin*) that practical transactions (*vyavahāra*) are conducted.

But to one in whose opinion “That particular collection (of atoms) is insubstantial, and the subtle cause is not to be apprehended,” when he is free of *vikalpa*, there being no whole consisting of parts, it (the concept of a whole) is false knowledge not based in the nature or form of the respective object. Then (for him) mostly everything incurs (the possibility of) false knowledge. Also, if there is no object, then what can even be true knowledge?

Since whatever is apprehended is found to be a whole constituted of parts, therefore there definitely exists a whole constituted of parts that, coming into empirical attributes such as largeness, becomes the object (*vishaya*) of *nir-vitarka samāpatti*.

### Discussion

Some editions<sup>38</sup> consider Vyāsa’s introduction to the sūtra to be part of his commentary on the last sūtra and thus place the passage from the beginning (“When, however, there has occurred. . .”) up to the end of the third paragraph (“. . . That’s it.”) at the end of Sūtra I.42. We, however, concur with the majority. The word “however” at the beginning of the commentary contrasts the *savitarka* with the *nir-vitarka*, and the rest of the paragraph introduces *nir-vitarka*. This *śamādhi* is also called *nir-vikalpa* because it is free of that *vikalpa* which is the superimposition of word, object and idea upon each other (VM). This superimposition is otherwise called *sanketa*, an indication, denotation (VM, VB, NBB, BG, BM) or conventional usage and meaning of the word. There is no other relationship between words and ideas except such imagination (*vikalpa*), which is then held in memory and which in turn helps one to infer that a word spoken, representing an idea, refers to a given object (BG, SS, NTC, NTB). Vyāsa says:

When, however, there has occurred all-round and complete purification of the memory of the conventional usage and meaning (*sanketa*) of the word, then the object signified remains only in its own form in the *śamādhi*-wisdom (*śamādhi-prajñā*) which has

38 (1) NBB, ed Vasudev Shastri Abhyankar, Bombay Sanskrit and Prakrit Series no 46 (Bombay Government Central Press, 1917) and (2) RP

become devoid of the imaginary cognition and linguistic misconceptions (*vikalpa*) of the knowledge which results from teaching (*śhruta*) and inference (*anumāna*).

In the tradition of ashram education one attains knowledge through

*śhravāṇa*: listening from a teacher,

*manana*: contemplating, and

*nididhyāsana*: meditation (NB, BG), which leads to

*sākṣhātkāra*: realization.

Among the valid proofs, *āgama* (knowledge derived from inspired texts, from the tradition, or from a realized teacher) and *anumāna* (inference) are both based on remembering what is indicated (*saṅketita*) by the word (VM, VB, BM). For example (VB, NBB), the Vedic texts (*śhrutis*) state:

It is indeed the immanent and transcendental Brahman that is *OM*.

*Praśnna Upaniṣhad* V.2

The books of the Law (*smṛtis*) state (VB):

*a, u, m*—these are Brahmā, Viṣhṇu and Śhīva.<sup>39</sup>

Similarly, lexicons (as, for instance, *Amara-koṣha*) (VB) state synonyms and meanings.

Learning from these statements is called listening (*śhravāṇa*), which is the same as receiving knowledge from *āgama pramāṇa*. Thus *āgama* is based on remembering words and their indications and denotations (VB, NB, BG, NBB). The remembrance or memory (*smṛti*) comes from the power (*śakti*) inherent in words to help grasp the meaning<sup>40</sup> (NB, RY).

The logical processes of inference (*anumāna*) are derived from

39 Source unknown

40 This doctrine of the power (*śakti*) of words is one of the fundamental principles in Indian linguistics but cannot be discussed here in detail

such verbal knowledge. Thus contemplation (*manana*) of what one has learnt through *śravāṇa* is also based on words (VB, BM, NB). The word *anumāna* ‘inference’ also includes all that is inferred, all conclusions (VM). All these *vikalpas* do not lead to pure knowledge. Therefore the first samādhi (*nididhyāsana*) based on the *vikalpa* of words and their relationships is *sa-vitarka* and does not lead to perfect realization (*sākṣhātkāra*) (VM, VB, NBB, RY). Hence Vyāsa later states the requirement that there should occur an

all-round and complete purification of the memory of the conventional usage and meaning (*sāṅketa*).

The word is not merely “purification” (*śuddhi*) but *pari-śuddhi* ‘all-round and complete purification’. It has been translated as denoting the abandonment and eradication of such memory altogether (VM, VB, NB, NBB, BG, RY, NTC). This means the dissolution (*pra-laya* or *pra-vi-laya*) of such memory (BR, AD, SS). The memory being a *vṛtti*, its dissolution into its very causes is its *nirodha*. This does not mean, however, that the yogi suffers a loss of the memory of words and meanings in ordinary life; rather, it means that he does not carry the memory into samādhi. He does not use these as *ālambanas* (supports for the mind) or as objects of concentration when he is past the *sa-vitarka* and beginning entry into *nir-vitarka*.

At this stage, the practice of meditation becomes free of names (of objects) and sentences (of contemplation); the object of meditation is dissociated from speech and language. This is total purification (HA). Now not only does the yogi not resort to the memory of words and their denotations, but he leaves behind the entire process which was caused by the presence of words and indications (VB, VM, NB, NBB, BG, RY)—of *śravāṇa* (that is, *āgama pramāṇa*) and *manana* (that is, *anumāna pramāṇa*), as well as the first *nididhyāsana* (that is, *sa-vikalpa samādhi*), with its lesser degree of *sākṣhātkāra* (that is, lower realization), which was described in the last sūtra as impure and alloyed.

This also implies that the method of contemplation (*vichāra*) as

taught among the followers of Vedānta, when an initiate is given a profound statement (*mahā-vākyā*) to contemplate, must also be refined until the contemplation merges into meditation and becomes a realization. The words as well as the verbal processes of contemplation also come under the category of *vikalpa*. Even though the original realization of a *rishi* in samādhi is conveyed in words, the practising initiate is bound to a *vikalpa* until the words are abandoned and he has the same non-verbal realization which the original *rishi* had.

Again, we read from Vyāsa:

(The object of concentration then) excludes all else and remains distinctly in the form of its own nature. That is the *nir-vitarka* coalescence (*samāpatti*) That is the transcendental (*para*) direct perception (*pratyakṣha*) That is the seed of the teaching (*śruti*) and of the inferential process (*anumāna*)

Teaching and inferential knowledge (*anumāna*) originate from that. That perception and realization (*darśhana*), however, is not an accompaniment of the teaching and of the inference. Therefore (it is to be concluded that) the yogi's realization (*darśhana*) arising from *nir-vitarka* samādhi is not intermingled with and confused by other valid proofs (*pramāna*). That's it

At this stage the instrument of apprehension (*grahaṇa*), the mind with all its faculties, forgets itself, as it were. There is not even the cognizance that "I perceive" or "I concentrate." The mind is possessed, taken over (*āveśha*), by the object of concentration (*dhvēya*) (BG), diving deep into the reality of the object of concentration (*dhvēva-artha*) (NB, BG). Its attention is focused only on that reality, as though that reality is superimposed upon the mind, as though the wisdom in samādhi causes it to abandon any claims to being an agent of apprehension or concentration (RY). It is as though the internal process (*bhāvanā*) of samādhi is devoid of "being a process" (*bhāvanātva*) (SS)

There is now not the slightest superimposition of the unreal (VM, VB, NBB); the real and the unreal are fully differentiated (NB, BG). Nothing unreal enters into the real (HA). The reality (*artha*) does not take on fictitious (*vikalpita*) impositions (BM, SS)

of words and so forth. The commentators reiterate that because there is not the slightest touch of confusion and ignorance (*avidyā*) in this *samādhi*, it is indeed the transcendental direct perception (*para pratyakṣha*) of the yogis (VM, NB, NBB, BG, RY).

The reality of the object of apprehension and concentration rises clearly and shows its own form. The union and coalescence is such that the mind's own nature in the process of ideation becomes subordinated (*nyag-bhūta*) to that of the reality being realized (BR). It is thus that the phrase

*svarūpa-śhūnyā iva* 'as though devoid of its own form'

with reference to the mind and to the *samāpatti* becomes meaningful. "As though" expresses the fact that the yogi does not become mindless, that only the self-awareness of the mind and the cognizance that "I know the object" are lost in the awareness of the object of *samādhi* (NTC, HA).

Here an argument ensues (VM): The yogis receive the transcendental knowledge in this higher perception and realization. Then they convey that knowledge through *āgama* and *anumāna*, which are not the subject of that realization. Because *āgama* and *anumāna* are fictitious, the yogi's knowledge must therefore also be fictitious. This is answered by Vyāsa:

That is the seed of the teaching (*śhruta*) and of the inferential process (*anumāna*). . . .

That perception and realization (*darśhana*), however, is not an accompaniment of the teaching and of the inference. Therefore (it is to be concluded that) the yogi's realization (*darśhana*) arising from *nir-vitarka samādhi* is not intermingled with and confused by other valid proofs (*pramāṇa*). That's it.

It is not that wherever there is teaching (*āgama*) and inference (*anumāna*) true realization exists, nor is it necessary that all realization be expressed in teaching and inferential processes. Thus realization is not dependent upon these *pramāṇas*, although it is their source or origin. The word *darśhana* means "seeing, gaining

“insight” into that realization which occurs in samādhi. *Darśhana* is the Sanskrit word for philosophy because all philosophy, with its logical processes, is derived from such realization alone.

An origin is not dependent on its effects. Even though perception of smoke leads to the inference that there is fire, the fire itself is not dependent on smoke. So it is clear that the yogis receive their knowledge through non-imaginary, non-fictitious (*a-vikalpita*) samādhi and use the fiction (*vikalpa*) of *āgama* and *anumāna* to convey the true knowledge (VM). This knowledge is the seed from which they are brought forth into being (*pra-bhū*). Even though this knowledge is taught in the revealed texts (*śhruti*) and inspired lawbooks (*smṛti*) or by a guru, it is impossible to experience it without the experience of samādhi, just as one cannot experience the sweetness of sugarcane or rice pudding by description alone. Nor can a guru give guidance in the matter without that full realization in which no room for doubt is left and no realities are reversed. Hence, once again, the valid proofs of *āgama* and *anumāna* are dependent on it, and not vice versa. No valid proofs (*pramāṇas*) sully the realization in *nir-vikalpa* samādhi (VB, NBB, HA).

The argument of the sūtra up to here is summarized by Vyāsa as follows:

This sūtra elucidates the definition of *nir-vitarka samāpatti*.

[*Sūtra.*] When there has occurred complete and all-round purification of memory and (the mind-field) is, as it were, devoid of its own form and illuminative of only the object signified, it is called the samādhi without a gross thought (*nir-vitarka*)

When the all-round and complete purification of the memory of the imaginary cognition and linguistic misconceptions (*vikalpas*) of the knowledge that originates from the teaching and inferential process has occurred,

- wisdom (*prajñā*) then becomes coloured by the object apprehended (*grāhva*) because of its proximity (*upa*),
- it (wisdom) abandons, as it were, its own nature and form as the instrument of apprehension (*grahaṇa*), and

- it takes on the nature and form of the object (*padārtha*) itself alone, transformed, as it were, into the nature and form of the object apprehended (*grāhya*),

that is called the *nir-vitarka samāpatti*.

All this has been explained so far.

Now the question arises as to the nature of that reality of the object of concentration which is realized in this samādhi. The *ālam-banas* in this samādhi are still the sixteen *viśheśhas* and their products. One important aspect of their nature is stated by Vyāsa which refutes views held by certain opponents and reasserts the Sāṅkhya view.

Taking, for instance, an object such as a jar, the Buddhists of the Sautrāntika and Vaibhāṣhika schools hold that it is simply a combination of uncountable numbers of atoms, not their transmuted product, and that there are not cause and effect relationships between the atoms and the jar. This is known as the aggregation doctrine (*saṅghāta-vāda*).

The Buddhists of the Vijñāna-vāda school hold that all the objects exist merely as ideas, within a universal idea (*ālaya-vijñāna*), and have no objective existence.

Followers of the Nyāya-Vaiśheśhika schools hold either to *asat-kārya-vāda*—the doctrine that qualities of effects do not exist in their causes, but that fresh qualities are produced—or to *ārambha-vāda*—another name for the same doctrine based on the view that these qualities begin (*ārambha*) fresh in the effects which are produced when atoms of various elements combine, and that their *prāg-abhāva* (prior absence) in the anterior (the cause) is evident, that is, that it is known that those qualities were not there previous to their appearances in fresh objects.

The Sāṅkhya view, of course, is *sat-kārya-vāda*: that the qualities of objects pre-exist in their causes and that the *guṇas* are constantly transmuted in the evolutes and do not remain the same even for a moment.

Although the commentators have summarized some of the arguments of the various schools and their refutation by others

pertaining to these doctrines, space does not permit an adequate discussion of them here. Those interested in the topic may explore it in the formal systems of Indian philosophy. Only Vyāsa's view needs to be explained here. He says:

Its world, introduced by a unitary intelligence, consists of the self-nature of the real object (*artha-ātman*), such that it is a particular (*viśheṣha*) collection of atoms—the “cow” and so forth, or the “jar” and so forth.

The world (*loka*) of the yogi in samādhi is described. The word *loka* means “that which shines.” Whatever shines forth in samādhi, that alone is the yogi's world. The object of realization that becomes his whole world, says Vyāsa, is

*eka-buddhi-upa-krama* ‘introduced by a unitary intelligence (buddhi)’.

The intelligence is unitary because it is not divided up among many ideas. It is also unitary because it sees the object as a complete whole, one, not merely as many parts, such as atoms, put together. The object is *artha-ātman*, that is, it has a real self-nature. It is neither a non-self (*an-ātman* or Pali *anattā*), nor a mere idea. It may be agreed that it is *anu-prachaya-viśheṣha-ātmā* ‘a particular collection of atoms’, whereby it becomes, for example, a cow or a jar that is, a sentient or an insentient being or an object – but what exactly does this mean? Vyāsa goes further:

And that particular configuration (*samsthāna*) consists of a common characteristic (*dharma*) of the subtle (origins of) elements having taken on a self-nature. It is inferred by the results manifested. It manifests itself as representing that which has revealed it, given it appearance. It disappears when another characteristic (*dharma*) rises. This characteristic (*dharma*) is called the whole (*avayavin*) constituted of separable parts (*avayavas*). It is that, the one, the large or the minute, the tangible, it has processes, activity, practicability, motion and efficacious execution (*kriyā*) as its attribute. It is non-eternal. It is with such a whole consisting of parts (*avayavin*) that practical transactions (*vivavahāra*) are conducted.

An effect is neither totally different from nor totally identical with its cause. The particular configuration (*samsthāna*) of an object—that substratum in which the qualities (*dharma*) of an object reside, because of which it is *that* object, without which it would become transmuted into some other evolute—partakes of certain characteristics (*dharma*) of the subtler evolutes from which it is produced. Thereby it takes on a self-nature (*ātma-bhūta*); that is, it becomes itself. The presence of these characteristics is not a passive, non-productive idea alone. It is efficacious (*artha-kriyā-kārin*), producing certain results by which the observer infers its characteristics. In other words, it is anointed (*añjana*) by the attributes of its cause, and it represents that cause which has revealed it, has given it its appearance as an effect. When another characteristic from among those hidden in the very cause manifests itself, the configuration changes again. This will be explained further in Sūtras IV.12-15. The object in question, however, is the one whole (*avayavī*) to which all its separable parts (*avayavas*) belong. This one object is (a) one, whether large or minute, and (b) tangible. It has *kriyā*, that is,

processes, activities, practicability, motion, and efficacious execution.

Because it is ever-changing, it is non-eternal. It is such an object with which practical transactions are conducted. Furthermore, Vyāsa challenges those opposed to this realism by saying:

But to one in whose opinion “That particular collection (of atoms) is insubstantial, and the subtle cause is not to be apprehended,” when he is free of *vikalpa*, there being no whole consisting of parts, it (the concept of a whole) is false knowledge not based in the nature or form of the respective object. Then (for him) mostly everything incurs (the possibility of) false knowledge. Also, if there is no object, then what can even be true knowledge?

Briefly, if everything experienced were insubstantial, unreal and false, then all knowledge would be false. Not only is this obvious, but all objects would then be inefficacious, useless, producing no

results whatsoever. Furthermore there could be no objects of concentration if there were no objects. Vyāsa says:

Since whatever is apprehended is found to be a whole constituted of parts, therefore there definitely exists a whole constituted of parts that, coming into empirical attributes such as largeness, becomes the object (*viśhaya*) of *nir-vitarka samāpatti*.

The real objects of the practical and empirical world are indeed the objects of concentration in meditation; they are not merely the idea or their atoms, but rather the complete whole. That their true nature is realized internally in *samādhi* does not mean that their objective, external nature is denied. Since their full nature is realized internally, this realization includes the fact of their external reality, which is also thereby mastered.

**Sūtra I.44**

एतयैव सविचारा निर्विचारा च  
सूक्ष्मविषया व्याख्याता ।

**etayaiva savichārā nirvichārā cha  
sūkṣhma-viṣhayā vyākhyātā**

*etayā:* by this

*eva:* just, alone, very one

*sa-vichārā:* accompanied by subtle thought, *vichāra*-accompanied

*nir-vichārā:* devoid of subtle thought

*cha:* also

*sūkṣhma-viṣhayā:* having subtle objects as domain

*vyākhyātā:* is explained, defined

In the same way, the samādhi accompanied by subtle thought (*sa-vichāra*) and the one devoid of subtle thought (*nir-vichāra*) are explained.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Between these, that coalescence (*samāpatti*) is called *vichāra*-accompanying which occurs with regard to the subtle aspects of the elements which are delimited by the experience of space, time and causes and have manifest characteristics.

In that samādhi the subtle aspect of the elements is present as the supportive factor (*ālambana*) in the samādhi-wisdom (*samādhi-prajñā*) qualified by the ascendant characteristics. This also is to be grasped by the unitary intelligence alone.

That coalescence, however, is called devoid of subtle thought (*nir-vichāra*) which occurs with regard to the subtle aspects of elements when all their characteristics are non-sequential, their self-nature comprises all the characteristics, and they are completely undelimited in every mode by their submerged, ascendant or as-yet-unrepresented attributes.

That subtle aspect of the element in this very form only, and becoming a supportive factor by this form alone (*eva*) and by no other (*eva*), colours the samādhi-wisdom by its proximity (*uparāṇī*). And when the wisdom (*prajñā*) becomes as though devoid of

its own form, merely the object remaining, then it is called “devoid of subtle thought” (*nir-vichāra*).

Of these, *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka* have gross objects and realities (*vastu*) as their domain (*viśhaya*), and *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra* have the subtle objects and realities (*vastu*) as their domain.

Thus, by explaining *nir-vitarka*, the absence of *vikalpa* in the case of both of these has been explained.

## Discussion

In the *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka samāpatti*s the gross elements in various tangible forms grasped with the external senses are the objects of concentration and realization. In *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra* samādhis the five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) and the subtle senses are the objects of concentration and realization.

Nyāya-Vaiśheṣhika philosophers, who emphasize investigation of the physical realities of nature, propound that four gross elements—earth, water, fire, and air (but not space)—exist at two levels of reality tangible impermanent forms, and intangible permanent atoms. The atoms are, obviously, the subtler aspects of the gross elements. The combining of atomic particles produces the tangible forms of the elements.

The Sāṅkhyā philosopher does not engage in a discussion of the atomic nature of elements. His primary interest is in realities as perceived by the personality. In Sāṅkhyā philosophy, therefore, it is the subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) that mutate to become the evolutes called the five gross elements. The more syncretic philosophers, who are not careful to distinguish between the formal technicalities of the separate philosophical systems, are tempted to equate the Sāṅkhyā concept of *tan-mātrās* with the Vaiśheṣhika concept of atoms. This has led to a confusion among *Yoga-sūtras* commentators (VM, VB, NB, NBB, RY, BM) as to the precise relationship between (a) the tangible gross elements and the forms produced by them, (b) their intangible atoms, and (c) the five subtle elements (*Tan-mātrās*). Most of them (VM, VB, NB, NBB, RY) are agreed that atoms come within the subtle realities realized in *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra samāpatti*.

It is just possible that Vyāsa has used the term

*bhūta-sūkṣhma* ‘subtle (aspects) of elements’,

and not *sūkṣhma-bhūta* ‘subtle elements’ (*tan-mātrās*), in order to imply inclusion of the intangible atomic reality of the elements. Even though there is no other ground to support this view, it appears best here to respect the various commentators who quite correctly have found a place for the atomic reality among the various levels of reality to be realized in respective *saṁpattis*.

Even though Vyāsa in explaining the last sūtra does state that a tangible object is a particular collection of atoms (*anu-prachaya-viśeṣha*), it was made clear that in the *nir-vitarka* samādhi the entire whole (*ayayavīn*), and not such parts (*avayavas*) as atomic particles, are realized. It seems obvious, therefore, that both the subtle atomic aspect of the gross elements and the five subtle elements themselves are realized in the *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra* samādhis. But these two subtle realities should not be misidentified with each other.

Now to Vyāsa’s statement:

Between these, that coalescence (*saṁpatti*) is called *vichāra*-accompanied which occurs with regard to the subtle aspects of the elements which are delimited by the experience of space, time and causes and have manifest characteristics.

The distinction between *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka* was stated to be that in *sa-vitarka* the *vikalpa* of word, object and idea is present, whereas in *nir-vitarka* it is absent. In *sa-vichāra* the object of concentration is experienced with reference to space, time and causation. Even though the minutest particles occupy no space, a relationship in space is attributed to them, the detailed mechanism of which is a specialized field for Vaiśeṣhika philosophers (and modern physicists). The same applies to time, which will be further discussed in Sūtras IV.12-15. Causation here refers to the fact of the subtle, atomic realities of the gross elements being products of the respective *tan-mātrās* (VM, NB, NBB, RY, HA) VB, on the

other hand, holds that causation (*nimitta*) here refers to the relationship of the elements with the conscious puruṣa, the efficient cause whose purpose the elements serve. This seems farfetched, because such causation is not limited to the subtle aspects of the elements alone. Even though the word *nimitta* normally refers to an efficient cause, here it has to be taken in the broader sense of any causative factor. Even the subtle elements' process of producing respective effects may be included (RY). Briefly, again, the objects of concentration in *sa-vichāra* samādhi are perceived as delimited in relation to space, time and causation and, says Vyāsa, have manifest characteristics, which he clarifies as follows:

In that samādhi the subtle aspect of the elements is present as the supportive factor (*ālambana*) in the samādhi-wisdom (*samādhi-prajñā*) qualified by the ascendant characteristics.

This statement may be understood better in the light of the three states of characteristics listed in Vyāsa's next paragraph. There it is stated that the characteristics of an evolute may be (a) submerged, (b) ascendant, or (c) as yet unrepresented. An object has many attributes which become manifested from time to time while others become dormant or await being brought into manifestation from the dormant state. When certain attributes have already made an appearance, after a while they become submerged and are called the past. Those that now become ascendant are in the present. Those yet to be manifested are in the object's future.

In *sa-vichāra* samādhi concentration on and realization of the nature of the object is limited only to those characteristics which are manifest, ascendant, in the present. The wisdom (*prajñā*) thus received is delimited. However, Vyāsa says:

This also is to be grasped by the unitary intelligence alone.

To summarize the rest of Vyāsa's commentary on this sūtra, it is clear that in contrast to *sa-vichāra*, the awakening wisdom (*prajñā*) in *nir-vichāra* comprises the entirety of the object of concentration. The object here is not delimited by space, time or causation, nor

limited to those attributes which are apparent only in its present time. All of its possibilities and potentials are realized as being one with an undivided and unitary intelligence (buddhi). Vyāsa is very emphatic in stating that the objects here are

*sarva-dharma-anu-pātin*: such that they relate to all their characteristics (and)

*sarva-dharma-ātmaka*: such that their self-nature comprises all their characteristics

*sarvathā*: in every possible way

*sarvataḥ*: from whichever possible mode.

In the next sentence Vyāsa uses “the very one” or “the only one” (*hi*) once, and “only” or “alone” (*eva*) twice. He says:

That subtle aspect of the element in this very form only (*hi*), and becoming a supportive factor by this form alone (*eva*) and by no other (*eva*), colours the samādhi-wisdom by its proximity (*upa-rañj*).

The discussion in Sūtra I.17 has already explained what is meant by the mind (“wisdom” in Vyāsa’s commentary) being as though devoid of its own form, with merely the object remaining. There are, however, disagreements among commentators on two points. In the opinion of some (VM, BR, BG, SS, NTC, BM), the *sa-vichāra* and *sa-vitarka* samādhis share the state of *vikalpa* of the divisions of the word-object-idea triad, and *nir-vichāra*, like *nir-vitarka*, is free of such *vikalpa*. Others (VB, NB, NBB, HA) disagree and state clearly that since such *vikalpa* has already been abandoned in *nir-vitarka*, which is a lower samādhi, how can it continue to be pursued in the next higher stage, which is *sa-vichāra*? This seems to be more in accord with Vyāsa, who says:

Thus, by explaining *nir-vitarka*, the absence of *vikalpa* in the case of both of these has been explained.

**Sūtra I.45**

सूक्ष्मविषयत्वं चालिङ्गपर्यवसानम् ।  
 sūkṣhma-viṣhayatvam् chālinga-paryavasānam

*sūkṣhma-*: subtle  
*viṣhayatvam*: the state of having as objects } the state of having  
*cha*: and subtle objects  
*a-**linga-*: without marks, unmodified *prakṛti*  
*pary-avasānam*: extending up to, ending at

And “having subtle objects” extends up to unmodified *prakṛti*.

### Vyāsa's Commentary

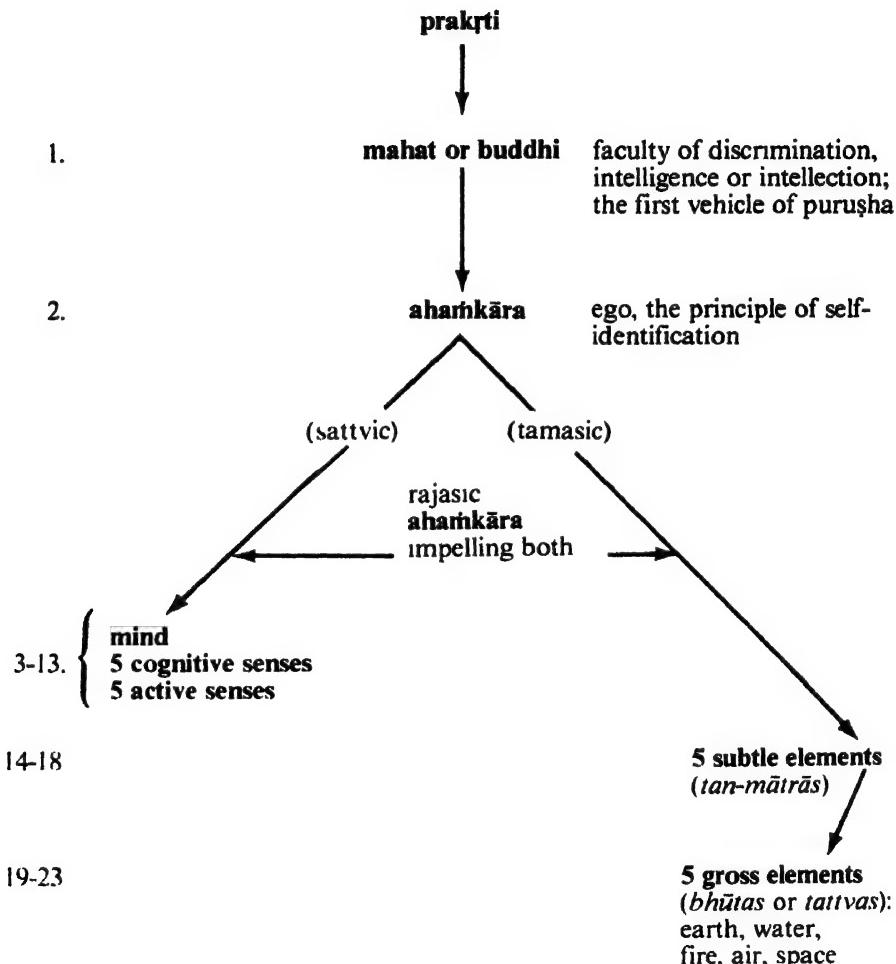
The subtle realm of an object related to the atoms of the earth element is the odour *tan-mātrā*; of the water element is the flavour *tan-mātrā*; of the light or fire element is the visibility (or form) *tan-mātrā*; of the gaseous element is the tangibility *tan-mātrā*; of the space element is the sound *tan-mātrā*.

The (subtle realm) of these *tan-mātrās* is ego (ahamkāra). The subtle realm of even this ahamkāra is *linga-mātra* (mahat). The *a-**linga* (*prakṛti*) is the subtle domain of even the *linga-mātra*. There is nothing subtler beyond *a-**linga* (*prakṛti*).

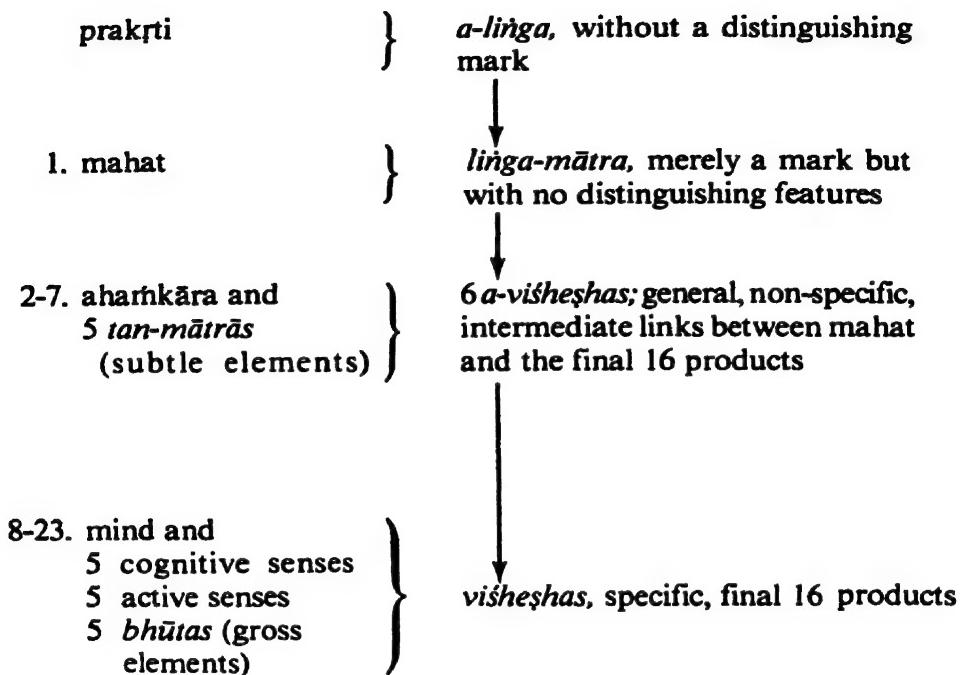
Now, puruṣha also is subtle, is that not so? True. But the subtlety of puruṣha is not in the same category as that of *a-**linga* beyond the *linga*. Furthermore, purusha is not the material cause of *linga* but an efficient cause. Thus the unexcelled subtlety as it is in *prakṛti* has been explained.

### Discussion

The relationships among the various evolutes of *prakṛti* were somewhat explained in the overview of Sāṅkhya-yoga (Part 2 of the General Introduction to this volume) and in the paraphrase of the *Tattva-samāsa-sūtrav* (Part 3 of the General Introduction). These will be further studied in Sūtra II 19. Two charts from the overview of Sāṅkhya-yoga (on pp. 34 and 35) are repeated here to help clarify this scheme.



*Yoga-sūtra* II.19 gives alternative explanatory titles as follows:



Further explanatory details of these may be studied in the works on Sāṅkhya philosophy.

Three words used by Vyāsa should be well understood: (1) *linga*, (2) *linga-mātra*, and (3) *a-linga*. The conventional (*rūḍhi*) meaning of the word *linga* is “a mark” or “a sign.” Because a subtle energy or evolute cannot by itself be observed, its grosser evolutes serve as its manifestations, the marks or signs of its presence. The derivative (*yaugika*) meaning of the word *linga* is “that which dissolves, vanishes, dis-appears,” from the verb root *li*. The products, effects, evolutes, alter or cease their appearance in the evolute mode as they vanish and dissolve back into their subtler causes, as a jar dissolves into clay in the process of *prati-saṅchara* (TSS 7) or *prati-prasava* (YS IV.34). For this reason all the twenty-three evolutes (TSS 2, 3) are called *linga*.

Mahat, however, is called *linga-mātra*, “a mere sign.” It has no other special distinguishing marks. Because of its sattvic nature, it has no form but merely the capacity to receive puruṣha’s reflection, as explained in defining *asmitā* (YS I.8,17,36; II.6,19).

Prakṛti, the equilibrium of guṇas, dissolves into nothing further; therefore, it is non-*linga* (*a-linga*).

As explained in Sūtras I.17 and I.42-44, after concentration on the five gross elements has perfected the *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka samāpatti*, meditation progresses to the realization of the subtler principles, such as the corresponding *tan-mātrās*, into which a person’s consciousness of the gross elements is dissolved.

Vyāsa takes pains to emphasize that the reference to the subtle objects of concentration (*sūkṣhma-viṣhaya*) in the last sūtra does not mean that only atoms (*paramāṇus* or *āṇus*) and the subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) constitute the limit of the subtle realm. Such a mistake could be made because objects of concentration in the *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi are the subtle elements and the subtle senses, and Sūtra I.44 speaks of the *savichāra* and *nir-vichāra samāpatti* as being realizations of the subtle realm. The subtle realm does not end there but extends all the way up to the higher *samprajñātas*, where ahāṃkāra and *linga-mātra* (mahat) are realized. Thereafter *a-linga*, the nonquantitative principal matter, prakṛti, is understood.

Another important point needs to be made here: Even though the formal Sāṅkhya system considers prakṛti to be beyond any cognition at all—too shy a maiden to show her face to puruṣha’s consciousness—she is mastered by *prakṛti-layas*, as Patañjali and Vyāsa have pointed out in Sūtra I.19. Thus the yogi’s subtle realm extends all the way up to prakṛti. But, as Vyāsa says,

There is nothing subtler beyond *a-linga* (prakṛti).

Vyāsa now answers another question:

Now, puruṣha also is subtle, is that not so? True. But the subtlety of puruṣha is not in the same category as that of *a-linga* beyond the *linga*. Furthermore, puruṣha is not the material cause

of *linga* but an efficient cause. Thus the unexcelled subtlety as it is in prakṛti has been explained.

Puruṣha is not an object of concentration. He is subtle but in an entirely different category from prakṛti and its evolutes. Whereas the grades of subtlety in prakṛti's evolutes are comparative, puruṣha's subtlety is not relative but absolute. Unlike prakṛti, puruṣha has no products as its effects. He is an indirect cause of the awareness *asmi*, "I am," that makes its appearance in the composite sentience (*asmitā*) when puruṣha's presence passively reflects in *liṅga-mātra*. That is the entire extent of his involvement.

Since the topic of these sūtras is *samprajñāta samādhi*, and it is not till the *asamprajñāta* that puruṣha's isolation occurs, the degrees of subtleness mentioned here lead only up to prakṛti.

A question arises: Bearing in mind that Sūtras I.47-50 extol the perfection of *nir-vichāra samādhi* and that Sūtra I.51 explains *asamprajñāta samādhi*, what happened to the *ānanda*-accompanied and *asmitā*-accompanied samādhis which were included in Sūtra I.17? Though this has not been answered by Vyāsa or any of the commentators, it appears that the term *nir-vichāra* is not limited to being a variation of the *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi alone. The term has to be taken in a broader sense to include the other two samādhis, which appear to have been left out here. There are two reasons why this is so:

1. The higher two samādhis also are in this sense *nir-vichāra samāpatti* because the accompaniment of subtle thought has ceased. The experience in *ānanda*-accompanied samādhi is "I am in rapture," and in *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi it is simply "I am." These are neither discursive thoughts associated with *vitarka*-accompanied samādhi nor subtle thoughts of *vichāra*-accompanied samādhi, but rather experiences in *nir-vichāra samāpatti*.
2. The subtle realm of samādhi extending up to prakṛti implies recognition of the other two *samprajñātas*.

Since there are such significant differences of opinion or interpretation among the commentators on this sūtra, no reference has been made to them.

**Sūtra I.46****ता एव सबीजः समाधिः।****tā eva sa-bijah samādhiḥ***tāḥ:* those*eva:* very ones*sa-bijah:* with seed, seeded*samādhiḥ:* samādhi

**Those very ones are the samādhi with seed.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Those four *sa-māpatti*s have exterior realities as their seeds; thus samādhi, too, is with seed (*sa-bija*). Of these, *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka* are (concentrations on) the gross object and *sa-vichāra* and *nir-vichāra* are on the subtle object. Thus is samādhi counted to be fourfold.

### Discussion

Most commentators (VM, VB, NB, NBB, BG, NTB, RY, BM) have struggled with this sūtra, trying to resolve the apparent contradiction in the number of samādhis. Ignoring Vyāsa's clear statement, these commentators have said that there are eight (VM, NTB, RY, BM) or six (VB, NBB) kinds of samādhi and have tried to determine the exact position of the *ānanda*-accompanied and the *asmitā*-accompanied samādhis with reference to the four *sa-māpatti*s. It is unimportant to present their enumerations, classifications and differing arguments. Suffice it to say that Vyāsa has *not* stated that there are four kinds of samādhi but rather that they are *chaturdhā*, "divided fourfold." As explained in the last sūtra, the division is as follows:

*sa-vitarka samāpatti* = *sa-vitarka samādhi*

*nir-vitarka samāpatti* = *nir-vitarka samādhi*

*sa-vichāra samāpatti* = *sa-vichāra samādhi*

*nir-vichāra samāpatti* = { *nir-vichāra samādhi*  
*ānanda*-accompanied samādhi  
*asmitā*-accompanied samādhi

All of these, being concentrations on and realizations of supportive factors (*ālambanas*), are samādhis with seed (BR, BM). Some commentators (NB, BG) say that they cause saṁskāras which serve as the seed of the elimination of sorrow and hence they are *sa-bija*; this is obviously incorrect—otherwise how would this category of samādhi be contrasted with the seedless (*nir-bija*), which is the final freedom from sorrow? Others (NBB, RY, NTB, NTC, SS) say accurately that it is *sa-bija* because it yet contains the seed of bondage. Since the yogi has still not reached the discriminating wisdom (*viveka-khyāti*), his concentrations are on realities that are within the composite person and exterior to puruṣa.

**Sūtra I.47****निर्विचारवैशारद्येऽध्यात्मप्रसादः।****nirvichāra-vaiśhāradye'adhyātma-prasādaḥ**

*nir-vichāra-vaiśhāradye:* upon purification and proficiency of *nir-vichāra*

*adhyātma-:* spiritual, in regard to ātman

*prasādaḥ:* pleasant clearness

**Upon reaching the purity and proficiency of *nir-vichāra*, the yogi gains spiritual clearness.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Luminosity is the self-nature of the sattva of buddhi. "Proficiency and purity" (*vaiśhāradya*) means that the maculateness (*mala*) of the veil of impurity is removed from it and its stable flow, un-subjugated by rajas and tamas, is clear.

When the proficiency (*vaiśhāradya*) of *nir-vichāra* samādhi has occurred, then there ensues the yogi's spiritual clarity (*prasāda*), which is the illumination of wisdom (*prajñā*) revealed (*sphuṭa*) with regard to the realm of matters as they are, and without being obstructed by sequence.

As it is said:

Having risen to the clarity (*prasāda*) of wisdom (*prajñā*),  
the wise man, no more to be grieved for,  
looks upon grieving people  
as one on a mountaintop (views) those on the ground (below).

### Discussion

This sūtra describes the lucid beauty of the *nir-vichāra* state (VM) as follows:

Impurity means the accumulation of rajas and tamas (VM, MB) as well as the vice, etc. which cause their growth (VB, NBB). The same is the taint, macula, maculateness (*mala*), that becomes a veil (VM, VB, NBB) consisting of instability and dullness (HA). Even though the sattva of buddhi is naturally luminous, luminosity being

its very self-nature (*prakāsha-ātman*), it loses its immaculate nature when it becomes subdued by such a stain. When it is no longer tainted, purification and spiritual proficiency (*vaiśhāradya*) occurs. This means that the mind-field becomes free of afflictions (*kleśha*) and the resultant propensities (*vāsanās*) and is thereby capable of a stable flow (BR). *Vaiśhāradya* is further defined as that stream of concentration (*ekāgratā-dhārā*), synonymous with stable flow, which receives and reflects back the clearly reflected image of the entire whole as well as the particular aspects of the object of meditation (*dhyeya*) (VB, NB, NBB, BG, RY). Briefly, this proficiency means the mind's firmness in its stability (BR, AD). Consequently it also means that because of the expertise in advanced practice (*abhyāsa*) (BR, SS), the material aspects all the way to *prakṛti* are subordinated and the power of consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) is ascendant (SS).

A question arises as to the use of the word *adhyātma* ‘spiritual’. Since the field of *samprajñāta* samādhi consists yet of objects exterior to *puruṣha*, how can there already occur an awareness of the spiritual self (*adhi-ātman*)? This can be answered in two ways. First, the word *ātman* does not always mean the spiritual self. This word is frequently used in the reflexive sense of “oneself.” *Adhyātma* here means the development of oneself inward, towards one’s spiritual nature and the faculties controlled by the self (TSS 8). Here its field is limited to *buddhi* (VB, NB, NBB, BG, HA), although some commentaries mistaking this sūtra as referring to *asamprajñāta* (SS) erroneously include *puruṣha* (NBB) or the spiritual self (RY). One should not argue too much against this because the final result of *samprajñāta* is discriminating wisdom whereby the force of the power of consciousness (*chiti-śakti*) is realized (SS) as the origin of all one’s awareness.

But Vyāsa clarifies that the primary intent of the words “spiritual clarity” (*adhyātma-prasāda*) here is that

there ensue the yogi’s spiritual clarity (*prasāda*), which is the illumination of wisdom (*prajñā*) revealed (*sphuṭa*) with regard to the realm of matters as they are, and without being obstructed by sequence.

The wording here is very suggestive. It reminds one of Vyāsa's passage on Sūtra I.1:

That, however, is called samādhi of wisdom (*samprajñāta yoga*), which in a one-pointed mind-field

- fully illuminates an actual state or object that has become real, has been realized,
- diminishes the afflictions and impurities (*kleśhas*),
- loosens the bonds of karma, and
- brings about the possibility of control (*nirodha*) face to face, as it were.

All these promises of samādhi are being fulfilled in this sūtra. Not only does the pleasant clarity (*prasāda*) as explained in Sūtra I.16 occur, but also the same *prasādana* promised through the mind-purifications (*pari-karmas*) in I.33 and the following sūtras is gained. The light of wisdom shines, illuminates, the objects of concentration without reference to sequence of moments or states; it sheds light simultaneously upon their entirety without being hindered in any way.

In the verse from the *Mahābhārata* which Vyāsa quotes, the word *prasāda* also suggests *prāsāda* 'a palace'. The yogi has climbed upon the palace of purity, from where, as a sovereign, he observes those below, but not in pride. *Anu-paśhyati* suggests that he looks after and cares for them in compassion. "No more to be grieved for, (he observes the) grieving people" also carries this message: So long as a human being remains in such a pitiable, ignorant condition that others should sympathize with and grieve for him, he considers others to be happier than himself, and thinks that he alone has fallen into sorrows; but the yogi is now happy and sees those below him as sorrowful (VB, NBB), suffering the three kinds of pain (VM) as defined in *TSS* 23.

**Sūtra I.48**      ऋतम्भरा तत्र प्रज्ञा।  
**r̥tambharā tatra prajñā**

*r̥tam-bharā*: Truth-bearer, Truth-bearing, bearer of Supreme Truth  
*tatra*: there  
*prajñā*: wisdom

Therein occurs that wisdom which bears the Supreme Truth (*rta*).

### Vyāsa's Commentary

The wisdom (*prajñā*) that accrues when the mind-field has reached samādhi in that (*nir-vichāra samāpatti*) has the appellation “bearer of Supreme Truth” (*r̥tam-bharā*). The meaning befits its name because it bears Truth alone. Nor is there even a modicum of falsified knowledge. As is said,

By authority (*āgama*), and by logic (*anumāna*),  
 And by enjoyment of the practice (*abhyāsa*)  
     of meditation (*dhyāna*),  
 Cultivating wisdom in three ways  
 One gains the highest yoga.

### Discussion

The ancientmost word for the Supreme Truth of universal and divine laws is *rta*, extolled in many hymns of the *Rg-veda*. The Vedic sages (*r̥shis*) constantly sought, strived for and prayed for that wisdom in which the knowledge of *rta* is revealed.<sup>41</sup> According to the tradition (VB, VM, BG), *r̥tam-bharā* (the bearer of Truth) is the technical term (*tāntrikī paribhāṣhā*) used within the circle of yogis for the realization that occurs in the *nir-vichāra* samādhis. It does not occur in *sa-vitarka* and *nir-vitarka* samādhis because they are alloyed with imaginary cognitions (*vikalpa*), as explained in Sūtra I.42. This *r̥tam-bharā* is never veiled by perverse cognition (*viparyaya*) (BR, AD), for it bears unalterable (*a-vikalpita*) Truth

<sup>41</sup> For further study of this concept in the Vedas see Raimundo Panikkar, *The Vedic Experience Mantra-manjari* (Berkeley and Los Angeles University of California Press, 1977)

(RY). Commentators mistaking this sūtra to refer to *asamprajñāta* also say that it bears, brings forth, the knowledge of the absolute puruṣha (NB, BG, NTC, SS) and is synonymous with *dharma-megha* (SS). But that is inaccurate, as others (VB) point out that the word “therein” (*tatra*) refers to *sa-bīja* samādhi, spoken of in Sūtra I.46, and even there, only to the highest of the *sa-bīja*, namely, *asmitā*-accompanied samādhi (NBB).

The source of the verse quoted by Vyāsa is unknown and is probably from some lost text. The three ways of cultivating wisdom, namely authority (*āgama*), logic or inference (*anumāna*) and the practice of meditation (*dhyāna-abhyāsa*), are again equated, respectively, with *śhravaṇa* (hearing the teaching), *manana* (contemplating) and *nididhyāsana* (meditating). These are common to all traditions and have been referred to earlier in Sūtra I.43. The efficacy of the first two, *āgama* and *anumāna*, will be emphatically denied in the next sūtra; and here they are given perhaps only to introduce their forthcoming dismissal.

The phrase

*dhyāna-abhyāsa-rasa*

is quite meaningful, as it points out that mere practice of *dhyāna* is inefficient without *rasa*, which means “due respect” (*ādara*) (VM, VB), as was explained in Sūtra I.14. Furthermore, the word *rasa* also means “essence,” “flavour” and “enjoyment.” One seeking to receive Truth-bearing wisdom should take pleasure in and enjoy the flavourful essence of the practice of meditation.

**Sūtra I.49**

**श्रुतानुमानप्रज्ञाभ्यामन्यविषया विशेषार्थत्वात् ।**  
**śruti-anumāna-prajñābhyām anya-viṣhayā  
 viśheṣha-arthatvāt**

*śruta-:* (from) tradition, learning, hearing

*anumāna-:* (from) logical processes, logic, inference

*prajñābhyām:* (from two kinds of) wisdom

*anya-:* (having) different, other

*viṣhayā:* scope, field, object, domain, realm

*viśheṣha-arthatvāt:* because of having special purpose, aim, significance

(Truth-bearing wisdom) is different in scope from the wisdom gained by learning or from processes of logic because it has a special aim, that of dealing with particulars.

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

Now, that

[*Sūtra.*] (Truth-bearing wisdom) is different in scope from the wisdom gained by learning or from processes of logic because it has a special aim, that of dealing with particulars

Scriptural authority and the teaching received orally (*śruta*) is the same as the knowledge conveyed within the *āgama* proof category. The field is generalities. The *āgama* cannot communicate the particular. Why (not)? Because a word is not established in its signification with reference to the particular. Also, the field of inference is already the general. It is said that wherever there is arrival or attainment (*prāpti*), there is locomotion or endeavour (*gati*). Furthermore, inference leads to a conclusion (only) through a generality. Therefore no *particular* (*viśheṣha*) is the field of teaching (*śruta*) and inference (*anumāna*)

Nor can this subtle, concealed and distant reality (*vastu*) be grasped with direct mundane perception (*loka-pratyakṣha*). Nor (should it be thought that) because there is no proof for the particular, it is non-existent. It can be grasped only through samādhi-

wisdom, whether it occurs in the subtle aspects of the elements (*bhūta-sūkṣhma*) or in the spiritual self (*puruṣha*). Therefore, that wisdom is different in scope from the wisdom gained by learning or from the processes of logic, because it has a special aim, that of dealing with particulars.

### Discussion

It was stated in the last sūtra that one receives wisdom from authoritative teaching (*śruta* and *āgama*) and from the processes of logic, that is, inference (*anumāna*). Concentration on realities which have been understood through these means leads a yogi to *nir-vichāra samāpatti*. That being the case, *nir-vichāra* would succeed in helping to realize the subjects of *śruta* and *anumāna* only because a mental impression (*samskāra*) created from observation of one object is incapable of producing knowledge of a different object. Following the same line of thought further, it would then appear that if *nir-vichāra* produces Truth-bearing wisdom, *śruta* and *anumāna* should also be able to produce the same (VM). Then what purpose is served by yoga (VB, NB, NBB, BG)? The response to this objection is as follows: The nature of the sattva of buddhi is illumination. It is capable of observing all matters, but since buddhi is covered and obscured by tamas, it is only when rajas opens a way that the sattva of buddhi grasps any reality. However, when the maculation of both rajas and tamas is washed off through practice (*abhyāsa*) and dispassion (*vairāgya*), then buddhi's clarity shines forth and all boundaries and limitations imposed by external proofs burst through. There is only endless light. What then can be left unilluminated (VM, RY)?

The field of *śruta* and *anumāna* is indeed apart from that of *nir-vichāra samādhi*. Words are incapable of producing knowledge of particulars. The word "cow," for example, cannot refer to each individual cow separately because there are simply an endless number and variety (HA) of them, nor can they all be present simultaneously as a singularity. Furthermore, one can be confused with another (VM, VB, NB, NBB, BG, RY). As to the efficacy of inference (*anumāna*) to reveal particulars, its failure was already pointed out in Sūtras I.7 and I.43. For instance, a statement of concomitance,

such as “Wherever something is seen to have arrived, it must have moved,” is based on generalities or commonalities, and all conclusions drawn are based on connecting the common attributes. Only direct perception gives knowledge of anything particular; but the direct perception of Truth-bearing wisdom is entirely different in scope from that of the direct perception with senses in the ordinary world (*loka-pratyakṣha*). In the Truth-bearing wisdom even those subtle, concealed or distant realities, which are closed to direct perception, become known to the yogis with respect both to their subtle, material aspects and to their spiritual aspects (VM, HA). All aspects of such realities are realized in their entirety all at once (BM).

The things which the senses are incapable of grasping are what is grasped in *nir-vichāra samādhī*. And that particular nature of the subtle evolutes and atoms on one hand and of the spiritual realities on the other is what is validated by the yogi’s direct perception (*yogi-pratyakṣha*) (VM).

It may be asked that since direct perception in the philosophy of logic requires close contact between a perceiver’s senses and the object perceived (Gotama’s *Nyāya-sūtra* 1), how can a yogi perceive the subtle, the hidden or the distant which is beyond such contact? The answer is that the internal sense (*antah-karana*) is undivided and all-pervading. It is in close contact with all realities at all times. Once again, when rajas and tamas are washed off, it perceives without hindrance those realities which are too subtle, hidden or distant for the occluded external senses (VB). This direct experience also replaces the need for any external physical proof of the existence of such higher reality.

One might ask how the inner sense, an evolute of *prakṛti*, can grasp the reality of the particular spiritual self (*puruṣha*). The answer is that since the present discussion is about the Truth-bearing wisdom of *nir-vichāra* and the realization of *puruṣha* occurs only in *asamprajñāta*, it is only the spiritual reality of *puruṣha*’s reflected presence in *asmitā* that is intended here by Vyāsa (HA). Furthermore, the discussion on the inefficacy of *śruti* and *anumāna* with regard to the experience of *asamprajñāta* applies equally to the final realization of the spiritual self.

**Sūtra I.50**

**तत्त्वः संस्कारोऽन्यसंस्कारप्रतिबन्धी।**

**tat-jah̄ saṁskāro'nya-saṁskāra-pratibandhi**

*tat-jah̄:* arising from that, produced from that

*saṁskārah:* saṁskāra, impression, imprint in the subtle domain  
(*karmāśaya*)

*anya-:* (of) other

*saṁskāra-:* saṁskāras

*prati-bandhi:* that which impedes, hinders, resists, opposes, checks,  
inhibits, blocks, prevents, annuls

**The imprint (saṁskāra) produced from that (samādhi-wisdom)  
opposes and annuls other saṁskāras.**

### Vyāsa's Commentary

Upon attainment of samādhi-wisdom, the yogi's saṁskāra produced by that wisdom is continuously renewed, being repeatedly strengthened afresh.

[*Sūtra:*] The imprint (saṁskāra) produced from that (samādhi-wisdom) opposes and annuls other saṁskāras.

The imprint (saṁskāra) produced by the samādhi-wisdom impedes (*bādh*) the domain (*āśhaya*) of the saṁskāras of worldly disturbance (*vyutthāna*). Once the *vyutthāna-saṁskāras* are over-powered, the cognitions (*pratyayas*) arising from them no longer occur. Upon control and cessation (*nirodha*) of the cognitions (*pratyayas*), samādhi presents itself. Thence the wisdom (*prajñā*) born of samādhi; thence the saṁskāras created from the wisdom; thus accumulation (*āśhaya*) of (such) saṁskāras repeated anew. Thence wisdom; thence (again) the saṁskāras—thus.

How is it possible that this accumulation of saṁskāras in their domain will not give power (*adhikāra*) to the mind-field? The saṁskāras created by wisdom (*prajñā*), being the means (*hetu*) of the reduction (*kṣhaya*) of afflictions (*kleśhas*), do not cause the mind-field to become possessed (*vi-śiṣṭha*) of such power (*adhikāra*).

They, in fact, cause the mind-field to exhaust and turn away from its act (*kārya*). Indeed, the mind-field's endeavour terminates at discriminating wisdom (*khyāti*).

## Discussion

The reader should bear in mind that the word “wisdom” (*prajñā*) conveys the same sense as was explained in Sūtra I.17: the realization attained in *sam-prajñāta samādhi*. The word *vyutthāna* is the antonym of *samādhi* and means “worldly involvement,” as used in Sūtras I.3 and I.14. The saṃskāras accumulating in their domain in the subtle body form the *saṃskāra-āśhaya*, as explained in Sūtra I.24.

As the saṃskāras of samādhi gather force and are constantly renewed, the *vyutthāna-saṃskāras* weaken. The old *āśhaya* is replaced with continuously replenished new saṃskāras of samādhi, which produces the wisdom of realizations, which again reinforces the saṃskāras of samādhi. Thus the cycle of *vṛttis* and worldly saṃskāras described in Sūtra I.5 is broken. Because these saṃskāras of the wisdom of samādhi are of the unafflicted (*a-kliṣṭa*) kind, they do not add to that power (*adhikāra*) of the mind-field which draws one's awareness into the external world. The mind-field's power to serve as the vehicle of ignorance (*avidyā*) and I-am-ness (*asmitā*) is therefore weakened. Upon attainment of discriminating wisdom its function ceases except as an instrument totally under the yogi's command. (The continuity of this residue of saṃskāras was explained in Sūtra I.18.)

This sūtra indicates the fruit and result of the Truth-bearing wisdom (*rtambharā prajñā*) of the last two sūtras (BR). A question arises, however, as to the ability of the newly acquired samādhi saṃskāras to overcome the *vyutthāna* saṃskāras. Some commentators argue that it may be that *samprajñāta* practised with the proper methods (*upāyas*) leads to higher realizations (VM), but it is actually as powerless before the beginningless (see Sūtra I.4) worldly saṃskāras as a tiny candle flame before a stormy wind (VM, NBB); also the saṃskāras of past enjoyments (*bhoga*) of the senses are too powerful to let it become stable (RY). The present

sūtra answers this argument. The word “that” (*tat*) in the sūtra refers to the *nir-vichāra samāpatti* (VM). It is the nature of buddhi to be attracted towards reality (*bhūta-artha*) (see Sūtras I.1 and I.47). It wanders confused only until it finds the true nature (*tattva*). Having found the true nature of things, buddhi becomes established towards it (VM, NBB). Saṁskāras of this stability produce a like buddhi, and thus the new cycle breaks the former beginningless cycle of ignorance of *tattva* and the like buddhi (VM). This samādhi produces saṁskāras of a real nature (*tattva*) which impede opposing, or non-that-ness (*a-tattva*), saṁskāras (BR, RY). This bias of buddhi towards reality is accepted even in other philosophical systems (as, for example Kumārila’s *Pramāṇa-vārttika* III.222) (VM, NBB).

What is the meaning of *prati-bandh* in the sūtra? That the wisdom impedes (*bādh*) the other saṁskāras. That is, it prevents their effects (VB), namely the *vṛttis* (NB) or their memory (*smṛti*) (BG). It renders them inefficacious, incapable of functioning (BR). This refers only to the saṁskāras that are dormant in their domain. The word *āśhaya* (from *ā* + *śhī*) means “that which sleeps” (VB, NBB). The reference, then, is not to those saṁskāras which have already become awakened as *vṛttis* or as results and fruits of past actions, but to those which yet lie dormant (VB, NBB). It also opposes the saṁskāras produced from the distracted (*vikṣipta*) ground (HA), one of the five grounds (*bhūmis*) of the mind-field (see Sūtra I.1). The growth of the wisdom-saṁskāra is the same as the diminution of the *vikṣhepa-saṁskāras*; the two are simultaneous (HA). However, only the unbroken flow of the stream of one-pointedness (*ekāgratā-dhārā*) is effective (NB).

Now, when a certain realization (*prajñā*) has occurred in *sam-prajñāta* samādhi, does that then suffice to overcome the power of the worldly saṁskāras (VB, NBB)? In addition, when a yogi has once accomplished *samprajñāta*, why must he then keep practising it repeatedly (VB, NB, BG)? Repeated experience of *samprajñāta* confirms and strengthens its saṁskāras, without which the worldly *vyutthāna-saṁskāras* will keep arising. A single experience alone does not thwart them, but the opposing saṁskāras of repeated practice gradually attenuate them, thin them down (*tanū-karana*)

(YS II.2,4,10). Thus a cycle of samādhi-wisdom-saṁskāra-samādhi ensues, and the cycle of saṁskāras and vṛttis diminishes in power. When the final realization (*prajñā*) occurs, the power of the *vyutthāna*-saṁskāras ceases. In other words the Vedānta view that knowledge (*jñāna*) alone leads to liberation is accurate only with reference to the ultimate wisdom, but first the attenuation (*tanūkaraṇa*) of the worldly saṁskāras by cultivating the samādhi-saṁskāras must occur and reach its perfection (VB, NBB). The statement that the realization of this wisdom diminishes and abolishes *kleśhas* and past saṁskāras has led commentators to ask a further question (VB, BG) about the state and status of karma in the yogi who has reached this far. As the texts (such as *Viṣṇupurāṇa* VI.7.35 and *BhG* IV.37) state, the fire of yoga burns away all karmas, and yoga abolishes all accumulated sin (*pāpa*). There are many levels at which the strength of karmas is reduced. There are many expiatory observances of prayer, ritual and right acts that reduce the power of existing karmas and their saṁskāras by adding to the *karmāśaya*, the internal domain of karma, the force of these thoughts and acts. But this does not free one from the totality of karma, because that which has been planted must bear fruit, and the inclination towards involvement in further acts still remains. Thus, diluting past accumulations of evil saṁskāras by the addition of fresh and benevolent acts is not in the same category as burning them by the power of yoga, that is, samādhi.

The statements about yoga burning the karmas apply only to the extent that yoga eliminates those evil accumulations which impede the realization of true knowledge. When knowledge has arisen, all karmas and their saṁskāras are abolished *except* the *prārabdha* saṁskāras, the sum total gathered from past lives which had initially determined the yogi's birth in the given species, life span in that particular life, and pleasures and pains (such as physical illness) that ensue in that lifetime. *Prārabdha* samskāras thus keep the momentum going for the yogi's continued existence in the present life. But there is no additional fresh accumulation of worldly saṁskāras (VB, BG).

There is, however, a great difference between cultivating the

sāṃskāras of *samprajñāta* and the awakening of final wisdom. The samādhi-sāṃskāras reduce the pain-causing power of the *vyaithāna-sāṃskāras*, but one still needs to say “Enough!” to this wisdom. The desire for *siddhis* has yet to be conquered. The trap of desiring to become a *videha* or *prakṛti-laya* still has to be avoided. When even these sāṃskāras vanish with the mind-field’s dissolution into its cause, only then and not before will the sāṃskāra of ignorance (*avidyā*) be overcome as the *dharma-megha* samādhi ensues. When all these sāṃskāras are vanquished, then the cycle of the fruition of karma in reincarnation ceases. The single knowledge, beyond this process, which leads to liberation is the one beyond discriminating wisdom (*viveka-khyāti*). Of that higher stage the next sūtra will speak (VB, NB, NBB, BG).

Another question may be raised: It is known throughout the *Yoga-sūtras’* teaching that sāṃskāras give power to the mind to become active so that vṛttis are produced; even though the sāṃskāras of samādhi subdue the worldly sāṃskāras, do not the samādhi-sāṃskāras produce their own kind of activity in the mind and enhance its continuation as an involver (*pra-varitaka*)? Would not this then produce further afflictions (*kleśhas*)? The answer is that the vṛttis and sāṃskāras of samādhi are unafflicted ones (*a-kliṣṭa*); therefore they produce no more afflictions. Furthermore, prakṛti, including its evolute the mind, has only two purposes:

- to present experiences (*bhoga*) to puruṣa, and
- to aid him in attaining liberation (*mokṣha*)

At the perfection of *samprajñāta* samādhi and attainment of *viveka-khyāti* the mind has fulfilled its purpose and can proceed no further; its *adhikāra*, that is, its assignment, duty, and the power to carry them out, is now exhausted. The mind is henceforth dismissed, dissolved into equilibrium.

**Sūtra I.51**

**तस्यापि निरोधे सर्वनिरोधान्निर्बाजः समाधिः।**  
**tasyāpi nirodhe sarva-nirodhān-**  
**nir-bijah samādhiḥ**

*tasya:* of that

*api:* even

*nirodhe:* upon control, cessation, dissolution

*sarva-:* (of) all

*nirodhāt:* through *nirodha*, dissolution

*nir-bijah:* seedless

*samādhiḥ:* samādhi

**When the control, cessation and dissolution (*nirodha*) of even that saṁskāra occurs, the *nirodha* of all else ensues and, thereby, seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi (is attained).**

**Vyāsa's Commentary**

And what else happens to him?

[*Sūtra:*] When the control, cessation and dissolution (*nirodha*) of even that saṁskāra occurs, the *nirodha* of all else ensues and, thereby, seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi (is attained).

This samādhi not only opposes the samādhi-wisdom (*prajñā*) but impedes even the saṁskāras produced by samādhi-wisdom. Wherefore? Because the saṁskāra produced by control (*nirodha*) counteracts (*bādh*) the saṁskāra generated by samādhi.

The existence of samskāras created by the mind-field in the state of *nirodha* (*nirodha-chitta*) is inferred on the basis of the experience of the sequences of time (that elapse) during the state of the stability of *nirodha*. The mind-field dissolves into its own causal nature (*prakṛti*), which (ever) remains in that inactive condition. It does so together with those saṁskāras which have been produced by the samādhi that constitutes worldly involvement (*vyutthāna*)<sup>42</sup> and

42 Here *vyutthāna* means *samprajñāta* samādhi, which is a worldly involvement in contrast to *a-samprajñāta*, which is the topic of this sūtra

cessation (*nirodha*). Thus, those saṃskāras are opponents of the empowerment (*adhikāra*) of the mind-field, not causes of its (continued) maintenance (*sthiti*).

Since that mind-field whose empowerment (*adhikāra*) has been terminated withdraws (*vi-ni-vṛt*) together with the saṃskāras that are conducive to isolation, upon its thus turning off (*ni-vṛt*), the spiritual self (*puruṣha*) is established in his own self-nature (*svarūpa*) and is therefore called pure, one alone in isolation (*kevala*), and free or liberated (*mukta*).

*Here in Patañjali's Sāṅkhya-pravachana, and in Vyāsa's Commentary, ends the first, the chapter on samādhi, within the Science and Discipline of Yoga.*

## Discussion

It has been explained that the purpose of creating the saṃskāras of samādhi-wisdom in *samprajñāta* is to eliminate the mind-field's empowerment (*adhikāra*) to provide experience of the material world (*bhoga*) to *puruṣha* (VM). However, this accumulated wisdom from *samprajñāta* is not sufficient to free one from reincarnation (VB).<sup>43</sup> How can a mind-field filled with and perpetuating the saṃskāras of samādhi-wisdom reach seedless samādhi (RY)? To answer this question, the sūtra now states the result of *asamprajñāta*. The saṃskāras of *samprajñāta* still maintain the mind-field's other assignment, which is to lead one to isolation (*kaivalya*). This assignment, too, must be fulfilled so that the final termination of this *adhikāra* may occur (VM). VB says that at the lower levels of *asamprajñāta* each succeeding level brings under control and dissolves the realization of the preceding one, at the same time attenuating their saṃskāras. Only with the final *asamprajñāta* does the total elimination of the lower wisdoms, the realizations that occur at lower *samprajñātas*, occur. Since Patañjali and Vyāsa, however, do not divide *asamprajñāta* into these levels, VB's statement is more appropriately applicable to the differentiation into levels of

43 NB, NBB, and BG for the most part repeat VB on this sūtra, and BM echoes VM. Where any have an original opinion, it is indicated

*samprajñāta*. As one progresses in *samprajñāta*, the wisdom-vṛtti at each level is dissolved into its own cause; as each vṛtti arises from a saṃskāra, the yogi observes “not this, not this” (*neti, neti*), and thus denying them any worth and continuing to pursue reality, he finally reaches the seedless, *asamprajñāta*, samādhi (BR, AD). This view is more in harmony with what has been discussed in Sūtra I.17 and echoes the teaching of the Upaniṣhads (e.g., *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣhad* II.3.6; III.9.26; IV.2.4; IV.4.22; IV.5.15).

*Asamprajñāta* not only eliminates the lower wisdoms of *samprajñāta* but also overcomes their saṃskāras. This is the transcendent dispassion (*para-vairāgya*) explained in Sūtra I.16, and is synonymous with *nirodha* (VM). The question arises (VM): Granted that the realization arising from such dispassion may counteract the *samprajñāta*-wisdoms which are a form of ideation (*vijñāna*); but how can it also overcome these saṃskāras, since they are not in the category of ideation? Would they not have to remain the way the memory of a dream object remains during wakeful experience? Vyāsa says (VM) that while *nirodha* itself eliminates the wisdom of *samprajñāta*, the saṃskāras of the *nirodha* counteract the saṃskāras of that wisdom. Again, it is not that a single realization of *asamprajñāta* accomplishes all this, but rather that when continuous and uninterrupted practice, observed for a long time and with due respect (see Sūtra I.14), is constantly strengthened, it causes an unbroken flow of *asamprajñāta*, and these final results accrue.

Some commentators, however, have asked, How can we know that there exist saṃskāras of *nirodha*? There can be no direct perception of it to serve as proof, since such proof is a vṛtti and this *nirodha* is the elimination of all vṛttis. Nor can such a non-vṛtti leave a memory. Being above the chain of causation, its existence cannot be inferred by seeing some effect. How can one establish the proof of such a nonentity and of any possible saṃskāras being created by it (VM, VB)? Vyāsa answers that the transcendent dispassion grows in stages. When the yogi comes out of *asamprajñāta* he observes the time that has elapsed and thereby infers that *nirodha* has indeed occurred. (VM) It is the accumulated force of

such frequent *nirodhas* that creates an imprint (*sāṃskāra*), till it grows to the utmost possible degree; if this were not so, the growth in intensity and length of *asamprajñāta* would not occur. Thus one infers that both *nirodha* and its *sāṃskāras* do occur.

The argument is constructed slightly differently by HA: How *vṛttis* produce *sāṃskāras* is obvious. That *sāṃskāras* in turn produce *vṛttis* is also known. They do so by first generating *pratyayas*, cognitions, presented to the mind. As *sāṃskāras* arise to the surface, a cognition (*pratyaya*) is formed and presented to the mind-field, just as *vṛttis* introduced externally present cognitions (*pratyayas*) to the mind-field, creating further *sāṃskāras*. *Sāṃskāras* have only one function, and that is to generate *pratyayas*. When such *pratyayas* arise no more, it may be assumed either that the *sāṃskāras* were not formed or that they have been exhausted or, finally, that *nirodha* has occurred. However, the question remains as to the nature of the *sāṃskāras* of *nirodha*. Since *nirodha*, not being a *vṛtti*, cannot produce a cognition (*pratyaya*), how can a *nirodha-sāṃskāra* form? The answer is that the flow of *pratyayas* exists before *nirodha* and continues after it. The break in that flow is recognized by the mind, and this recognition constitutes the *nirodha-sāṃskāra*. As these breaks occur more frequently and become prolonged, the tendency to *nirodha* grows. Again, if *nirodha* formed no *sāṃskāras* at all, how would its growth, which is clearly noticed, occur? Finally the flow of *pratyayas* totally ceases and *samādhi* becomes permanent (HA). Activity alone constitutes a reason for the continuity of the mind. That reason having been abolished, the mind is dissolved and *puruṣha* dwells in his own nature.

A further objection is suggested by VM and VB: It is well that the *sāṃskāras* of the *samādhi*-wisdom are eliminated; but, then, how may the *sāṃskāras* of *nirodha* be overpowered? Or do they remain? But if so, the mind-field thus keeps its empowerment to act. For could not these *sāṃskāras* again be revived into activity through the will of a yogi or of *iśvara*, in the same way that a seed which looks burnt sometimes sprouts? This question is resolved by a better understanding of Vyāsa's position (VM, VB): Up to the

mastery of *samprajñāta*, the word *vyutthāna* served as an antonym to *samādhi* and denoted worldly involvement of the mind. In contrast to *asamprajñāta* now, *samprajñāta* also is *vyutthāna*, a lower-level awareness. The innermost part (*antar-aṅga*) of yoga is *asamprajñāta*, in comparison to which *samprajñāta* is an exterior part (*bahir-aṅga*) (SS). What for an ordinary person is opening the eyes from *samprajñāta* into the world, for a yogi is coming down into *samprajñāta* from *asamprajñāta*. Those saṁskāras of *samprajñāta* which are conducive to isolation (*kaivalya*) have helped the mind-field to fulfil its final assignments. Now, when the saṁskāras of *nirodha* form, they do not produce further vṛttis, thus rendering the mind inactive. Having fulfilled its assignment and having no further purpose to accomplish, the mind-field now dissolves into its cause (RY). As to the case of *videhas* and *prakrti-layas*, let it not be said that the mind's empowerment continues because of *nirodha-saṁskāras*; these yogis, not having reached *asamprajñāta*, do not have any *nirodha-saṁskāras*. The power (*adhikāra*) of their chittas continues because of the propensities (*vāsanās*) produced by the afflictions (*kleshas*).

An argument is presented by NB and BG: Knowledge gained in *samprajñāta* burns all the past karmas except *prārabdha*.<sup>44</sup> *Prārabdha* is spent and exhausted as it comes to fruition in the form of karma-produced pains and pleasures. Thus, through *samprajñāta*-wisdom all other karmas are exhausted and the *prārabdha* takes care of itself and eventually becomes exhausted. Naturally liberation (*mokṣha*) will follow. Why, then, is there need for *asamprajñāta*? BG says that *asamprajñāta* only hastens the liberation so that the yogi does not have to wait for the *prārabdha* to be exhausted. NBB, however, has a better answer: The saṁskāras produced by *samprajñāta* are saṁskāras of a vṛtti from the exterior world. Until these saṁskāras are somehow burnt, there can be no final *nirodha* and consequently no liberation. *Asamprajñāta* alone is capable of burning the *prajñā-saṁskāras* and is thus absolutely essential for liberation. In fact, propensities (*vāsanās*) of *prārabdha* cannot find

<sup>44</sup> See Sūtra I.1 (p. 90) for an explanation of *prārabdha*

a substratum when the very *karmāshaya*, the domain and realm of karmas and saṃskāras, has been purified or burnt and the mind-field itself has been dissolved. That being the case, even *prārabdha* may not come to fruition and is burnt out because its coefficients (*saha-kārin*) have been eliminated.

There being no objects of concentration (*ālambanas*) in *asam-prajñāta* (in contradistinction to *samprajñāta*), it is called seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi. Then one no longer rises from samādhi. This must not be misconstrued to mean that the yogi remains physically sitting in meditation; rather, it means that his awareness remains pure. This state is free of those seeds, such as saṃskāras, that produce sorrows (VB); it is also free of the saṃskāras of *sam-prajñāta*-wisdom, which otherwise might bind the yogi again (NBB). All these seeds being absent, this samādhi is called seedless (*nir-bija*). *Asamprajñāta* is also called the “great sleep” (*mahā-nidrā*) of the mind-field (NBB, BG).

It is not that *puruṣha* had become sullied and is now pure (*śhuddha*), but rather that pains, etc. are no longer attributed to it. It is not that it had become involved and is now isolated (*kevala*), but rather that it cannot be considered to be involved. It is not that it was bound and has now been liberated (*mukta*), but rather that the bondages of buddhi can no longer be said to have been transferred to it. Hence, says Vyāsa:

The spiritual self (*puruṣha*) is established in his own self-nature (*sva-rūpa*) and is therefore called pure, one alone in isolation (*kevala*), and free or liberated (*mukta*).

In other words, upon the attainment of *nir-bija* samādhi the mind-field can no longer arise into *vyaithāna*, and so it vanishes; then the consciousness-potentia or the consciousness-force (*chiti-śakti*), which is absolutely eternal (*kūṭastha-nitya*), infinite and pure, dwells in her own glory, without obstruction and forever, and this is very beautiful (SS).

This chapter (VM) has stated:

- *uddesha*: the name and title (Sūtra 1)
- *nirdeśha*: the definition (Sūtras 2-4) (and, in that context, all the following:)
- the definition of *vṛtti* (Sūtras 5-11)
- the methods for accomplishing yoga (Sūtras 12-16, 20-24)
- the divisions or classifications of yoga (Sūtras 17-19, 41-51)

This may be expanded (BR) as follows:

- stating the commencement of yoga (Sūtra 1)
- the definition of yoga (Sūtras 2-4)
- explanation of the words *chitta-vṛtti* and *nirodha* (Sūtras 5-11)
- the two means, *abhyāsa* and *vairāgya*, and their definition (Sūtras 12-16)
- the primary (*asamprajñāta*) and secondary (*samprajñāta*) yogas (Sūtras 17-19)
- briefly, the methods (*upāyas*) of yoga (Sūtras 20-22)
- an easy method (*iśvara-praṇidhāna*)  
and the relevant explanation  
and statement of its results (Sūtras 23-29)
- (in the context of the results of *iśvara-praṇidhāna*)  
the nine obstacles (*vikṣhepas*)  
and their correlates (Sūtras 30-32)
- the methods for overcoming the obstacles  
and their correlates (Sūtras 32-40)
- (as these obstacles are overcome)  
further explanations of samādhis  
and their accomplishments (*samāpattis*)—  
first the seeded (*sa-bija*)  
and then the seedless (*nir-bija*) samādhi (Sūtras 41-51)

# Bibliography

## Primary Sources

Patañjali, *Yoga-sūtras*

- with *Yoga-pradīpikā* by Baladeva Miśhra. Edited by Dhundhiraja Shastri. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1931.
- with the commentaries *Rāja-mārttaṇḍa* by Bhojarāja, *Pradīpikā* by Bhāvāgaṇeśha, *Vṛtti* by Nāgojī Bhaṭṭa, *Maṇi-prabhā* by Rāmānanda Yati, *Pada-chandrikā* by Ananta-deva Pandit, and *Yoga-sudhākara* by Sadāśivendra Sarasvatī. Edited by Dhundhiraja Shastri. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1930.
- with the commentaries *Yoga-siddhānta-chandrikā* and *Sūtrārtha-bodhīnī* by Nārāyaṇa Tīrtha. Edited by Ratna Gopāla Bhaṭṭa. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1911.
- with the commentary *Bhāṣhya-vivarana* of Śaṅkara-bhagavat-pāda. Edited with an introduction by Polakam Sri Rama Sastri and S. R. Krishnamurthi Sastri. Madras Government Oriental Manuscripts Library Series, no. 94. Madras, 1952.
- with the commentaries *Tattva-vaiśhāradī* of Vāchaspati Miśhra and *Yoga-vārttika* of Vijñāna-bhikṣhu. Edited by Narayana Mishra. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1971.
- with the commentaries *Tattva-vaiśhāradī* of Vāchaspati Miśhra edited by Rajaram Bodas and *Vṛtti (Brhatī)* of Nāgojī Bhaṭṭa edited by Vasudev Shastri Abhyankar. Bombay Sanskrit and Prakrit Series, no. 46. Bombay: Government Central Press, 1917.

- with the scholium of Vyāsa and the commentaries of *Tattva-vaiśhāradī*, *Pātañjala-rahasya*, *Yoga-vārttika* and *Bhāsvati* of Vāchaspati Miśhra, Rāghavānanda Sarasvatī, Vijñāna-bhikṣhu, and Hariharānanda Āraṇya. Edited by Gosvāmī Dāmodara Śāstrī. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1935.

*Bhāgavata-purāṇa*. Gorakhpur, India: Gita Press, 1968.

*Bṛhad-yogi-yājñavalkya-smṛti*. Edited and translated into Hindi by Swami Kuvalayananda and Pandit Raghunatha Shastri Kokaje. Lonavla, India: Kaivalyadhamā, 1951.

Dīkṣhita, Rāma-bhadra. "Śaḍ-darśhana-siddhānta-saṅgraha." Sarasvatī-bhavan Library, Tanjore.

Krishna-vallabhāchārya. *Kiraṇa*. Edited by Shveta-vaikuntha Shastri and Narayana Sharana Shastri. Banaras, 1939.

Mādhaba. *Sarva-darśhana-saṅgraha*. Edited by Uma Shankar Sharma. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1964.

*Mahābhārata*, with Nīlakanṭha's Commentary. Pune: Chitrashala Press, 1968.

*Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*. Edited by Śhrīram Sharma Acharya. Bareli, India: published by the editor, 1978.

Udāsīna, Balarāma. *Commentary on the Yoga-sūtras*. Edited by K. B. R. Sinha. Bankipore, 1867, 1897.

Upaniṣhad-brahma-yogin. *Bhagavad-gītārtha-prakāshikā* [a Sanskrit commentary on the *Bhagavad-gītā*]. Edited by the pandits of the Adyar Library. Adyar, India: Adyar Library, 1941.

Vijñāna-bhikṣhu. *Yoga-sāra-saṅgraha*. Edited by Swamī Sanatana Deva. Delhi: Motilal Banarsiādass, 1956.

*Viṣṇu-purāṇa*. Gorakhpur, India: Gita Press, 1932.

Other primary texts consulted and cited such as the Upaniṣads, Purāṇas and *Bhagavad-gītā* are not included in this bibliography. Well-known editions of these texts are readily available to scholars. Numerous translations of the *Yoga-sūtras* in several Indian languages have been reviewed but are not useful to the average reader. A detailed bibliography of primary and secondary sources on Patañjali is to be found on pp. 58-65 in Karl Potter's *Bibliography of Indian Philosophies*, vol 1 of *The Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, citing 126 titles. It does not include some of the titles consulted by us.

### **Translations of the *Yoga-sūtras* of Patañjali**

- Āraṇya, Swami Hariharānanda. *Yoga Philosophy of Patañjali*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1977.
- Ballantyne, James Robert. *The Aphorisms of the Yoga Philosophy of Patanjali, with illustrative extracts from the Commentary by Bhoja Raja*. Allahabad: Presbyterian Mission Press, 1852-53.
- Bangali Baba. *Patanjala Yoga Sutra*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsi Dass, 1976.
- Boissenain, J. W. *Yoga-Soetra's door Patanjali: Leerspreuken der Eenheidsstrevung*. Haarlem, Netherlands: J. W. Boissenain and Co., 1918.
- Dvivedi, Manilal Nabhubhai, ed. and trans. *The Yoga-Sūtras of Patañjali*. Adyar, India: Theosophical Publishing House, 1934.
- Feuerstein, Georg. *The Yoga-Sūtra of Patañjali: A New Translation and Commentary*. Folkestone, England: Dawson, 1979.
- Isbert, Otto Albrecht. *Raja Joga, der königliche Weg der Selbstmeisterung in Westlicher Sicht und Praxis*. Gelnhausen, West Germany: Verlags Union Bündingen-Haingründau, 1955.
- Johnston, Charles. *The Yoga Sutras of Patañjali*. London: John M. Watkins, 1964.
- Judge, William Q. *The Yoga Aphorisms of Patanjali*. Los Angeles: United Lodge of Theosophists, 1920.
- Leggett, Trevor. *Śārikara on the Yoga-sūtra-s: The Vivaraṇa sub-commentary to Vyāsa-bhaṣya on the Yoga-sūtra-s of Patañjali*. Vol. 1, *Samādhi*; Vol. 2, *Means*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1981, 1983.
- Mangoldt, Ursula von. *So Spricht das Yoga-Sutra des Patanjali*. Munich: O. W. Barth, 1957.
- Mitra, Rājendralāla. *Yoga Aphorisms of Patañjali, with the Commentary of Bhoja Rāja*. Bibliotheca Indica Series, no. 93. Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1881-83.
- Prabhavananda, Swami, and Christopher Isherwood. *How to Know God: The Yoga Aphorisms of Patanjali*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1953.
- Rāma Prasāda, trans. *The Yoga-sūtras of Patañjali with the Commentary of Vyāsa and the Gloss of Vāchaspati Miśra*. Vol. 4 of *The Sacred Books of the Hindus, Translated by Various Sanskrit Scholars*. Edited by Major B. D. Basu. 1912. Reprint. New York: AMS Press, 1974.
- Shree Purohit, Swami. *Aphorisms of Yoga by Bhagawan Shree Patanjali*. London: Faber and Faber, 1938.

- Stephen, Daniel R., trans. *Patanjali for Western Readers*. London: Theosophical Publishing House, 1919.
- Taimni, I. K. *The Science of Yoga*. Madras, India, and Wheaton, Ill.: Theosophical Publishing House, 1961.
- Tirtha, Swami Omananda. *Pātañjala-yoga-pradīpa* (in Hindi). Gorakhpur, India: Gita Press, 1960.
- Woods, James Haughton, trans. *The Yoga System of Patañjali*. Harvard Oriental Series, vol. 17. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1914. Reprint. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1927.
- Woods, James Haughton. "The Yoga Sūtras of Patañjali as Illustrated by the Commentary entitled 'The Jewel's Lustre,' or Maṇiprabhā." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 34 (1915): 1-114.

### Translations of Other Source Material

- Mādhavāchārya. *The Sarva-darśana samgraha; or, Review of the Different Systems of Hindu Philosophy*. Translated by Edward Byles Cowell and Archibald Edward Gough. London: Trübner and Co., 1882.
- Mahadeva Sastrī, Alladi, ed. *Yoga Upanishads, with the Commentary of Śri Brahma-Yogin*. Madras: Adyar Library and Research Centre, 1968
- Vijñāna-bhikṣhu. *Yoga-Sāra-Sangraha*. Translated by Ganganatha Jha. Rev. ed. Theosophical Publishing House Oriental Series, no. 10. Madras, India: Theosophical Publishing House, 1933.

### Secondary and Reference Literature

- Apte, V. S. *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsiādass, 1970
- Arya, Usharbudh. *God*. Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1979
- . *Mantra and Meditation*. Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1983.
- Bahm, Archie J. *Yoga: Union with the Ultimate*. New York: Unger, 1967.
- Bedekar, V. M. "The Dhyānayoga in the Mahābhārata (XII.188)." *Munshi Indological Felicitation Volume, Bharatiya Vidyā* 20:115-25, 21:1960-61.
- Catalina, Francis Victor. *A Study of the Self Concept of Sankhya-Yoga Philosophy*. Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1968

- Dani, Ahmad Hasan. *Alberuni's Indica*. Islamabad, Pakistan: University of Islamabad Press, 1973.
- Dasgupta, Surendra Nath. *A History of Indian Philosophy*. Vols. 1 and 2. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1963, 1965.
- . *A Study of Patañjali*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1920.
- . *Yoga as Philosophy and Religion*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1924.
- . *Yoga Philosophy in Relation to Other Systems of Indian Thought*. Calcutta: University of Calcutta, 1930.
- Deussen, Paul. *Allgemeine Geschichte der Philosophie*. Vol. 1, pt. 3. Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1920.
- Edgerton, Franklin. "The Meaning of Sāṅkhya and Yoga." *American Journal of Philosophy* 45 (1924): 1-46.
- Eliade, Mircea. *Yoga: Immortality and Freedom*. Translated by Willard R. Trask. 2d ed. Bollingen Series, no. 61. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1969.
- . *Patañjali and Yoga*. Translated by Charles L. Markmann. New York: Schocken Books, 1975.
- Feuerstein, Georg. *The Essence of Yoga: A Contribution to the Psychohistory of Indian Civilization*. London: Rider, 1974.
- . *The Philosophy of Classical Yoga*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1980; Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1980.
- . "Some notes on the final stages of yoga according to Patañjali." *Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan* (Bombay: Rajendra Prasad College of Mass Communication and Media) 37 (1971): 1-12.
- . *The Yoga-Sūtra of Patañjali: An Exercise in the Methodology of Textual Analysis*. New Delhi: Arnold-Heinemann, 1979.
- Feuerstein, Georg, and Jeanine Miller. *Yoga and Beyond: Essays in Indian Philosophy*. New York: Schocken Books, 1972.
- Frauwallner, Erich. *Geschichte der indischen Philosophie*. Vol 1. Salzburg: O. Muller, 1953.
- Garbe, Richard von. *Sāmkhya und Yoga*. Strassburg: K. J. Trübner, 1894.
- Gonda, Jan. *Die Religionen Indiens*. Vol 1. Stuttgart: W. Kohlhammer Verlag, 1960.
- Hauer, Jakob Wilhelm. "Das IV Buch des Yogasūtra." *Studia Indo-Iranica: Ehrengabe für Wilhelm Geiger*, edited by Walther Wust. Leipzig: Otto Harrassowitz, 1931.

- \_\_\_\_\_. *Der Yoga, ein indischer Weg zum Selbst.* Stuttgart: W. Kohlhammer, 1958.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Die Anfänge der Yogapraxis im Alten Indien.* Stuttgart: W. Kohlhammer, 1922.
- Hopkins, E. Washburn. "Yoga Technique in the Great Epic." *American Oriental Society Journal* 22 (1901): 333-79.
- Hultsch, E. "Sāmkhya und Yoga im Śiśupālavadha." *Aus Indiens Kultur: Festgabe für Richard von Garbe*, edited by Julius von Negelein. Erlangen: Palm and Enke, 1927.
- Isbert, Otto Albrecht. *Raja-Joga, der königliche Weg der Selbstmeisterung in Westlicher Sicht und Praxis.* Gelnhausen, West Germany: Verlags-Union Bündinger-Haingründau, 1955.
- Jacob, George Adolphus. *A Concordance to the Principal Upanishads and Bhagavadgita.* Bombay: Government Central Book Depot, 1891.
- Jacobi, Hermann. "Über das Ursprüngliche Yoga System." *Sitzungsberichte der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften.* Berlin: Akademie Verlag, 1929.
- Janáček, Adolf. "The Meaning of Pratyaya in Patañjali's Yoga-Sūtras." *Archiv Orientalní* 25 (1957): 201-60
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Methodological Principle in Yoga according to Patañjali's Yoga-Sūtras." *Archiv Orientalní* 19 (1951): 514-67.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Two Texts of Patañjali and a Statistical Comparison of their Vocabularies." *Archiv Orientalní* 26 (1958): 88-101
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The 'Voluntaristic' Type of Yoga in Patañjali's Yoga-Sūtras." *Archiv Orientalní* 22 (1954): 69-87.
- Johnston, Charles. *The Yoga-Sūtras of Patañjali. The Book of the Spiritual Man.* New York: Quarterly Book Dept., 1912.
- Joshi, K. S. "On the Meaning of Yoga." *Philosophy East and West* 15, no. 1 (1965): 53-64
- Karnāṭak, Vimla. *A Critical Study of the Patanjala-Yoga-Sūtra in the Light of its Commentators* (in Hindi). Banaras Hindu University Sanskrit Series, no. 10. Varanasi: Chowkhambā, 1974.
- Koelman, Gaspar M. *Pātañjala Yoga: From Related Ego to Absolute Self.* Poona, India: Papal Athenaeum, 1970.
- Larson, Gerald James. *Classical Sāmkhya: An Interpretation of its History and Meaning.* Delhi: Motilal Banarsiādass, 1969.
- LaVallee Poussin, Louis de. "Le Bouddhisme et le Yoga de Patanjali" *Milanges Chinois et Bouddhiques* 5 (1937): 223-42.

- Müller, M. *The Six Systems of Indian Philosophy*. London: Longmans, 1916.
- Oberhammer, Gerhard. "Gott, Urbild der Emanzipierten Existenz im Yoga des Patañjali." *Zeitschrift für Katholische Theologie* (Vienna) 1964: 197-207.
- . *Strukturen Yogischer Meditation. Veröffentlichungen der Kommission für Sprachen und Sudasiens, Heft 13*. Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1977.
- Panikkar, Raimundo. *The Vedic Experience: Mantra-manjari*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1977.
- Pensa, Corrado. "On the Purification Concept in Indian Tradition, with Special Regard to Yoga." *East and West* n.s. 19 (1969): 194-228.
- Pines, Shlomo, and Tuvia Gelblum. "Al-Birūni's Arabic Version of Patañjali's *Yogasūtra*." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 29 (1966): 302-25 and 40 (1977): 522-49.
- Potter, Karl H., comp. *Bibliography of Indian Philosophies*. Rev. ed. Vol. I of *The Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*. American Institute of Indian Studies. Delhi: Motilal Banarsi Dass, 1979.
- Rama, Swami *Choosing a Path*. Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1982.
- . *Inspired Thoughts of Swami Rama*. Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1983.
- Rama, Swami, Rudolph Ballentine, M.D., and Swami Ajaya. *Yoga and Psychotherapy*. Honesdale, Pa.: Himalayan International Institute, 1976.
- Sahay, Mahajot. "Pātañjala-Yogasūtras and the Vyāsa-Bhāṣya: An Examination." *Vishveshvaranand Indological Journal* 2 (1964): 254-60.
- Śaṅkarāchārya. *Bhāṣya on Śvetāśhvatarā Upaniṣhad*. In *Ten Principal Upaniṣads with Śāṅkarabhāṣya*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsi Dass, 1964, 1978.
- Shukla, Nalini. *Pātañjala-yoga-sūtra kā vivechanātmak evam tulanātmak adhyayan* (A critical and comparative study of Pātañjala-yoga-sūtra; in Hindi). Kanpur: Shakti-yogāshram and Nalini Shukla, 1975.
- Takagi, S. Shingen. "On 'Kriyā-yoga' in the *Yoga Sutra*." *Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies* 15, no. 1 (1966): 451ff.
- Weldon, Ellwood Austin. "The Sāṃkhya Term, Līṅga." *American Journal of Philology* 31 (1910): 445-59.
- . "The Sāṃkhya Teachings in the Māitri Upaniṣad" *American Journal of Philology* 35 (1914): 32-51.

438 BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Winternitz, Moriz. *Geschichte die indischen Litteratur.* 3 vols. Leipzig: Amelang, 1905-22.
- Zigmund-Cerbu, Anton. "The Śādaṅgayoga." *History of Religions* 3 (1963): 128-34.
- Zimmer, Heinrich Robert. *Kunstform und Yoga in indischen Kultbild.* 1926. Reprint. New York: Garland, 1981.

# Glossary/Index

The Glossary/Index lists in English alphabetical order the most significant Sanskrit and occasional Pāli words used in the text. Information given with each word includes a brief definition and selected locations in which the word appears. No effort has been made to cite every place in which a given word may be found.

**a-bhāva** Negation; a negative; absence; non-being; a state of non-being; non-production; non-appearance; absence of *vṛttis* of waking and dream states; absence of all other *vṛttis* mentioned in the *Yoga-sūtras*.

176, 178, 179, 249, 254, 320

**abhāva-pratyaya** Causal principle; cognition principle of negation. 178

**abhāva-yoga** Yoga of absence or negation of all transient feelings and states. 120

**abheda-bhrama** Error or illusion of non-distinction. 384

**abhi-buddhi** An activity of intelligence, e.g., "I must do this." 43

**abhi-dheya** *Significatum* (the signified). 315

**abhi-dhyāna** Directing one's thought, will or concentration towards (God). 277

**abhijāta** Pure-born. 371

**abhimāna** An activity of intelligence, e.g., "I do this"; assumption of a false identity attributed to the spiritual self. 43, 127

**abhimata** Agreeable, desired, or favourite object of choice; any object of one's choice. 335, 365

**abhiniveśha** Fear of death; "May I not cease to be"; "I fear my death, the death of this body that I am." *Abhiniveśha* is a *klesha* whose real name is blind nocturnal (*andha-tāmisra*, q.v.) 44, 162, 169, 170

**abhi-vyakti** Manifestation. 120

**abhoga** (The mind-field's gross) expansion; the awakening of a wisdom (*prajñā*) in which a realization of the true nature of an object of concentration has occurred. 218, 226

**abhyantara** Internal. 98

**abhyāsa** Practice; the endeavour (*yatna*) to make the mind stable; the endeavour with regard to, for the purpose of, stilling the mind. (See also *abhyāsa*'s correlate, *vairāgya*.) 106, 193, 195-97, 198, 248, 336, 342

**abhyāsa-pāṭava** Expert or skillful practice. 146

**abhyudaya** Worldly success in the present life. 36

**āchārya** A teacher who has himself experienced self-realization; a scholar-savant and commentator. 6, 27, 110, 214

**ādara** Respect. 415

**a-dharma** Unrighteousness; vice. 85, 93, 285

**adhi-ātman** The spiritual self. 412

**ādhibhautika** Caused by other beings such as beasts of prey, enemies, etc. One of the three kinds of pain (*duḥkha*). 47, 329, 330

**adhi-bhūta** Pertaining to the attributes of the five gross elements and other beings. 42, 43

**ādhidaivika** Caused by deities, planetary influences and other natural forces such as heat, cold and conscious powers of the subtler worlds. One of the three kinds of pain (*duḥkha*). 47, 329, 330

**adhi-deva (adhidaiva)** Pertaining to celestial and subtle worlds, conscious powers of nature, angelic beings, planetary deities, etc. 42, 43

**adhigama** Attainment; realization 320

**adhikāra** Purpose, topic; beginning of subject matter; prerogative; empowerment; teacher's authority, a student's qualification, and the statement of a commencement, assignment; assignment or duty and the power to carry it out. 19, 66-67, 141, 419, 423, 425, 428

**adhikāra-sūtra** A *sūtra* that states the purpose or subject matter of a text or a portion thereof. 21, 61

**adhikārin** Qualified; one who is qualified for a study. 280

**adhimātra** Extreme; ultimate. 258, 275

**adhiṣṭhātṛ** Ruling power. 306

**adhiṣṭhātṛtva** Command over the dominion (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 301

**adhyāropa** Superimposition. 127

**adhyāsa** Superimposition. 311, 384

**adhyātma** Spiritual; pertaining to *ātman*; development of oneself inward, towards one's spiritual nature and the mental and physical faculties controlled by the self. 42, 411, 412

**adhyātma-prasāda** Spiritual clarity. 412

**adhyātma-vidyā** Pursuit of proficiency, knowledge, of a spiritual science. 200

**ādhyātmika** Within oneself; internal to oneself. One of the three kinds of pain (*duḥkha*). It is twofold: mental, such as desire, passion, jealousy, greed, fear, depression; and physical, such as caused by the imbalance of humours. 47, 329, 330

**adhyāya** Study in the formal sense of study of the Vedas, requiring recitation, adhering to strict principles of enunciation and accentuation, memorizing each word accurately, etc. 318

**a-dvaita** Non-dual. 67n

**advaita-yoga** Yoga of non-duality. 91

**āgama** Revealed authority (one of the valid proofs [*pramāṇas*])); textual, scriptural or inspired-revealed authority; authoritative textual tradition; knowledge derived from an inspired text, one's tradition or a realized teacher, (one's accepted) tradition and scriptural authority. A matter seen or inferred by an accomplished person is transferred in the form of words *into* another person: the *vṛtti(s)* from that word, together with its matter and meaning as the object, is the listener's acquisition (*āgama*). Literally, "that which comes." 143, 149, 161, 214, 266, 295, 390

**āgamin** One who is versed in the *āgama*, the textual authority as well as the tradition of the yoga lineage. 312

**aham** I. 237

**ahamkāra** Ego; ego process; the identifying principle by which the composite sentience (*asmitā*) begins to identify itself as such-and-such a being, e.g., "I am this body." 94, 225, 245

**aiśhvarya** Sovereignty and spiritual freedom; lordship (one of the ten immutables in the Lord); worldly success, power, luxury and affluence. An abstract noun formed from *iśvara* (the Lord). 93, 101, 205, 206, 301

- a-jñāna** Ignorance, e.g., false perception and sleep. 93, 105
- ākāñkṣhā** Aim; intent. 115, 137
- ākāśha** Space. 356, 369, 370
- a-khyāti** Non-apprehension; non-perception. 166-67
- a-klīṣṭha** Not painful; not afflicted; pure; not imbued with *kleśhas*. A proof (*pramāṇa*) or a *vṛtti* leading one to rise beyond attraction or aversion is *a-klīṣṭha*. 135, 138
- a-kuśhala** Not well; ill. 282, 285
- alabdha-bhūmikatva** Failing (despite observances) to reach the plateau of confirmed achievement of a state of consciousness (failing to gain a ground). 324, 327-28
- a-lakṣhya** Unworthy of a detailed definition. 83
- alam!** Enough! 213
- ālambana** Resorting to; supported by; leaning on; dependent on; having as a base; object of concentration or meditation as support. A supportive factor (for *samprajñāta*) may be any of the following: the twenty-three evolutes of matter; primary matter (*prakṛti*); the individual self; an aspect or incarnation of God. (See also *dhyeya*.) 120, 178, 220, 361, 372, 374, 429
- ālasya** Laziness; languor; sloth; (because of) heaviness of body owing to fat, phlegmatic tendencies or heaviness of a *tamasic* mind. 324, 327
- alāta-chakra** Circle of fire (as) when a torch is whirled rapidly. 137
- ālaya-vijñāna** Universal idea. (See also *vijñāna-vāda*.) 395
- a-liṅga** Unmanifest; without mark; non-quantitative; without characteristics; unmanifest, unmodified *prakṛti* in the state of complete equilibrium of the three *guṇas* (*sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas*). 35, 225, 404, 407
- a-liṅga-paryavasāna** Extending up to unmodified matter (*prakṛti*). 404
- a-lupta-śakti** Power, potentia (*śakti*) that never suffers a loss or a reduction. 301
- a-marṣha** Intolerance. 342
- anādhi-bodha** Beginningless wisdom (enlightenment). 301
- an-aiśhvarya** Loss of sovereignty. (See also *aiśhvarya*.) 93
- an-ākula** Free of disturbance. 269
- ānanda** Ecstasy; rapture. 218
- ānandamaya koṣha** Sheath of bliss (in which the self is mistaken to be happy, unhappy, suffering pain or enjoying pleasure). 245

- ānanda-anugata** A *samādhi* accompanied by ecstasy, rapture (*ānanda*). (See also *sānanda*.) 224
- ānantarya** Transition in a sequence. 66
- ananta-śakti** Infinite power; potentia (*śakti*). 301
- ānāpāna-sati** Pāli for mindfulness of inhalation and exhalation—the paramount Buddhist meditation practice; breath awareness entailing slow, controlled exhalation (*prachchhardana*) and slow, controlled inhalation (*vidhāraṇa*); measured breathing. 268, 348
- an-ātman** Non-self. 396
- anattā** Pāli for *an-ātman* (non-self). 396
- an-avachchhedā** Absence of delimitation, break or division. 305
- an-avasthitatva** Instability, inability to maintain a ground or level; having gained a higher ground, one falls from it. 324, 328
- andha-tāmisra** Blind nocturnal (the real name of *abhinivesha*, q.v.); blind night (period of dissolution in a single cycle). 168, 169
- aṅga** Limb; part; support; means; complement. 37, 75, 76, 85, 96, 200, 301
- aṅgam-ejayatva** Unsteadiness or shaking of the body; movement and twitching of the limbs in meditation. 329, 331
- aṅgāṅgi-bhāva** A convention of Indian logic whereby when a statement is made concerning a complete entity (*angin*, one who owns *aṅgas* or parts), each one of its parts (*aṅgas*) is already presumed to be included. 75
- aṅgin** A whole constituted of parts (*angas*). 75, 85, 96
- aṇimā** Power to become minute (a *siddhi*). 168
- añjana** That which anoints. 397
- annamaya koṣha** Sheath made of food (in which the mortal personality passing through various physical states is mistakenly identified as the self) 245, 246
- antaḥ** Ending in; extending up to. 368
- antaḥ-karaṇa** Inner mental instrument; the eleventh sense; psyche; the fourfold inner sense or instrument consisting of *manas*, *buddhi*, *ahamkāra* and *chitta*. 94-95, 352
- antaḥ-prajña** Inwardly conscious (as with the sleep state) This term is used in verses 4 and 7 of the *Maṇḍūkya Upaniṣad*. 180
- antaḥ-sañjña** Inwardly conscious (as with a sleeping person). 180
- antar-aṅga** Innermost part. 428

- antarāya** Obstacle; impediment; obstruction. (See also *chitta-vikṣhepa*.) 320, 324
- antarāya-abhāva** Absence of obstacle, impediment or obstruction. 320
- antar-yāmin** Indweller; the dweller within; pervading within all things and beings. 300, 306
- anu** Prefix meaning “within, subsequent, following” (as *anu-śhāsana*, “within” a tradition). 62, 71, 72
- apu** Atom; minute. 368, 407
- anubandha** Binding reason. 60
- anu-bhūta** That which has been experienced. 185, 186
- anu-gama** Accompaniment. 218
- anugata** Accompanied by. 224
- anu-graha** Grace; grace given; benefit conferred; benevolence; kindness. 295
- anugraha-sarga** (Fivefold) compassionate creation, which includes the five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) as well as appearances of divine, incarnate sages. 46
- anumāna** Inference (a valid proof [*pramāṇa*])); a rational, logical, inferential process leading to a conclusion. *Anumāna* (primarily) determines the general rather than the specific since its object is the inferable conforming to the homogeneous and excluding the non-homogeneous. 143, 149, 150, 159, 214, 266, 387, 390, 414, 416
- anumāna-prajñā** Wisdom gained from inference or logical processes. 416
- anu-paśhya** To look after; to care for. 413
- anupātī (anu-pātin)** Following; dependent upon. 171
- anu-śhāsana** Instruction; discipline; teaching that follows within (*anu*) a tradition. *Anu-śhāsana* connotes (a) that the yogic discipline is imparted only after a disciple has demonstrated purity of observances in self-discipline and has prepared the ground for the seed to be sown, and (b) that what is being taught has been taught before, that it is within an existing tradition with no claim that anything new has been created. 62, 69, 71-73
- anuśhravika** Heard of in a tradition, scripture or in any other authoritative source. 169, 205
- anu-smṛti** Repeated awareness. 268
- anuss̄ti** Pāli for *anu-smṛti*. cultivating repeated awareness (as with *ānāpāna-sati*). 268

**anu-viddha** Intertwined. 381

**anu-vṛtti** Implicit succession, i.e., a word in one *sūtra* is implied in one or more subsequent *sūtras* until it is no longer needed. 178-79, 315 n. 30

**anu-vyavasāya** The awareness *buddhi* has that it cognizes, apprehends, or experiences. 189

**anvaya** Induction (as in logic). 152

**anya** Another; the other; different. 248, 258, 416, 419

**anya-saṁskāra-pratibandhin** That which blocks, counters or prevents other impressions. 419

**anyathā-khyāti** Misapprehension. 166

**anya-vishayā** Different in scope. 416

**apāna** *See prāṇa(s).*

**a-para** Not transcending. 209

**a-parā-mṛṣṭa** Unsmeared. 282

**apara pratyakṣha** A lower category of direct perception as opposed to transcendental, direct perception (*para pratyakṣha*). 386

**apara-vairāgya** The lower dispassion (which is an attempt at dispassion for *all* attraction whatsoever), which falls within *samprajñāta samādhi* only. *Apara-vairāgya* relates to worldly objects, unlike *para-vairāgya* (q.v.), which relates to the *gunas* and to knowledge. It is divided into four steps or stages: *yatamāna* (initial effort), *vyatireka* (ascertainment), *ekendriya* (pertaining to the single sense, mind, only), and *vaśikāra* (control and mastery). 209-11

**apariṇāmin** Immutable. 126

**āpātataḥ** Incidentally. 145

**apavarga** Liberation; final liberation; deliverance; the Supreme Good. 145, 351, 353

**āpta** An accomplished person; one who has attained; a noble teacher; authority; one who combines (a) *tattva-darśhana*—realization of reality; (b) *kārunya*—motivation to remove the suffering of others (compassion); and (c) *karuṇa-pāṭava*—strength of senses and body and expertise in the use thereof. 160

**āpti** Attainment. 160

**a-puṇya** Vice; nonvirtue; nonvirtuousness; nonmeritoriousness. 340

**āpyāyita** Filled and expanded. 214

**ārambha-vāda** *See a-sat-kārya-vāda.*

**artha** A matter; meaning; reality; an actual substance; actual state or object that is realized; a purpose; aim; object of pursuit; object denoted, signified or meant; object of concentration. 62, 84, 153, 173, 187, 315, 333, 380, 392

**artha-ātman** Self-nature of a real object; that which has a real self-nature. (See also *ātman*.) 388, 396

**artha-bhāvana** Cultivating or absorbing the real meaning (in meditation). 315

**artha-kriyā-kārin** Efficacious, i.e., anything producing certain results by which the observer infers its characteristics. It is anointed (*añjana*) by the attributes of its causes; it represents that cause which has revealed it, which has given it the appearance of an effect. 397

**artha-mātra** Only the object meant. 387

**artha-mātra-nirbhāsā** That in which only the object meant shines forth. 387

**artha-śūnya** Devoid of interests; without interest or purpose; without a substance. 248n, 255

**asamprajñāta samādhi** A cognitive *samādhi*; *nirodha-samādhi* (the *samādhi* of total control and final cessation of *vrittis*); *nir-bija samādhi* (seedless *samādhi* requiring no *ālambanas*), wherein *samskāras* can no longer produce *kleśhas*, karmas and their fruition; the great sleep (*mahā-nidrā*) of the mind-field; the state in which the self dwells in the self. 63, 146-47, 186, 220, 248, 251

**a-sampramoṣhaḥ** Non-theft; not being stolen; not being lost. (From the verb root *muṣh* 'to steal'.) 185, 186

**āsannaḥ** Near; very close, impending; imminent. 271, 277n

**āsannatara** Closer; imminent. 277, 280

**a-sat-kārya-vāda** A doctrine of the Nyāya-Vaiśeṣhīka schools, viz.: Qualities of effects *do not* exist in their causes, but fresh qualities are produced and their prior absence (*prāg-abhāva*) in the cause is evident. We know they were not there when we see them appear in fresh objects. (This view is also known as *ārambha-vāda*.) 395

**ā-sevita** Pursued, thoroughly served; maintained in assiduous and complete observance; assiduously undertaken for a long time and without interruption 202

**a-śakti** (Twenty-eight kinds of) incapacity of mind and intelligence. 44

**āśhaya** Propensity; accumulation; domain; storehouse; the domain wherein something lies dormant; that which lies dormant; that which sleeps. (From *ā* + *śhī*.) 188, 282, 286-87, 419-21

**ashram (āśhrama)** Hermitage, retreat; center for religious or spiritual study and practice. 7, 71-72

**aśhvavattha** A tree; metaphor for the universe, “with its roots above, branches below.” 299

**āśita** Let one establish the posture, sitting (in yoga). 318

**asmi** I am. 408

**asmitā** I-am-ness (synonymous with *svatva* ([possession]); *liṅga-mātra*; composite sentience. *Asmitā* is produced when *liṅga-mātra* (*mahat* or *buddhi*) receives and reflects consciousness from *puruṣha*, thus creating the composite (reflected spirit plus matter, i.e., reflected *puruṣha* plus *prakṛti*) sentience. It is *asmitā* and not *puruṣha* that is the agent of apprehension (*grahītṛ*), the one who apprehends. *Asmitā* is a *klesha* whose real name is stupor (*moha*). 38-39, 44, 128, 139, 162, 167, 168-69, 218, 225, 226, 239, 244, 245, 246, 247, 357, 408

**asmitā-anugata** A *samādhi* accompanied by I-am-ness (*asmitā*). (See also *saṃprajñāta samādhi*.) 224

**asmitā-mātrā** Only the awareness of “I am”; I-am-ness alone. One of the two *viśhokā samāpatti*s, the manifestation of I-am-ness. 355, 356, 357

**a-sphuṭa** Indistinct. 181

**āstika-buddhi** An attitude of affirmation that there is a God, karma and life after death. 266

**asūyā** Jealousy; intolerance; malice; the inability to acknowledge others’ good qualities, i.e., being petty or faultfinding. 341, 342, 343

**Āsuri** A disciple of Kapila and second in line among the founders of Sāṅkhya. 41, 129, 296, 304

**a-tad-rūpa-pratiṣṭha** Established in a nature or form *not* of that (object). 163

**a-tattva** Opposite to a reality or to the self-nature of any object or entity; non-that-ness. 421

**atha** Now, at an auspicious moment of transition; expressing: transition in a sequence (*ānantarya*), a teacher’s authority, a student’s fulfilment of a qualification, and/or the statement of commencement. The word *atha* (together with *OM*) came from the Creator’s throat in the beginning of the creation; hence both words are auspicious. *Atha* is a particle (*avyaya*) word, i.e., invariant in all syntactical situations and capable of expressing states that are themselves immutable. 62, 63-71

**atideśha-sūtra** A *sūtra* that presents an analogy. 20

**atikrānta-bhāvaniya** Yogis on the last of four levels of yogic attainment; those who have transcended all processes and no longer have anything remaining to be cultivated. 78

**atīndriya** Supersensual; (knowledge) gained by means other than the senses, such as knowledge of objects beyond the range of the senses, e.g., too small or too large. 99, 296

**ātivāhika śharīra** The subtle body as the vehicle of migration in which *sarṇskāras* continue to be maintained. 261

**ātma-bhūta** Having become a self; having a self-nature. *Ātma-bhūta* expresses the self-nature of any object or entity (not to be confused with the spiritual self). 397

**ātma-jñāna** Self-knowledge. 214

**ātma-kalpena** Standing on its own, i.e., the mind dwelling in itself, by itself; identifying with the self (*ātman*); imagining itself to be the self. 145-46

**ātman** (1) The self; spiritual self; oneself. (See also *Brahman*.) 29, 121, 154, 245, 412 (2) The self-nature, essence, real self-nature, of any object or entity. 388, 396, 397, 412 The student must be alert to the two definitions of *ātman* so as not to confuse the two in a given context.

**ātma-sambodha** Self-awareness; self-realization (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 301

**ātmiya** Belonging to (the self); akin to (a kin to); belonging to or related to (some realm or other). 168, 186

**ātyantika** Total and permanent. 119, 146

**audāsinya** Sense of neutrality; the middle way. 344

**aupādhika** A condition by reason of proximity and not an innate quality; a temporary condition of appearance. 90, 118

**autsukya** Interest. 210

**ava-dhāraṇa** A determinant process (whereby general, shared properties are eliminated by the mind so as to enable it to focus on the specific, e.g., cows→the brown cow); to maintain continuously in the mind. 150, 228

**a-vairāgya** Lack of dispassion. 93

**ava-sthāna** Stability; settling; remaining; being in a given state. 114

**avasthā-parināma** Mutations of condition (like a candle flame), of which there are two kinds: internal (*ābhyantra*) and external (*bāhya*). 98

**ava-sthita** Constant; stable. *Ava-sthita* derives from *ava + sthā* ‘to go through a process or condition’ and therefore connotes something (e.g., the mind) which remains constant or stable while passing through many conditions. 339

**a-vastu** Insubstantial; not a real object. 127

**avatāra** Incarnation of the deity 301

- avayava** Separable; part; component. 388
- avayavin** A whole; having parts or components. 388
- āveśha** Process or state of being possessed or taken over. 392
- a-vibhāga** Not being divided or distinguished; non-division; non-distinction; non-separation. 380, 382
- a-vidvān** Ignorant. 292
- avidyā** Ignorance; nescience; mistaking the self to be non-self. *Avidyā* is a *kleśha* whose real name is darkness (*tamas*). It is both its own cause and the cause of the other *kleśhas*. 44, 85, 139, 162, 167, 168, 170, 292
- a-vikalpita** Non-fictitious; non-imaginary; unalterable; not alternating. 394, 415
- a-vinā-bhāva** Sine qua non (without which not); something absolutely essential. 298
- a-virati** Failing to turn away from the world and the senses; non-abstention; craving for sense objects. (Antonym: *uparati*) 324 327
- a-vi-saṁ-vādin** That which is consistent and cannot be challenged. 151
- a-viśheśhas** Non-specific, intermediate links between *mahat* and the final sixteen products of *prakṛti*, the *viśheśhas*. Thus the *a-viśheśhas* are the causes of the *viśheśhas*, viz.: five gross elements, five active senses, five cognitive senses, and the mind. There are six *a-viśheśhas*, consisting of the five subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) and the ego (*ahamkāra*). 35, 225, 247
- a-viśhiṣṭa** Undistinguished (as when the mind sees itself as undistinguished from *puruṣha*). 156
- a-viveka** Absence of correct knowledge; indiscrimination. 167, 193
- a-vividishā** The tendency that blocks desire for knowledge; absence of the desire to know. 43
- a-vyakta** Unmanifest *prakṛti* and its evolutes. 168
- avyaya** Particle. 64
- avyayatā** Immutability. 300
- āyāma** Expansion. 348
- āyur-veda** Medical science.. The *Ayur-veda* is the Veda treating of the science of medicine. 4
- āyus** Life span. 286
- baddha** Bound, i.e., not free. 377
- bādh** Impede; counteract. 419, 424
- bahir-aṅga** Exterior part. 428

**bāhya** External. 98

**bandha** Bondage. 46, 289–90

**bhakti** Devotion, of which a specific form taught in the *Yoga-sūtras* is practising the presence of God. 277, 280

**bhakti-viśheṣha** A specific form of devotion. 277, 279

**bhakti-yoga** The yoga of devotion and surrender to a personal God. 91

**bhāṣhya** A disciple's detailed commentary on a master's *sūtras*, including background and experiential information presenting connections among *sūtras*, amplification, etc., to render the *sūtras* comprehensible. 6

**bhāva** State; being; worldly continuity; delimited material existence subject to rebirth. 176, 258, 259–60

**bhāvana, bhāvanā** Cultivated concentration; cultivating and absorbing a meaning; an internal process of impressing an object of concentration (*bhāvyā*) repeatedly onto the mind. 220, 228, 242, 279–80, 315, 316, 340, 392

**bhāvanātva** Being a process. 392

**bhava-pratyaya** A *saṃādhi* whose causal cognition develops into the continuity of worldly being (*saṃsāra*) at (re)birth. This *saṃādhi* accrues to *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas* and is the experience of bodiless shining gods (*videha devas*). 256–60

**bhāvyā** Object of concentration. 220

**bheda** A division or category. 60, 94

**bhoga** Experience; enjoyment; the material world as the object of experience; experience presented to the spiritual self, pleasant or painful experience during one's life span as the result of karma (a *vipāka*, q.v.) 145, 282, 286, 288, 420, 425

**bhokṭr** Experiencer; one who partakes of experience (*bhoga*). 288

**bhrānti-darśhana** Wrong views; confusion of philosophies (See also *viparivara*.) 324, 327

**bhūmi** Ground, level or plateau at which the yogī arrives, then leaves behind on the way to the highest *saṃādhi*. Four different levels of attainment (*bhūmīs*) are associated with the yogī en route to *kaivalya*. 77–78, 82

**bhūmikā** Step; stage (See also *bhūmi*.) 209

**bhūta** Gross element There are five *bhūtas*: space, air, fire, water, earth (See also *tattvas*.) 34, 42

**bhūta-artha** Reality, a real object; true nature 421

**bhūtādi** Beings with *tamasic* ego who perform acts of stupefaction: *sānumāna* (performing good acts of stupefaction), and *niranumāna* (performing evil acts of stupefaction). 44

**bhūta-sūkṣhma** Subtleties or subtle aspects of the elements. Not to be confused with *sūkṣhma-bhūta*. 376, 401, 417

**bija** Seed; *linga*; sign; indicator; root; root of all knowledge. 295, 299

**bodha** Spiritual awakening; a teaching; direction given. (From the verb root *budh* 'to awaken, to get to know'.) 87

**bodhi** A Buddha's enlightenment. (From the verb root *budh* 'to awaken, to get to know'.) 87

**Brahmā** The Progenitor; the Creator who takes the universe as His body. Brahma is a masculine word, not to be confused with the neuter word Brahman. (See also *Hiranya-garbha*.) 29, 70, 301

**brahmacharya** Celibacy; maintaining control over sexual passion. 202, 203

**Brahman** The One Principle; the Single Transcendental Reality which is Existence (*sat*), Consciousness (*chit*) and Bliss (*ānanda*); the Self of all that is; the Expansive One. (From the verb root *bṛh* 'to expand, to be expansive'.) 28, 300

**brāhmaṇa** Philosopher; child of Brahman; the highest Hindu caste. 72

**brahma-vihāra** Frolicking in Brahman. (See also *parikarma(n)*.) 342

**brahma-yoga** The yoga of Brahman. 91

**buddhi** The faculty of intelligence, intuitive wisdom, intellection and discrimination in a sentient being; *sattva* of the mind-field. *Buddhi*'s twofold faculty of discrimination is:

1. The outward-looking face of *buddhi* (towards the conscious mind), called the faculty of intelligence. The twofold faculty of intelligence includes (a) the outward face (intellect) and (b) the inward face (intuitive wisdom).
2. The inward-looking face of *buddhi* (towards the spiritual self, i.e., *puruṣha*), called the faculty of intuition.

An inherent relationship existing between self and matter is an eternal attribute of *prakṛti*, the cause of *mahat* and *buddhi*. 33, 34, 77, 81, 94, 133, 163, 356, 403

**buddhi-bodha-ātmā** *Puruṣha* as ordinarily identified with the apprehensions of *buddhi*. 116

**budh** To awaken; to get to know. 87

**chaitanya** Consciousness (an attribute of the spiritual self alone) 130, 172

**chakras** Centers of *kundalini* energies within the composite person. 11

- chāñchalya** Restiveness (by means of which *rajas* produces pain). 358
- charyā-yoga** The yoga of denominational ritual devotions. 91
- cheṣṭā-moha** Confusion of the physical posture, gait, movement or effort as though one's limbs are not under one's own observation or moved by one's own will. 192
- chetanā** Consciousness. (See also *chaitanya*.) 320, 321, 322
- chetayitṛ** Source and cause of awareness, i.e., *puruṣha*. 288
- chid-ākāśha** (The inner) space of consciousness. 369, 370
- chit, chiti** Consciousness; pure consciousness; consciousness of the spiritual self; seer; *puruṣha*. (See also *chiti-śakti*.) 80, 94, 106, 109, 114, 120, 151, 200
- chiti-śakti** Consciousness-power (consciousness-potentia), consciousness principle; pure consciousness; energy; the spiritual self; absolute and eternal power called consciousness. 94, 106, 108-10, 113, 114, 115, 120, 155
- chitta** (1) The mind-field whose universal attribute is *samādhi*. (2) The entire mind-field (*antah-karaṇa*), including *manas*—active mind; *buddhi*—intellect and intuitive wisdom; *aharṇkāra*—ego; and *chitta*—the mind-field per se, including the universal unconscious (as well as *manas*, *buddhi* and *aharṇkāra*). The five levels or grounds of *chitta* (mind-field) are: disturbed (*kṣipta*), somnolent or stupefied (*mūḍha*); distracted (*vikṣipta*); one-pointed (*ekāgra*); and controlled (*niruddha*). Only the latter two are considered to be states of *yoga*. 62, 76, 93, 94-95, 96, 98, 106, 110, 114, 124
- chitta-nadī** River of the mind-field. 196
- chitta-parikarmas** Ways of adorning, refining, purifying and preparing the mind (through diligent practice). 367, 368
- chitta-prasādana** Purifying the mind and making it pleasant. 341, 342, 346
- chitta-sattva** *Sattva* of the mind-field (*buddhi*), illumination, *sattva*, that has taken the form of the mind-field. 93, 100-1
- chitta-vikṣhepa** Distraction, impediment, obstacle or disturbance of the mind-field. There are nine such *chitta-vikṣhepas* (YS I.30), together with their five correlates or companions (YS I.31). (See also *vikṣhepa*.) 324
- chitta-vṛtti-nirodha** Control and dissolution of the *vṛttis* of the mind-field. 93
- daitya** Demonic being. 104
- dākṣhiṇā bandha (dākṣhiṇika bandha)** Bondage by which worldly people remain involved with desires and hope for liberation through

**ritual practices.** Included are renunciates who become dependent on the offerings of basic necessities received from householders. 46, 290

**dama** Restraint (one of the six treasures of Vedānta). 67

**dānava** Demonic being. 104

**darśhana** Derived from the verb root *drśh* ‘to see’, *darśhana* is a many-faceted word, including: perception; school of philosophy; philosophical view; philosophy of life; vision; insight; realization; a yogi’s realization; seeing or gaining insight into that realization which occurs in *samādhi*. *Darśhana* is the Sanskrit word for philosophy because all philosophy, together with its logical processes, derives only from such (*samādhi*) realization. 130, 160, 193, 195, 212, 214, 387, 393-94

**daur-manasya** Frustration; anguish; despair; bad mood; ill-mindedness; emotional disturbance; instability. Literally, “bad-mindedness” (from *dur* [bad] and *manas* [mind]). (Antonym: *saumanasya*.) 329, 331

**devas** Celestial beings; shining ones; celestial, shining ones; angelic beings without physical bodies. 104, 207, 261

**dhairyā** Steadfastness and patience. 200

**dhamma** Pāli for conditions (*dharma*). 268

**dhāraṇā** Concentration; mental attention. 348, 355, 356

**dharma** Virtue; righteousness; attribute; characteristic; quality; condition. 85, 93, 101, 175, 285, 287, 303, 388, 397

**dharma-megha samādhi** The *samādhi* of the raincloud of virtue and of the knowledge of the nature of all things (in which the mind dwells in itself by itself, then identifies with the spiritual self); the final state of *samprajñāta samādhi*; the higher stage of the *asmitā*-accompanied *samādhi* and the initial stage of the acognitive *asamprajñāta samādhi*. *Dharma-megha* is endless; the yogi perceives worldly objects as unmentionables (having abandoned them) and dwells only in his own essential nature. 94, 107, 113, 145, 147, 216-17, 253

**dhātu** A constituent of the body, e.g., blood, flesh, bones, the three humours (air, bile, phlegm), etc. 326

**dhṛti** Fortitude; resolution of mind, speech and action (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 43, 301

**dhyāna** Meditation. 303, 345

**dhyāna-abhyāsa** The practice of meditation. 415

**dhyāna-abhyāsa-rasa** Enjoyment of the flavour and essence of the practice of meditation. 415

**dhyāna-yoga** The yoga of meditation. 92

- dhyeya** Object of concentration; object of meditation. (See also *ālambana*.) 373, 392, 412
- dhyeya-artha** The reality of the object of concentration. 392
- dik (diśh)** Dimension. 36
- doṣha** Fault; blemish; defect. 211
- draṣṭṛ** Seer; *chiti-śakti* (consciousness-potentia). 114
- dravya** Substance 36
- drḍha-bhūmi** Firm of ground. 202
- dr̥k-śakti** Power of the seer; seer-potentia. 120, 322
- dr̥shi** Sight; seeing. 120
- dr̥shi-śakti** Seeing-potentia; seeing power. 120
- dr̥ṣṭa** Seen; tangible; perceived with the physical senses; insight (realization within); realized or seen in the state of *samādhi*. 160, 169, 205
- dr̥ṣṭānta** Exemplification (a term in the Indian five-member syllogism). 159
- dr̥ṣhya** Something that is perceptible; a perceptible. 131-32
- duḥkha** Pain; an attribute of the *rajas guna*, pain produced by *vṛttis* taking the form of objects experienced, any kind of pain, grief, sorrow, suffering; pain of desires; those suffering; first of the fourfold noble truths of the Buddhist doctrine; the first concern of Sāṅkhya-yoga philosophy, which identifies three kinds of suffering: *ādhyātmika*, *ādhicchātuṣka*, *ādhidaivika*. 139, 184, 329-31, 340
- dveṣha** Aversion; hatred. *Dveṣha* is a *klesha* whose real name is nocturnal (*tāmisra*). 44, 137, 162, 167, 169, 170, 343
- dyotayati** Illuminates. 84
- eka** One; only one, e.g., *ātman*, the self. 240
- eka-ātmikā samvit** The perception of a unified self 240
- eka-buddhi-upa-krama** Introduced by a unitary intelligence (*buddhi*). 396
- ekāgra** One-pointed; concentrated One of the five grounds or states of the mind-field. 62, 78, 84, 157, 242, 333
- ekāgra bhūmi** One-pointed ground. 373
- ekāgratā** One-pointedness, 200, 252
- ekāgratā-dhārā** Stream of one-pointedness or concentration. 412, 421

- eka-tānatā** Being an unbroken stream. 214
- ekatara kōti** One (or the other) of two categories at a time. 369
- eka-tattva** The One Reality (God), one principle, factor or reality; real element; a single matter. 333, 336
- ekendriya** Pertaining to the single sense, the mind, alone. (See also *ekendriya dispassion*.) 209, 210
- ekendriya dispassion** The third stage on the path to *apara-vairāgya*. The mental attraction is reduced while one yet continues to experience the objects with one's external senses. Effort is directed towards attaining dispassion towards mental attractions (since mind is the only remaining barrier to *vaśikara*). 210
- gandha-pravṛtti** Manifestation of smell (such as apprehension of a celestial fragrance) from concentration on the point between the two nostrils where the base of the nose joins the upper lip. 350
- gati** Gait; goal; locomotion; endeavour. *Gati* conveys a sense of movement and revelation. (From the verb root *gam* 'to know, to move, to reach, to go, to grasp'.) 307, 416
- Gauḍapāda** Guru of Shankarāchārya's guru, Govinda. Gauḍapāda authored the *Māṇḍukyra-kārikās*, the most complete ancient statement on the Vedānta philosophy. 67n, 180
- gaurava** Cumbersomeness. 129
- ghora** Ferocity attribute (a major personality disposition, which *buddhi* assumes in association with *rajas*) 118, 126
- grahana** Instruments of grasping (mind and senses); instrument; process and fact of experience; process and means of apprehension with which one grasps, experiences or cognizes. 188, 225, 226, 234, 235, 247, 277, 290, 296, 371, 372, 374, 375, 376-77
- grahaṇa-samāpatti** Having instruments of grasping as the field of coalescence and command. 247, 378
- grahītṛ** That which grasps (I-am-ness, the reflection of the pure self in the *buddhi*), the one who apprehends; the agent of apprehension; the one who grasps or experiences or cognizes 225, 226, 235, 247, 277, 371, 372, 374, 375, 377-78
- grahītṛ puruṣas** Spiritual selves that appear to be agents of action and to be grasping the objects of experience. 377
- grahītṛ-samāpatti** Having the apprehender as the field of coalescence or command 241, 247, 378
- grāhya** Object of apprehension; objects grasped, experienced or cognized, i.e., gross and subtle elements, etc. 188, 225, 234, 235, 247, 277, 371, 374, 375, 376

**grāhya-samāpatti** Having *grāhyas* as the field of coalescence or command. 228, 247, 378

**grāhya-uparakta** Associated with and coloured by the object of an apprehension. 187-88

**gunas** The three attributes of unmanifest *prakṛti*, which are in equilibrium before the creation of evolutes and whose disequilibrium constitutes the process of creation. All material entities (evolutes) including the mind are composites of the three *gunas*: purity and illumination (*sattva*); activity (*rajas*); and inertia (*taṃs*). They are the seats of pleasure, pain and delusion. 29, 30, 31, 42, 77, 93, 126, 212

**guna-vaitrṣṇya** The state of being free of all craving for the *gunas* (free of worldly desires). 212

**haṁsa-mantra** The word *soham* used with exhalation and inhalation to enter into meditation. 366

**hatha-yoga** Physical yoga within the context of interior, subtle forces. 92

**hetu** Cause; purpose; effect; means (a term in the Indian five-member syllogism). 139, 159, 419

**Hiraṇya-garbhā** The Golden Womb; the first guru; the universal being; the first wise one; the teaching spirit of the universe; the original teacher of yoga; Prajāpati (the Progenitor); Brahmā. The first human being is said to have been an incarnation of the Golden Womb. All revelation is of the grace that flows from Hiraṇya-garbhā. 39, 69-71, 105, 281, 289, 297

**hlāda** Rapture. 235

**ichchhā** Desire, will. 43, 273

**īḍā** The subtle energy channel (*nāḍī*) that flows on the left side of *sushumna* and controls the parasympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system. 65

**indriyas** (1) The eleven senses, mind, five cognitive senses, and five active senses. 42 (2) In Buddhism the word *indriyas* refers to the "five strengths." 268

**indriya-śakti** (Inner) power of the senses 377

**īrṣhyā** Jealousy 342

**īśhitva** Physical, mental and vocal lordship unimpeded by any (a *siddhi*) 169

**īśhvvara** *Parama-ātman*. *Īśhvvara* is forever and always free. Wherever the lordship (*aīśhvarya*) reaches its extremity, that is God (*īśhvvara*). He

is neither *prakrti* nor what is referred to as *puruṣha*; hence *iśhvara* is a special *puruṣha*. He is the special Conscious Being (*puruṣha-viśheṣha*). *Iśhvara* is that special *puruṣha* not smeared by afflictions, actions and their fruitions, and by the domains of their accumulated propensities. *Iśhvara* also has temporal meanings such as: a lord; a lordship; commanding presence, etc. (From the verb root *iśh* ‘to have power or control over; to be able to [create, control, direct]; to govern; to impart grace’.) 101, 154, 277-304

**iśhvara-praṇidhāna** Practising the presence of God; to dwell near and close to God; to place oneself down (in all humility and egolessness) in the proximity of God; to surrender and place oneself at the disposal of God. Such devotion should be mental, vocal and physical. In the context of YS I.23 *iśhvara-praṇidhāna* means that the grace of God, when invoked by a true devotee, leads to *samādhi* (as qualified in the commentary). This approach to *samādhi* is referred to as the easy path. 277-81, 309, 315-23, 335, 430

**jāda** Unconscious; dull. 151

**jāda-samādhi** *Samādhi* of the unconscious. 262

**jādatā** Dullness; stupefaction. 181

**jādatva** Non-sentience. 383

**japa** Concentration on a mantra. Chant, recitation, contemplation, etc., when faith and devotion are present, are all parts of the complete *japa* process. The word *japa* has essentially been left untranslated in the text for want of an appropriate English rendering. 242, 315

**japā** A kind of red flower. 127

**jāti** Species (in which one is reborn). 286

**jijñāsā** Desire for knowledge; desire to know. 61, 68

**jijñāsu** One who has desire for knowledge; a seeker. 61, 103

**jīva** Individual soul. Sāṅkhya holds that *puruṣhas* becomes *jīvas*, souls, when they assume a connection with *prakrti*. 29, 302

**jīva-ātman** The individual self as soul of a body. 279

**jīvan-mukta** One who is liberated while yet in a body, still maintaining the body. *Pralaya* (dissolution) cannot occur in a *jīvan-mukta* even though the mind comes very close to *pralaya*. 86, 146

**jīvan-mukti** State of liberation while yet incarnate. 146

**jñā** To know. 219

**jñāna** Knowledge; awareness; observation; ideation, wisdom that arises

**jñāna (continued)**

from yoga (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 68, 87-88, 101, 186, 301, 303, 361, 384

**jñāna-prasāda** Clarity of knowledge at its purest. 214

**jñāna-yoga** Yoga of knowledge. Vedānta is regarded as the path of knowledge (*jñāna*), and Vedāntic texts teach that liberation occurs through knowledge. 87, 92

**jñeyā** Object of knowledge. 361

**jyotiṣhmatī** Luminous; full of light (of *sattva*); lucid; luminous one. 355

**kaivalin** One who attains *kaivalya*, q.v. 289

**kaivalya** Isolation; self-realization; final isolation of the self from matter, when the self dwells in its own nature; absoluteness; liberation, synonymous with *asamprajñāta samādhi*, which follows *dharma-megha samādhi*. 39, 60, 73, 79, 114, 119, 146, 194, 216

**kāla** Time. 36, 305

**kalpa** A cycle of creation and dissolution. 169, 303

**kalyāṇa** All that is beautiful, benevolent, propitious, desirable; a noble way; way of beatitude; *mokṣha*, liberation 194

**kāma** Desire. 141

**kāmāvasāyitā** Whatever one says or intends with the mind comes true (whereas in the case of others it conflicts and is not fulfilled). A *siddhi*. 169

**Kapila** It is said that Kapila was the first *rishi*, to whom the knowledge of Sāṅkhya-yoga was given. He is thus the legendary founder of the Sāṅkhya-yoga system of philosophy. Pañchaśikha stated that Hiranya-garba created a great mind into which he incarnated, becoming the sage Kapila. The lineage thus began with Hiranya-garba→Kapila→Āsuri→Pañchaśikha. 4, 39, 41, 297, 303, 304

**karāṇa** Instrument; instrumentation, sense. There are eleven *karanas* in the Sāṅkhya system five active senses, five cognitive senses, and mind (*antah-karana*), the inner instrument. The compound expression *sva-karana-samvedra* means “experienced directly with one’s own instrumentation.” Thus collectively the *karanas* may be looked upon as the instrumentation for the entire concentration process. 326, 352-53

**karāṇa-pāṭava** Expertise in the use of strength of senses and body (one of the qualifications of a realized teacher) 160

**kāraṇa śharīra** Causal body; *linga śharīra*. 246

**karma (karman)** Action. 102, 135, 136, 140, 141, 144, 282-87, 334, 338

**karma-devas** Shining ones bound to action, as the *videhas* and *prakṛti-layas*. 263

**karmāśaya** Repository or domain of karmas; storehouse of *samskāras*; that subtle domain of the mind-field where are left all impressions of the objective world without and *vṛttis* from the mental world within; karmic force. (See also *āśaya*.) 91, 110, 135, 136, 140, 287, 338, 419, 429

**karma-yoga** Yoga of action. 92

**kartavyatā** An activity of intelligence: indulgence of the cognitive senses into that which needs to be done or acted upon. 43

**kartṛ** Doer; agent of an action. 176

**karuṇā (kāruṇya)** Compassion; motivation to eradicate the suffering of others (one of the qualifications of a realized teacher). Fully developed, *kāruṇya* wards off *dveṣha* (aversion). 160, 340, 343

**kārya** An act. 420

**kaṣṭhāya** Despoiler; emotion such as attraction (*rāga*). 204, 209

**kauśhala** Skillfulness 286

**kauśhthya vāyu** Visceral air. The practice of controlled exhalation of visceral air subsumes diaphragmatic breathing, which is the fundamental breathing method in all yoga practice (See also *ānāpāna-sati*.) 348

**kāya** Body 268

**kevala** One who has attained *kaivalya* (isolation of self from matter); one alone; isolated; exclusive; pure; joyful, absolute. 117, 282n, 320, 429

**kevalin** Absolute entity. *Kevalin* is a Jaina term and should not be confused with the *Yoga-sūtras*' term *kaivalin*, meaning one who attains *kaivalya*. 289

**khyāti** Discriminating wisdom, discernment; knowledge; clarity of wisdom (*prajñā-prasāda*), reflective cognition, illumination. 102, 122, 129-34, 141, 166, 212, 217, 420

**kleśha** Affliction; impurity There are five *kleśhas* (afflictions), *avidyā* (ignorance), *āsmitā* (I-am-ness), *rāga* (attraction), *dveṣha* (aversion), and *abhiniveṣha* (fear of death). These *kleśhas* not only effect *vṛttis* but can also be the effects of *vṛttis* (From the verb root *klīsh* 'to suffer') 44, 62, 83, 110, 135-41, 162, 167-70, 285

**kleśha-hetukā** Caused by the *kleśhas*; cause of the *kleśhas*. 139

**kliṣṭha** Afflicted; painful; impure; imbued with *kleśhas*. A proof leading one to favour an attraction (*rāga*) is considered *kliṣṭha*. 135-42

**koṣha** A sheath. There are five *koṣhas*: *ānandamaya koṣha* (sheath of bliss), *vijñānamaya koṣha* (sheath of knowledge), *manomaya koṣha* (sheath of mind), *prāṇamaya koṣha* (sheath of *prāṇa*), and *annamaya koṣha* (sheath of food) 245, 246

**kriyā** Activity; process; operations of the active senses; motion; efficacious execution; practicability. 43, 302, 388

**kriyā-śakti** The power of action; creativity by which the world comes into existence and is maintained within the Law. 291

**kriyā-yoga** Yoga of ascetic practices. 93

**kṣhamā** Forgiveness (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 301

**kṣhaṇika-vāda** A Buddhist theory of momentariness, viz.. An idea exists for a moment only, and (rather like a kinetoscope) a stream of such moments gives the illusion of continuity. In such a context there need be no single, continuous *chitta*. 336

**kṣhaya** Reduction. 419

**kṣhetra** Field. 65

**kṣhiṇa-vṛtti** One whose *vṛttis* have subsided. 371

**kṣipta** Disturbed; agitated state, simple agitation of an ordinary worldly mind, totally unsteady, dominated by *rajas*; always flung about from one object to another (the wakeful state of a “normal” person in the world). One of the five grounds or states of the mind-field 62, 78, 82-83, 100, 103-4

**kṣhobha** Anguish, as when a desire is frustrated. 329

**kumbhaka** The *prāṇārāma* of controlled breath retention 347

**kundalini** The snake of eternity, the residue that remains after material consciousness is dissolved. 59, 60

**kuśhala** Well, wellness, free of all physical, mental or situational ill condition (resulting from one’s acts). Skillful, expert, proficient, e.g., one who is “expert at surgery” is *śalva-krīvā-kuśhala* 282, 285-86

**kūṭastha** The unmodifiable, immutable, unchangeable, a statement of the nature of Brahman 39

**kūṭastha-nitya** Eternal as an Absolute, immutable and never modified, absolutely eternal 313, 429

**laghimā** The power to become light (a *siddhi*) 168

**lakṣhaṇa** Definition 60, 249

**lakṣhaṇa-sūtra** A *sūtra* that defines. 96, 195, 284

**lakṣhya** The state to be aimed for; whatever is defined. 249

**lakṣhya-yoga** Yoga of practising concentration on a target. 92

**laya** Dissolution (of effects into their causes—of the gross into the subtle, etc.); dissolution of the universe and its phenomena. (See also *nirodha*.) 38, 95, 196, 223

**laya-yoga** Yoga of dissolution. 93

**lilā** Play. 302

**liṅga** Sign; indicator; mark; *bija* (seed); *liṅga* body (constituted of the *mahat* evolute alone). The conventional (*rūḍhi*) meaning of *liṅga* is a sign or a mark. All twenty-three evolutes of *prakṛti* are *liṅga* (with mark). The derivative (*yaugika*) meaning is “that which dissolves, vanishes, disappears.” (From the verb root *li*.) (See also *a-liṅga*.) 207-8, 299, 406

**liṅga-māṭra** Merely a mark or sign with no distinguishing features; the subtlest evolute, *mahat* (the universal and individual *buddhi*), the barest sign of the presence of matter; *mahat*, the first evolute, the faintest presence, the first sign that *prakṛti* gives of its presence. 35, 225, 238, 406, 407

**liṅga śarira** Causal body consisting of *mahat* alone; also called *kāraṇa śarira*. 246, 262

**loka** The world, that which shines; that which “looks” (people are *lokas*), and that which is “looked at” (the worlds, locations [cognate to locus, loci]). (From the verb root *lok*, meaning [and cognate to] “to look ”) 396

**loka-pratyakṣha** Direct perception with the senses in the ordinary world, direct (secular) perception, worldly perception. 416, 418

**madhu-bhūmi** The honeyed ground. The second of the four levels of yogic attainment. 77

**madhu-bhūmika** A yogi experiencing the honeyed ground 108

**madhumati** Honeyed, filled with sweetness 78

**madhu-pratikā** Where the honey of the first ground (*madhumati*) has become as though it had been only symbolic of this second level 78

**madhya** Medium, as in “medium methods” (*madhyā-upāya*) or “medium progress” (*madhyā-samvega*) 271, 275

**madhya-samvega** Those of medium progress 271

**madhya-upāya** Those of medium methods 271

- mahā-moha** Great stupor (of which there are ten types) associated with the nescience (*avidyā*) of attachment (*rāga*). 168, 169
- mahān** Great; expansive. 357
- mahān ātmā** Great, expanded, or expansive self. 377
- mahā-nidrā** The great sleep of the mind-field when it is dissolved at liberation. 429
- mahā-pralaya** Total dissolution of the universe after one thousand cycles. 303
- mahat** The universal *buddhi*, a small spark of which is the individual *buddhi*, *linga-mātra*; the most *sattvic*, finest and purest product of *prakrti*; the first disequilibrium of the *guṇas*; the first evolute of *prakrti*; "the great," "the *Magnum*" An inherent relationship between self and matter is an eternal attribute of *prakrti*, the cause of *mahat* and *buddhi*. 32-33, 34, 35, 133, 233, 235, 236, 238
- māhātmya** Exaltation; glory; power. 173
- mahat-sevā** Service to the great. 200
- mahattva** Greatness; magnitude. Contrasted with the subtlest and the minutest, mahattva becomes the largest or the most expansive, which is twofold: internal (*asmitā*) and external (the cosmos). 368, 369
- mahā-vākyā** Great sentence; a profound statement. There are four such *mahā-vākṛas* (taken from the Upanishads) in the Vedānta philosophy, which form the basic statements of that philosophy for contemplation and realization 392
- mahā-yoga** The great yoga, yoga of absence or negation of all transient feelings and states. There are no objects of concentration as supports (*ālambanas*) and there remains only the manifestation of one's own nature 120-21
- mahimā** The power to become large (a *siddhi*). 169
- maitrī** Amity, love, *sauhārda* (goodheartedness, *eucardia*, friendship) 340, 343
- mala** Impurity; blemish; defilement; maculateness, taint, *macula* 163, 217, 411
- malina** Defiled, impure; unclean 179
- manana** Contemplating; contemplation The second of the four stages of gaining knowledge. 91, 390, 391, 415
- manas** The active or lower mind that receives sensations and emits reactions to them 94, 225
- manasa** Mind; mental 350

- mānasa-putra** Mental offspring. 304
- mani** Gem; crystal. 371
- manomaya koṣha** The sheath of mind (wherein the process of mentation is attributed to the self). 245, 246
- mantra-yoga** Yoga of the practice of mantras. 92
- māṭra** No other but; only; merely. 215
- māṭrā** A measure. 104
- mātsarya** Small-mindedness. 343
- māyā** Brahman's potency (*śakti*), with the twofold power to veil and unveil (reveal). 28
- mettā** Pāli equivalent of the Sanskrit word *maitrī* (amity, love, friendship) 343
- mithyā-jñāna** False knowledge. 162, 163
- moha** Delusion; somnolence; stupor. The attributes of the *tamas guna* are of three kinds: *vichāra-moha*, *cheṣṭā-moha*, and *vedanā-moha*. *Moha* is eightfold and is associated with the nescience (*avidyā*) of I-am-ness (*asmitā*). 168, 184, 192
- mokṣha** Liberation, release; isolation; total and final liberation (the spiritual self dwelling in its own nature). (Antonym. *sarīsāra*.) 47, 61, 91, 97, 194
- mrdu** Slow, mild, as in "mild methods" (*mrdu-upāya*) or "mild progress" (*mrdu-samvega*). 271, 275
- mrdu-samvega** Those of mild progress. 271
- mrdu-upāya** Those of mild methods. 271
- mūḍha** Stupefied or somnolent (one of the five grounds or states of the mind-field), unable to distinguish between right or wrong acts; dominated by the *tamas guna* (when *mūḍha* represents the state of sleep and other forms of stupor, such as being comatose, inebriated, drug afflicted, or otherwise generally not alert). *Mūḍha* also means stupefaction or somnolence as an attribute or major personality disposition which *buddhi* assumes in association with *tamas*. 62, 78, 82-83, 104, 105, 118
- muditā** Joyfulness, gladness One of the *brahma-vihāras*. 340
- mukta** Free, liberated, one having attained *moksha* 283, 377, 425
- mukta puruṣhas** Liberated ones, *puruṣhas* themselves, disembodied masters; spiritual selves, great liberated historical figures. In this latter context the term refers not to the bodies or physical appearances of historical personages but to the *puruṣhas* themselves, the liberated spiritual selves 377-78

**mukti** Liberation. 146

**mūlika-artha**s The ten fundamental tenets of Sāṅkhya philosophy. 46

**mumukṣhā** Desire or determination for liberation. 61

**mumukṣhu** One who has the desire or determination for liberation. 61, 265

**mūrti** Form; image. 383

**nāḍi(s)** Subtle energy fields or channels which control movements and configurations of sentient beings. 65n

**nāḍi-śodhana** *Prāṇāyāma* (the practice of physical breath control) using one nostril at a time. 347

**nairantarya** Without interval, without interruption. 202

**Nārāyaṇa** One of Viṣhṇu's names 385

**nāsāgra** Tip of the nose; the point between the two nostrils where the base of the nose joins the upper lip (See also *gandha-pravṛtti*) 352

**neti, neti** Not this, not this. 250

**ni-bandhana (ni-bandhani)** That which binds, fastens, firmly establishes, seals (See also *sthuti-nibandhana*) 350

**nididhyāsana** Meditating (meditation) *Nididhyāsana* is based on words (i.e. not direct experience), hence is *sa-vitarka* and does not lead to perfect realization It is also *sa-vikalpa* In Vedānta, however, it is all higher meditation The third of the four stages of gaining knowledge 91 390 391 415

**nidra** Sleep the sleep *vitrī* itself that modification of mind which causes the sleep state to ensue or to continue 82, 102n, 148, 361

**nigamana** Conclusion (a term in the Indian five-member syllogism) 159

**nigraha** Consecration control 96

**nitti-shreyasa** Spiritual success, the higher goal in this and the next life, the *paramāṇamā* 36

**nimitta** Purpose proof causation efficient cause, any causative factor 283 402

**nir-ālambana** Supportless without an object of concentration in meditation 253

**nir-añjana** Unanointed 121

**nir-anumāna** Performing evil acts of stupefaction 44

**nir-atiśaya** Ultimate, not exceeded (by any other), unexcelled 295

**nir-bhāsa** Manifest; shining forth; illuminating; illuminative. 185, 188, 387

**nir-bija samādhi** Seedless *samādhi*; *samādhi* without objects of concentration (*ālambanas*); *asamprajñāta samādhi*; *samādhi* wherein the *samskāras* can no longer produce *kleśhas*, karma and their fruits. 94, 146, 242, 257, 429

**nirdeśha** Definition. 430

**nirdeśha-sūtra** A *sūtra* that defines (See also *lakṣhana-sūtra*). 94

**nirmāṇa-chitta** Incarnation into an individual mind (not a physical incarnation) via *Hiranya-garbha*; a mind-field specially created to serve as a vehicle of incarnation; a produced mind. 281, 288-89, 304

**nirmāṇa-kāya** An incarnate form (Buddhist term for the historical, physical body of the Incarnate One). 281

**nirodha** Control; dissolution; restraint or control of all *vṛttis* of the mind-field, dissolution of *vṛttis* into their source in the mind-field; *kaivalya*; rendering inoperative. Characteristics of *nirodha* include: no fresh impressions arise from the external world, its experiences, relationships or memories; the state of *samādhi* creates its own impressions on the soul's mental mantle; but impressions left in the mind-field from past experiences remain. *Nirodha* (total control of the *vṛttis* of the mind-field) is dependent upon both practice (*abhyāsa*) and dispassion (*vairāgya*). (See also *lava*.) 38, 63, 86, 93, 95-99, 115, 120, 144, 193, 195-97, 252, 426-27

**nirodha-chitta** The mind-field in the state of total control (*nirodha*); the mind-field in the state of *samādhi* (*samādhi-chitta*). (Antonym: *vṛuttihāna-chitta*.) 114n, 424

**nirodha-samādhi** *Samādhi* wherein *nirodha* (control) has occurred; *samādhi* of total control and final cessation of *vṛttis*. 77, 145, 257

**nirodha-samskāras** In acognitive *asamprajñāta samādhi* the *vṛttis* have ceased, only inoperative *nirodha-samskāras* remain as residue, and even these "ashes" are under the yogi's total control to maintain life support if so desired. 87, 252, 427

**nirruddha** Controlled, brought under control; that which has reached the state of *nirodha*. One of the five grounds or states of the mind-field 62, 78, 218, 219

**nir-vichāra** A *samādhi* devoid of subtle thought, a *samāpatti*, which includes higher stages of *sa-vichāra samādhi*, and *ānanda*-accompanied and *asmitā*-accompanied *samādhis*. 231, 399-403, 408, 409, 411, 414, 417-18, 421

**nir-vikalpa** Non-discursive (awareness in the form of a *vṛtti* of *buddhi*

**nir-vikalpa (*continued*)**

fixed on the self's own nature [*sva-rūpa*]); free of superimposition of word, object and idea upon one another. *Nir-vikalpa* is synonymous with *nir-vitarka* and *nir-vichāra-samādhīs*. 111, 389

**nir-vitarka** Without a gross thought; the higher stage of *vitarka*-accompanied *samādhī*. 381, 387-98, 403, 409

**niṣhkriya** Inactive. 175

**niṣhpāta** Immersed. 7

**nitya-ānanda** Ever-blissful. 121

**nitya-buddha** The pure self who is ever awake. 364

**nityam a-lupta-śakti** Power (*śakti*) that never suffers a loss or reduction 301

**nitya-mukta-svabhāva** One who is ever free by nature (i.e., *puruṣha*). 377

**ni-vartaka** Disinvolver; terminator; inhibitor, abstainer; abolisher, urging and prompting one away from X. (Antonym. *pra-vartaka*) 138

**ni-vṛt** To turn off 425

**niyamas** Austerities; stability, restraint, control, the second of the eight *angas* of yoga, viz. cleanliness and purity (*śauca*), contentment (*santosha*), ascetic practice (*tapas*), self-study (*svādhyāva*), and practice of the presence of God (*iśvara-pranidhāna*) 145, 197

**niyama-sūtra** A *sūtra* that restricts or enjoins against an act 20

**nyag-bhāva** Becoming a subsidiary 240

**nyag-bhūta** Subordinated 393

**nyāsa** A special form of concentration on points of the body which are identified with deities, syllables, stars, etc. 366

**Nyāya** One of the classical Indian philosophical systems, devoting its attention primarily to the science of logic. The syllogism of the Nyāya system consists of five parts *pratijñā* (proposition), *hetu* (cause), *drṣṭānta* (exemplification), *upanaya* (recapitulation of cause), and *nigamana* (conclusion). 153, 159

**OM** The sound that is God's name and is identical with Him, God (iśvara) is the signified meaning of *OM*, *a*, *u*, *m*, followed by the silent half mora Brahmā, Vishnu and Śhiva are signified parts of *OM* 310, 313-14, 316, 317

**padārtha (pada-artha)** An object, the meaning of a word (*pada*) as denoted or signified by that word 388

**pañcha-parvā** Having five segments. 167

**Pañchaśikha** A disciple of Āsuri and the sage third in line among the founders of the Sāṅkhya school. He is reputed to be the author of *Shaśhī-tantra*. (See also *Kapila*.) 122, 123, 297, 303, 304

**Pāṇini** Probably history's foremost grammarian. He finalized the system of Sanskrit grammar in four thousand *sūtras* perhaps sometime between the 7th and 4th centuries B.C. 73, 74

**paññā** A Pāli word, similar to *prajñā* of Vedānta, meaning "wisdom" or "knowledge." One of the "three jewels" (along with *sīla* and *saṃādhi*) of Buddhism Buddhists regard *saṃādhi* as a step to *paññā*. 88

**pāpa** Evil; evil way; evil result; evil act; sin; transgression. 195, 342, 349, 422

**para** Transcending; beyond; supreme, transcendent; of a higher kind; transcendental. 209, 212, 387

**para-ātman** The transcendental self. 200

**parāk** See *parāñch*.

**parama** Ultimate. 368

**parama-aṇu** Minutest atom. 368, 407

**parama-ātman** The Supreme Self; Brahman; iśvara. 99, 278, 300

**parama-mahattva** Ultimate greatness or magnitude. 368

**paramārtha** The highest good; ultimate nature; Brahman, the Transcendental. (From *parama* + *artha*.) 143, 163-64

**paramārtha-satya** The transcendental reality 109

**paramārthika** Relating to *paramārtha*, q.v. 163

**parāñch (parāk)** Turned away from (the inward self) towards distant objects (From *parā* + *añch* ) 322

**para pratyakṣha** Transcendental direct perception (of the yogis), which is the basis or seed of teaching and of the inferential process. 386, 387, 393

**Parāśhara** Vyāsa's father 318

**paratra** Into another In the context of *YS I.7* *paratra* means that the teacher's *chitta-vṛttis* appear in the *chitta-vṛttis* of the student. 161

**para-vairāgya** The higher or transcendental dispassion, final freedom from attachments This higher dispassion relates to the *gunas*, to knowledge (*jñāna*) and to the means thereof. (See also *apara-vairāgya*.) 85, 108, 139, 213, 241

**para vaśikāra** Supreme mastery 369

**paribhāṣhā-sūtra** A *sūtra* that gives rules for the application of other *sūtras*. 20

**parikarma(n)** Purification; refinement; a refining; way or act of adorning, polishing, preparing, purifying, training (the mind); seasoning, giving a final protective or enhancing touch that prevents deterioration; supportive act in any science. Cultivation of the four *parikarmas*—*maitrī* (amity), *karuṇā* (compassion), *muditā* (gladness), and *upekṣhā* (indifference)—enables one to stabilise the mind-field. 340, 342, 344, 351, 368-69

**parināma** Temporary state; mutation; alteration; mutative mode. 80, 95, 100, 129, 265

**pari-śuddhi** All-round and complete purification. 387, 391

**parvan (parvas)** Segment, section or joint, as of bamboo or any such multipart, single object. 167, 216

**paryavasāna** Extending up to; ending at; reaching its limit at; etc. 404

**paryudāsa** Negation by omission (logically not a very strong negation). 137

**paśchchāt-tāpa** Literally, “afterwards burning.” The burning within oneself after an (evil) action; a guilt feeling; repentance 344

**pauruṣheya** *Puruṣha*-originated; *puruṣha*'s own. 156

**phala** The end result(s) obtained, fruit; goal, ultimate goal. 60, 155

**phala-sūtra** A *sūtra* that defines the end results, fruit, ultimate goal, etc. 115

**piṅgalā** The subtle energy channel (*nāḍi*) that flows on the right side of *sushumnā* and controls the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system 65

**piśhāchas** The lowest kind of demonic beings; ghoul-like beings 104

**prabandha** Dam, dike 194

**pra-bhū** To bring forth into being 394

**prachchhardana** Expulsion, exhalation. The visceral air is slowly exhaled through the nostrils with particular care, effort and method. This is the antidote to *prashvāsa* (See also *ānāpāna-sati*) 346-48

**pradhāna** Unmanifest *prakṛti*; principal matter 132

**pra-dyotayati** Illuminates fully 84-85

**prāg-abhāva** Prior absence 395

**prāg-bhāra** A dam or dike (*prabandha*). Its derivative meanings include bearing a weight or load tipping in favour of (as on a scale), carrying a momentum towards, predisposed towards 194

**Prajāpati** The Progenitor, which equates to Brahmā (See also *Hiranya-garbhā*) 70

**prajñā** Wisdom; completely realized; realization of the true nature of the objects of meditation; the process of the awakening of wisdom and the wisdom itself, as in *samprajñāta*. 219-20, 229, 264, 421-22

**prajñā-jyotis** Those whose light is wisdom. Yogis on the third of the four levels of yogic attainment. Along with the *madhu-bhūmika*, the *prajñā-jyotis* are yogis at the middle ground of yogic attainment. 78, 108

**prajñā-prasāda** Clarity of wisdom. 141

**prajñā-viveka** Discrimination from awakening wisdom. 264, 269

**prākāmya** Power by which all that one may wish can be fulfilled (a *siddhi*). 168, 283

**prakarṣha** Supremacy. (From *pra* [expressing "initiating" and "propelling"] plus *kṛṣh* 'to draw forth'.) 306

**prakarṣha-gati** Supremacy which initiates and propels the process of creation and revelation. 306-7

**prakāśha** Light; illumination. 109, 197

**prakāśha-ātman** Having illumination as its very self-nature. 412

**pra-khyā** Illumination (from *sattva*). 93, 102

**prākṛta bandha** See *prākṛtika bandha*.

**prakṛti** Principal, not yet evolved, primordial matter in the state of equilibrium of the three *guṇas* not yet manifest as the phenomena of the universe; *a-linga* (without mark or sign); the unmanifest, intangible, subtlest origin or tangible matter (nature); the existence principle without consciousness (syncretic definition); the unconscious material-energy principle (Sāṅkhya definition). In Sāṅkhya philosophy there are eight origins of evolutes, collectively called *prakṛtis*: *prakṛti*, *buddhi* (*mahat*), *ahamkāra* and the five *tan-mātrās* (the five subtle elements of sound, touch, form, flavour and smell). The three *guṇas* (*sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas*) represent *prakṛti*'s attributes, qualities, creative potential. In a state of equilibrium *prakṛti* is pure, unmanifest potential. Upon disequilibrium the *gunas* combine in endless ways to create manifest nature. An inherent relationship between self and matter is an eternal attribute of *prakṛti*. Not to be confused with *Prakṛti* with a capital *P*, q.v. (See also *pradhāna*.) 28-30, 41, 81, 97, 105, 133, 225, 299

**Prakṛti** (when written with a capital *P*, as against *prakṛti*) Brahman's nature, the source of *māyā*, often identical with *māvā*. 28

**prākṛtika bandha** Bondage by which one identifies the self with *prakṛti* or with any of its evolutes. *Prakṛti-lavas*, q.v., exemplify this bondage 46, 289

**prakṛti-layas** *Prakṛti*-dissolved ones; those who are absorbed in *prakṛti* (unmanifest matter in equilibrium before creation), but have not yet reached *kaivalya*. They have mastery over pure *prakṛti* and so may create universes, etc. They are not free of the cycles of *samsāra*, however. 207-8, 256-58, 262-63

**prakṛti-vikṛti** Modifications of *prakṛti* that may be modified further. 31

**pralaya** Final dissolution of an effect into its cause; dissolution of the universe (the alternate of creation); partial dissolution of a universe. 133, 144, 146, 303, 391

**pramā** The process of proof, i.e., any valid experience; apprehension of a state, condition, fact, object or entity not heretofore obtained. The end result is mind and *vṛtti* becoming one. 151, 155, 156

**pramāda** Negligence; failure in the practice of *bhāvanā* (contemplation); failure to practise the six virtues (of Vedānta). 324, 327

**pramāṇa** Valid proof; instrument, means, method for reaching an apprehension (*pramā*) not heretofore attained. In Sāṅkhya-Yoga valid proofs are *pratyakṣha* (direct perception), *anumāna* (inference), and *āgama* (revealed authority). 37, 47, 148, 149-51, 156, 373, 388, 390, 391-94

**prāṇa(s)** The vital energy in any living being, which is regulated by the fivefold *prāṇas*, each of which governs a particular energy flow: *prāṇa* regulates inhalation; *apāṇa* regulates exhalation and excretion; *samāṇa* regulates digestion and distribution of energy and nutrients; *udāṇa* regulates the upward movement of *prāṇa* (as in coughing, sneezing, and death), and *vyanā* monitors the entire nervous, muscular and skeletal systems and regulates blood flow. 43

**prāṇamaya koṣha** Sheath of *prāṇa* (in which the self is erroneously thought to be the agent of actions). 245, 246

**prāṇava** The word *OM* There are several possible derivations of the word *prāṇava*. *pra* + the verb *nu*, *pra* + *ni* + *dhā* (as in *prāṇidhāna*); *pra* + *nam*; *pra* + *ni* + *dha* and *av* (*prāṇidhātṛs*); *pra* + *nir* + *vā*, etc. 309-10.

**prāṇayāma** (*Prāṇa* + *āvāma*.) Breath and *prāṇa* control Control types include such methods as *rechaka*, *pūraka*, *kumbhaka* and *nāḍi-shodhana* *prāṇāvāmas* 331, 346-49

**prāṇidhāna** Practising the presence, placing something near, in the proximity of, to put something down. (From *pra* + *ni* + the verb *dhā*.) (See also *bhāvana*.) 277, 279, 309, 316

**pra-ṇi-dhātṛs** Those who practise the presence of God. 310

**pra-nir-vā** To lead to *nirvāṇa*. 310

**prāpti** The power to reach or touch the most distant things (a *siddhi*); arrival; attainment. 168, 416

**prārabdha** Karma gathered from past lives, whose fruition includes: assuming of incarnation in a species; the life span destined to be in this incarnation; and the pain and pleasure ordained for the life span. 90

**prasāda** Clarity and pleasantness (of the mind); pleasant clearness; clarity; which suggests clear flowing water and indicates a state of happiness, joyfulness and intense pleasantness felt in the mind. 212, 215, 265-66, 411-13

**prāsāda** A palace. 413

**prasāda-guṇa** Pleasantness of character. 102

**prasādana** Purifying; rendering clear; making happy; making serene; pleasing; making pleasant. 340

**prasajya-pratiṣhedha** Negation by direct statement (against a possibility). 137

**pra-saṅkhyāna** Discrimination between self (*puruṣha*) and non-self (*prakṛti*); realization of the difference between matter and the spiritual self. A source of the name of the Sāṅkhya philosophy. (See also *vaśikāra*.) 32, 205, 210

**prasanna** Clear; still; suggesting the quality of clear and still water and a pleasantness of mind that results from such clarity. 183, 362

**pra-śhvāsa** Involuntary exhalation (the opposite of controlled exhalation [*rechaka*] ); breathing out visceral air. 329, 331, 348

**prāthama-kalpika** Beginners at the first of the four levels of yogic attainment. 77

**prati-bandhin (prati-bandhi)** That which impedes, hinders, resists, opposes, checks, inhibits, blocks, prevents, annuls, etc. 419, 421

**pratijñā** Proposition (a term in the Indian five-member syllogism). 159

**pratipa** Opposite. 322

**prati-prasava** Dissolution of evolutes in reverse order of their creation; effects dissolving into their causes and finally into *prakṛti*; return of the *guṇas* into equilibrium in their ultimate cause (unmanifest *prakṛti*). (See also *prati-saṅchara*.) 38, 95, 146

**prati-saṅchara** In Sāṅkhya philosophy, the principle of orderly dissolution of material evolutes into their causes in reverse order of their evolution and development (*saṅchara*); dissolution of the universe and its phenomena. (See also *prati-prasava*.) 38, 42, 146

**pratiṣhedha** Preventing; opposing; prohibiting; negating; voiding, nullifying. 333

**pratiṣṭhā** Establishing; foundation; basis. 162, 163

**prati-tantra-siddhānta** Principles peculiar to a given discipline of philosophy or science. 23

**pratīti** Cognition, as in *pratyaya*. 179

**pratyabhijñā** Re-cognition. 189

**pratyāhāra** Withdrawal of senses from their objects. 107

**pratyak (pratyāñch)** Inward (From *prati* 'towards' and the verb root *añch* 'to be directed'; 'pointed or turned towards a certain direction'.) 320, 321-22

**pratyak-chetanā-adhigama** Attainment of inward consciousness; realization of the inwardly conscious (self). 320, 321

**pratyakṣha** Direct perception or experience (one of the valid proofs [*pramāṇas*] ); it determines the specific where specific and general are present. This definition is a pointer for the implicit, complete idea of realization. True *pratyakṣha* occurs in *samprajñāta*, when a reflection of pure consciousness appears. (See also *vṛgī-pratyakṣha*) 149-55, 334, 354

**pratyāñch** See *pratyak*

**pratyastamaya** The condition of *vrittis* of the mind-field having set like the sun (submerged, ceased) into the very source from which they had arisen 251

**pratyaya** An idea or experience being presented to *buddhi* so that a cognition may occur, cognition principle, causal principle of cognition, causal cognition, cognition (*pratīti*), cause, origin, that whence a cognition as an effect proceeds 132, 178, 179, 372

**pravāha** Flow 144

**pravāha-anādi** One who continues eternally through the cycles. 303

**pravāha-chitta** A flowing mind, i.e., a Buddhist concept of the mind-stream in which each successive wave gives the appearance of continuity even though there is no continuous mind but merely a succession of waves 337

**pravāha-nitya** The modifiable eternal is manifested and unmanifested, appears and disappears with creations and dissolutions 313

**pra-vartaka, pra-varttaka** Involver, engager, initiator, promoter, inducer, producer; instigator, urging and prompting one towards X (Antonym: *ni-vartaka*.) 138, 423

**pra-vi-laya** Dissolution. (See also *pralaya*.) 391

**pra-viveka** Increased and strengthened discriminating wisdom 214

**pra-vṛtti** Inclination; manifestation; direct perception; apprehension; a manifest natural state; a natural mental state arisen; an intense *vṛtti* of the mind-field, one that remains in concentration; a natural urge, inclination or tendency; initiative; worldly inclination; adventurousness. When a sustained concentration is such that the intense *vṛtti* and the attendant inner experience are effortless and become a natural mental inclination, that is *pra-vṛtti*. 93, 102, 197, 350, 352, 355, 356

**prāyaśhaḥ** As a common experience; commonly. 221

**prayatna** Method; effort. 200, 348

**prayoga-śāstra** A text or science to teach a practical method (whereby the yogī may sunder *puruṣha*'s connection with *prakṛti*). 284

**prayojana** Purpose. 60

**prema-bhakti-yoga** Yoga of love and devotion. 92

**priti** Feeling of love (with which one feels the desire "May I attain yoga" through the *āstika-buddhi*). 266

**puṇya** Virtue; merit; virtuousness; the virtuous and meritorious; meritoriousness; meritorious acts. 340, 342

**pūraka** *Prāṇāyāma* of controlled inhalation. (Antonym: *śhvāsa*.) 331

**Purāṇas** Ancient legends, stories, philosophies and histories; cosmological texts often couched in a mythological form. 26, 170

**puruṣha** The conscious principle, ever-pure, ever-wise, ever-free; the conscious being; the spiritual self; spiritual noumenon; the one in whom knowledge reaches its ultimate dimension; the omniscient one. The syncretic definition is "the Conscious Principle coupled with Existence." The Sāṃkhya definition is "the conscious spiritual-energy principle (theistic: incorporating God [*iśvara*] and souls [*jīvas*]; non-theistic: incorporating individual souls [*jīvas*])." 28-29, 42, 94, 106, 107, 109, 110, 111, 113, 212, 236, 295, 297-300

**puruṣha-darśhana-abhyāsa** The repeated practice of realizing and seeing the spiritual self. 214

**puruṣhārtha** The purpose of *puruṣha*. *Prakṛti* serves two purposes of *puruṣha*: involvement and disinvolvment. Having served these purposes of *puruṣha*, *prakṛti* withdraws. (From *puruṣha* + *artha*.) 255

**puruṣha-khyāti** Discernment or realization of *puruṣha*. 212

**puruṣha-viśheṣha** Īśvara, the Lord; the special Conscious Being. 284

**pūrva** Anything past, former, anterior; preceding one; ancient; the very first one, preceding creation; predecessor gurus. 305-8

**pūrva (pūrvaka)** Preceded by; having as a prerequisite or precondition. 248. 264

- rāga** Attachment; colouration; pleasure; attraction. (From the verb root *rañj* 'to colour; to be drawn towards, to be attracted to', q.v.) *Rāga* is a *kleśha* whose real name is great stupor (*mahā-moha*). 44, 125, 137, 162, 169, 170, 191, 342
- rajas** A *guṇa* (attribute of *prakṛti*); activity; endeavour, energy; movement; producing pain; dust. *Rajas* impels and energizes, overcoming stagnation. (See also *prakṛti*, *guṇas*.) 29, 30, 42, 112, 215
- rajasic jñāna** Active knowledge; knowledge imbued with *rajas*. 24
- rākṣhasas** Demonic beings. 104
- Rāma** An incarnation of Viṣhṇu. 301
- rañj** To colour; to be drawn towards, to be attracted to. 152, 206, 359
- rasa** Body-fluid essence such as hormones, gastric juices, etc.; essence; juice; flavour, enjoyment. 68n, 326, 415
- rasāyana(s)** Derived from *rasa*, which refers to fluid essences of anything: in alchemy—mercury; in herbal medicine—juice; in the human body—all fluids. Hence *rasāyana* refers to cleansing and purification processes for rejuvenation or for spiritual objectives, etc. 68
- rechaka** The *prāṇāvāma* of controlled exhalation (the opposite of *prāshvāsa*) 331
- rishi** A sage who has reached the highest *samādhi* and who then promulgates a science, text or tradition, an enlightened sage. 3, 5
- rta** The oldest word used in the Vedas for the Supreme Truth of universal and divine laws. 414
- ṛtambharā** Truth-bearer; Truth-bearing, bearer of Supreme Truth. 414-15
- ṛtambharā prajñā** Intuitive wisdom, Truth-bearing, intuitive wisdom, bearer of Supreme Truth, Wisdom 77, 85, 414-15, 420
- rūḍhi** Conventional (meaning of a word) 18
- Rudra** Śhiva as Dissolver. 302
- rūpa** Nature; form, appearance; feature 162, 187, 218
- sa-bija samādhi** Seeded *samādhi*, *samādhi* with seed, i.e., with objects of concentration (*ālambanas*), as with *samprajñāta samādhi*, q.v. 242, 373, 409-10
- sad (sat)** Existent, reality (accurately seen only by the inner self directly in concentration without the intervention of the senses, mind and *buddhi*)—this is direct perception [*yogi-prat�aksha*] 85

- sad-bhūta** Real. 84
- sādhaka** A spiritual aspirant. 12, 244
- saha-bhū** Natural accompaniment; correlate. 329
- saha-kārin** Associate in an act; coefficient. 336, 429
- sāhasa** Courage, such as embarking upon an endeavour without considering whether it can or cannot be accomplished. 200
- sahasā** Quickly; suddenly. 348
- sākṣhät-kāra** Realization; perfect or full realization; coming face-to-face. The fourth and highest of the four stages of gaining knowledge. 154, 373, 390, 391
- sālambana** With supportive factors; *samprajñāta samādhi*, which needs an object of concentration; *sa-bija*, q.v. (See also *ālambana*.) 242
- sam-ā-dhā, samādhāna** Resolution or harmonizing of all conflict (within and without); pacification; bringing together of all contrastive factors, resolving and reconciling. *Samādhāna* (freedom from all conflicts) is one of the six treasures of Vedānta. (From *sam* + *ā* + *dhā* 'to set together, join together [as of broken bones]'). 24, 67, 75, 251, 332
- samādhi, samādhi-chitta** *Nirodha*; harmony; meditation; absorption; *samādhāna*; mastery and control by the mind-field; also a Pāli word meaning "concentration" (one of the "three jewels" [along with *sīla* and *paññā*] of Buddhism). In effect the entire first chapter of the *Yoga-sūtras* of Patañjali constitutes a definition of the *samādhis* of yoga (Antonyms *vijñāna*, *vijñāna-chitta*.) 75-76, 82, 86-91, 108, 114n, 130, 134n, 218-47, 251, 264, 351
- samādhi-prajñā** *Samādhi*-wisdom. 387, 399, 402
- samādhi-prārambha** The beginnings of *samādhi*, as in *vikṣipta* when *sattva* begins to gain ascendancy. 251-52
- samādhi-saṁskāra** Impressions of the *samādhi* being created on the mind. These impressions finally burn away even the past *samskāras*. 86
- sam-ā-dhīyate** Becomes harmonized and established in *samādhi*; the mind is free of polarities and conflicts. 269
- saṁhita** Harmonized, conflicts resolved (From *sam* + *ā* + *dhā*.) (See also *sam-ā-dhā*) 332
- saṁāna** See *prāna(s)*
- saṁanvaya** Synthesis. 27
- sāmānya** General, generic, universal. (Antonym *viśhesha*) 152
- sāmānya-ava-dhāraṇa-pradhāna** Primarily determining, chiefly the determinant of 158

**samāpanna** Accomplished (as a *samāpatti*). 380, 384

**samāpatti** Field of command; field of coalescence; apprehension; accomplishment; encounter; transmutation; coalescence; attainment of a state of consciousness; proficiency of the mind; the mind-field dwelling on the object, becoming stable thereupon, and achieving coalescence therewith. This coalescence of the mind with the object, so that mind appears as though non-existent and only the object of concentration remains, is *samāpatti* proper. The four *samāpattis* and corresponding *samprajñāta samādhis* are:

*sa-vitarka samāpatti* = *sa-vitarka samādhi*

*nir-vitarka samāpatti* = *nir-vitarka samādhi*

*sa-vichāra samāpatti* = *sa-vichāra samādhi*

*nir-vichāra samāpatti* = { *nir-vichāra samādhi*  
*sānanda samādhi*  
*sāsmita samādhi*

(See also *samprajñāta samādhi*.) 355, 371, 373, 378, 380-81, 409

**samāropa** Superimposition. 127

**samartha** Capable; strong. 266, 353

**sāmarthyā** Capability; intensified and increased capacity. 353, 354

**samaśṭhi-chitta** Universal mind; collective mind. 299

**samavāya-sambandha** Inherent relationship. 288

**sambandha** Relationship, relationship or connection (rather than union with); the relationship of the subject matter (*vishaya*) of a text, its purpose (*pravojana*), and a student's qualification (*adhikārin*). 60, 132

**sampadyate** Succeeds; prospers, reaches the desired enrichment; a fulfilment in all directions, one comes to rest in the Supreme Self, becomes filled with the Supreme Self. 317

**sampat** Treasure. 67

**sampatti** Fulfilment; enrichment; perfection. 319

**sam-pipādayiṣhā** Desire, intent or will to achieve fulfilment. 200

**samprajñāta samādhi** The lower samādhi, also designated as *sa-bija samādhi*; *samādhi* of wisdom; that *samādhi* in which wisdom comes to its most harmonized, perfect expansion. *Samprajñāta* requires supportive factors (*ālambanas*, *bijas*), objects of concentration. The nature of the *ālambanas* and the associated *vrittis* becomes increasingly refined as the realization progresses through its four stages: *sa-vitarka* (with discursive, gross, thought), *sa-vichāra* (with subtle thought), *sānanda* (with ecstasy, rapture), and *sāsmita* (with I-am-ness). (See also *samāpatti*) 63, 218-20, 224, 409-10

**sam-prati-patti** The perception of knowledge in consciousness (derivative, *yaugika*, meaning); the continuity of usage (conventional, *rūdhī*, meaning). 313

**saṁsāra** Transmigration; continuous cycle of birth and death; transmigratory cycles of creation and dissolution; the worldly attractions from which the bondage of transmigration begins; worldly cycles. (Antonyms: *kaivalya*, *nirvāṇa*, *mokṣha*.) 89, 108, 167, 194, 216, 281

**saṁśaya** Doubt; (the mind) oscillating between two alternatives. 164, 324, 325-26

**saṁskāras** Impressions; imprints. (See also *āśhaya*, *karmāśhaya*, *vāsanā*.) 99, 140, 185, 286-87

**saṁskāra-śheṣha** Residual *saṁskāras*; that in which *saṁskāras* alone remain as residue; where only the impressions of the past experiences and karmas remain as deposits and no fresh karma is formed. 78, 248, 250

**saṁsthāna** Configuration serving as foundation or substrate for attributes. 388, 396-97

**samuchchaya** Combination. 303

**saṁvega** Vehemence; speed; velocity; force; momentum; progress. *Saṁvega* implies a strong *saṁskāra* from the past and a strong desire and will. 271, 273

**samyak-jñāna** Correct knowledge. 213

**saṁyama** Practice of the three internal limbs of yoga (*dhāranā*, *dhyāna* and *samādhi*) as one. 103

**saṁyoga** Union (a coming together of those that were separate). 132

**sānanda** Ānanda-accompanied; rapture-accompanied. (See also *samprajñāta samādhi*.) 224

**sañchara** Process of the development of evolutes from *prakṛti* to the gross elements 42

**sandhi** A complex set of rules for euphonizing Sanskrit words, for example *yoga* + *anuśhāsana* becomes *yogānuśhāsana*. 20

**saṅghāta-vāda** The aggregation doctrine of Buddhists of the Sautrāntika and Vaibhāshīka schools. For example, according to *saṅghāta-vāda* an object such as a jar is simply a combination of uncountable numbers of atoms and not their transmuted product. There are no cause and effect relationships between the atoms and the jar. 395

**sañjñā** Term; definition; name. 20, 205

**sañjñā-sūtra** A *sūtra* that gives a definition, title, or topic. 20

- sankalpa** A positive thought or resolution. (Antonym: *vikalpa*.) 381
- sanketa** Conventional usage and meaning; indication, denotation (as of a word). 387, 389
- saṅketita** Indicated; shown by or pointed to by a sign. 390
- saṅkhyāna** Permutation (a source of the name of Sāṅkhya philosophy). 32
- Sāṅkhya-pravachana** Enunciation of Sāṅkhya. 8
- Sāṅkhya-trayī-pratipālaka** “Guardian of the Threefold Sāṅkhya,” a title accorded to the *śankarāchāryas*. 39
- saṅkirṇa** Mixed; mingled; commingled; alloyed. 380
- sankrama** Transitional. 212
- sānnidhya** Proximity. In the context of *YS I.4* *sānnidhya* means compatibility of qualities and not time or space proximity. 132
- sānumāna** Performing good acts of stupefaction. 44
- sārūpya** Similarity; assimilation; appearance of; identification with the form of; identity. 122, 126, 128
- sārva-bhauma** Universal The *saṃādhi* of the spiritual self remains unbroken It is universal, *sārva-bhauma*, the common ground of all other operations of the compound personality (spirit and matter) Literally, “that which remains in all *bhūmis*” (grounds or levels of yogic achievement on the way to the highest *saṃādhi*) 77, 79
- sarva-dharma-anu-pātin** That which relates to all characteristics. 403
- sarva-dharma-ātmaka** That whose self-nature comprises all characteristics 403
- sarva-jñā** Omniscient; all-knowing. 295, 298
- sarvajñā-bijam** Seed of the omniscient 297-98
- sarvajñatā** Omnidiscience 301
- sārvajñā-bijam** Seed of omniscience. 297-98
- sarva-nirodha** Cessation, dissolution or *nirodha* of all 424
- sarva-tantra-siddhānta** Common principle(s) shared by all 24
- sāsmita** With *asmitā*; *asmitā*-accompanied (See also *samprajñatā samādhi*.) 224
- sat** Essence. 200
- sati** Pāli word for *smṛti*, q.v. The most important of the “five strengths” (*indriyās*) cultivated in the Buddhist tradition (See also *sati-paṭṭhāna*) 268

**sati-paṭṭhāna** Pāli expression for the presence of intentness and practice of mindfulness. Practice of mindfulness is perhaps the most central part of Buddhist meditation practice and includes mindfulness of body (*kāya*), emotions (*vedanā*), mind (*chitta*), and conditions (*dhamma*), as well as cultivating repeated awareness (*anussati* in Pāli), which in turn includes mindfulness of exhalation and inhalation (*ānāpāna-sati*). The practice of constant mindfulness is also taught by yogis of the Himalayas irrespective of their affiliations. 268-69

**satkāra** Respect; positive attitude; reverence; adoration; devotion. 202

**sat-kārya-vāda** A doctrine of Sāṅkhya schools stating that the qualities of objects pre-exist in their causes, that *gunas* are constantly transmuted into their evolutes, and that a cause does not cease to be simply because it is transmuted into an effect. "That which is not, does not come into being; that which is, never ceases to be" (*BhG* II.16). (See also *a-sat-kārya-vāda*.) 29-30, 97, 133, 395

**sattā-mātra** Existence only (without any conditions, productions, evolutions or devolutions). 240

**sattva** (1) A *guna* (attribute of *prakṛti*). The *sattva guna* is characterized by purity, luminosity, lightness, harmony and the production of pleasure. It is the purest aspect of the three *gunas*. (See also *prakṛti*, *gunas*) 29, 30, 42, 112 (2) God's own essence and intelligence; the excellence of essence (being) and intelligence (knowing), the two being intertwined and the one not subsisting without the other. This *sattva* is not to be confused with the *guna sattva*. 283, 291

**sattvic jñāna** Pure, refined or luminous knowledge; knowledge imbued with the *sattva guna*. 24

**satya** Truth (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 301

**sauhārda** Goodheartedness, amity, friendship. (See also *maitrī*.) 343

**saumanasya** Good-mindedness. (From *su* 'good, happy, harmonized' and *manas* 'mind'.) (Antonym: *daurmanasya*.) 331

**sa-vichāra** With *vichāra*; *vichāra*-accompanied *saṃādhi*; accompanied by subtle thought, a *saṃādhi* accompanied by subtle thought. (See also *saṃprajñāta saṃādhi*, *saṃāpatti*.) 224, 399

**sa-vikalpa** Accompanied by *vikalpa*, q.v., such as the coming and going of thoughts with resultant superimposition and lack of clarity. 386

**sa-vitarka** With *vitarka*; *vitarka*-accompanied *saṃādhi*; accompanied by gross thought; a *saṃādhi* accompanied by gross thought. Concentration in *sa-vitarka saṃāpatti* is invariably accompanied by the names of the objects of concentration. (See also *saṃprajñāta saṃādhi*, *saṃāpatti*.) 380, 382, 389

**śhabda** Word. 171, 380

**śhabda-jñāna** Verbal conception. 171

**śhabda-jñāna-anupāti (-anu-pātin)** Dependent upon a verbal knowledge (conception) only. 171, 173

**śhabda pramāṇa** Verbal proof; the same as *āgama*, q.v. 173

**śhabda-tanmātrā** Subtle element of sound, from which space (*ākāśha*) is created as the gross element. 386

**śabdēna** Through words; in the form of words; with the accompaniment of words. 160

**śaḍ-aṅgatā** Constituting six complements. 300

**śakti** Pure energy; potentia (potential); immutable potentia; power; force; potency; (inherent) power. 25, 109, 113, 120, 221, 301-2, 309

**śaktimān** The omnipotent; he who has *śakti*; the powerful one. 302, 317

**śama** Quietude; pacification (one of the six treasures of Vedānta). 67, 69

**śānta** Pacific; peaceful; calm; pacific attribute (a major personality disposition, which *buddhi* assumes in association with *sattva*). 118, 126, 199

**śharīra(s)** Body; the system of the three bodies. the causal body (*kāraṇa śharīra* or *linga śharīra*) consisting of *mahat* alone, the subtle body (*sūkṣhma śharīra*), and the gross body (*sthūla śharīra*). 244, 246, 261, 262

**śhās** To impart a discipline or a teaching; to teach with a definite discipline 71

**Śhaṣṭi-tantra** *The Book of Sixty*, an ancient Sāṅkhya text now lost 46

**śāshvatika** Perennial. 293

**śāstra** Revealed teaching, scripture, "the Law"; a text taught within a tradition and with a discipline hence the entire science of yoga is known as *yoga-śāstra*; the eternal law which is synonymous with God's knowledge, the application of which is manifest in *kriyā-śakti*, the power of action and creativity, by which the world comes into existence and is maintained within the Law, the revealed teaching, which is conveyed from the Lord to the individual *jīva* so that the latter may be raised and saved, the scripture itself in that verbal form which is conveyed by *jīva* to *jīva*, from teacher to disciple. 73, 283, 290, 291

**śhaṭ-sampat** The six treasures of Vedānta, constituting practices of pacification: quietude (*śama*); restraint (*dama*); withdrawal from

worldly interests (*uparati*); forbearance (*titikṣhā*); faith, humility, surrender (*śhraddhā*); and freedom from conflicts (*samādhāna*). 67

**śhavāsana** Corpse posture. 196

**Śheṣha** The curled-up snake of eternity, symbolizing *kundalini*, upon which Viṣhṇu as Preserver sleeps at the end of an aeon. Patañjali is said to have been an incarnation of Śheṣha. 59, 60

**śhiṣhya** Disciple; one taught with and within a discipline. 71

**Śhiva** The Dissolver; Rudra, the Dissolver; the Benevolent One. 29, 300, 301-2

**śhiva-yoga** The yoga of Śhiva. 92

**śhoka** A mutation of *rajas*, e.g., sorrow, grief, pain, suffering. 358

**śhraddhā** One of the six treasures of Vedānta, connoting a gentle quality associated with humility, reverent faith and surrender; inclinations of faith such as generosity of mind, celibacy, charity, acts of prayer; devotion; full clarity and pleasantness of the mind-field; faith that *samādhi* is the only worthy goal and that one has chosen the way of self-realization. 43, 67, 202, 204, 265, 266, 351, 365

**śhravāṇa** Learning; listening to a teacher (the same as receiving knowledge from *āgama pramāṇa*); hearing the teaching. The first of the four stages of gaining knowledge. 91, 390, 391, 415

**śhrotṛ** Listener; student. 161

**śhruta** Teaching; tradition; learning; hearing; teaching received orally. 387, 416

**śhruta-prajñā** Wisdom received from learning or from authority. 416

**śhruti** Vedic texts; revealed texts; texts taught orally. 390, 394

**śhuddha** Pure. 429

**śhuddhi** Purification. 391

**Śhukadeva** Son of Vyāsa. 378

**śhūnya** Void, empty; devoid of. 121, 171

**śhvāsa** Involuntary inhalation; uncontrolled inhalation; *prāṇa* breathing in external air. (Antonym: *pūraka*) 329, 331, 348

**siddha** One who is accomplished in the *siddhis* (yogic powers). 169

**siddhis** (1) Yogic accomplishments or so-called miraculous powers 103, 168-69 (2) The eight accomplishments of Sāṅkhya philosophy (not to be confused with the yogic *siddhis*). 45

**siddhi-yoga** Yoga of *siddhis* (accomplishments of powers). 92

**sila** Pāli word meaning “conduct”; one of the “three jewels” (along with *samādhi* and *paññā*) of Buddhism. 88

**sīv** To sew. 18

**smṛti** Memory; a *vr̥itti* called memory; contemplation; meditation (*dhyāna*); awakening of *ekāgratā*; mindfulness; awareness; recollection; remembrance; intentness; presence of mind; inspired lawbooks. (From *smṛ* 'to remember'. 143, 148, 185, 264, 267-69, 351, 390, 394)

**smṛti-pariśuddhi** Purification of memory. 387

**smṛti-upasthāna** The presence of intentness (of the mind); the same as Buddhist *sati-paṭṭhāna*. 268

**soham** See *harīsa-mantra*.

**sopāna** Rung (of a ladder). 27

**sphoṭa** Unitary revelation of knowledge becoming word. One of the fundamental doctrines in Indian philosophies of language, accepted by philosophers of yoga, Vedānta and grammar, disputed by the Mīmāṃsā school. 383

**sphuṭa** Revealed; clear. 411, 412

**sraṣṭṛtvā** Creativity (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). 301

**stambhana** Stoppage. 144

**sthiti** Stasis; a product of *tamas*; stability; stagnation; veiling of the force of *sarīskāras*; heaviness; obscuration; dejection, feebleness; stillness; settling down, stabilising, coming to rest (of the mind-field); steadiness (of the mind-field); continued maintenance 93, 102, 198-99, 350, 425

**sthiti-nibandhana** Stabilising and rendering the stability permanent and unshakable, making it binding and fastening it, that which effects stability of the mind, *chitta-prasādana*. 341, 347, 356

**sthiti-nibandhani** The instrument of establishing, affirming, effecting, sealing, the mind's steadiness 350

**sthūla** Gross. 226

**sthūla-ālambana** Gross object of concentration 376

**sthūla śarira** Gross body. 246

**styāna** Laziness, sloth, mental laziness; procrastination, mind's idleness. The mind refuses to settle down; it finds excuses, remains always distracted and refuses to work (for the *sādhaka*'s purposes) 183, 324, 326

**sukha** Pleasure (an inherent attribute of the *sattva guna*); comfort, those comfortable, acts undertaken with prayer or expectation of a comforting or pleasant result. 43, 184, 231, 340

**sūkṣhma-bhūta** Subtle elements (*tan-mātrās*) Not to be confused with *bhūta-sūkṣhma*. 401

**sūkṣhma śarīra** Subtle body. 246

**sūkṣhma-viṣhayā(tva)** Having subtle objects as the domain, field or object of concentration. 399, 404, 407

**suṣhumnā** The central subtle energy channel (*nāḍī*) that flows along the spinal column of the physical body. 65

**suṣhupti** The sleep state as different from or contrasted with wakefulness and dream. In references to sleep the student should determine whether *suṣhupti* as a state or *nidrā* as a *vṛtti* is intended. (See also *nidrā*.) 102n

**sūtra** A unifying thread; something to sew with; set of aphorisms or rules. 17, 115

**sva** Possession; one's own property. 122, 292

**svādhyāya** Study of scriptural sentences leading to liberation; the fourth discipline of the second *āṅga* of yoga (*niyamas*); silent recitation; self-study (*sva-adhyāya*) when the recitation is to oneself and not aloud; *japa* of purificatory like *OM*; the study of scriptures that lead to purification. 6, 229, 315, 318, 345

**sva-karanya-saṁvedyā** Experienced directly with one's own instrumentation. 352

**svāmin** Proprietor; owner. 122, 292

**svapna** Dream. 361

**svara science** The science of breath rhythms. 366

**sva-rūpa** One's (the self's) own nature; own self-nature. 111, 114, 425

**svarūpa-śhunya** Devoid of its own form, as mind appears to become in *nir-vichāra samādhi*. 387

**svataḥ-pramāṇa** Internally self-evident, self-authoritative (Descriptive of texts or revelations in need of no proof external to themselves, but upon whose authority other statements may be proved.) 5

**svatantratā** Sovereignty 301

**svatva** Possession (such as *asmitā* [I-am-ness]). 169

**Svayam-bhū** The "Self-Existent Being," teacher of Brahmā 70

**tad-añjanatā** Achieving coalescence therewith 371, 378

**tādātmya** Being identical, for example, the object in question is one that is both universal and particular, generic and specific 153

**tad-rūpa-a-pratiṣṭham** Not established in, having no basis in, the form of that (of a given object) 163

**taijasa** Beings with *rajasic* ego 44

- tamas** One of the three *guṇas* (attributes of *prakṛti*). Its qualities are stability, stagnation, dullness, inertia, darkness, stasis, stupor. (See also *prakṛti*, *guṇas*.) 29, 30, 42, 112, 168
- tamasic jñāna** Darkened knowledge; knowledge imbued with *tamas*. 23
- tāmisra** Nocturnal (the real name of *dveśha*, q.v.). 168, 169, 170
- tamo-dravya** The substance *tamas*, which is as real as any darkness. 179
- tan-mātrās** The five modifications (evolutes) of *tamasic aharṇkāra*; the five subtle elements in the subtle body: sound, touch, form, flavour, odour. 33, 41, 168, 225, 230, 312
- tantra** The particular tradition or science. 296
- tāntrikī paribhāṣhā** A technical term within a given discipline, tradition or science. 230, 414
- tanū-karaṇa** Attenuation; thinning down. 421
- tapas** Ascetic observance, power or practice; austerity (one of the ten immutables in the Lord); reducing one's material and physical pleasures, luxuries, and the body's dependence on objects. 202, 203, 301, 345
- tarka** Any thought accompanied by words; logic. 382
- tat-ja (taj-ja)** Arising from that; produced from that. 419
- tat-stha** Stable on them. 371
- tattva** True reality; state; condition, fact, object, entity; principle, factor; reality; real element, true nature. Literally, "that-ness" (*tat-tva*); the essential nature of any object or entity. 34, 42, 103, 151, 333, 421
- tattva-darśhana** The realization of reality (one of the qualifications of a realized teacher). 160
- tattva-jñāna** Knowledge of reality. 102
- tattvas** The five gross elements; the final evolutes of *prakṛti*; space, air, fire, water, earth (evolved in that order). 34, 42, 366
- tauṣṭikas** Those who have experienced *tuṣṭi*, a feeling of complacency far short of the goal. 263
- tejas** Fire, light; illumination. 385
- ṭikā** A gloss or commentary on a commentary (*bhāṣhva*) by subsequent scholars. 6
- titikṣhā** Forbearance (one of the six treasures of Vedānta). 67
- tīvra** Acute; fast, intense, as in "intense methods" (*tīvra-upāya*), and speedy, as in "speedy progress" (*tīvra-samvega*). 271
- tīvra-samvega** Those of speedy progress. 271

**tivra-upāya** Those of intense methods. 271

**trpti** Satiety. 213, 301

**tuṣṭi** Feeling of complacency; the nine complacencies (four spiritual and five external); philosophical complacency. 45, 258, 263

**ubhaya koṭi** Both of two possible categories simultaneously. For example, a pendulum touches only one *koṭi* at a time but a string is tied to both *koṭis* simultaneously. 369

**udāna** *See prāṇas.*

**uddeśha** Name and title. 430

**uddeśha-sūtra** A *sūtra* that states the subject of a text or portion thereof. 21, 61

**upabhoga** Enjoyment. 261

**upadeśha** The teaching of one's guru; a teaching. 266

**upādhi** A superimposed condition, not an inherent attribute or state; a temporary condition; a condition external to the intrinsic nature of an object or entity. 118, 374

**upa-jana** Increase or growth in strength. 344

**upa-kāra** Benefit (conventional, *rūḍhi*, meaning); service (derivative, *yaugika*, meaning). (From *upa* 'near' and *kāra* 'to do', connoting "to act in a certain way by mere presence.") 131

**upa-karaṇas** Instruments. 214

**upalakṣhaṇa** Example, pointer, indicator. 102, 154

**upanaya** Recapitulation of cause (a term in the Indian five-member syllogism). 159

**upa-rāga** Being drawn towards; being attracted to; the process of being coloured by, where colouring refers to *vṛttis* produced in the mind from external sources. (From *upa* 'near' and *rañj* 'to colour, to be attracted to'.) 149, 151, 152, 154

**upa-rakta** That which is drawn towards or coloured by 187, 359

**upa-rama** To turn the *vṛttis* off. 250

**upa-rañj** To be coloured by something by reason of its proximity. (See also *upa-rāga*.) 187, 399

**uparati** Withdrawal from worldly interests (one of the six treasures of Vedānta). 67

**upasarga** Encumbrance. 323

**upa-śama** Pacification, extinguishing; blowing out or snuffing out (as of a flame). 98

**upāśhraya** Proximate object; serving as a support or source of conditioning through proximity. 372

**upa-ṭīkā** A supplemental gloss on a gloss; a subcommentary. 6

**upāyas** Means; instruments or methods of obtaining the desired ends (of a science). *Upāya* incorporates not merely the concepts of method and techniques but also attitudes of mind and a philosophy of life for one who desires liberation. (See also *upāya-pratyaya*.) 257, 265

**upāya-pratyaya** A *samādhi* whose causal cognition cultivated through method accrues to true yogis, yielding knowledge of exact reality (*yathārtham vastu*). The methods (*upāyas*) may be mild, moderate or intense with respect to the following constituents: faith (*shraddhā*), strength (*virya*), intentness (*smṛti*), mental harmony (*samādhi*), and discrimination from awakening wisdom (*prajñā-viveka*). 256-58, 260, 263, 265

**upayoga** Use. 261

**upekṣhā** Indifference; equanimity. 213, 340, 344

**utpannā (utpanna)** Born; appeared; occurred; became manifest; an advent having taken place. 350

**utsāha** Enthusiasm; perseverance; fortitude; firmness; exertion; vigorous pursuit; zeal. 200

**vāchaka** Signifier; signifying word or name; that which enunciates; that which signifies. 309, 317-18

**vāchya** That which is enunciated; that which is signified. 317-18

**vaikārika** Beings with *sattvic* ego. 44

**vaikārika bandha** Bondage by which one becomes attracted to the celestial pleasures (as the *videhas* do) or by which a renunciate may be drawn to the ordinary worldly attractions. 46, 290

**vaikṛta bandha (vaikṛtika bandha)** See *vaikārika bandha*.

**vairāgya** Dispassion and control over desires for worldly or other-worldly pleasures, state of being devoid of, free from, attraction (*rāga*) to objects reflecting into and colouring the mind, renunciation, disinterest in the world (one of the ten immutables in the Lord). *Vairāgra* (dispassion) and *abhyāsa* (practice) are the sine qua non of achievement on the yogic path. (See also *rāga*.) 45, 91, 101, 105, 193-97, 205, 206, 212, 301, 336

**vaiśhāradya** Proficiency and purity; the mind's firmness in its stability; that stream of concentration (stable flow) that receives and reflects the clearly reflected image of the entire whole as well as the particular aspects of the object of meditation. 411-12

**vaitṛṣṇya** A state of being free of all craving; a pure state of self-knowledge. 212, 216

**vārttika** An aphoristic statement that takes into account stated, unstated-but-implied, and difficult-to-understand points of an original *sūtra*. 9

**vāsanā** Imprint of actions (*saṃskāras*) left in the mind (the inclinations that the strength of *saṃskāras* produce) and the inclinations or propensities towards like maturations (*vipāka*) that develop in the mind. *Vāsanās* lie dormant in the mind until maturity of karma. (See also *āśaya*.) 133, 138, 216, 286-87

**vāsanā-yoga** The yoga of directing hidden propensities. 92

**vaśha** Control. 211

**vaśikāra** The fourth and highest order of *vairāgya*; the final stage of *apara-vairāgya*, characterized by total and supreme control or mastery. Herein one develops dispassion even towards the final attraction, however faint, which may accrue to the realization of the distinction between self and *prakṛti*. The *vaśikāra* dispassion indicates a wholly stabilised mind of total neutrality. 205, 206, 209, 210-11, 213, 341, 342, 351, 354, 368-70, 372

**vaśhitva** Control over all elements and beings; ability to create, rearrange or dissolve them (a *siddhi*). 169

**vastu** External substance, real object; a reality. 151, 171, 264, 400

**vastu-śhūnya** Devoid of substance, substantiality or a real object. 171

**vāyu** Air The word *vayu* is sometimes used for the *prāṇas*, q.v. 43

**vedanā** Emotions (a Pāli word) 268

**vedanā-moha** Confusion of feelings and emotions, wherein one does not even know what is painful or pleasant to oneself. 192

**vi-bhajyamāna** Being divided and separated. 380

**vi-bhakta** Distinct, divided and separated 380

**vibhu** All-pervading. 356

**vichāra** Rational thought, subtle thought; contemplation; movement of mind from gross objects to subtler objects of concentration (*vitarka* refined becomes *vichāra*) (From *vi* + *char*: 'progressive movement') (See also *sa-vichāra*.) 160, 218, 224, 229, 391

**vichāra-anugata** A *samādhi* accompanied by (-*anugata*) subtle thought (*vichāra*); *sa-vichāra*, q.v. 224

**vichāra-moha** Confusion of thought processes 192

**videha** Bodiless even while dwelling in the body; the individual yogi who has attained dissolution of the mind-field into original *prakṛti* (a

**videha (continued)**

stage in the process of liberation). The *videha* state by itself is not the *Yoga-sūtras'* definition of *kaivalya* or *asamprajñāta*. Yogis who, after abandoning the physical body, continue to maintain the body constituted of *mahat*, *aharikara* and mind are called *videhas*. Others say *videhas* maintain the *linga* body (*mahat*) only. 146, 207-9, 232, 257-61

**videha devas** Bodiless, shining gods; bodiless, shining ones. (See also *videha*.) 256, 259

**videha-kaivalya** The state of becoming bodiless even when dwelling in the body. *YS* 1.19 clearly considers the *videha* state to be significantly lower than *kaivalya* (final isolation). (See also *videha*.) 146, 261

**videha-mukti** One who is liberated while yet dwelling in the body. (See also *videha*.) 146

**vidhāraṇa** Restraint; control; expansion; the stretching or expanding of the visceral air, maintaining it outside—not a quick or sudden intake. *Vidhāraṇa* is the antidote to *śvāsa* (involuntary or uncontrolled inhalation). 346-48

**vidhi** Order; ordinance; system. 301

**vidhi-sūtra** A *sūtra* that enjoins an act. 20

**vidyā** Knowledge, proficiency in the tradition, texts, and particularly the systematic method of practice. 202, 203

**vidyā-snātaka** One who has graduated in a science, i.e., mastered a science. One of the three types of graduates (along with *vrata-snātaka* and *vidyā-vrata-snātaka*) in the ancient *āshramas*. 72

**vidyā-vrata-snātaka** One who has proficiency in a field of learning and has demonstrated the mastery of personal disciplines. One of the three types of graduates (along with *vrata-snātaka* and *vidyā-snātaka* in the ancient *āshramas*.) 72

**vijñāna** Ideation, idea. 336, 426

**vijñānamaya koṣha** Sheath of knowledge (wherein an assumption of delimited knowledge accrues). 245, 246

**vijñāna-vāda** A Buddhist theory of “ideation only,” whereby no external objects exist except as they are ideas within a universal idea (*ālava-vijñāna*). 336

**vijñāna-vādin** One holding the *vijñāna-vāda* view (*darśana*), not accepting the independently real existence of perceptible objects in a phenomenal world. 158, 336

**vikalpa** Imaginary cognition; linguistic misconception; false cognition, option, alternation, alternative imaginary cognition; alternative negative thought, superimposition, fiction. 143, 148, 164, 171, 380-86, 394

**vikalpita** Imagined; fictitious; processed as a *vikalpa*. 171, 177, 392

**vikāras** Products; modifications; evolutes of *prakṛti*; categories of reality consisting of sixteen evolutes (the eleven *indriyas* and five *bhūtas* or *tattvas*). Also called *vikṛtis*. 29, 31, 41

**vikṛtis** See *vikāras*.

**vikṣhepa** Distraction of the *sattvic* mind by *rajas* and *tamas*; the nine impediments (*YS I.30*) and their five companions (*YS I.31*); obstacles. 83, 103, 204, 324-29

**vikṣhepa-saha-bhū** Correlates or accompaniments of *vikṣhepas*. 329

**vikṣhipta** Distracted; the distrcted state (one of the five grounds or states of the mind-field) wherein the mind is afflicted by *vikṣhepas* (distractions of the *sattvic* mind by *rajas* and *tamas*). Although it is a modification of and some improvement on the agitated *kṣhipta* state, a *vikṣhipta* mind-field is not fit to be included within the category of yoga since *samādhi* may occur only intermittently and in short bursts. (See also *chitta*.) 62, 78, 83, 105, 329-32

**vi-laya** Dissolution; dissolving. 96

**vi-ni-vṛt** To withdraw. 425

**vipāka(s)** Ripening (like a fruit), fruition of actions (derivative [*yaugika*] meaning). The *vipākas* are (a) the species (*jāti*) in which one is reborn, (b) one's life span (*āyus*), and (c) pleasant or painful experiences (*bhoga*) during the life span 256, 282, 286

**vipākāśhaya** Domain or storehouse of *vipākas*, q.v. (From *vipāka* + *āśhaya*.) 287

**viparyasta-pratyaya** Inversion of awareness, i.e., turning the inward consciousness outward and not dwelling in the seer's own nature. 140

**viparyaya** Perversive cognition; false perception; false cognition; having no substance, false knowledge; misapprehension; perversive perception; confusion of philosophies; ignorance, which is of five kinds: *avidvā*, *asmitā*, *rāga*, *dvesha*, *abhiniveśha*. 44, 105, 127, 143, 162-70, 190, 325

**vīra** A brave hero. 267

**virakta** Dispassionate; one who has reached *vairāgya*. 212, 213

**virāma** Cessation; absence of all *vṛttis*, causal awareness of the absence of all cognition 248-50

**virāma-pratyaya** Awareness, the transcendent dispassion; that by means of which one attains the transcendent dispassion, that cognition (*pratyaya*) by which cessation of *vṛtti*s occurs in *a-samprajñāta*.

*Virāma-pratyaya* equates to *para-vairāgya*. 248-50

**virāma-pratyaya-abhyāsa** Practice of the cognition of cessation of *vṛttis*.  
248, 250

**Virāṭ** Cosmic Immanent form of the godhead (an example of which may be seen in *BhG* IX, X, XI); the universe-form of God. 221, 227

**virāṭ-puruṣha** Shining space-person; a being of godlike attainments. 369

**vīrya** Virility; vigour; strength; energy; potency; the qualities of a hero; capacity to initiate; seminal strength of a celibate; endeavour with regard to the eight *āṅgas* of yoga. 199, 264, 266–68, 351

**viśhāda** Depression (the mind clouded with *tamas*). 82

**viśhaya** (1) Subject matter of a text. 60 (2) Subject or object of experience, e.g., the subject of a memory as the object of a past experience; domain; subjects; matters; objects of enjoyment; internal object; sense object, field or object of thought; worldly objects. (See also *viśhayavatī*.) 185, 186, 194, 205, 213, 356, 359, 373, 389

**-viśhaya** In relation with; with regard to. 340

**viśhayavatī** Having sense objects; having sense experiences; having objects of experience. *Viśhayavatī* are of two forms. The lower form operates within the realm of the subtle senses, elements, objects; and the higher form operates in the realm of internal objects (*viśhayas*), which are constituted of the light of *sattva*. One of the two *viśhokā samāpatti*, the manifestation of luminosities relative to objects in *buddhi*. (See also *viśhaya*.) 350, 355–58

**viśhayavatī pravṛtti** Advent of direct perception of the experiences of subtle or celestial sense objects. 350

**viśheṣha** Specific, particular; individual; distinction. (Antonym *sāmānya*.) 153, 275, 388, 416

**viśheṣhas** Elements within the subtle body. The *viśheshas* are distinct, specific forms of matter (the final sixteen products of *prakṛti*)—five gross elements, five active senses, five cognitive senses and the mind (*antah-karaṇa*). 35, 224–28, 352

**viśheṣha-artha** Having a special purpose, aim or significance. 416

**viśhiṣṭa** To be possessed (of), to be distinguished by, to be qualified by. 419

**Viśhṇu** The Preserver. 301–2

**viśhokā** Beyond grief, free of grief or suffering. 78, 355

**viśhokā jyotiṣṭhamatī** The luminous or lucid one; the one without grief and luminous, experienced at two levels: (1) as *viśhayavatī*, involving experiences of lights and radiances as in a clear sky, and (2) as *asmitā-mātrā*, involving reflection of *puruṣha* like an infinite, calm ocean (without the lights as in *viśhayavatī*). 355–58

**viśhva-bhedas** Diversities of the universe, such as the forms of manifold objects. 376

**vīta** Devoid of. 359

**vīta-rāga** One who is devoid of attachment; one who is part of the guru lineage, starting from Hiranya-garbha, and whose mind has perfected *vairāgya* (highest dispassion); a saint; a disembodied master who helps aspirants. 359

**vitarka** Gross thought; thought accompanied by the names of the particular objects of concentration. (See also *sa-vitarka*.) 218, 382

**vitarka-anugata** A *samādhi* accompanied by *vitarka*; *vitarka*-accompanied; *sa-vitarka*, q.v. 224

**vitṛṣṇa** One who has lost a craving, been turned away from a craving, or is free from a craving; one who is indifferent. 205, 206, 209

**viveka** Discernment; discrimination; discriminating wisdom; the spiritual self. 193, 195-96, 210, 214, 264

**viveka-khyāti** The separation of *buddhi* from *puruṣha*; discriminating wisdom; the discernment by the *buddhi* of the distinction between itself and the spiritual self (*puruṣha*). This discernment arises in the fourth stage of *samprajñāta* when the mind-field and *buddhi* are centered upon themselves. This is a quality, not an entity. 107-8, 135-36, 303

**vividishā** The desire to know matters relating to spirituality, especially the conscious principle. 43

**vi-yoga** Separation 75

**vrata-snātaka** One who has demonstrated mastery of personal disciplines One of the three types of graduates (along with *vidyā-snātaka* and *vidyā-vrata-snātaka*) in the ancient āśramas. 72

**vṛtti(s)** (1) Operations, activities, fluctuations, waves, modifications (of the mind-field), mental state. *Vṛttis* are fivefold—*pramāṇa* (valid proof), *viparyaya* (perverse cognition), *vikalpa* (imaginary cognition), *nidrā* (sleep), and *smṛti* (memory)—and of two types—*kliṣṭha* (painful [imbued with *kleśhas*]) and *akliṣṭha* (not painful [not imbued with *kleśhas*]). A secondary meaning of *vṛtti* is “means of livelihood,” as in “*vṛttis* are the mind-field’s means of livelihood.” 38, 63, 93, 98, 122, 135, 148, 178 (2) Commentary by a disciple that is a word-for-word explanation of (e.g.) a master’s *sūtra*. 6

**vṛtti-sārūpya** Identification with the form and nature of *vṛttis* 122

**vyādhī** Illness, the imbalance of body constituents (*dhātus*), body juices (*rasas*), and the eleven senses (*karanas*) 324, 326

**vyākhyāta** Defined; explained. 399

**vyāna** *See prāṇas.*

**vyapadeśha** Designation; predication; the relationship of qualification with the qualified. 174

**vyatireka** Deduction (logic); ascertainment. 152, 209-10

**vyatireka dispassion** The second *vairāgya*, i.e., ascertainment of where one stands and what yet remains to be done en route to *para-vairāgya*. 209-10

**vyavahāra** Usage; practical application; efficacy; practical transaction. 173, 388

**vyavahāra-paramparā** Continuity of usage. 313

**vyutthāna** To get up, as from meditation, and to be wandering about; the mind's wandering from meditation; getting up, being away from meditation; worldly disturbance; non-meditative; absence of concentration; worldly involvement (of the mind). (Antonym: *samādhi*.) 114, 117, 126, 202, 251-52, 419-20, 428

**vyutthāna-chitta** The mind-field involved with the ordinary world (in act or thought); absence of concentration, as in *kṣipta* and *mūḍha*. (Antonyms: *nirodha-chitta*, *samādhi-chitta*.) 114

**vyutthāna-saṃskāras** *Samskāras* of worldly involvements. 202

**Yājñavalkya, Yogi** Famous metaphysician whose name appears frequently in the Upaniṣads. 69

**yamas** Restraints; the first of the eight *angas* of yoga: non-violence (*ahimsā*), non-lying (*satya*), non-stealing (*asteya*), control of passions, senses and mind (*brahmacharya*), and non-attachment (*aparigraha*). 145

**yantra** A visual (symbol or design) concentration for each *chakra* following tantric norms. 365

**yatamāna** The initial effort. 209

**yatamāna dispassion** The initial effort en route to *para-vairāgya*. learning what is of essence and what is not, uprooting the mind from attractions; understanding the nature of freedom from craving; inhibiting the senses from being drawn to worldly objects; and reducing desires. 209

**yathā-abhimata** As agreeable; as desired; as favoured; as object of choice. 365

**yathārthaṁ vastu** Exact reality. 264

**yatna** Endeavour; effort. 198

**yatra-kāmāvasāyitā** *See kāmāvasāyitā.*

**yaugika** Derivative (meaning of a word). 18

**yoga** *Yoga* is *samādhi* (and that *samādhi* is a universal attribute of the mind-field). *Yoga* is the control of the modifications (*vrittis*) of the mind-field (*chitta*). *Yoga* is that *nirodha* which leads to the seer's remaining in his own nature totally and permanently. "Yoga is skillfulness (*kaushala*) in actions (*karmas*)" (*BhG* II.50). The word *yoga* may be derived from the Sanskrit verb *yuj* (4th conjugation), meaning *samādhi*, or from *yujir* (6th conjugation), meaning *samādhi*, or from *yuj* (10th conjugation), meaning "to join, restrain, keep under control as in yoking." The primary meaning was probably *samādhi*, but there is much use of the sense of uniting, joining, yoking, in Vedic and Upaniṣadic literature. For purposes of the *Yoga-sūtras* it is reasonable to accept Vyāsa's statement that the word *yoga* means *samādhi* and that *samādhi* is a universal attribute of the mind-field. 60-61, 73-92, 93, 119, 286

**yoga-bhraṣṭha** One who has fallen from the path of *yoga*. 325

**yoga-nidrā** *Yoga* sleep (when the Lord rests after dissolution and before the next creation); conscious sleep. 293, 364

**yoga-śāstra** The science of *yoga* (See also *śāstra*, *anu-śāsana*.) 73, 348

**yoga-yantrita** Controlled by *yoga*. 254

**yoga-yukta** One who is joined to God in *yoga*. 99

**yogi** One who practises *yoga*, q.v.

**yogi-pratyakṣha** The supremely valid proof. During *samprajñāta* without externals there appears a reflection of the pure consciousness, *chiti-śakti*: this is direct perception (*yogi-pratyakṣha*) Reality (*sad*, *sat*) is accurately seen only by the inner self directly in concentration without the intervention of the senses, mind and *buddhi*: this is the yogi's direct perception (*yogi-pratyakṣha*). (See also *pratyakṣha*.) 85, 154-55, 354, 418

**yogyatā** Compatibility. 132

**yuj** *Yu* from *yujyate* means "practises *samādhi*"; *yu* from *yunakti* also means "practises *samādhi*"; *yu* from *yojayati* means "joins, restrains, keeps under control (as in yoking)." With the blending of oral tradition, philosophy, common parlance and other factors the fine distinctions of meaning have been blurred by time. The significant thing is, however, that irrespective of the verb of origin, Vyāsa has said that *yoga* is *samādhi*. (See also *yoga*) 73-74



## The Himalayan Institute

Since its establishment in 1971, the Himalayan Institute has been dedicated to helping individuals develop themselves physically, mentally, and spiritually, as well as contributing to the transformation of society. All the Institute programs—educational, therapeutic, research—emphasize holistic health, yoga, and meditation as tools to help achieve those goals. Institute programs combine the best of ancient wisdom and modern science, of Eastern teachings and Western technologies. We invite you to join with us in this ongoing process of personal growth and development.

Our beautiful national headquarters, on a wooded 400-acre campus in the Pocono Mountains of northeastern Pennsylvania, provides a peaceful, healthy setting for our seminars, classes, and training programs in the principles and practices of holistic living. Students from around the world have joined us here for the past fifteen years to attend programs in such diverse areas as biofeedback and stress reduction, hatha yoga, meditation, diet and nutrition, philosophy and metaphysics, and practical psychology for better living. We see the realization of our human poten-

tials as a lifelong quest, leading to increased health, creativity, happiness, awareness, and improving the quality of life.

The Institute is a nonprofit organization. Your membership in the Institute helps to support its programs. Please call or write for information on becoming a member.

### ***Institute Programs, Services, and Facilities***

All Institute programs share an emphasis on conscious, holistic living and personal self-development. You may enjoy any of a number of diverse programs, including:

- Special weekend or extended seminars to teach skills and techniques for increasing your ability to be healthy and enjoy life
- Holistic health services
- Professional training for health professionals
- Meditation retreats and advanced meditation instruction
- Cooking and nutritional training
- Hatha yoga and exercise workshops
- Residential programs for self-development

### ***The Himalayan Institute Charitable Hospital***

A major aspect of the Institute's work around the world is its construction and management of a modern, comprehensive hospital and holistic health facility in the mountain area of Dehra Dun, India. Outpatient facilities are already providing medical care to those in need, and mobile units have been equipped to visit outlying villages. Construction work on the main hospital building is progressing as scheduled.

We welcome financial support to help with the construction and the provision of services. We also welcome donations of medical supplies, equipment, or professional expertise. If you would like further information on the Hospital, please contact us.

# Himalayan Institute Publications

Art of Joyful Living	Swami Rama
Book of Wisdom (Ishopanishad)	Swami Rama
A Call to Humanity	Swami Rama
Celestial Song/Gobind Geet	Swami Rama
Choosing a Path	Swami Rama
The Cosmic Drama: Bichitra Natak	Swami Rama
Enlightenment Without God	Swami Rama
Exercise Without Movement	Swami Rama
Freedom from the Bondage of Karma	Swami Rama
Indian Music, Volume I	Swami Rama
Inspired Thoughts of Swami Rama	Swami Rama
Japji: Meditation in Sikhism	Swami Rama
Lectures on Yoga	Swami Rama
Life Here and Hereafter	Swami Rama
Living with the Himalayan Masters	Swami Rama
Love and Family Life	Swami Rama
Love Whispers	Swami Rama
Meditation and Its Practice	Swami Rama
Nitnem	Swami Rama
Path of Fire and Light, Vol. I	Swami Rama
Path of Fire and Light, Vol. II	Swami Rama
Perennial Psychology of the Bhagavad Gita	Swami Rama
A Practical Guide to Holistic Health	Swami Rama
Sukhamani Sahib: Fountain of Eternal Joy	Swami Rama
The Valmiki Ramayana Retold in Verse	Swami Rama
The Wisdom of the Ancient Sages	Swami Rama
Creative Use of Emotion	Swami Rama, Swami Ajaya
Science of Breath	Swami Rama, Rudolph Ballentine, M.D., Alan Hymes, M.D.
Yoga and Psychotherapy	Swami Rama, Rudolph Ballentine, M.D., Swami Ajaya, Ph.D.
The Mystical Poems of Kabir	Swami Rama, Robert Regli
Yoga-sutras of Patanjali	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
Superconscious Meditation	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
Mantra and Meditation	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
Philosophy of Hatha Yoga	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
Meditation and the Art of Dying	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
God	Usharbudh Arya, D.Litt.
Psychotherapy East and West	Swami Ajaya, Ph.D.
Yoga Psychology	Swami Ajaya, Ph.D.

Diet and Nutrition	Rudolph Ballentine, M.D.
Joints and Glands Exercises	Rudolph Ballentine, M.D. (ed.)
Transition to Vegetarianism	Rudolph Ballentine, M.D.
Theory and Practice of Meditation	Rudolph Ballentine, M.D. (ed.)
Freedom from Stress	Phil Nuernberger, Ph.D.
Science Studies Yoga	James Funderburk, Ph.D.
Homeopathic Remedies	Dale Buegel, M.D., Blair Lewis, P.A.-C, Dennis Chernin, M.D., M.P.H.
Hatha Yoga Manual I	Samskrti and Veda
Hatha Yoga Manual II	Samskrti and Judith Franks
Seven Systems of Indian Philosophy	Rajmani Tigunait, Ph.D.
The Tradition of the Himalayan Masters	Rajmani Tigunait, Ph.D.
Tripura Rahasya	Rajmani Tigunait, Ph.D.
Yoga on War and Peace	Rajmani Tigunait, Ph.D.
Sikh Gurus	K.S. Duggal
Philosophy and Faith of Sikhism	K.S. Duggal
The Quiet Mind	John Harvey, Ph.D. (ed.)
Himalayan Mountain Cookery	Martha Ballentine
The Man Who Never Died	Dr. Gopal Singh
Yogasana for Health	Yogiraj Behramji
Meditation in Christianity	Himalayan Institute
Spiritual Diary	Himalayan Institute
Blank Books	Himalayan Institute

To order or to request a free mail order catalog call or write

The Himalayan Publishers

RR 1, Box 400

Honesdale, PA 18431

Toll-free 1-800-822-4547



